

# Service Manual



www.hp.com/videos/laserjet www.hp.com/support/colorlje77800mfp



# HP Color LaserJet MFP E77822, E77825, E77830

Service Manual

#### Copyright and License

© Copyright 2018 HP Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 4, 7/2018

#### **Trademark Credits**

Adobe<sup>®</sup>, Acrobat<sup>®</sup>, and PostScript<sup>®</sup> are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Microsoft<sup>®</sup>, Windows<sup>®</sup>, Windows<sup>®</sup> XP, and Windows Vista<sup>®</sup> are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

## Conventions used in this guide

- TIP: Tips provide helpful hints or shortcuts.
- NOTE: Notes provide important information to explain a concept or to complete a task.
- **<u>A</u> CAUTION:** Cautions indicate procedures that you should follow to avoid losing data or damaging the product.

MARNING! Warnings alert you to specific procedures that you should follow to avoid personal injury, catastrophic loss of data, or extensive damage to the product.

# Table of contents

1 Product specifi	ications and description	1
Printe	er views	2
	Printer front view	2
	Printer back view	
	Interface ports	
	Control-panel view	5
	Inner finisher view	6
	Stapler/stacker finisher view	6
	Booklet finisher view	
Speci	fications	
	Technical specifications	
	Supported operating systems	
	Mobile printing solutions	
	Printer dimensions and weight	
	Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions	15
	Environmental specifications	15
	General Specifications	15
	Print specifications	17
	Scan specification	
	Copy specification	22
	Supplies	
	Service parts	
	Paper handling specification	
	Optional	
	Software and solution specification	
Feedi	ng system	
	Feeding system overview	
	Main components and functions	
	Cassette (Tray 1, 2, 4, 5)	
	Pickup unit	40
	Registration (regi) unit	41
	Tray 1 feed assembly	41

Image creation	43
Printing process overview	
Imaging unit	
Image Transfer Belt (ITB) Unit	47
Fuser unit	50
Fuser unit overview	50
Fuser unit drive	51
Fuser unit temperature control	51
Loop control	52
Laser scanner assembly	54
Laser scanner assembly overview	54
Laser scanning optical path	55
Laser synchronizing detectors	55
Automatic CPR adjustment	56
Drive system	60
Drive motors	60
Main drive unit (OPC/DEVE/ITB/Transfer Roller/Disengage/Engage motors)	
Pickup drive	62
Registration (Regi)/Tray 1 drive	62
Feed drive	64
Fuser/exit drive	64
Toner collection unit drive	66
Toner supply drive	66
Flatbed Scanner System	67
Flatbed scanner system overview	
Scanning system components	
Caution for moving the scanner	75
Flow Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) (GX/z models)	
Flow ADF overview (GX/z Models)	
ADF Sensors (GX/z models)	
Ultra Sonic Multi-feed (USM) (GX/z models)	79
Flow (ADF) drive system (GX/z models)	79
Flow ADF Registration (GX/z models)	82
Flow ADF Scanning Position (GX/z models)	83
Mixed Size Original (MSO)	83
Dual sensor cleaning method (GX/z models)	
Flow ADF (GX/z models)	85
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) dn bundles (LX/dn models)	86
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) (LX/dn models) overview	86
Electrical parts location (LX/dn models)	
ADF Registration (LX/dn models)	87

ADF Scanning position (LX/dn models)       9         ADF Specification (LX/dn models)       9         Hardware configuration       9         Main controller (main board)       9         Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS; Type SFI) / Switching Mode Power Supply (SMPS)       9         Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 4) (GX/z models)       10         Fuser drive board (FDB)       10         Fuser drive board (FDB)       10         Braser PCA (color models)       10         Waste Sensor PCA       10         CRUM PCA       10         Date Sensor PCA       10         Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit       10         Inner finisher       11         Support portals and documentation resources       11         Channel partner resources       11         How to search WISE for printer documentation       11         How to search WISE for printer documentation       11         How to search WISE for printer documentation       12         Ordering       12         Order parts, accessories, and support       12         Order parts, accessories, and supplies       12         Ordering       12         Ordering       12         Ordering       12 <th>ADF drive system (LX/dn models)</th> <th> 87</th>	ADF drive system (LX/dn models)	87
Hardware configuration       9         Main controller (main board)       9         Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS) Type 5H) / Switching Mode Power Supply (SMPS)       9         Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 4) (GX/z models)       10         Fuser drive board (FD9)       10         High-voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA       10         Eraser PCA (color models)       10         Waste Sensor PCA       10         CRUM PCA       10         Toner CRUM joint PCA       10         Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit       10         Inner finisher       11         Support portals and documentation resources       11         For additional service and support       11         How to search for printer documentation       11         How to search WSE for printer documentation       11         How to search WSE for printer documentation       12         Ordering       12         Ordering       12         Ordering       12         Before performing service       12         Main tenance       12         Ordering service       12         Dredering       12         Ordering service       12         Dredering service <t< th=""><th>ADF Scanning position (LX/dn models)</th><th></th></t<>	ADF Scanning position (LX/dn models)	
Main controller (main board)       9         Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS) Type 5H) / Switching Mode Power Supply (SMPS)       9         Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 4) (GX/z models)       10         Fuser drive board (FDB)       10         High-voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA       10         Eraser PCA (color models)       10         Waste Sensor PCA       10         CRUM PCA       10         Tomer CRUM joint PCA       10         Paper Size sensor PCA       10         Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit       10         Inner finisher       11         Support portals and documentation resources       11         For additional service and support       11         How to search for printer documentation       11         How to search WISE for printer documentation       12         Order parts, accessories, and supplies       12         Order parts, accessories, and supplies       12         Ordering       12         Service approach       12         Main tenance       12         Ordering       12         Ordering service       12         Ordering service       12         Service approach       12         Before	ADF Specification (LX/dn models)	
Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS; Type 5H) / Switching Mode Power Supply (SMPS)	Hardware configuration	
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 4) (GX/z models)	Main controller (main board)	
Fuser drive board (FDB)       10         High-voltage power supply (HVPS) PCA       10         Eraser PCA (color models)       10         Waste Sensor PCA       10         CRUM PCA       10         Toner CRUM joint PCA       10         Paper Size sensor PCA       10         Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit       10         Inner finisher       11         Support portals and documentation resources       11         For additional service and support       11         Channel partner resources       11         How to search MCS for printer documentation       11         How to search MCS for printer documentation       11         Order parts, accessories, and supplies       12         Ordering       12         Order parts list and diagrams       12         Ordering service       12         Before performing service       12         After performing service       12         Maintenance       12         Maintenance       12         Main parts       13         Exit assembly       13         Exit assembly       24         Cassette Tray 2       25         Cassette Tray 2       25	Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS; Type 5H) / Switching Mode Power Supply (SMPS)	
High-voltage power supply (HVPS) PCA       10         Eraser PCA (color models)       10         Waste Sensor PCA       10         CRUM PCA       10         Toner CRUM joint PCA       10         Paper Size sensor PCA       10         Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit       10         Inner finisher       11         Support portals and documentation resources       11         Support portals and documentation resources       11         Channel partner resources       11         How to search Gr printer documentation       11         How to search GSN for printer documentation       11         How to search GSN for printer documentation       11         Order parts, accessories, and supplies       12         Orderable parts       12         Orderable parts       12         Kervice approach       12         After performing service       12         After performing service       12         Maintenance       12         Main parts       13         Main assembly       24         Cassette Tray 2       25         Cassette Tray 3       25	Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 4) (GX/z models)	100
Ersser PCA (color models)       10         Waste Sensor PCA       10         CRUM PCA.       10         Toner CRUM joint PCA       10         Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit       10         Inner finisher       11         2 Parts, diagrams, removal and replacement       11         Support portals and documentation resources       11         For additional service and support       11         Channel partner resources       11         How to search for printer documentation       11         How to search GCSN for printer documentation       11         Order parts, accessories, and supplies       12         Ordering       12         Vertice approach       12         Service approach       12         Service approach       12         After performing service       12         Maintenance       12         Maintenance       12         Main parts       13         Main assembly       13         Exit assembly       24         Cassette Tray 2       25         Cassette Tray 3       25	Fuser drive board (FDB)	102
Waste Sensor PCA10CRUM PCA10Paper Size sensor PCA10Paper Size sensor PCA10Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit10Inner finisher112 Parts, diagrams, removal and replacement11Support portals and documentation resources11For additional service and support11Channel partner resources11How to search for printer documentation11How to search GCSN for printer documentation11How to search GCSN for printer documentation11Order parts, accessories, and supplies12Ordering12Orderable parts12Orderable parts12Service approach12Before performing service12After performing service12Maintenance12Main parts13Main assembly13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325	High-voltage power supply (HVPS) PCA	102
CRUM PCA10Toner CRUM joint PCA10Paper Size sensor PCA10Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit10Inner finisher11Support portals and deplacement11Support portals and documentation resources11Channel partner resources11Channel partner resources11How to search for printer documentation11How to search GCSN for printer documentation11Ordering12Ordering12Ordering12Ordering12Before performing service12After performing service12Main tenance12Main parts13Main assembly13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325	Eraser PCA (color models)	103
Toner CRUM joint PCA10Paper Size sensor PCA10Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit10Inner finisher112 Parts, diagrams, removal and replacement11Support portals and documentation resources11For additional service and support11Channel partner resources11How to search for printer documentation11How to search for printer documentation11How to search GSN for printer documentation11Order parts, accessories, and supplies12Orderable parts12Orderable parts12Before performing service12Service approach12Main tenance12Main parts12Main parts13Exit assembly13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 325Cassette Tray 325	Waste Sensor PCA	104
Paper Size sensor PCA       10         Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit       10         Inner finisher       11         2 Parts, diagrams, removal and replacement       11         Support portals and documentation resources       11         For additional service and support       11         Channel partner resources       11         How to search for printer documentation       11         How to search GCSN for printer documentation       11         How to search GCSN for printer documentation       11         Order parts, accessories, and supplies       12         Ordering       12         Ordering       12         Orderable parts       12         Before performing service       12         Service approach       12         Maintenance       12         Main parts       13         Kain assembly       13         Exit assembly       24         Cassette Tray 3       25	CRUM PCA	104
Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit       10         Inner finisher       11         2 Parts, diagrams, removal and replacement       11         Support portals and documentation resources       11         For additional service and support       11         Channel partner resources       11         How to search for printer documentation       11         How to search GCSN for printer documentation       11         How to search GCSN for printer documentation       11         Order parts, accessories, and supplies       12         Ordering       12         Defore parts       12         Before performing service       12         Before performing service       12         Post-service test       12         Maintenance       12         Main parts       13         Main assembly       13         Exit assembly       24         Cassette Tray 2       2	Toner CRUM joint PCA	
Inner finisher       11         2 Parts, diagrams, removal and replacement       11         Support portals and documentation resources       11         For additional service and support       11         Channel partner resources       11         How to search for printer documentation       11         How to search for printer documentation       11         How to search GCSN for printer documentation       11         Order parts, accessories, and supplies       12         Ordering       12         Ordering       12         Ordering       12         Before parts       12         Before performing service       12         After performing service       12         Maintenance       12         Main parts       13         Main assembly       13         Exit assembly       24         Cassette Tray 3       25	Paper Size sensor PCA	105
2 Parts, diagrams, removal and replacement       11         Support portals and documentation resources       11         For additional service and support       11         Channel partner resources       11         How to search for printer documentation       11         How to search WISE for printer documentation       11         How to search GCSN for printer documentation       11         Order parts, accessories, and supplies       12         Ordering       12         Orderable parts       12         Orderable parts       12         Service approach       12         Before performing service       12         After performing service       12         Maintenance       12         Main assembly       13         Exit assembly       24         Cassette Tray 2       25         Cassette Tray 3       25	Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit	106
Support portals and documentation resources11For additional service and support11Channel partner resources11How to search for printer documentation11How to search WISE for printer documentation11How to search GCSN for printer documentation11Order parts, accessories, and supplies12Orderable parts12Orderable parts12ESD precautions12ESD precautions12Before performing service12After performing service12Main tenance12Main assembly13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325	Inner finisher	110
Support portals and documentation resources11For additional service and support11Channel partner resources11How to search for printer documentation11How to search WISE for printer documentation11How to search GCSN for printer documentation11Order parts, accessories, and supplies12Orderable parts12Orderable parts12ESD precautions12ESD precautions12Before performing service12After performing service12Main tenance12Main assembly13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325		
For additional service and support11Channel partner resources11How to search for printer documentation11How to search WISE for printer documentation11How to search GCSN for printer documentation11Order parts, accessories, and supplies12Orderable parts12Orderable parts12ESD precautions12Service approach12After performing service12Post-service test12Maintenance12Main parts13Exit assembly13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325	2 Parts, diagrams, removal and replacement	115
Channel partner resources11How to search for printer documentation11How to search WISE for printer documentation11How to search GCSN for printer documentation11Order parts, accessories, and supplies12Ordering12Orderable parts12Orderable parts12ESD precautions12Service approach12After performing service12Post-service test12Maintenance12Main parts13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325	Support portals and documentation resources	116
How to search for printer documentation11How to search WISE for printer documentation11How to search GCSN for printer documentation11Order parts, accessories, and supplies12Ordering12Orderable parts12How to use the parts list and diagrams12ESD precautions12Service approach12After performing service12Post-service test12Maintenance12Main parts13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325	For additional service and support	116
How to search WISE for printer documentation11How to search GCSN for printer documentation11Order parts, accessories, and supplies12Ordering12Orderable parts12How to use the parts list and diagrams12ESD precautions12Service approach12After performing service12Post-service test12Maintenance12Main parts13Exit assembly13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325	Channel partner resources	116
How to search GCSN for printer documentation11Order parts, accessories, and supplies12Ordering12Orderable parts12How to use the parts list and diagrams12ESD precautions12Service approach12Before performing service12After performing service12Post-service test12Maintenance12Main parts13Exit assembly13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325	How to search for printer documentation	117
Order parts, accessories, and supplies12Ordering12Orderable parts12How to use the parts list and diagrams12ESD precautions12Service approach12Before performing service12After performing service12Post-service test12Maintenance12Main parts13Main assembly13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325	How to search WISE for printer documentation	117
Ordering12Orderable parts12How to use the parts list and diagrams12ESD precautions12Service approach12Before performing service12After performing service12Post-service test12Maintenance12Main parts13Exit assembly13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325	How to search GCSN for printer documentation	117
Orderable parts12How to use the parts list and diagrams12ESD precautions12Service approach12Before performing service12After performing service12Post-service test12Maintenance12Machine cleaning for maintenance13Main parts13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325	Order parts, accessories, and supplies	120
How to use the parts list and diagrams12/ESD precautions12/Service approach12/Before performing service12/After performing service12Post-service test12Maintenance12Machine cleaning for maintenance12Main parts13Exit assembly13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325	Ordering	120
ESD precautions124Service approach124Before performing service124After performing service12Post-service test12Maintenance12Machine cleaning for maintenance12Main parts13Main assembly13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325	Orderable parts	120
Service approach12Before performing service12After performing service12Post-service test12Maintenance12Machine cleaning for maintenance12Main parts13Main assembly13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325	How to use the parts list and diagrams	120
Before performing service12After performing service12Post-service test12Maintenance12Machine cleaning for maintenance12Main parts13Main assembly13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325	ESD precautions	120
After performing service	Service approach	120
Post-service test       12         Maintenance       12         Machine cleaning for maintenance       12         Main parts       13         Main assembly       13         Exit assembly       24         Cassette Tray 2       25         Cassette Tray 3       25	Before performing service	120
Maintenance12Machine cleaning for maintenance12Main parts13Main assembly13Exit assembly24Cassette Tray 225Cassette Tray 325	After performing service	121
Machine cleaning for maintenance    12      Main parts    13      Main assembly    13      Exit assembly    24      Cassette Tray 2    25      Cassette Tray 3    25	Post-service test	121
Main parts	Maintenance	122
Main assembly	Machine cleaning for maintenance	122
Exit assembly	Main parts	132
Cassette Tray 2	Main assembly	132
Cassette Tray 3 25	Exit assembly	249
	Cassette Tray 2	251
	Cassette Tray 3	253
Main engine frame	Main engine frame	255

Fuser output drive       322         Tray 1 registration drive       324         Registration sub frame       326         Registration assembly       333         Main frame pickup       335         Main frame pickup, upper       355         Cover       377         Right door       377         Tray 1 rollers       361         Right door output       392         Right door output       392         Right door feed guide       400         ADF (LX/dn models)       402         ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)       433         ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)       452         ADF (GX/z models)       463         ADF uppe pick (GX/z models)       464         ADF uppe pick (GX/z models)       464         ADF uppe pick (GX/z models)       465         ADF uppe pick (GX/z models)       464         ADF uppe pick (GX/z models)       500         Image scanner       532         Image scanner       532         DCF main frame pickup 1       552         DCF main frame pickup 1       572         DCF main frame pickup 1       572         DCF main frame pickup 1       574 <th></th> <th>Main drive</th> <th></th>		Main drive	
Registration sub frame         326           Registration assembly         333           Main frame pickup, upper         351           Main frame pickup, upper         352           Main frame         355           Cover         371           Right door         372           Tray 1 rollers         381           Right door output         392           Right door feed guide         400           ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)         432           ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)         435           ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)         435           ADF (GX/z models)         462           ADF ight access cover (GX/z models)         486           ADF ight access cover (GX/z models)         487           ADF stacker (GX/z models)         486           ADF ight frame (GX/z models)         496           ADF ight frame (GX/z models)         533           Image scanner         533           Ringe scanner, lower (LX/dn models)         544           LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)         556           DCF main frame pickup 1         577           DCF main frame pickup 1         577           DCF main frame pickup, upper         58		Fuser output drive	
Registration assembly       332         Main frame pickup       333         Main frame pickup, upper       351         Main frame pickup, upper       352         Cover       377         Right door       376         Tray 1 rollers       381         Right door output       392         Right door feed guide       400         ADF (LX/dn models)       402         ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)       432         ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)       452         ADF (GX/z models)       463         ADF igm access cover (GX/z models)       463         ADF igm access cover (GX/z models)       464         ADF upper pick (GX/z models)       463         ADF anin frame (GX/z models)       464         ADF upper pick (GX/z models)       464         ADF upper pick (GX/z models)       465         ADF anin frame (GX/z models)       464         ADF anin frame (GX/z models)       464         ADF anin frame (GX/z models)       504         Image scanner       533         Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)       544         LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)       555         DCF main frame pickup 1       577		Tray 1 registration drive	
Main frame pickup       333         Main frame pickup, upper       355         Main frame       355         Cover       371         Right door       372         Tray 1 rollers       383         Right door output       392         Right door output       392         Right door reed guide       401         ADF (LX/dn models)       402         ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)       435         ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)       452         ADF (GX/z models)       463         ADF (GX/z models)       464         ADF ima access cover (GX/z models)       466         ADF giam access cover (GX/z models)       486         ADF upper pick (GX/z models)       486         ADF main frame (GX/z models)       496         ADF main frame (GX/z models)       500         Image scanner       530         Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)       532         Image scanner, lower (CX/z models)       534         Image scanner, lower (CX/z models)       534         Image scanner, lower (CX/z models)       536         DCF main frame pickup       536         DCF main frame pickup       537 <td< td=""><td></td><td>Registration sub frame</td><td></td></td<>		Registration sub frame	
Main frame pickup, upper       351         Main frame       352         Cover       371         Right door       372         Tray 1 rollers       381         Right door output       392         Right door reed guide       401         ADF (LX/dn models)       402         ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)       432         ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)       433         ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)       452         ADF (GX/z models)       465         ADF upper pick (GX/z models)       466         ADF pin access cover (GX/z models)       486         ADF upper pick (GX/z models)       498         ADF main frame (GX/z models)       496         ADF main frame (GX/z models)       500         Image scanner       530         Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)       532         Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)       544         LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)       556         DCF main frame pickup       577         DCF main frame pickup       577         DCF main frame pickup, upper       577         DCF main frame pickup, upper       587         LaserJet Uph (-apacity input (HCI) tray (workg		Registration assembly	
Main frame       353         Cover       371         Right door       372         Tray 1 rollers       381         Right door output       399         Right door feed guide       401         ADF (LX/dn models)       402         ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)       432         ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)       433         ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)       452         ADF (GX/z models)       463         ADF jam access cover (GX/z models)       464         ADF upper pick (GX/z models)       483         ADF stacker (GX/z models)       496         ADF stacker (GX/z models)       496         ADF main frame (GX/z models)       500         Image scanner       530         Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)       500         Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)       540         LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)       556         DCF main       557         DCF main frame pickup 1       577         DCF main frame pickup upper.       584		Main frame pickup	
Cover         371           Right door         372           Tray 1 rollers         381           Right door output         399           Right door feed guide         401           ADF (LX/dn models)         402           ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)         403           ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)         433           ADF (GX/z models)         452           ADF (GX/z models)         465           ADF jam access cover (GX/z models)         466           ADF upper pick (GX/z models)         467           ADF stacker (GX/z models)         468           ADF main frame (GX/z models)         496           ADF stacker (GX/z models)         496           ADF stacker (GX/z models)         500           Image scanner         530           Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)         500           Image scanner, lower (DCF)         556           DCF main frame pickup 1         557           DCF main frame pickup 1         577           DCF main frame pickup 1         577           DCF main frame pickup 1         577           DCF main frame pickup upper         584           HCI main         584           HCI sub		Main frame pickup, upper	
Right door375Tray 1 rollers381Right door output392Right door feed guide401ADF (LX/dn models)405ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)435ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)435ADF (GX/z models)467ADF jam access cover (GX/z models)486ADF upper pick (GX/z models)487ADF stacker (GX/z models)487ADF stacker (GX/z models)496ADF main frame (GX/z models)532Image scanner530Image scanner532Image scanner lower (LX/dn models)544Laser Jet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)556DCF main frame pickup 1577DCF main frame pickup 1577DCF main frame pickup 1577DCF main frame pickup 1574Laser Jet High-capacity input (HCI) tray (workgroup)584HCI nain584HCI sub - frame607HCI drive625HCI drive625HCI drive625		Main frame	
Tray 1 rollers381Right door output392Right door feed guide401ADF (LX/dn models)405ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)433ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)435ADF (GX/z models)467ADF jam access cover (GX/z models)486ADF upper pick (GX/z models)487ADF stacker (GX/z models)486ADF main frame (GX/z models)487ADF stacker (GX/z models)496ADF main frame (GX/z models)532Image scanner533Image scanner		Cover	
Right door output399Right door feed guide401ADF (LX/dn models)405ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)435ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)452ADF (GX/z models)467ADF jam access cover (GX/z models)486ADF upper pick (GX/z models)487ADF stacker (GX/z models)487ADF stacker (GX/z models)486ADF main frame (GX/z models)486ADF stacker (GX/z models)487ADF stacker (GX/z models)486ADF main frame (GX/z models)532Image scanner532Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)532Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)544LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)556DCF main frame pickup 1577DCF main frame pickup 1584HCI sub - frame601HCI sub - frame601HCI sub - pickup upper/lower622HCI drive625		Right door	
Right door feed guide		Tray 1 rollers	
ADF (LX/dn models)		Right door output	
ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)433ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)452ADF (GX/z models)467ADF jam access cover (GX/z models)480ADF upper pick (GX/z models)487ADF stacker (GX/z models)498ADF main frame (GX/z models)498ADF main frame (GX/z models)500Image scanner530Image scanner assembly532Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)540LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)556DCF main frame pickup 1572DCF main frame pickup 1572DCF main frame pickup 1572DCF main frame pickup 1574HCI main584HCI main584HCI sub - frame601HCI sub - pickup upper/lower622HCI drive622HCI drive622HCI drive625		Right door feed guide	
ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)452ADF (GX/z models)467ADF jam access cover (GX/z models)480ADF upper pick (GX/z models)487ADF stacker (GX/z models)498ADF main frame (GX/z models)498ADF main frame (GX/z models)500Image scanner530Image scanner assembly532Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)540Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)540LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)556DCF main frame pickup 1577DCF main frame pickup 1577DCF main frame pickup 1577DCF main frame pickup 1574LaserJet High-capacity input (HCI) tray (workgroup)584HCI main584HCI sub - frame601HCI sub - pickup upper/lower622HCI drive625		ADF (LX/dn models)	
ADF (GX/z models)467ADF jam access cover (GX/z models)487ADF upper pick (GX/z models)487ADF stacker (GX/z models)498ADF main frame (GX/z models)500Image scanner530Image scanner assembly532Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)540Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)540Laser Jet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)556DCF main frame pickup 1573DCF main frame pickup 1573DCF main frame pickup 1574Laser Jet High-capacity input (HCI) tray (workgroup)584HCI sub - frame601HCI sub - pickup upper/lower622HCI drive625		ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)	439
ADF jam access cover (GX/z models)480ADF upper pick (GX/z models)487ADF stacker (GX/z models)498ADF main frame (GX/z models)500Image scanner530Image scanner assembly532Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)540Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)540Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)540LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)556DCF main frame pickup 1572DCF main frame pickup 1572DCF main frame pickup, upper581LaserJet High-capacity input (HCI) tray (workgroup)584HCI main584HCI sub - frame601HCI drive625		ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)	
ADF upper pick (GX/z models)		ADF (GX/z models)	
ADF stacker (GX/z models)		ADF jam access cover (GX/z models)	
ADF main frame (GX/z models)500Image scanner530Image scanner assembly532Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)540Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)544LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)556DCF main556DCF main frame pickup 1575DCF main frame pickup 1584LaserJet High-capacity input (HCI) tray (workgroup)584HCI main584HCI sub - frame601HCI sub - pickup upper/lower622HCI drive625		ADF upper pick (GX/z models)	
Image scanner530Image scanner assembly532Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)540Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)549LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)556DCF main556DCF main frame pickup 1573DCF main frame pickup573DCF main frame pickup, upper581LaserJet High-capacity input (HCI) tray (workgroup)584HCI main584HCI sub - frame601HCI sub - pickup upper/lower622HCI drive625		ADF stacker (GX/z models)	
Image scanner assembly532Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)540Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)549LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)556DCF main556DCF main frame pickup 1575DCF main frame pickup 1575DCF main frame pickup 1575DCF main frame pickup 1576DCF main frame pickup 1575DCF main frame pickup 1581LaserJet High-capacity input (HCI) tray (workgroup)584HCI main584HCI sub - frame601HCI sub - pickup upper/lower622HCI drive625		ADF main frame (GX/z models)	500
Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)540Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)549LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)556DCF main556DCF main frame pickup 1573DCF main frame pickup 1573DCF main frame pickup		Image scanner	530
Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)549Laser Jet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)556DCF main556DCF main frame pickup 1573DCF main frame pickup		Image scanner assembly	
LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)		Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)	
DCF main		Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)	
DCF main frame pickup 1573DCF main frame pickup575DCF main frame pickup, upper581LaserJet High-capacity input (HCI) tray (workgroup)584HCI main584HCI sub - frame601HCI sub - pickup upper/lower622HCI drive625	Lase	erJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)	556
DCF main frame pickup		DCF main	556
DCF main frame pickup, upper		DCF main frame pickup 1	573
LaserJet High-capacity input (HCI) tray (workgroup)		DCF main frame pickup	575
HCI main		DCF main frame pickup, upper	
HCI sub – frame	Lase	erJet High-capacity input (HCI) tray (workgroup)	
HCI sub - pickup upper/lower		HCI main	
HCI drive		HCI sub - frame	
		HCI drive	

3 Problem solving	667
Error code and control panel message troubleshooting overview	668
Error codes	668
How to search for printer documentation	670

ΗP

ΗP

	Troubleshooting process	673
	Determine the problem source	673
	Tools for troubleshooting	687
	Problem-solving checklist	687
	Print menu map	690
	Print current settings pages	690
	Print event log	690
	Pre-boot menu options	692
	Control panel menus	709
	Clear paper jams	779
	Paper jam locations	779
	13.A1 tray 1 paper jam	779
	13.A2, 13.A3 tray 2, tray 3 paper jam	780
	Clear paper jams in the Bottom HCI	782
	Service mode (tech mode)	784
	Entering service mode	784
	Service mode menu tree	784
	Information tab	793
	Maintenance Counts tab	795
	Diagnostics tab	796
	Service Functions tab	814
	Print quality troubleshooting guide	818
	Image quality problems and solutions (HP Color LaserJet MFP E77822, E77825, E77830)	818
	Other Errors	835
	Adjusting the laser scanner assembly skew error	867
	Adjusting the flow ADF/ADF skew	869
4 3,2	250-sheet Stapling Finisher/2,250-sheet Booklet Finisher	873
	For additional service and support	874
	Product specification and description	875
	Finisher system	875
	Service approach	888
	Precautions when replacing parts	888

Before performing service889ESD precautions890After performing service890Post-service test890Order parts, accessories, and supplies890

Top output bin	
Right top cover	
Top cover	
Front door	
Rear cover	
Front cover	963
Front lower cover	971
Booklet tray	
Caster cover	983
Lower shield assembly	
Upper shield assembly	1000
Controller PCA	1016
Stapler unit	1022
Dummy feed guide	
Top jam access cover	1040
Top lower feed assembly	1051
Ejector unit	
Front tamper unit	1089
Rear tamper unit	
Feed entrance motor (M1)	1139
Feed exit motor (M2)	1145
Buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3)	1151
Front tamper motor (M6)	1159
Rear tamper motor (M7)	1185
SCU motor (M10)	
Main tray moving motor (M11)	1229
Booklet finisher front cover	
Booklet finisher	
Booklet finisher PCA	1252
Booklet finisher fold stopper unit	1264
Booklet feed entrance motor (M13)	1276
TE presser motor (M14)	
Stopper moving motor (M16)	1282
Separate pawl motor (M17)	
Folding roller motor (M18)	1289
Blade motor (M19)	
C fold motor (M20)	1299
Problem solving	
Control panel message document (CPMD)	
Clear paper jams	
Finisher system diagram	

5 Inner	nisher	1323
	Product Specification and Description	1324
	Specification	1324
	Finisher System	1329
	Service approach	1334
	Before performing service	1334
	ESD precautions	1334
	After performing service	1334
	Post-service test	1334
	Order parts, accessories, and supplies	1335
	Part diagrams, removal and replacment (inner finisher)	1336
	ESD precautions	1337
	Inner finisher	1337
	Entrance sensor	1347
	Entrance motor	1352
	Exit sensor	1358
	Exit motor	1363
	Front Jogger Motor	1366
	Front Jogger Home Sensor	1379
	Rear Jogger Motor	1391
	Rear Jogger Home Sensor	1400
	Stapler	1407
	Stapler position sensor assembly	1411
	Traverse Motor	1422
	Stacker Motor	1428
	Stacker Encoder Sensor	1435
	Stacker Lower Limit Switch	1442
	Stack Beam Sensor	1450
	Stack Position Sensor	1455
	Paper Holding Lever Solenoid	1466
	Paper Support Motor	1475
	Paper Support Home Sensor	1484
	Ejector Motor assembly	1497
	Main Paddle Motor	1512
	Main Paddle Home Sensor	1515
	Main Paddle	1518
	Ejector assembly	1520
	Punch Dust Full Sensor	1533
	End Fence Home Sensor	1539
	Problem solving	1541
	Control panel messages document (CPMD)	1307

Block Diagram	
6 Diagrams	1543
Diagrams	1544
Diagrams (FUSER EXIT)	
Diagrams (PICKUP/PH DRIVE/SIDE)	
Diagrams (laser scanner assembly/HVPS)	
Diagrams (toner)	
Diagrams (FDB/LVPS)	
Diagrams (UI)	
Diagrams (FRONT/OPC)	
Diagrams (scanner)	
Diagrams (Dual Cassette Feeder)	1553
Appendix A Glossary	1555
Glossary of terms	
Appendix B Revision History	
Revision History	
Appendix C Certificate of Volatility	1565
Certificate of Volatility	1565
Index	1567

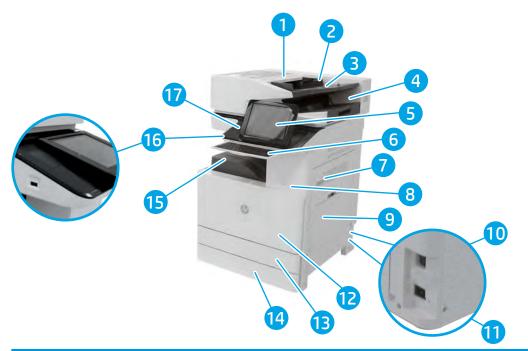
# 1 Product specifications and description

- <u>Printer views</u>
- <u>Specifications</u>
- <u>Feeding system</u>
- Image creation
- <u>Fuser unit</u>
- Laser scanner assembly
- Drive system
- Flatbed Scanner System
- Flow Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) (GX/z models)
- <u>Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) dn bundles (LX/dn models)</u>
- <u>Hardware configuration</u>
- <u>Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit</u>
- <u>Inner finisher</u>

# **Printer views**

- <u>Printer front view</u>
- Printer back view
- <u>Interface ports</u>
- <u>Control-panel view</u>
- <u>Inner finisher view</u>
- <u>Stapler/stacker finisher view</u>
- Booklet finisher view

### Printer front view



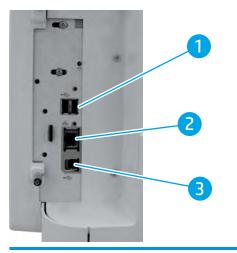
1	Automatic document feeder cover (access for clearing jams)
2	Automatic document feeder width guides
3	Automatic document feeder input tray
4	Automatic document feeder output tray
5	Control panel with color touchscreen display (tilts up for easier viewing)
6	Physical keyboard (Flow models only). Pull the keyboard straight out to use it. (NOTE: Close the keyboard when it is not in use.)
7	Right door (access for clearing jams)
8	On/off button
9	Tray 1
10	Power switch

11	Power connection
12	Front door (access to the toner cartridges)
13	Tray 2
14	Tray 3
15	Output bin
16	Easy-access USB port. Insert a USB flash drive for printing or scanning without a computer, or to update the printer firmware. (NOTE: An administrator must enable this port before use.)
17	Hardware integration pocket (for connecting accessory and third-party devices)

## Printer back view

3	
1	Formatter cover
2	Interface ports
3	Serial number and product number label

# Interface ports



2 L	Local area network (LAN) Ethernet network port
3 H	Hi-Speed USB 2.0 printing port

### Control-panel view

**NOTE:** Tilt the control panel for easier viewing.

The Home screen provides access to the printer features and indicates the current status of the printer.

Return to the Home screen at any time by touching the Home 🏠 button on the printer control panel.

**NOTE:** The features that appear on the Home screen can vary, depending on the printer configuration.



1	Home 🏠 button	Touch the Home button to return to the Home screen.
2	Reset button	The Reset button returns the printer to default settings and is always present if users are not logged in. The Reset button is not present when the Sign Out button is present. Touch the Reset button to resume and release jobs from the previous pause state and interrupt mode, reset the quick copy count in the copy count field, exit special modes, reset the display language and the keyboard layout.
3	Sign In or Sign Out button	Touch the Sign In button to access secured features.
		Touch the Sign Out button to sign out of the printer. The printer restores all options to the default settings.
		<b>NOTE:</b> This button displays only if the administrator has configured the printer to require permission for access to features.

4	Information 🚺 button	Touch the information button to access a screen that provides access to several types of printer information. Touch the buttons at the bottom of the screen for the following information:			
		• Display Language: Change the language setting for the current user session.			
		• Sleep Mode: Place the printer into sleep mode.			
		• Wi-Fi Direct: View information for how to connect directly to the printer using a phone, tablet, or other device with Wi-Fi.			
		• Wireless: View or change wireless connection settings (only when an optional wireless accessory is installed).			
		• Ethernet: View or change Ethernet connection settings.			
		• HP Web Services: View information to connect and print to the printer using HP Web Services (ePrint).			
5	Help ? button	Touch the Help button to open the embedded help system.			
		The status line provides information about the overall printer status.			
6	Applications area	Touch any of the icons to open the application. Swipe the screen sideways to access more applications.			
		<b>NOTE:</b> The available applications vary by printer. The administrator can configure which applications appear and the order in which they appear.			
7	Start Copy button	Touch the Start Copy button to start a copy job.			
8	Home-screen page indicator	Indicates the number of pages on the Home screen or in an application. The current page is highlighted. Swipe the screen sideways to scroll between pages.			

# Inner finisher view



# Stapler/stacker finisher view



### Booklet finisher view



# Specifications

# Technical specifications

#### Table 1-1 E77822dn, E77822z, E77825dn, E77825z, E77830dn, E77830z

Model number Product number		E77822dn	E77822z	E77825dn	E77825z	E77830dn	E77830z
		X3A78A	X3A77A	X3A81A	X3A80A	X3A84A	ХЗА8ЗА
Paper handling	Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)	~	~	<b>~</b>	<b>Y</b>	~	~
	Tray 2 (520-sheet capacity)	~	~	<b>~</b>	~	~	~
	Tray 3 (520-sheet capacity)	~	~	<b>~</b>	~	~	~
	HP LaserJet dual cassette feeder (DCF) (workgroup)	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP LaserJet 2,000- sheet high-capacity input tray (HCI) (workgroup)	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP Laser Jet Printer cabinet (workgroup)	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP Laser Jet Stapler/ stacker finisher <sup>1</sup>	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP Laser Jet Booklet finisher1	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP Laser Jet Inner finisher <sup>1</sup>	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP Laser Jet 2/3 hole punch <sup>1</sup>	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP Laser Jet 2/4 hole punch <sup>1</sup>	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP Laser Jet Swedish hole punch <sup>1</sup>	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP Laser Jet Job separator	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP LaserJet Second exit	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	Automatic duplex printing	~	~	~	~	~	~
onnectivity	10/100/1000 Ethernet LAN connection with IPv4 and IPv6	~	<b>~</b>	~	<b>~</b>	~	~
	Hi-Speed USB 2.0	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$

#### Table 1-1 E77822dn, E77822z, E77825dn, E77825z, E77830dn, E77830z (continued)

Model number		E77822dn	E77822z	E77825dn	E77825z	E77830dn	E77830z
Product number		X3A78A	X3A77A	X3A81A	X3A80A	X3A84A	X3A83A
	Easy-access USB port for printing without a computer and upgrading the firmware	*	*	~	*	*	~
	Hardware Integration Pocket for connecting accessory and third- party devices	~	~	~	~	~	~
Memory	6 GB base memory	$\checkmark$	Not supported	$\checkmark$	Not supported	$\checkmark$	Not supported
	7 GB base memory	Not supported	$\checkmark$	Not supported	$\checkmark$	Not supported	$\checkmark$
Mass storage	320 GB HP Secure High-Performance Hard Disk	<b>~</b>	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	Not supported
	2 x 320 GB HP Secure High-Performance Hard Disk	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	Not supported	~
	16 GB embedded Multi-Media Controller (eMMC)	~	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	Not supported
Control-panel display	Color touchscreen control panel	~	~	~	~	~	<b>~</b>
	Retractable keyboard	Not supported	$\checkmark$	Not supported	$\checkmark$	Not supported	$\checkmark$
Print	Prints 22 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and on letter-size paper.	~	~	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported
	Prints 25 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and on letter-size paper	Not supported	Not supported	~	~	Not supported	Not supported
	Prints 30 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and on letter-size paper	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	~	~
	Easy-access USB printing (no computer required)	~	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	~	~
Fax		Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
Copy and Scan	Scans 80 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and letter-size paper	~	Not supported	<b>~</b>	Not supported	~	Not supported
	Scans 120 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and letter-size paper	Not supported	$\checkmark$	Not supported	$\checkmark$	Not supported	~

#### Table 1-1 E77822dn, E77822z, E77825dn, E77825z, E77830dn, E77830z (continued)

Model number		E77822dn	E77822z	E77825dn	E77825z	E77830dn	E77830z	
Product number		X3A78A	X3A77A	X3A81A	X3A80A	X3A84A	ХЗА8ЗА	
	100-page document feeder with dual-head scanning for single- pass duplex copying and scanning	~	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	Not supported	
	250-page document feeder with dual-head scanning for single- pass duplex copying and scanning	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	
	HP EveryPage Technologies including ultrasonic multi-feed detection	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	
	Embedded optical character recognition (OCR) provides the ability to convert printed pages into text that can be edited or searched using a computer	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	
	SMART Label feature provides paper-edge detection for automatic page cropping	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	
	Automatic page orientation for pages that have at least 100 characters of text	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	
	Automatic tone adjustment sets contrast, brightness, and background removal for each page	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	
Digital Send	Send documents to E- mail, USB, and shared folders on a network	$\checkmark$	<b>~</b>	~	~	~	~	
	Send documents to SharePoint <sup>®</sup>	Not supported	$\checkmark$	Not supported	~	Not supported	~	

<sup>1</sup> Hole punch accessories are optional for the stapler/stacker, inner finisher, and booklet maker accessories.

### Supported operating systems

The following information applies to the Printer-Specific Windows PCL 6 and HP print drivers for OS X and to the software installer.

**Windows:** The HP Software Installer can be downloaded from the printer support website for this printer and installs the "HP PCL.6" version 3 print driver, the "HP PCL 6" version 3 print driver, or the "HP PCL-6" version 4 print driver, depending on the Windows operating system, along with optional software when using the software installer. Download the "HP PCL.6" version 3 print driver, the "HP PCL 6" version 3 print driver, and the "HP PCL-6" version 4 print driver from the printer-support website for this printer: <a href="https://www.hp.com/support/colorlje77800mfp">www.hp.com/support/colorlje77800mfp</a>.

**OS X:** Mac computers are supported with this printer. Download HP Easy Start either from <u>123.hp.com/LaserJet</u> or from the Printer Support page, and then use HP Easy Start to install the HP print driver. HP Easy Start is not included in the HP Software Installer.

- 1. Go to <u>123.hp.com/LaserJet</u>.
- 2. Follow the steps provided to download the printer software.

**Linux:** For information and print drivers for Linux, go to <u>www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting</u>.

UNIX: For information and print drivers for UNIX<sup>®</sup>, go to <u>www.hp.com/go/unixmodelscripts</u>.

Operating system	Print driver installed (from the software on the web)	Notes
Windows <sup>®</sup> XP SP3, 32-bit	The "HP PCL.6" printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	Microsoft retired mainstream support for Windows XP in April 2009. HP will continue to provide best effort support for the discontinued XP operating system. Some features and page sizes in the print driver are not supported.
Windows Vista®, 32-bit	The "HP PCL.6" printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	Microsoft retired mainstream support for Windows Vista in April 2012. HP will continue to provide best effort support for the discontinued Vista operating system. Some features and page sizes in the print driver are not supported.
Windows Server 2003 SP2, 32-bit	The "HP PCL.6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer- support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	Microsoft retired mainstream support for Windows Server 2003 in July 2010. HP will continue to provide best effort support for the discontinued Server 2003 operating system. Some features and page sizes in the print driver are not supported.
Windows 7 SP1, 32-bit and 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	
Windows 8, 32-bit and 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	Windows 8 RT support is provided through Microsoft IN OS Version 4, 32- bit driver.
Windows 8.1, 32-bit and 64-bit	The "HP PCL-6" V4 printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	Windows 8.1 RT support is provided through Microsoft IN OS Version 4, 32- bit driver.
Windows 10, 32-bit and 64-bit	The "HP PCL-6" V4 printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	

Table 1-2 Supported operating systems and print dri	ivers (continued)
---	-------------------

Operating system	Print driver installed (from the software on the web)	Notes
Windows Server 2008 SP2, 32-bit	The "HP PCL.6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer- support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	Microsoft retired mainstream support for Windows Server 2008 in January 2015. HP will continue to provide best effort support for the discontinued Server 2008 operating system. Some features and page sizes in the print driver are not supported.
Windows Server 2008 SP2, 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer- support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	
Windows Server 2008 R2, SP 1, 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer- support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	
Windows Server 2012, 64-bit	The PCL 6 printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer- support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	
Windows Server 2012 R2, 64-bit	The PCL 6 printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer- support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	
OS X 10.10 Yosemite, OS X 10.11 El Capitan, and OS X 10.12 Sierra	To install the print driver, download HP Easy Start from <u>123.hp.com/LaserJet</u> . Follow the steps provided to install the printer software and print driver.	

NOTE: Supported operating systems can change. For a current list of supported operating systems, go to <u>www.hp.com/support/colorlje77800mfp</u> for HP's all-inclusive help for the printer.

**NOTE:** For details on client and server operating systems and for HP UPD driver support for this printer, go to <u>www.hp.com/go/upd</u>. Under **Additional information**, click the links.

Table 1-3 Minimum system requirements
---------------------------------------

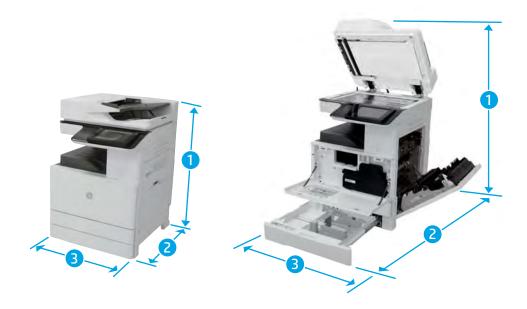
Windows		0S (	X		
•	An Internet connection	•	Internet connection		
•	Dedicated USB 1.1 or 2.0 connection or a network connection	•	1 GB of available hard-disk space		
•	2 GB of available hard-disk space				

### Mobile printing solutions

HP offers multiple mobile and ePrint solutions to enable easy printing to an HP printer from a laptop, tablet, smartphone, or other mobile device. To see the full list and to determine the best choice, go to <a href="https://www.hp.com/go/LaserJetMobilePrinting">www.hp.com/go/LaserJetMobilePrinting</a>.

- Wi-Fi Direct
- HP ePrint via email (Requires HP Web Services to be enabled and the printer to be registered with HP Connected)
- HP ePrint app (Available for Android, iOS, and Blackberry)
- HP All-in-One Remote app for iOS and Android devices
- HP ePrint software
- Google Cloud Print
- AirPrint
- Android Printing

# Printer dimensions and weight



#### Table 1-4 Dimensions of the E77822, E77825, E77830

	Normal operating dimensions	Maximum operating dimensions
1. Height	dn models: 879 mm (34.6 in)	dn models: 1300.5 mm (51.2 in)
	z models: 927.5 mm (36.5 in)	z models: 1384.3 mm (54.5 in)
2. Depth	dn models: 724.3 mm (28.5 in)	dn models: 1270 mm (50 in)
	z models: 775.9 mm (30.5 in)	z models: 1270 mm (50 in)
3. Width	dn models: 566 mm (22.3 in)	dn models: 1143 mm (45 in)
	z models: 585 mm (23 in)	z models: 1194 mm (47 in)
Weight	dn models: 89.55 kg (176.92 lb)	
	z models: 89.55 kg (176.92 lb)	

#### Table 1-5 Printer accessory dimensions and weight

Product	Length	Width	Depth	Height	Weight
HP LaserJet Cabinet (workgroup)	790 mm (31.1 in)	566mm (22.3 in)	610 mm (24 in)	265 mm (10.4 in)	13.4 kg (29.5 lbs)
HP LaserJet 2x520-sheet dual cassette feeder (DCF) (workgroup)	790 mm (31.1 in)	566mm (22.3 in)	610 mm (24 in)	265 mm (10.4 in)	21 kg (46.3 lbs)
HP LaserJet 2000 sheet high capacity input (HCI) feeder (workgroup)	790 mm (31.1 in)	585 mm (23 in)	670 mm (26.4 in)	312 mm (12.3 in)	29.3 kg (64.59 lbs)
HP LaserJet Job separator (workgroup)	790 mm (31.1 in)	464mm (18.3 in)	394.7 mm (15.5 in)	124.5 m m (4.9 in)	3 kg (1.4 lbs)

#### Table 1-5 Printer accessory dimensions and weight (continued)

Product	Length	Width	Depth	Height	Weight
HP LaserJet Inner finisher	790 mm (31.1 in)	458 mm (18 in)	491 mm (19.3 in)	173 mm (6.8 in)	18.2 kg (40.1 lbs)
HP LaserJet Booklet finisher	790 mm (31.1 in)	1003.3 mm (39.75 in)	673 mm (26.75 in)	587.5 mm (23.5 in)	62 kg (136.68 lbs)
HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker finisher	790 mm (31.1 in)	1003.3 mm (39.75 in)	673 mm (26.75 in)	587.5 mm (23.5 in)	194 kg (88 lbs)

NOTE: HP recommends that 30 mm (1.81 in) be added to the printer dimensions provided in this chapter to make sure there is sufficient space to open doors and covers, and to provide proper ventilation.

### Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions

See <u>www.hp.com/support/colorlje77800mfp</u> for current information.

**CAUTION:** Power requirements are based on the country/region where the printer is sold. Do not convert operating voltages. This will damage the printer and void the printer warranty.

### **Environmental specifications**

• <u>Operating-environment specifications</u>

#### Operating-environment specifications

Consider the following points before installing the printer:

The following table lists the recommended environment conditions:

#### Table 1-6 Environmental specifications

Environmental Condition	Recommended
Temperature	15º to 30º C (59F to 86F)
Relative Humidity	20% to 80% relative humidity (RH)

### General Specifications

#### Table 1-7 General specifications

Item		Specification
Processor	CPU	1.2 GHz

#### Table 1-7 General specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
User Interface	Control Panel	Flow: 20.3 cm (8 in) Color Graphics Display (CGD) with touchscreen; rotating (adjustable angle) display; illuminated Home button (for quick return to the Home menu); USB High- speed 2.0 port; Hardware Integration Pocket; Extended Keyboard
		Non-Flow: 20.3 cm (8 in) Color Graphics Display (CGD) with touchscreen; rotating (adjustable angle) display; illuminated Home button (for quick return to the Home menu); USB High-speed 2.0 port; Hardware Integration Pocket
	LED	2 (Power/Status)
	Key/Button	1 (Power)
Memory	Standard	Flow 7 GB, Managed 6 GB
Storage	Standard	Two 320 GB Standard, embedded HP High- Performance Secure Hard Disk, Total 640GB; AES 256 hardware encryption or greater; Secure erase capabilities (Secure File Erase-Temporary Job Files, Secure Erase-Job Data, Secure ATA Erase-Disk).
		<b>NOTE:</b> U.S. government SKU uses 500 GB FIPS 140-2 validated hard disk instead.
	Мах	N/A
Interface	USB (Device)	Yes (Hi-Speed USB 2.0)
	USB (Host)	Yes (Hi-Speed USB 2.0)
	USB (EDI)	N/A
	Wired LAN	Standard (Ethernet 10/100/1G Base TX)
	Additional Wired LAN Support	Optional
	Wireless LAN	Optional (IEEE 802.11b/g/n + NFC Active Type
	NFC	Optional (IEEE 802.11b/g/n + NFC Active Type
	Other	N/A
Warmup Time	From Ready	Less than 25 seconds
	From Sleep	Less than 21 seconds
Power Consumption	Ready	Less than 250 Wh
	Normal operation	Less than 800 Wh
	Max/Peak	Less than 1200 Wh
	Sleep	Less than 1.5 Wh
	Power Off	Less than 0 W

#### Table 1-7 General specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
Power consumption	TEC	<ul> <li>E77822: Less than 1.438 Wh</li> <li>E77825: Less than 1.580 Wh</li> </ul>
		• E77830: Less than 2.034 Wh
Default Sleep Delay Time	2 minutes	
Maximum Sleep Delay Time	60 minutes	
Power Requirement	Input Voltage (Europe): AC 220-2	240 V (+-6%)
	Input voltage (USA): AC 110-127	′ ∨ (+-10%)
	• Input Voltage (Korea): AC 220-24	40 V (+-6%)
	• Rated Frequency: 50/60 Hz (+-2	Hz)
Acoustic Noise Level (Power)	Acoustic power emissions	
	Acoustic power emissions (ready)	
	Acoustic power emissions (active, cop	y)
	Acoustic power emissions (active, scar	n)
	<b>NOTE:</b> Acoustic values are subject to change. For current information, see <u>www.hp.com/support</u> .	
Acoustic Noise Level (Pressure)	Acoustic pressure emissions bystande (active, printing)	2r
	Acoustic pressure emissions bystande (ready)	er.
	Acoustic pressure emissions bystande (active, copy)	2r
Acoustic pressure emissions bystander (active, scan)		2r
Recommended Monthly Print Volume	• E77822: 4400 pages	
	• E77825: 5100 pages	
	• E77830: 6300 pages	
Max Monthly Duty Cycle	Up to 30,000 recommended monthly	page volume

# Print specifications

#### Table 1-8 Print specifications

ltem		Specification
Print Speed	Simplex	• E77822
		– Up to 22 ppm
		• E77825

#### Table 1-8 Print specifications (continued)

Item		Specification	
		– Up to 25 ppm	
		• E77830	
		– Up to 30 ppm	
FPOT	From Ready (Mono/Color)	• E77822: Less than 10/12 seconds	
		• E77825: Less than 9.5/11.5 seconds	
		• E77830: Less than 9/11.5 seconds	
	From Sleep (Mono/Color)	• E77822: Less than 31/33 seconds	
		• E77825: Less than 30.5/32.5 seconds	
		• E77830: Less than 30/32.5 seconds	
Resolution	Optical	600 x 600 dpi	
	Enhanced	Up to 1200 x 1200 dpi with reduced speed	
Printer Language	HP PCL 6/HP PCL 5c/HP PostScript Lev Emulation/PDF (v1.7)/AirPrint™ compa		
Font	84 scalable TrueType fonts		
Supported Network Protocols		batible (Mac OS 10.2.4 or higher), SNMPv1/v2c/v3, 9100, LPD, WS Discovery, IPP, Secure-IPP, IPsec/	
	•		
	<ul> <li>IPv6: DHCPv6, MLDv1, ICMPv6</li> </ul>		
	IPv4: Auto-IP, SLP, Telnet, IGMPv2, BOOTP/DHCP, WINS, IP Direct Mode, WS Print		
	• Other: NetWare NDS, Bindery, NDPS, ePrint; Google Cloud Print 2.0		
Duplex Print Options	Automatic (standard)		

Table 1-8	Print specifications	(continued)
-----------	----------------------	-------------

ltem	Specification	
Direct Print	PRN/PDF/TIFF/JPEG/XPS	
Print Features	WSD print	
	Secure print	
	Stored print	
	Booklet	
	• N-up	
	Cover page	
	Insert page	
	Except page	
	Barcode	
	• Eco	
	Poster	
	• Glossy	
	Watermark	
	Tray priority setting	
	Auto tray setting	
	Tray protection	
	USB print	
	Secure PDF print	
	Google Cloud print	

# Scan specification

#### Table 1-9 Scan specification

Item	Specification
Scan method	MMT
Compatibility	Network TWAIN/Network SANE
Color Mode	Mono/Gray/Color

#### Table 1-9 Scan specification (continued)

ltem		Specification
Scan Speed	Scan to folder speeds (hardware)	DN bundles (black and white, gray scale, and color):
		• Simplex up to 80 ipm @ 600 dpi
		• Duplex up to 120 ipm @ 600 dpi
		Z bundles (black and white, gray scale, and color)
		• Simplex up to 120 ipm @ 600 dpi
		• Duplex up to 240 ipm @ 600 dpi
	Gray	• E77822
		– Simplex: Up to 45 ipm @ 600 dp
		– Duplex: Up to 18 ipm @ 600 dpi
		• E77825
		– Simplex: Up to 80 ipm @ 600 dp
		– Duplex: Up to 100 ipm @ 600 dp
		• E77830
		– Simplex: Up to 80 ipm @ 600 dp
		— Duplex: Up to 100 ipm @ 600 dp
	Color	• E77822
		– Simplex: Up to 45 ipm @ 600 dp
		– Duplex: Up to 18 ipm @ 600 dpi
		• E77825
		– Simplex: Up to 80 ipm @ 600 dp
		– Duplex: Up to 100 ipm @ 600 dp
		• E77830
		– Simplex: Up to 80 ipm @ 600 dp
		<ul> <li>Duplex: Up to 100 ipm @ 600 dp</li> </ul>

#### Table 1-9 Scan specification (continued)

Item		Specification
File Formats	• PDF	
	Searchable PDF	
	Compact PDF	
	• PDF Encryption	
	Digital Signature in PDF	
	• PDF/A	
	Single-Page PDF	
	Multi-Page PDF	
	• TIFF	
	Single-Page TIFF	
	Multi-Page TIFF	
	• XPS	
	Single-Page XPS	
	Multi-Page XPS	
	• JPEG	
	• PNG	
Resolution	Optical (ADF)	Up to 600 x 600 dpi
	Optical (flatbed)	Up to 600 x 600 dpi
	Enhanced (ADF)	Up to 4800 × 4800 dpi
	Enhanced (flatbed)	Up to 4800 x 4800 dpi
Scan Destinations	Email/FTP/SMB/HDD/USB/WSD/PC	
Multiple Destinations	Yes	
Communication Protocol	• SMTP (IPv4, IPv6, SSL/TLS)	
	• FTP (IPv4, IPv6)	
	<ul> <li>SMB (IPv4, IPv6)</li> </ul>	
	• WSD	
	• T4Net	
Scan Size	ADF	Minimum for dn bundles: 128 x 140 mm (5 x 5.5")
		Minimum for z bundles: 105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.82 in)
		Maximum 297 x 437 mm (11.7 x 17.2 in)

#### Table 1-9 Scan specification (continued)

ltem		Specification
Scan size	Flatbed	Maximum 297 x 437 mm (11.7 x 17.2 in)
Scan Original Types		Text/Text and Photo/Photo

# Copy specification

Item		Specification
Copy Speed	Single Document Multiple Copy (SDMC)	• E77822: Up to 22 cpm
		• E77825: Up to 25 cpm
		• E77830: Up to 30 cpm
FCOT	From Ready (Mono/Color)	• E77822: Less than 7.2/9 seconds
		• E77825: Less than 6.6/8.2 seconds
		• E77830: Less than 5.9/7.6 seconds
Resolution	ADF (Flow ADF/ADF)	• Scan: 600 x 600 dpi
		• Printing: 600 x 600 dpi
	Flatbed	• Scan: 600 x 600 dpi
		• Printing: 600 x 600 dpi
Reduce/Enlarge	ADF (Flow ADF/ADF)	25–400%
	Flatbed	25–400%

## Table 1-10 Copy specification (continued)

ltem	Specification
Copier Settings	• 2-sided copying
	• Scalability
	Image adjustments (darkness, contrast, background clean up, sharpness)
	Optimized text/picture (text, mixed, printed picture, photograph)
	• N-Up
	N or Z-ordering
	Content orientation
	Collation
	• Booklet
	• ID scan
	• Job build
	Job storage
	• Watermark
	• Stamps
	Book mode scans
	Erase edges
	Automatically detect color/mono
	Image preview

#### Table 1-10 Copy specification (continued)

ltem	Specification
Copy Original Type	• Text
	Text and Printed Photo
	Text and Glossy Photo
	Newspaper
	Printed Photo
	Glossy Photo
	Copied Original
	• Мар
	Light Original
	• ID Copy
	• N-up
	Booklet
	Image Repeat
	Auto Fit
	Book Copy
	• Poster Copy
	• Watermark
	Image Overlay
	• Stamp
	• Covers
	• Job Build
	Preview
	Erase Edge
	Image Shift
	Image Adjustment
	Background Adjustment

# Supplies

<sup>1</sup> Print cartridge life is approximately based on average A4 /Letter-size page count with ISO coverage. Declared cartridge yield value in accordance with ISO/IEC 19798. Actual yields vary considerably based on images printed and other factors. For more information, visit www.hp.com/go/learnaboutsupplies.

ltem	Part number	Estimated life
HP LJ Toner Cartridge - Cyan <sup>11</sup>	X3A83-67901	32,000 pages
HP LJ Toner Cartridge - Magenta <sup>11</sup>	X3A83-67902	32,000 pages
HP LJ Toner Cartridge - Yellow <sup>11</sup>	X3A83-67903	32,000 pages
HP LJ Toner Cartridge - Black <sup>11</sup>	X3A83-67904	34,000 pages
HP LJ Toner Collection Unit	X3A83-67923	33,700 pages

<sup>1</sup> Print cartridge life is approximate, based on average A4 /Letter-size page count with ISO coverage. Declared cartridge yield value in accordance with ISO/IEC 19798. Actual yields vary considerably based on images printed and other factors. For more information, go to www.hp.com/go/learnaboutsupplies.

**NOTE:** Depending on the print pattern and job mode used, the lifespan of the consumable can vary.

# Service parts

em	Part Number	Life
P Managed LJ Imaging Drum	X3A83-67905	100,000 pages
P Managed LJ Toner Collection Unit	X3A83-67923	33,700 pages
P LaserJet Cyan Developer Unit	JC96-11665A	300,000 pages
P LaserJet Magenta Developer Unit	JC96-11664A	300,000 pages
P LaserJet Yellow Developer Unit	JC96-11663A	300,000 pages
P LaserJet Black Developer Unit	JC96-11666A	300,000 pages
P LaserJet 110V Fuser Assembly	JC82-00472A	320,000 pages
P LaserJet 220V Fuser Assembly	JC82-00485A	320,000 pages
PLaserJet Image Transfer Cleaner	JC96-06246A	150,000 pages
LaserJet Transfer Roller	JC95-01942A	150,000 pages
LaserJet Trays 2-x Rollers	JC93-00540A	200,000 pages
LaserJet Tray 1 Roller	JC93-00540B	200,000 pages
LaserJet Flow ADF Pick Roller	JC97-04650A	200,000 pages
LaserJet Flow ADF Separation Roller	JC97-04915A	100,000 pages
LaserJet ADF Pick Roller	JC97-04857A	200,000 pages
Laser Jet ADF Separation Roller	JC98-04852A	100,000 pages

**NOTE:** Depending on the print patterns and job mode used, the lifespan can differ.

# Paper handling specification

Table 1-12	Paper handling	specification
	i uper nunuung	specification

Item		Specification
Input Capacity	Standard	1040 sheets
	Multipurpose	100 sheets
	Other Options	Dual Casette Feeder (2 x 520-sheet)
	Bottom HCI	2000 sheets, A4 only
Input Capacity (continued)	Maximum	1040 Std + 100 Tray 1 + 2000 HCI
Standard cassette trays 2 & 3	Capacity	520 sheets x 2
	Media Sizes	<ul> <li>Tray 1: 148.5 x 210 mm to 297 x 354 mm (5.8 x 8.2 in to 11.7 x 14 in)</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Tray 1: 148.5 x 210 mm to 297 x 432 mm (5.8 x 8.2 in to 11.7 x 17 in)</li> </ul>
	Media Types	• Plain
		• Thin
		• Bond
		Hole Punched
		Pre-Printed
		Recycled
		Thin CardStock
		Letterhead
		• Thick
		• Cotton
		Colored
		Archive
		• Thin Glossy
		Heavy Weight
		Envelope
		• Label

Item		Specification
Standard cassette trays 2 & 3 (continued)	Media Weight	<ul> <li>Plain Paper: 70-90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (18.5-24 lb/ Duplex)</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Thick Paper: 91-105 g/m<sup>2</sup> (25-28 lb / Duplex)</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Heavy Weight Paper : 106-176 g/m<sup>2</sup> (Duplex)</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Extra Heavy Weight 1 Paper : 177-22 g/m<sup>2</sup></li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Thin Paper: 60-69 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16-19 lb/ Duplex)</li> </ul>
		• Cotton paper : 75-90 g/m² (Duplex)
		• Colored : 75-90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (Duplex)
		• Pre-Printed : 71-90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (Duplex)
		• Recycled : 60-90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (Duplex)
		• Bond Paper: 105-120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (Duplex)
		• Letterhead : 75-90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (Duplex)
		<ul> <li>Hole Punched Paper: 75-90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (Duplex)</li> </ul>
		• Thin cardstock : 105-163 g/m <sup>2</sup> (Duplex)
		• Thin Glossy : 106-163 g/m² (Duplex)
	Sensing	• H/W Install Detect: Yes
		Paper Empty and Low Level Detect: Yes
		Paper Type Detect: No
		Paper Size Detect: Yes
Tray 1	Capacity	100 sheets
	Media Sizes	98 x 148 mm to 297 x 432 mm (3.8 x 5.8 i to 11.7 x 17 in)

Item		Specification
Tray 1 (continued)	Media Types	• Plain
		• Thin
		• Bond
		Hole Punched
		Pre-Printed
		Recycled
		Thin CardStock
		• Letterhead
		• Thick
		• Cotton
		Colored
		Archive
		Thin Glossy
		Heavy Weight
		Envelope
		• Label
		Card transparency
	Media Weight	60 to 176 g/m² (16 to 47 lb): Simplex, Duplex Envelope (75 to 90 g/m²)
		Label (120 to 150 g/m²): Simplex
	Sensing	Paper Empty Detect: Yes
		Paper Size Detect: Yes
HP LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF) (workgroup)	Model number	Y1F97A
(workgroup)	Capacity	2x520 sheets
	Media sizes	<ul> <li>Cassette: 1.98 x 219 mm – 320 x 35 mm (3.85 x 8.2 in – 12.6 x 14 in)</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Cassette: 2.98 x 219 mm – 320 x 43 mm (3.85 x 8.2 in – 12.6 x 17 in)</li> </ul>

Item		Specification	
HP LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)	Media types	• Plain	
(workgroup) (continued)		• Thin	
		• Bond	
		Hole punched	
		Pre-punched	
		Recycled	
		Thin cardstock	
		Letterhead	
		• Thick	
		• Cotton	
		Colored	
		Archive	
		• Thin glossy	
		Heavy weight	
		• Extra heavy weight	

ltem		Specification
HP LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF) (workgroup) (continued)	Media weight	<ul> <li>Plain paper 70-90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (18.5-24 lb duplex)</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Thick paper 91-105 g/m<sup>2</sup> (25-28 lb duplex)</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Heavy weight paper 106-176 g/m<sup>2</sup> (duplex)</li> </ul>
		• Extra heavy weight paper 177-220 g/m <sup>2</sup>
		<ul> <li>Thin paper 60-69 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16-19 lb) (duplex)</li> </ul>
		• Cotton paper 75-90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (duplex)
		• Colored paper 75-90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (duplex)
		<ul> <li>Pre-printed paper 71-90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (duplex)</li> </ul>
		• Recycled paper 60-90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (duplex)
		• Bond paper105-120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (duplex)
		• Letterhead 75-90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (duplex)
		<ul> <li>Hole punched paper 75-90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (duplex)</li> </ul>
		• Thin cardstock 105-163 g/m <sup>2</sup> (duple
		• Thin glossy 106-163 g/m <sup>2</sup> (duplex)
	Sensing	• H/W install detect: Yes
		• Paper empty and low level detect: Ye
		• Paper type detect: No
		• Paper size detect: Yes
	Dimensions	566 x 610 x 265 mm (22.3 x 24 x 10.4 in)
	Weight	Net 20 kg (44.09 lb), with packaging 23.5 k (51.81 lb)
HP LaserJet Inner finisher	Model number	Y1G00A
	Capacity	550 sheets (mai 500, top 50) @ 80 gsm
	Sensing	Paper Jam/Tray sensing/staples/cover ope
	Media sizes	<ul> <li>Main 148 to 320 mm x 140-457.2 m (5.83 – 12.6 x 5.51- 18.0 in)</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Top 98 – 297 x 140-432 mm (3.86 – 11.69 x 5.51 –17.01 in)</li> </ul>

ltem		Specification	
HP LaserJet Inner finisher (continued)	Media types	• Plain	
		• Thick	
		Heavy weight	
		• Thin	
		Cotton	
		Colored	
		Recycled	
		• Bond	
		• Thick	
		Achieve	
		• Pre-punched	
		Cardstock	
		• Glossy	
		Envelope	
	Media weight	• Main 52 – 256 gsm (13.9 x 68.3 lb)	
		• Top: 52 – 325 gsm (13.9 – 86.7 lb)	
	Bins	2 (main/top)	
	Tray 2 finishing capacity	50 sheets @ 80gsm	
	Tray 2 finishing mode	Stapling (Left, right, center), punch (2/3, 2/4, Swedish)	
	Tray 3 finishing capacity	500 sheets @ 80gsm	
HP LaserJet Inner finisher hole 2/3 hole	Model number	Y1G02A	
punch	Paper weight	256 gsm (68.3 lb)	
HP LaserJet Inner finisher 2/4 hole punch	Model number	Y1G03A	
	Paper weight	256 gsm (68.3 lb)	
HP LaserJet Inner finisher Swedish hole punch	Model number	Y1G04A	
punen	Paper weight	256 gsm (68.3 lb)	
Automatic document feeder (ADF) (LX/dn models)	Capacity	100 sheets	
models)	Duplex Document Scanning	Yes	
	Document Size	• Width: 128 –297 mm (5 – 11.7 in)	
		• Length: 140 – 432 mm (5.5 – 17 in)	
Automatic document feeder (ADF) (LX/dn models) (continued)	Document Weight	• E77822	

Table 1-12 Paper handling specification (continued)	Table 1-12	Paper handling	specification	(continued)
---	------------	----------------	---------------	-------------

ltem		Specification	
		<ul> <li>Simplex: 42 – 163 g/m<sup>2</sup> (11.25 – 43.25 lb)</li> </ul>	
		<ul> <li>Duplex: 50 - 128 g/m<sup>2</sup> (12.25 - 34 lb)</li> </ul>	
		• E77825, E77830	
		<ul> <li>Simplex: 42 – 163 g/m<sup>2</sup> (11.25 - 43.25 lb)</li> </ul>	
		<ul> <li>Duplex: 50 – 163 g/m<sup>2</sup> (13.25 – 34 lb)</li> </ul>	
	Sensor	Document Size Sensing: Potentiometer	
	Auto Detected Size	A3/A4/A5/B4/B5/Letter/Legal/Statement/ Folio/Executive	
Automatic document feeder flow (ADF)	Capacity	250 sheets	
(GX/d models)	Document size	<ul> <li>Width: 105 mm - 29 7mm (5 in - 11.7 in)</li> </ul>	
		<ul> <li>Length: 140 mm – 432 mm (5.5 in – 17 in)</li> </ul>	
	Document Weight	<ul> <li>Simplex: 60-163 g/m <sup>2</sup>(11.25-43.24 lb) (guarantee) 42-60 g/m and 163-220 g/m <sup>2</sup> (support)</li> </ul>	
	Auto Detected Size	A3/A4/A5/A6 SEF/B4/B5/Letter/Legal/ Statement/Folio/Executive	
Image Scanner	Document size	<ul> <li>Width: 140 mm - 297 mm (5.5 in - 11.7 in)</li> </ul>	
		<ul> <li>Lenght: 140 mm - 432 mm (5.5 in - 1' in)</li> </ul>	
Printer Output Capacity	Standard	500 sheets, face down	
	Maximum	615 sheets [500 sheets (Standard) + 125 sheets (Job Separator)]	
Printing Size	Maximum Size	297 x 432 mm (11.7 x 17 in)	
	Minimum Size	98 x 148 mm (3.8 x 5.8 in)	
Maximum Printing Area	Trays 1–3	Top: 4.23 +/- 1.5 mm / Left: 4.23 +/- 1.5 mm	
	Simplex from optional trays	Top and Left: 4.23 +/- 2 mm	
	Duplex	Top: 4.23 +/- 2 mm / Left: 4.23 +/- 2 mm	
Duplex Printing	Support	Built-in	
	Media Sizes	148.5 x 210 mm — 297 x 432 mm (5.8 x 8.2 in — 11.7 x 17 in)	

Item		Specification
Duplex Printing (continued)	Media Types	• Plain
		• Thin
		• Bond
		Hole Punched
		• Pre-Printed
		Recycled
		Thin CardStock
		Letterhead
		• Thick
		• Cotton
		Colored
		Archive
		• Thin Glossy
		Heavy Weight
		60 to 176 g/m² (16 to 47 lb)

# Optional

Table 1-13 Option List				
ltem	Model	E77830	E77825	E77822
HP LaserJet Dual cassette feeder DCF) (workgroup)	Y1F97A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Cabinet (workgroup)	Y1G17A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet 2000 sheet high capacity input tray (HCI) (workgroup)	Y1F99A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Inner finisher	Y1G00A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Booklet finisher	Y1G07A	Yes	Yes	No
HP LaserJet Job separator (workgroup)	Y1G15A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker finisher staples	Y1G14A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Inner/Booklet finisher staples	Y1G13A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Inner finisher hole 2/3 punch	Y1G02A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Inner finisher hole 2/4 punch	Y1G03A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Inner finisher Swedish punch	Y1G04A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Hole punch 2/3	Y1G10A	Yes	Yes	Yes

#### Table 1-13 Option List (continued)

ltem	Model	E77830	E77825	E77822
HP LaserJet Hole punch 2/4	Y1G11A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Hole punch Swedish	Y1G12A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Paper tray heaters (workgroup)	Y1G22A	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Paper tray heater 110V (workgroup)	Y1G22A#BGJ	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP LaserJet Paper tray heater 220V (workgroup)	Y1G22A#B19	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP Second exit	Y1G23A	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>NOTE:</b> Required if attaching an external finisher.				

# Software and solution specification

### Table 1-14 Software and solution specification

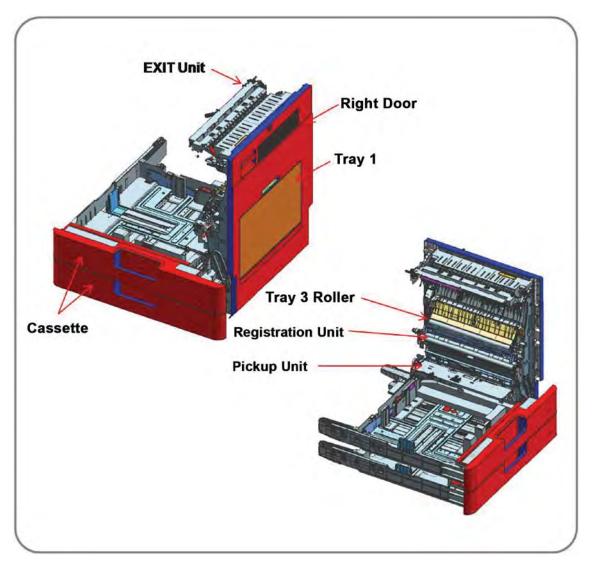
Item		Specification
Application	Anyweb Print	N/A
	Easy Printer Manager	Windows/Mac
	Easy Color Manager	Windows/Mac
	Easy Document Creator	Windows
	Net PC Fax	Windows/Mac
	Direct Printing Utility	Windows
	Easy Deployment Manager	Windows
	Easy Eco Driver	Windows
	Universal Printer Driver	Windows
	Universal Scan Driver	Windows
	Scan	HP Scan
Mobile Printing	Google Cloud Print (GCP)	Yes
	AirPrint	Yes ('14.09)
Solution	Device Management	SyncThru 6.0
	Output Management	CounThru Enterprise/Pro
	Document Management and Distribution	SmarThru Workflow 3.0
	Security	SecuThru Pro 1.0
	Mobility	SCP 1.0 ('14.09)
Security	Authentication (Local)	Yes
	Authentication (Network)	Yes (SMB/Kerberos/LDAP/IPSec/EAP)

ltem		Specification
Security	IP Address Filtering	Yes (IPv4 Filtering/IPv6 Filtering/MAC Filtering)
	HDD Overwrite (Standard)	Yes
	HDD Overwrite (Maximum Overwrites)	9
	Secure Print	Yes
	Encrypted Secure Print	Yes
	Encrypted PDF Mode (Encrypted Scanning)	Yes
	IP Sec	Yes
	Smart Card Authentication	Yes

# Feeding system

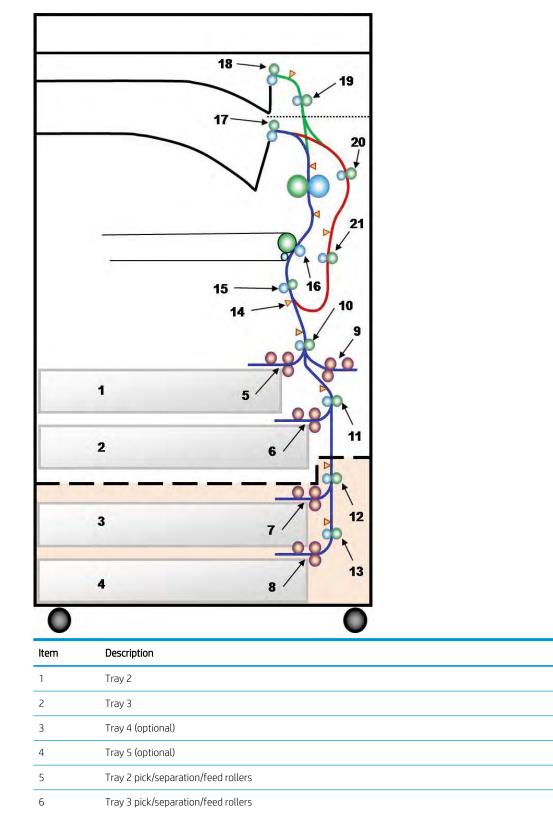
# Feeding system overview

The feeding system picks up paper from the cassette or Tray 1 and moves it to the printing mechanism inside the printer. The feeding system consists of the pickup unit, registration unit, transfer roller assembly, and exit unit.



# Main components and functions

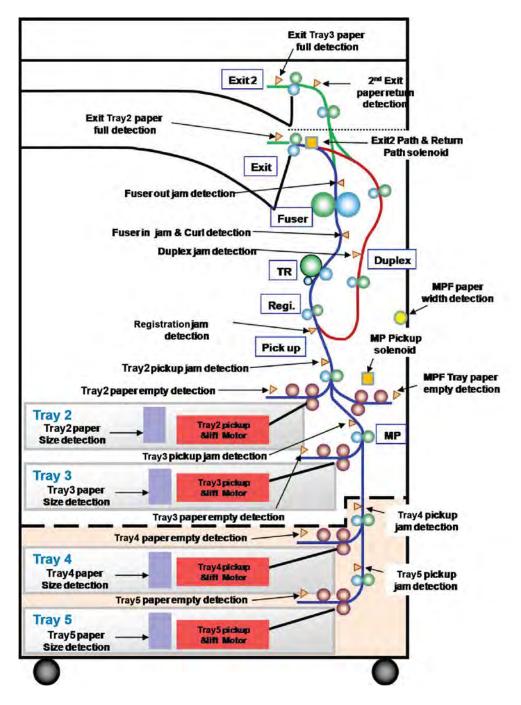
Rollers



ltem	Description
7	Tray 4 pick/separation/feed rollers
8	Tray 5 pick/separation/feed rollers
9	Tray 1 pick/separation/feed rollers
10	Tray 2 paper path feed roller
11	Tray 3 paper path feed roller
12	Tray 4 paper path feed roller
13	Tray 5 paper path feed roller
14	Sensor registration
15	Roller registration
16	Roller transfer
17	Roller output 1st
18	Roller output 2nd (optional)
19	Roller invert (optional)
20	Roller duplex 1
21	Roller duplex 2

- Pick roller (Tray 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5)
  - This roller picks up the paper from the tray.
- Feed roller (Tray 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5)
  - This roller is placed against the separation roller. It transfers the paper from the pick roller to the feed
    roller.
- Separation roller (Tray 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5)
  - This roller is placed against the feed roller and transfers only one sheet of paper to the feed roller.
     When two or more sheets of paper are being transferred from the pick roller, the load of the torque limiter of the separation roller is heavier than the frictional force between the sheets of paper. As a result, the separation roller is stopped and the lower sheet of paper is not transferred.
- Feed roller
  - This roller transfers the paper sent from the forward/separation roller to the registration roller.
- Registration roller
  - This roller aligns the leading edge of the paper and transfers the paper to the transfer roller assembly.

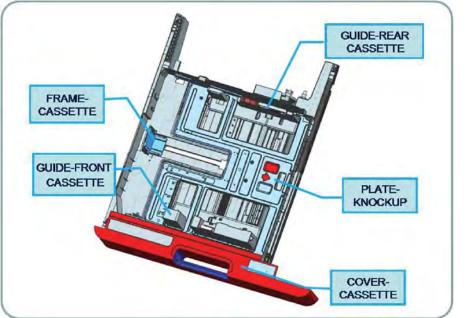
#### Sensor, Motor, Solenoid



# Cassette (Tray 1, 2, 4, 5)

The cassette stores paper. The paper size is set using the guides in each tray.



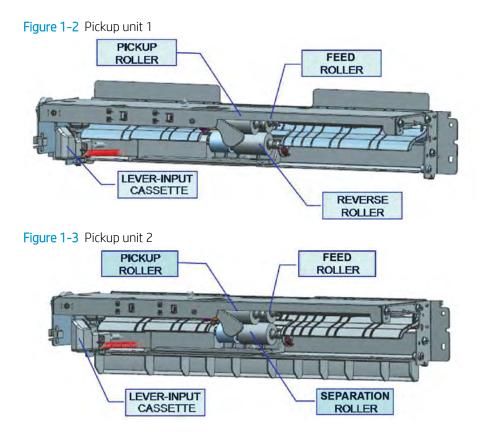


ltem	Description
1	Structure: Drawer Type
2	Capacity: 520 sheets (80 g/m² (21 lb) paper standard)
	NOTE: Tray 2 does not support A3 or 11 x 17 paper,
3	Paper type
	• Plain paper: A5, A4, A3, B5, B4, Letter, 11 x 17 (Ledger), Statement, Legal
	<b>NOTE:</b> Tray 2 does not support A3 or 11 x 17 paper.
4	Paper weight
	• Plain paper: 60-216 g/m <sup>2</sup> (17-58 lb)
5	Plate knock up lift type: Lift Motor + Up Limit Sensor

# Pickup unit

When paper pickup occurs, the pick roller moves down in order to come in contact with the surface of the paper. If the cassette is installed, the LEVER-INPUT CST is pushed and the pick roller moves down. The feed and separation rollers make sure that a single sheet of paper is moved into the paper path, and that the feed roller moves the paper as far as the registration (REGI) roller.

**NOTE:** The pickup unit 1 and pickup unit 2 are not interchangeable.



# Registration (regi) unit

The registration roller is driven by the registration/multipurpose motor. The registration roller clutch is located between the registration/Tray 1 motor and registration roller, or on the transfer belt (for color), and it controls power to the registration roller in order to match paper and an image on the drum at the predetermined registration point.

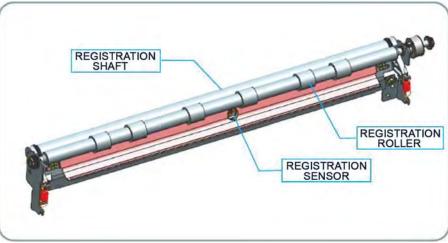
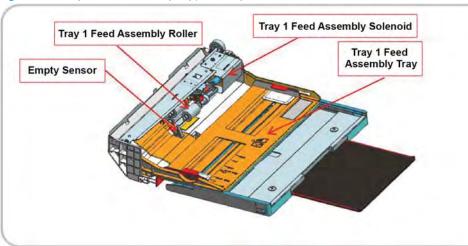


Figure 1-4 Registration (Regi) roller

# Tray 1 feed assembly

The Tray 1 feed assembly allows feeding of special media cardstock and custom size paper.



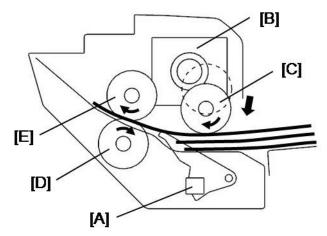
#### Figure 1-5 Tray 1 feed assembly (Bypass Tray)

### Specification

- Capacity: 100 sheets (80g/m<sup>2</sup> paper standard)
- Media Size: Maximum 297 x 432 mm (11.7 x 17 in)/ Minimum 98 x 148 mm (3.87 x 5.8 in)
- Media Weight: Plain paper 60-76 g/m<sup>2</sup>
- Feeding speed: 30 ppm (E77830), 25 ppm (E77826), 22 ppm (E77822) Letter/A4 LEF (Long Edge Feeding)

#### **Paper Separation**

Figure 1-6 Paper separation



When the Tray 1 paper detection [A] sensor detects paper and the machine gets a Tray 1 printing job, the Tray 1 solenoid [B] drops the pick roller [C] onto the top of the paper stack in Tray 1.

This machine uses a Feed and Separation Roller (FSR) system for feeding paper. The friction between the separation roller [D] and feed roller [E] separates the top sheet of paper from the stack.

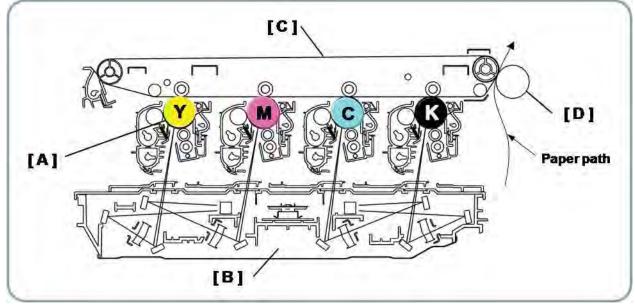
# Image creation

# Printing process overview

This printer uses four imaging units and four lasers for color printing. Each imaging unit consists of a drum unit and a developer unit.

The drum unit has an OPC drum, charge roller, cleaning roller, and cleaning blade.





The OPC drum (A) is charged with a negative voltage and is exposed by the light from the laser scanning assembly (B).

The light produced by the laser creates a latent image by discharging on the surface of the OPC drum. The negatively charged toner is attracted to the latent drum image due to an electric field. The toner (real image) on each OPC drum is moved to the image transfer belt (ITB) (C) by the positive bias applied to the first transfer roller. All four toners (color image) are transferred to the paper by a positive charge applied to the second transfer roller (D).

- 1. **OPC drum charge**: The charge roller gives the drum a negative charge.
- 2. Laser exposure: Light produced by a laser diode hits the charged OPC through the lens and mirrors.
- **3. Development**: The developing roller carries negatively charged toner to the latent image on the drum surface. This printer uses four independent imaging units (one for each color).
- 4. Transfer:
  - Image transfer: The first transfer roller opposite the OPC drums transfer toner from the drums to the ITB. Four toner images are super-imposed onto the belt.
  - Paper transfer: The second transfer roller transfers the toner from the ITB to the media.
- 5. Cleaning the OPC drum: The cleaning blade removes remaining toner on the drum surface after image transfer to the paper.

- 6. **Erasing for OPC drum**: Erasing is done by illuminating the whole area of the drum with the laser at the end of every job.
- 7. Cleaning and erasing charges on the ITB: The cleaning roller and blade clean the belt surface. The grounding roller inside the ITB unit removes the remaining charge from the belt.

# **Imaging unit**

## Imaging unit overview

This printer uses a two-part imaging unit. It uses four color development and one paper path to increase color printing productivity.

Each imaging unit consists of the drum unit and the developer unit. The developer units are not interchangeable. The drum units are interchangeable. The diameter of the drum is 30 mm with a circumference of about 94.2 mm.

The development gap between a drum and the corresponding magnetic roller cannot be adjusted. The Customer-Replaceable Unit Monitor (CRUM) is the subpart of the drum unit. The CRUM stores job count information and other data.

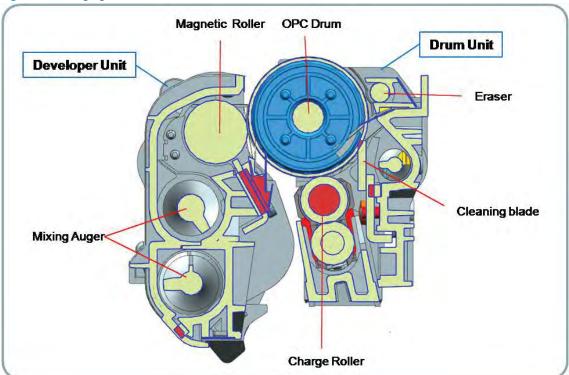


Figure 1-8 Imaging unit

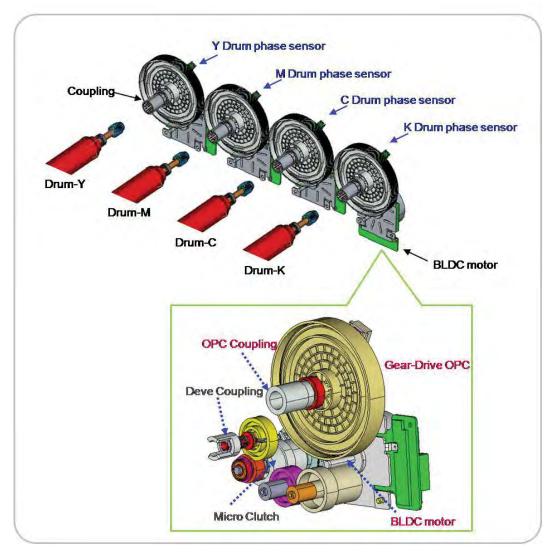
### Drum drive

The color OPCs and magnetic roller are driven by each color motor. The OPC drum and magnetic roller are powered by the coupling.

The Brushless Direct Current (BLDC) motor maintains constant speed. The speed sync for each color depends on the BLDC motor.

Phase sync for each OPC job prints the pattern on the Image Transfer Belt (ITB) and is adjusted automatically.

Figure 1-9 Drum drive

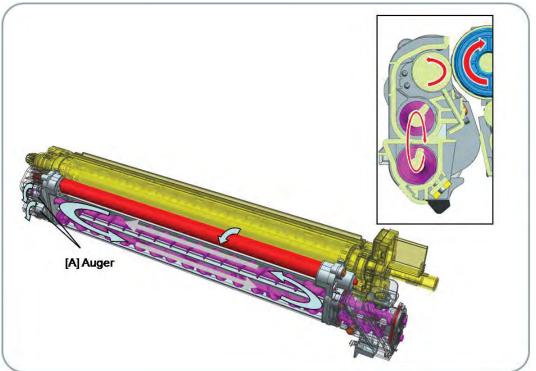


## Developer unit

This printer uses a dual-component development system that has four developer units. Each new unit contains 185 g of magnetic toner carrier. The developer in each unit is supplied to the magnetic (development) roller (A) by the two mixing augers (B). The diameter of the magnetic roller is 16 mm.

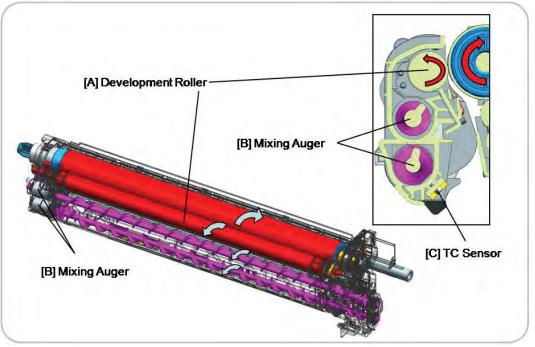
Each developer unit has a toner concentration (TC) sensor (C). The TC sensor is used for controlling the operating range of toner density.

Figure 1-10 Developer unit



### **Developer Circulation**





Two mixing augers (B) circulate the developer forward and backward in order to sufficiently mix the toner and carrier.

This occurs at the following times:

- During the process control self-checking
- During toner supply job
- During development job

The developer unit must be stored below 50°C (122°F) or the toner will harden and not work properly.

# Image Transfer Belt (ITB) Unit

## Image transfer belt (ITB) unit overview

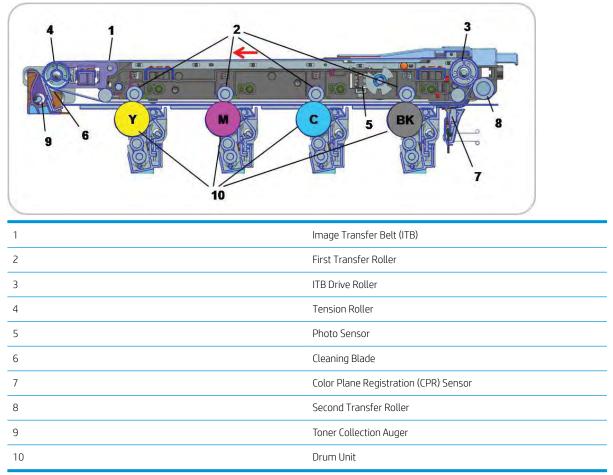
The toner on the four drums is transferred to the image transfer belt (ITB) by the first transfer roller.

The image overlapped by four colors is transferred to the paper by the second transfer roller. The remaining toners are removed by the cleaning blade and transferred to the toner collection unit.

This process is completed with one rotation of the ITB. The arrow above the C and M drums on the following diagram shows the direction of the ITB rotation. The ITB is rotated by friction between the drive roller and the ITB. The tension roller provides tension to prevent slipping.

There are three color plane registration (CPR) sensors and one photo sensor. Two CPR sensors are for line position adjustment and one is for process control. The photo sensor monitors the position of the first transfer rollers.

Figure 1-12 ITB unit



## Image transfer belt (ITB) drive

The image transfer belt (ITB) drive motor (A) drives the ITB (B) by using gears and the ITB drive roller (C).

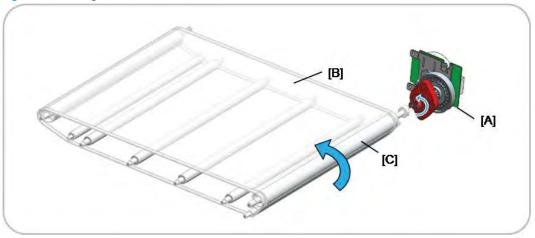


Figure 1–13 Image transfer belt drive

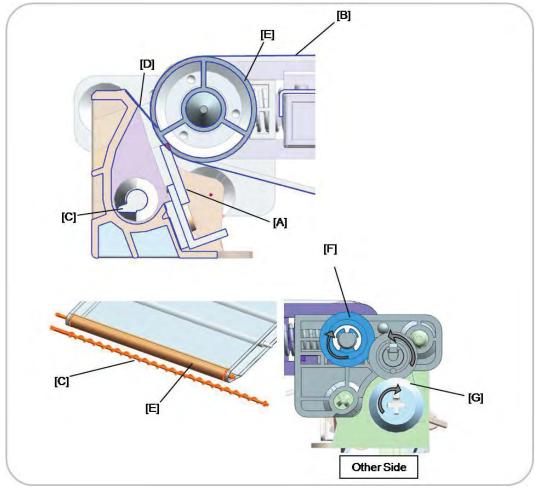
## Image transfer belt (ITB) cleaning

The image transfer belt (ITB) cleaner removes toner during printing. Belt cleaning is completed while the ITB makes one rotation. The ITB drive motor drives the ITB cleaning motor.

The cleaning blade (A) in the ITB cleaner always contacts the ITB (B). The cleaning blade removes the used toner from the ITB. The toner collection auger (C) transfers the waste toner to the toner collection unit.

The seal (D) on the ITB cleaner protects against toner contamination. The driving power by the driver roller is transferred to the tension roller (E). The toner collection auger gear (F) drives the gear (G) and collects the toner.

Figure 1-14 ITB cleaning



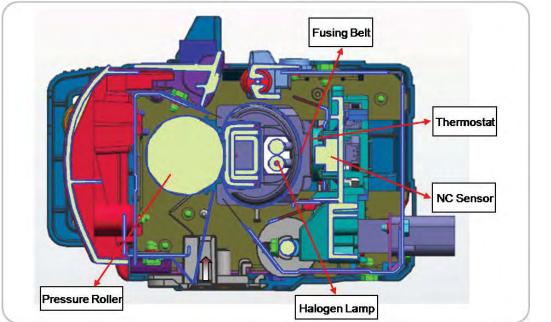
# Fuser unit

# Fuser unit overview

This section describes the image fusing process used by the printer.

This unit fuses the toner that was transferred by the transfer roller onto the paper by applying heat and pressure. The printer uses an instant fusing belt which has a faster warm-up time than a conventional fusing and pressure roller system.





Item Description

#### 1 Halogen Lamp

The fuser unit has two halogen lamps. One lamp heats the center of the fusing belt, and the other lamp heats the end of axial direction. The halogen lamps are lit alternately to heat the fusing belt. Each lamp has its coil in a different location. The coil of the center heater lamp is in the center. The coils of the side heater lamp are located on both sides. The lamps are fixed inside of the fusing belt. The lamps do not rotate when the fusing belt rotates.

#### 2 Fusing Belt

The fusing belt receives heat from the halogen lamp and transfers it to the toner and paper. The fusing belt consists of three thin layers. The thin fusing belt reduces time needed to warm up and change modes. To prevent the fusing belt from adhering to the toner, the surface of the fusing belt is lubricated. There is a nip inside the fusing belt. A spring is used to maintain the proper nip between the fusing belt and pressure roller.

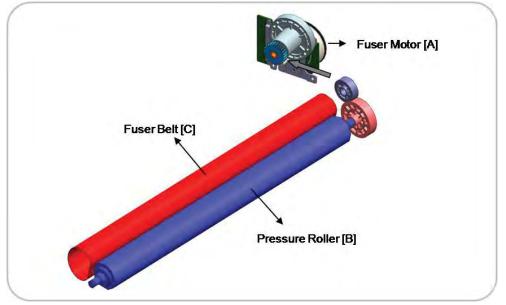
#### 3 Pressure Roller

The pressure roller is made of rubber and makes sure there is proper nip width between the pressure roller and the fusing belt. The pressure roller is powered by the drive system and drives the fusing belt.

ltem	Description
4	Non-Contact (NC) Sensor
	NC sensors (non-contact type thermistors) are located near the center and the end of the fusing belt and monitor the temperature of the fusing belt.
5	Thermostat
	The thermostats cuts off the power supply to the halogen lamp by opening the circuit when the heat roller becomes abnormally hot as a result of problems such as a NC sensor malfunction. The thermostats are used to prevent abnormal operation. When the thermostat is tripped, it cannot be reset and must be replaced (as well as the other damaged parts in the fuser unit).

# Fuser unit drive

Figure 1-16 Fuser drive

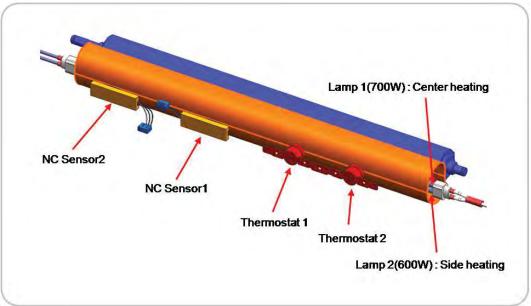


The fuser motor (A) drives the pressure roller (B) through the gear train. The fuser belt is driven by the pressure roller.

# Fuser unit temperature control

When the main switch turns on, the CPU turns on the fusing lamp. The lamp stays on until the NC sensors detect the standby temperature. The CPU then raises the temperature up to the printing temperature.





#### **Overheat Protection**

The CPU cuts power to the fusing lamp in the following cases:

• The temperature detected by the NC sensor stays higher than 240°C for 20 seconds.

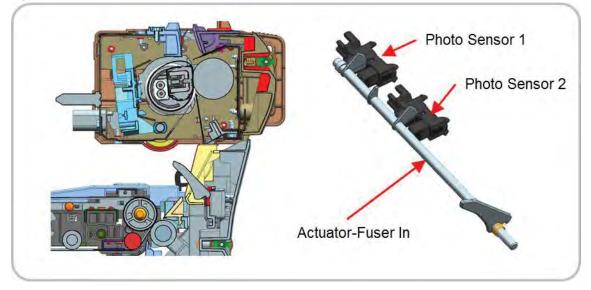
The following components are used when thermistor overheat protection fails:

- Two thermostats are in line with the common ground wire of the fusing lamp.
- If one of the thermostat temperatures becomes higher than 195°C, power is cut to the fusing lamp. If the other thermostat temperature becomes higher than 195°C, it will also cut power to the fusing lamp.

# Loop control

The tension of the paper between the OPC nip and the fuser nip is known as the paper loop level.

Figure 1-18 Loop control



The paper loop level is controlled by monitoring photo sensors 1 and 2. The fuser unit controls the motor speed for the paper loop level.

# Laser scanner assembly

## Laser scanner assembly overview

The laser scanner assembly consists of one polygon motor and four laser diodes (LD) units. The laser scanner assembly forms a latent image on the surface of four drums. For this process, the laser scanner assembly has a collimator lens, cylindrical lens, two F-Theta lenses, and two reflective mirrors on an optical path for each color.

This laser scanner assembly uses the cross scan type scanning. K Color and C Color scan the laser from the rear to the front. M Color and Y Color scan the laser from the front to the rear.

The laser scanner assembly has a skew adjustment which adjusts the scanning line. An automatic shutter is used to clean and protect the glass on the laser scanner assembly.

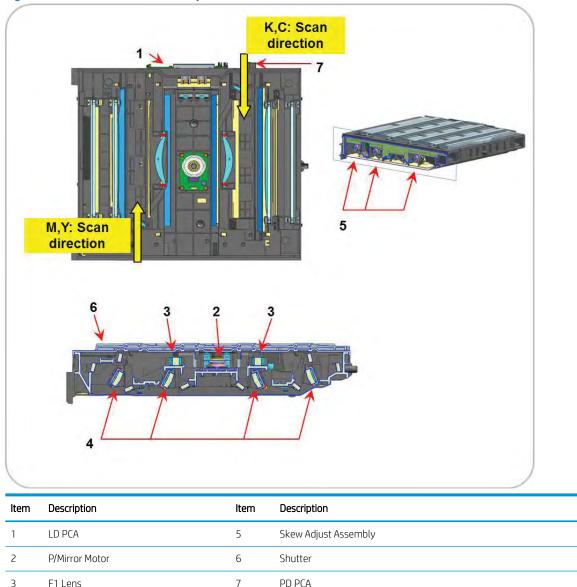


Figure 1-19 Laser scanner assembly overview

F2 Lens

4

# Laser scanning optical path

The laser from the laser scanner assembly is placed at intervals of 78 mm for each color. All colors use the same polygon motor for oblique incidence.

The F2 lens (A) determines the slope of the primary scanning line and the image position of the secondary scanning direction. This setting is adjusted by the manufacturer. The primary scanning line slope difference is adjusted by the skew adjustment in the laser scanner assembly.

Reflective mirrors (B) on each color path adjust the curvature of primary scanning. This setting is adjusted by the manufacturer.

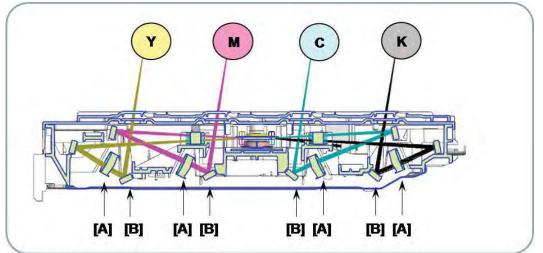


Figure 1-20 Laser scanning optical path

# Laser synchronizing detectors

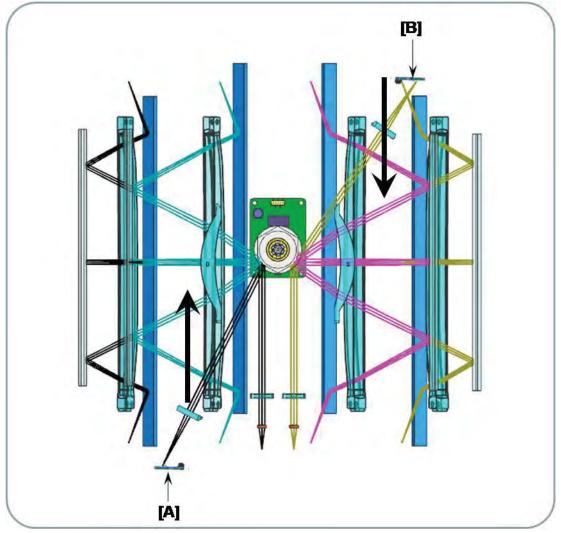
The laser scanner assembly has two beam detector sensor boards (PD PCA). The PD PCAs are located at each corner of the laser optics housing unit.

The two PD PCAs detect the following:

- (A): Scanning start position for black
- (B): Scanning start position for yellow

This printer recognizes each color from the time that they are detected.





#### Main Scan Start Detection

The PD PCAs detect four beams at the scanning start point and create the horizontal sync (Hsync) signal. Data is scanned by Hsync.

The arrow in the previous diagram shows the data scanning direction for each color. Black/Cyan and Yellow/ Magenta use the same polygon motor scanning in opposite directions.

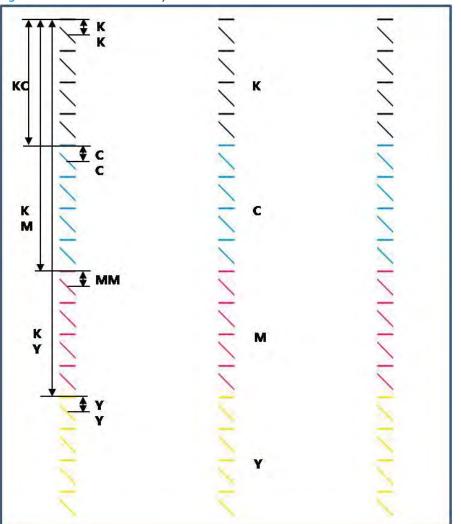
## Automatic CPR adjustment

During automatic CPR adjustment, the line patterns below are created eight times on the image transfer belt (ITB). The spaces between the lines (KK, CC, MM, YY, KC, KM, KY) are measured by the front, center, and rear CPR sensors. The controller takes the average of the spaces and then adjusts the following positions and magnification:

- Sub scan line position for CMY
- Main scan line position for CMY
- Magnification ratio for CMY
- Skew for CMY

The ITB cleaning unit cleans the ITB after the patterns are measured.

Figure 1–22 Automatic CPR adjustment



- KK, CC, MM, YY: Spaces between two lines of the same color.
- KC, KM, KY: Spaces between a black line and each color line.

#### Adjustment

### • Sub Scan line position for CMY

The adjustment of the sub scan line position for CMY is based on the line position for K (black). The printer measures the gaps between the lines of each color in the pattern on the ITB. When the gaps for a color are incorrect, the printer moves the image of the color up or down the sub scan axis. To do this, it changes the laser write timing for that color.

### • Main Scan line position for CMY

When the printer detects that the image is out of position in the main scan direction, it changes the laser write start timing for each scan line.

### • Magnification Adjustment for CMY

When the printer detects that magnification adjustment is necessary, it changes the LD clock frequency for the required color.

### Skew for CMY

The adjustment of the skew for CMY is based on the line position for K (black).

#### Adjustment Conditions

Line position adjustment can be turned on or off. However, it is normally recommended to turn on this function.

Line position adjustment timing depends on several settings. These settings include the following:

- $\Delta T$  = Temperature change of the laser scanner assembly between the temperature of the previous line position adjustment and the current temperature.
- Pages = Total printed pages after previous line position adjustment.

#### Interval During Print Job

Line position adjustment interrupts printing and then starts automatically when one of these conditions occurs when the printer checks at the sheet interval:

- ΔT > Temperature threshold (laser scanner assembly temperature: [default 3°C])
- Pages > Output threshold for all outputs (default: 500 pages)

#### Toner Collection Unit Not-Installed/Installed

• Line position adjustment starts automatically when toner collection unit is removed and reinstalled.

#### Drum Unit or Developer Unit Replaced

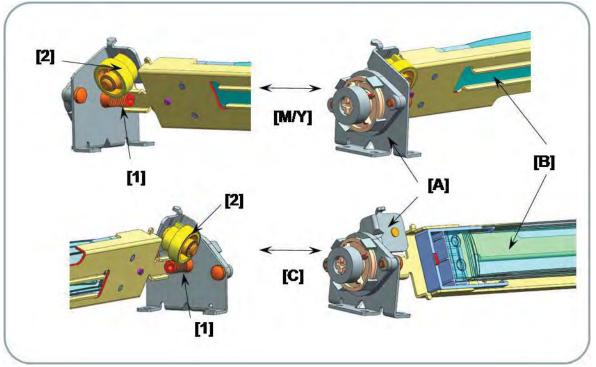
• When the printer detects a new drum unit or developer unit, line position adjustment is automatically performed.

### ITB Replaced

• When the printer detects a new ITB or other ITB, SVC engineers have to execute the adjustment manually.

#### Main Scan Skew Adjustment

Figure 1-23 Main scan skew adjustment



The skew adjustment assembly (A) consists of the worm gear (1) for adjustment and worm gear (2). When Color Plane Registration (CPR) executes, it detects and adjusts the scanning line slope manually.

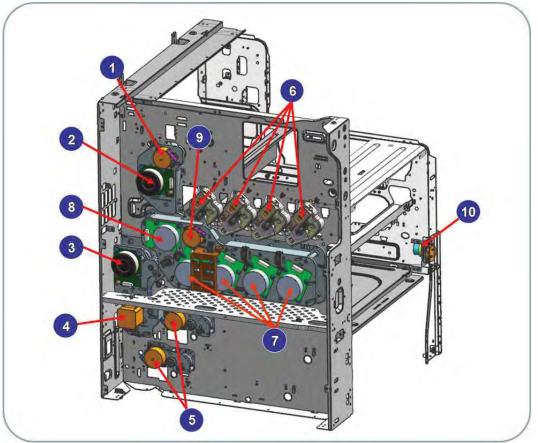
The skew adjustment assembly (A) for magenta, cyan, and yellow adjusts the skew angle of the F2 lens (B). This mechanism corrects main scan skew.

# Drive system

### **Drive motors**

The following diagram shows the location of the printer drive motors.





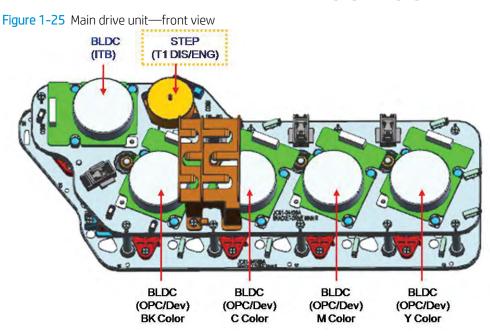
### Table 1-15 Printer drive motors

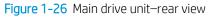
Number	Motor	Motor type	Quantity	Function
1	Exit	PM-STEP	1	Exit drive
				(Reverse drive at duplex job)
2	Fuser	BLDC	1	Fuser drive/Fuser pressure mode
				(Reverse drive at pressure mode)
3	Registration (Regi)/Tray 1	BLDC	1	Registration (Regi)/Tray 1 drive
		E-CLT	2	Registration (Regi)/Tray 1 drive control
4	Feed	HB-STEP (Hybrid) Stepper Motor	1	Feed 1/2 roll drive
5	Tray 2 and 3 Pickup	PM-STEP (Permanent Magnet) Stepper Motor	2	Pickup roller/tray lift drive
6	Toner supply	DC	4	Toner transfer in toner cartridge drive duct

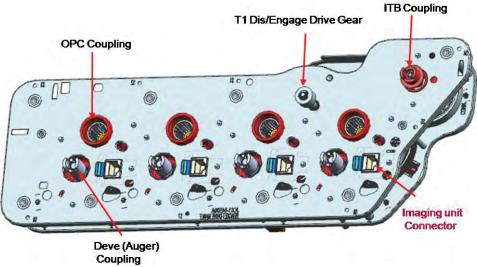
Table 1-15	Printer dri	ve motors	(continued)
------------	-------------	-----------	-------------

Number	Motor	Motor type	Quantity	Function
7	OPC/DEVE	BLDC	4	OPC/DEVE drive
8	ITB	BLDC	1	ITB drive
9	Transfer roller Dis/En	PM-STEP	1	Transfer roller Dis/Engage
10	Toner collection unit	PM-STEP	1	Toner collection unit leveling

### Main drive unit (OPC/DEVE/ITB/Transfer Roller/Disengage/Engage motors)

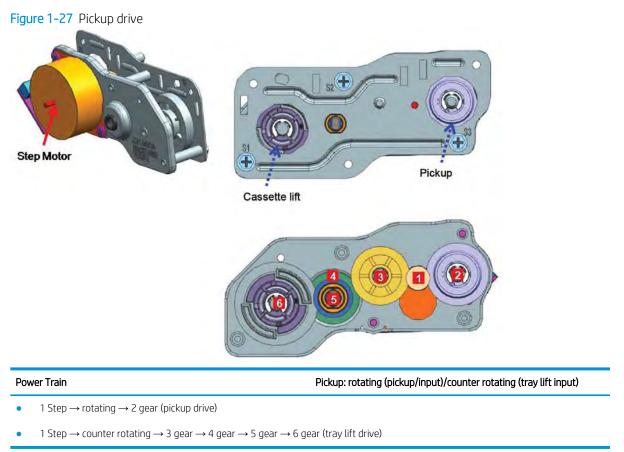








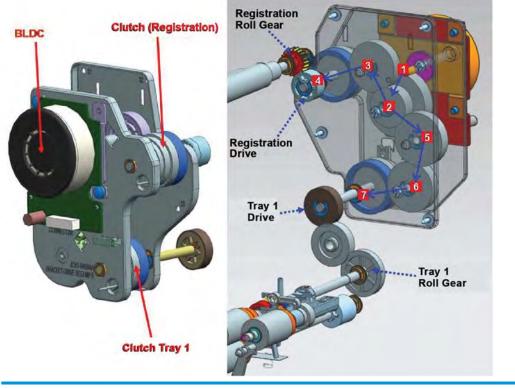
# Pickup drive



# Registration (Regi)/Tray 1 drive

The following diagram shows the drives that power the registration (Regi)/Tray 1 systems:

Figure 1-28 Registration (Regi)/Tray 1 drive



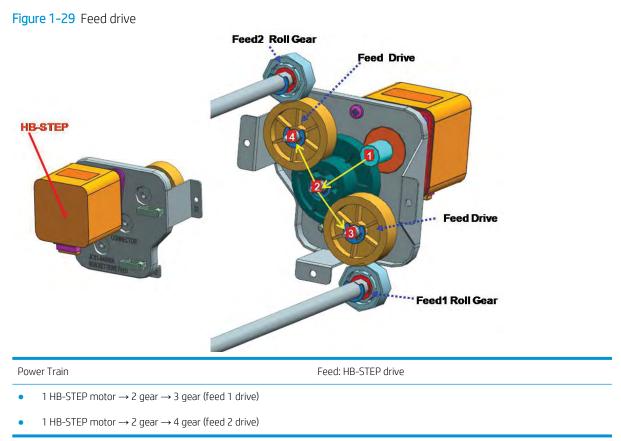
#### Registration (Regi)/Tray 1: BLDC motor drive, clutch drive control

• 1 BLDC motor  $\rightarrow$  2 gear  $\rightarrow$  3 gear  $\rightarrow$  4 clutch/gear (registration (Regi) drive)

Power Train

• 1 BLDC motor  $\rightarrow$  2 gear  $\rightarrow$  5 gear  $\rightarrow$  6 gear  $\rightarrow$  7 clutch/gear (Tray 1 drive)

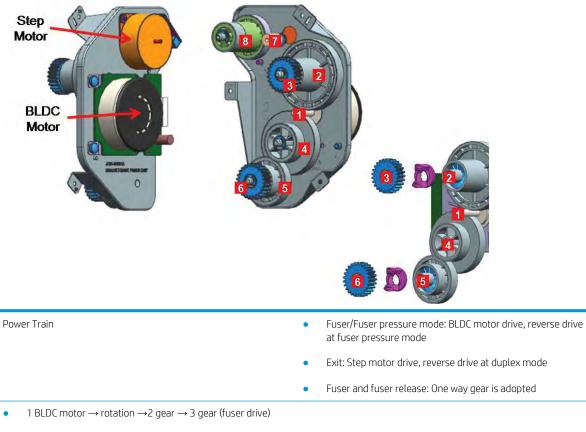
### Feed drive



### Fuser/exit drive

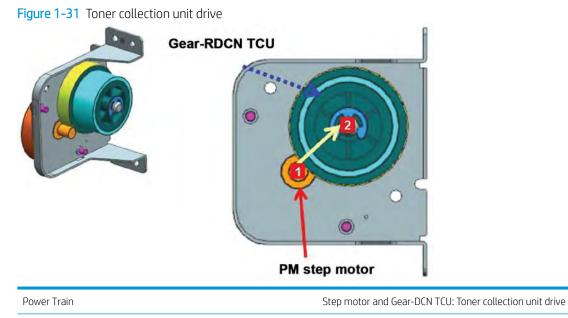
The following diagram shows the location of the fuser and exit drives.

Figure 1-30 Fuser exit drive



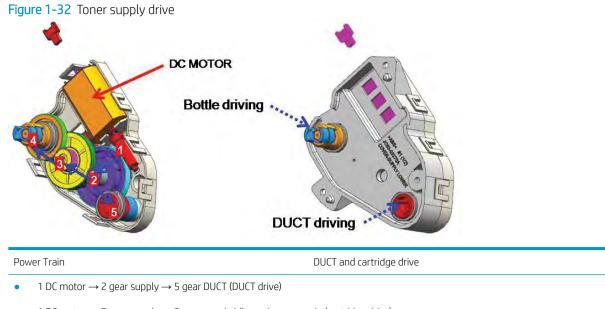
- 1 BLDC motor  $\rightarrow$  counter rotation  $\rightarrow$  4 gear  $\rightarrow$  5 gear  $\rightarrow$  6 gear (fuser pressure mode drive)
- 7 PM step  $\rightarrow$  8 gear (exit drive)

### Toner collection unit drive



• 1 PM step motor  $\rightarrow$  2 gear- TCU (toner collection unit drive)

### Toner supply drive



• 1 DC motor  $\rightarrow$  2 gear supply  $\rightarrow$  3 gear supply idle  $\rightarrow$  4 gear supply (cartridge drive)

# Flatbed Scanner System

This section describes the scanner system, parts, and functions for both color and monochrome printers.

### Flatbed scanner system overview

The scanner converts a hardcopy original into data. To scan an original, the scanner uses the lens and Charge Coupled Device (CCD). The scanner stores and transfers the converted image to the storage space or transfers the scanned data to the printer engine for copy.

For scan operation, the scanner uses a full rate (FR) carriage and a half rate (HR) carriage that is moved by a wire. It scans the original document on the scanner glass or from the ADF.

The scanner system consists of the three following modules:

- Full Rate (FR) carriage: Illuminates the original and reflects the light at a 90 degree angle.
- Half Rate (HR) carriage: Transfers the reflected light from the FR carriage to the lens.
- **Imaging module**: Makes an image on the CCD.

The HR carriage moves half the distance at half the speed of the FR carriage. This maintains a constant distance between the original and the imaging lens.

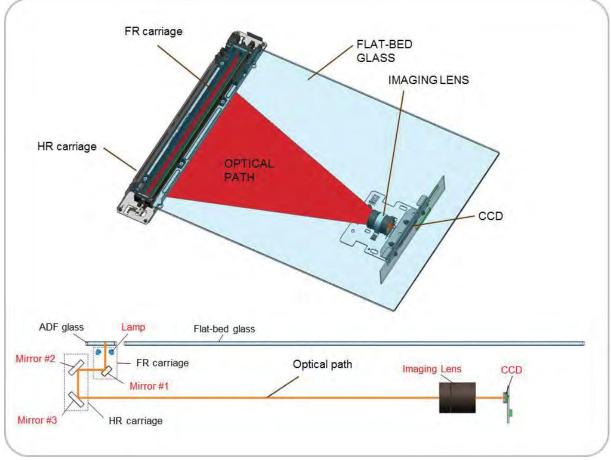


Figure 1-33 Scanner system overview

The following describes the scan process:

- 1. The FR carriage lamp illuminates the original. The reflected light is moved to Mirror #1.
- 2. The reflected light from Mirror #1 is sent to the imaging lens through Mirror #2 and #3.
- 3. The light becomes smaller and makes an optical image.
- 4. The optical image is generated to the electrical signal by the CCD sensor.

To make a stable image, a constant distance must be maintained between the original and the lens. To maintain a constant distance, the HR carriage moves half the distance and half the speed of the FR carriage.

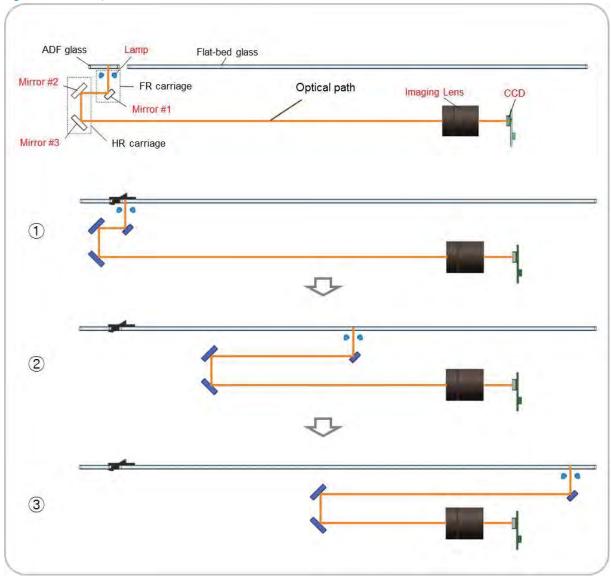


Figure 1–34 Scan process

The optical image made by the CCD sensor is changed to an electrical-analog signal.

Each color element signal in the optical image is separated by the CCD sensor into red, green, and blue.

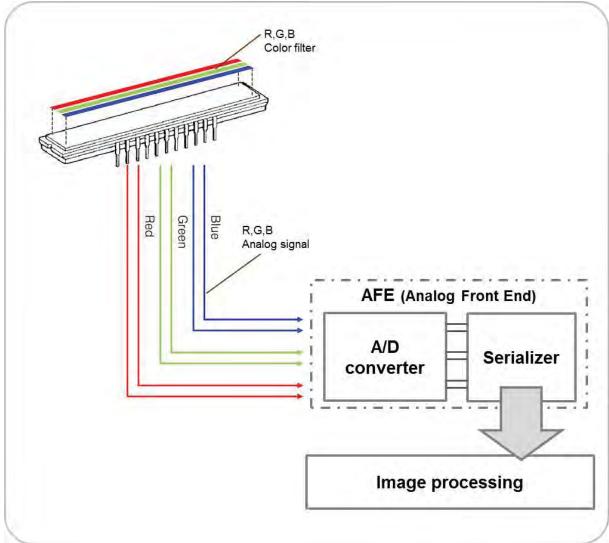
The red CCD sensor extracts the red color from the optical image, the green CCD sensor extracts the green color from the optical image, and the blue CCD sensor extracts the blue color from the optical image.

The analog image signal is changed to a digital image signal by the A/D converter and is transferred to the processor.

The image scan of the main scanning direction is performed by the CCD sensor. The CCD sensor consists of approximately 7500 pixels. The image scan of the sub scanning direction is performed by the FR carriage and HR carriage. The carriage is moved by a wire driven by the scan motor.

Scan resolution is 600 dpi.

Figure 1–35 Image processing



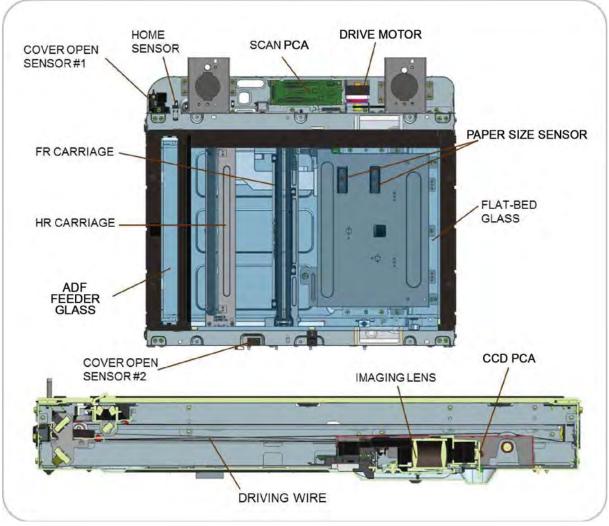
### Scanning system components

The following shows the construction and purpose of the scanning system.

To scan the original on the scanner glass, two carriages driven by the motor move at a regular speed. The motor drives the timing belt, pulley, and wire. The wire pulley rolls and releases the wire to move the carriage.

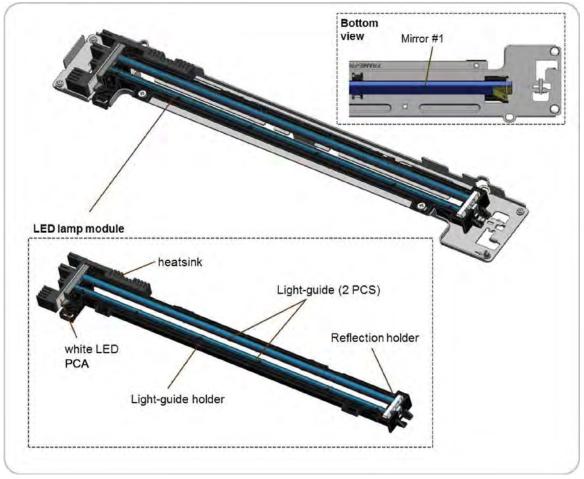
The scanner consists of the scanner glass, FR carriage, HR carriage, imaging unit, and drive unit.





• FR Carriage





LED lamp module

This module illuminates the original. Two white LEDs are assembled on the side of the module. The original is illuminated by the light-guide.

• Light-guide

The light-guide changes the light from point type to line type. The light-guide is made by transparent resin and controls the amount of light in the scan area uniformly.

• White LED

The white LED emits white light. The heat sink attached to the PCA prevents heat deterioration.

• Reflection holder

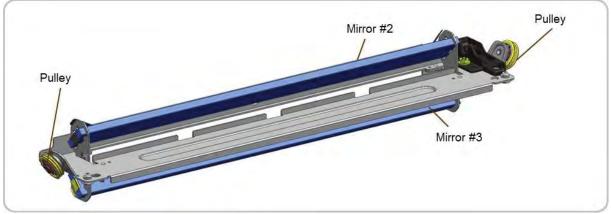
The reflection holder reflects the light that has passed through the light-guide.

Mirror #1

Mirror #1 reflects light at a 90 degree angle.

#### HR Carriage (mirror unit)

Figure 1-38 HR carriage



• Mirror #2 and #3

Mirrors #2 and #3 are positioned at a 45 degree angle in order to change the direction of the light. The reflected light from mirror #1 is sent to the imaging lens through mirrors #2 and #3.

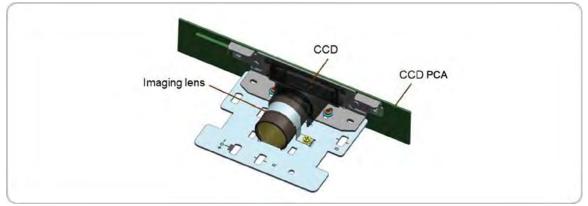
Pulley

The pulley is a ball bearing type. The pulley rolls and releases the wire which makes the HR carriage move. The HR carriage moves half the distance at half the speed of the FR carriage.

#### Imaging unit

The imaging unit changes the optical image to an electrical signal.

#### Figure 1-39 Imaging unit



Imaging lens

The reflected light from the imaging lens is focused on the CCD. The image is reduced to the fixed CCD sensor and pixel size.

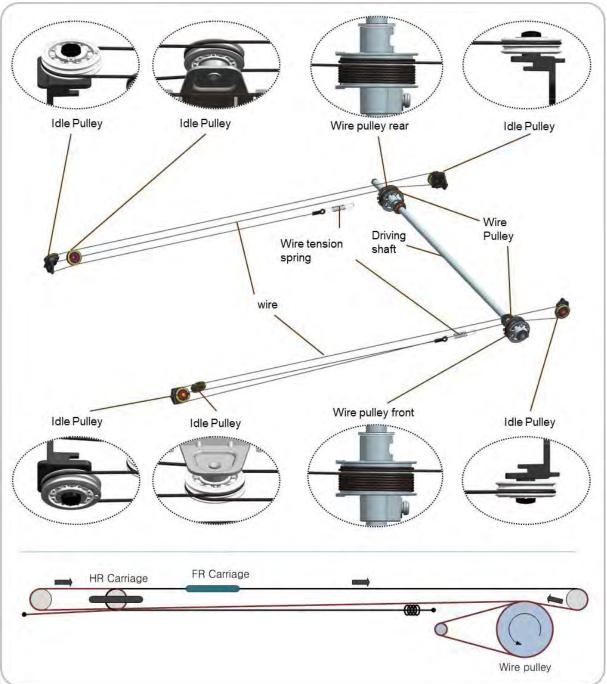
CCD PCA

The image made by the imaging lens is changed to an electrical signal by the CCD. The CCD consists of three channel line sensors for image creation. The brightness and darkness of the image depends on the voltage level from the CCD. The output voltage is changed to a digital signal. The digital signal makes the scanned image.

#### Wire drive

To move the carriages, the wire is assembled in the front and rear of the scanner. The pulley rolls and releases the wire which moves the FR carriage and the HR carriage.





#### Scanner glass (flatbed glass)

The original is placed on the scanner glass for scan or copy jobs. The scanner glass is made of tempered glass and is held in place by the frame to prevent distortion.

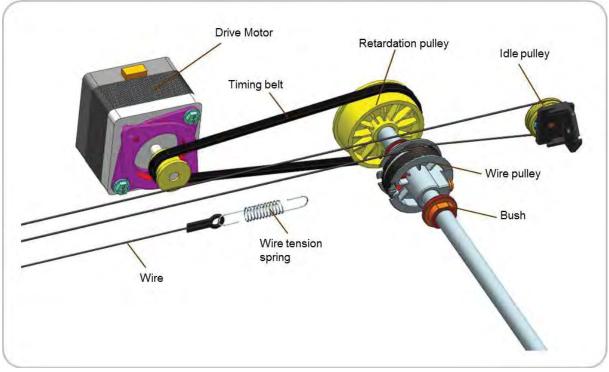
#### Drive motor

The scanner drive system uses the step motor to move the carriage. The step motor controls the position and maintains constant speed. The motor power is transferred to the wire through the timing belt and pulley.

#### Timing belt

The timing belt transfers the motor power to the pulley.





#### Paper size sensor

The paper size sensor automatically detects the size of the original on the scanner glass. The paper size sensor uses two sensors. An infrared LED is used to detect the dark original.

#### Home sensor

The home sensor detects the FR carriage position. The home sensor is a transmission photosensor.

#### Cover open sensor #1

When the ADF unit opens and closes, a function is triggered which detects whether the paper size sensor is on or off.

#### Cover open sensor #2

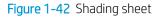
The cover open sensor #2 detects when the ADF unit is closed using a magnetic field.

#### ADF glass

ADF glass scans the original through the ADF unit. The FR carriage reads the original as it passes. If the ADF glass is contaminated, a horizontal black or white line might appear.

#### Shading sheet

The shading sheet detects white color in the base. Before every scan job, the scan module reads the shading sheet to scan the image with the same color and brightness. If the shading sheet is contaminated, a vertical image might occur.





### Caution for moving the scanner

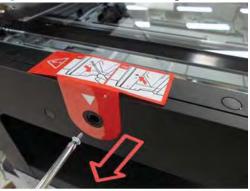
Lock the FR and HR carriages to prevent damage when shipping or moving the printer.

#### When installing

After unpacking, before turning on the printer, the scan locking screw must be removed. If the locking screw is not removed scanner failure will occur.

- 1. When installing the printer, remove the scan locking screw.
- 2. After removing the screw, assemble the screw cap from the accessory package.

Figure 1-43 Remove scan locking screw



#### When moving

When moving the printer, tighten the scan locking screw to prevent damage to the carriages.

- 1. Make sure the FR carriage is located in the home position.
- 2. Remove the screw cap.
- **3.** Tighten the M3x8 screw to secure the FR carriage.

Figure 1-44 Tighten scan locking screw



# Flow Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) (GX/z models)

# Flow ADF overview (GX/z Models)

#### Figure 1-45 Flow ADF overview (GX/z modles)

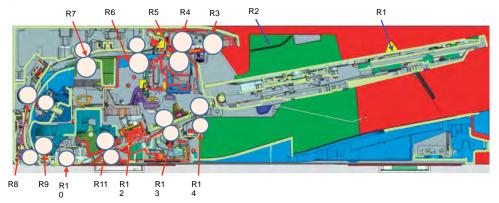


Table 1-16 Flow ADF overview (GX/z models)

Part		Function
R1	STACKER ASSY	Original paper input tray
R2	GUIDE-DOCU F&R	Original paper guide (front/rear)
R3	PICK ROLLER	Pick up original paper from the input tray
R4	ADF ROLLER	Original paper feed roller
R5	SEPARATION ROLLER	Original paper separation roller
R6	FEED ROLLER	Original paper transfer roller (A6 size)
R7	PRE REGI ROLLER	Original paper alignment roller (1 round)
R8	REGI ROLLER	Original paper alignment roller (2 round)
R9	SCAN IN ROLLER	Feeds an original paper before scanning
R10	SIMPLEX WHITE-ROLLER	Support of simplex scanning unit
R11	SIMPLEX SCAN OUT ROLLER	Transfer a scanned original paper to the duplex white-roller
R12	D-CIS MODULE	Back side image scan unit
R13	DUPLEX SCAN OUT ROLLER	Transfer a scanned original paper to the exit roller
R14	EXIT ROLLER	Sends an original paper to the exit tray

### ADF Sensors (GX/z models)

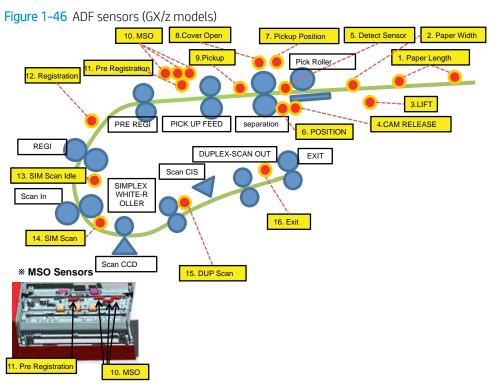


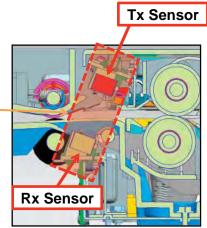
Table 1-17 Flo	w ADF (GX/z	models)	sensors
----------------	-------------	---------	---------

Callout	ltem	Function
1	Paper Length Sensor	Detects paper length
2	Paper Width Sensor	Detects paper width
3	Stacker Lift Sensor	Detects Stacker Position
4	Cam Release Sensor	Sensing 'Separation Roller' rotation
5	Detect Sensor	Detects if tray is empty
6	Position Sensor	Detects Stacker Position
7	Pickup Position Sensor	Sensing 'Pickup Roller' rotation
8	Cover Open Sensor	Detects if cover is open or closed
9	Pickup Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the feed path
10	MSO Sensor	Detects mix size
11	Pre-Regi Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the pre-regi path
12	Regi Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the Regi path
13	SIM Scan Idle Sensor	Sensing 'Scan In Roller' rotation
14	SIM Scan Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the Scan In path
15	DUP Scan Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the Scan Out path
16	Exit Sensor	Paper Exit Sensing

### Ultra Sonic Multi-feed (USM) (GX/z models)

Figure 1-47 Flow ADF Ultra Sonic Multifeed (GX/z models)



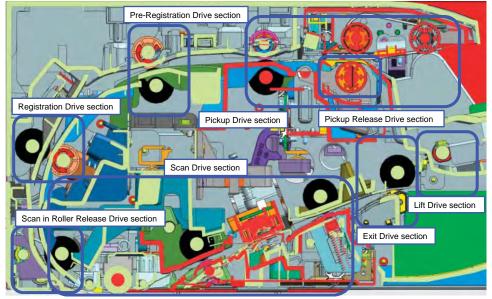


- This sensor detects multi-feeds.
- Component: Ultrasonic Sensor Tx Board, Rx Board , HIC Board (Amp and Filter)
- The Rx Sensor has a different level on each paper status: no paper, one paper, multiple papers.
- Detect the multi-feeding through the level change of Rx Sensor.
- Transmit and receive operation of 300 khz frequency.

### Flow (ADF) drive system (GX/z models)

The flow ADF drive system consists of eight motors. (GX/z models)

Figure 1-48 Flow ADF drive system (GX/z models)



The Flow ADF drive system (GX/z models) has eight sections: Pickup Release Drive, Pickup Drive, Pre-Regi Drive, Regi Drive, Scan-in Roller Release Drive, Scan Drive, Exit Drive, and Lift Drive sections.

### Flow ADF document lifting drive system (GX/z models)

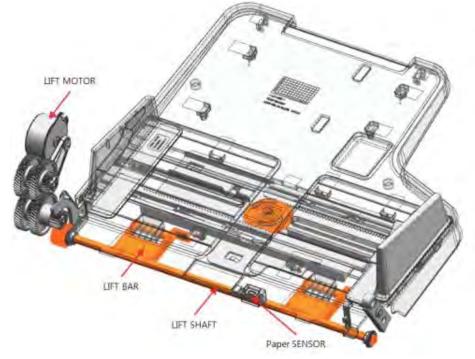


Figure 1-49 Flow ADF document lifting drive system (GX/z models)

- Component: LIFT MOTOR, LIFT SHAFT, LIFT BAR, PAPER SENSOR
- LIFT MOTOR Starts > LIFT SHAFT and LIFT BAR lift Tray
- PAPER SENSOR detects paper in the Tray
- Paper contacts PICK ROLLER and stops movement
- Document is passed through SCAN OUT SENSOR. Duplex scanning starts.

### Flow ADF Scan-In Roller Release Drive System (GX/z models)



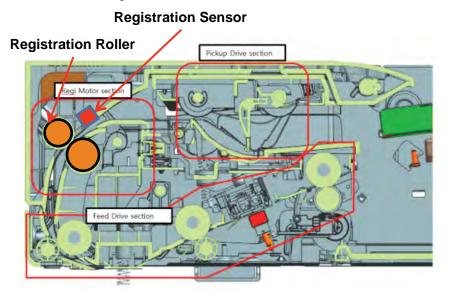
- Holds the rear of the paper using cam motion for improved scan quality
- Component: RELEASE MOTOR, RELEASE CAM, SCAN-IN IDLE ROLLER
- Motor and cam operation repeats for every piece of paper

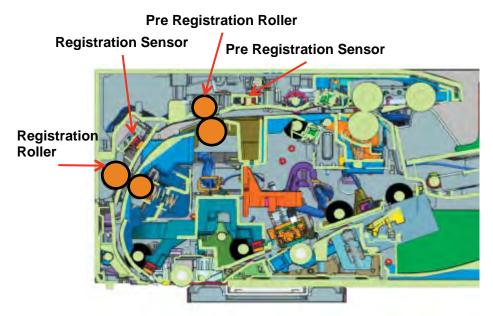
### Flow ADF specification (GX/z models)

Capacity	250 pages (stacker lifting)
Scan Speed	120/240 ipm
Pickup	Semi-Retard
Registration	2 times registration
Motor	8 each
Stacker	Lifting
Scanning	White Roller/White Bar
MSO	Support

# Flow ADF Registration (GX/z models)

Figure 1-51 Flow ADF Registration (GX/z models)

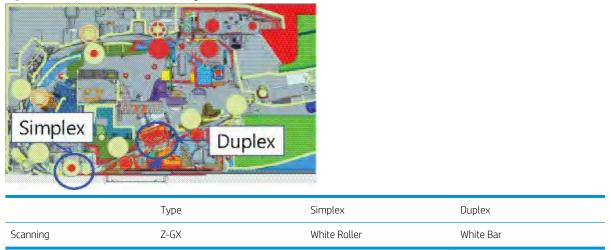




The Flow ADF (GX/z models) has two times registration.

# Flow ADF Scanning Position (GX/z models)

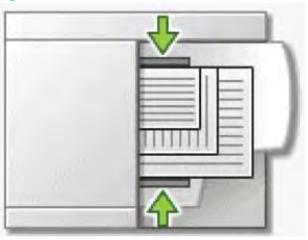
Figure 1-52 Flow ADF (GX) Scanning Position



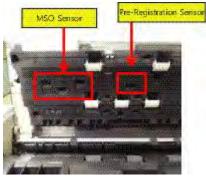
# Mixed Size Original (MSO)

The MSO detects the size of mixed size papers and sets the alignment of the papers to the rear.

Figure 1-53 MSO 1







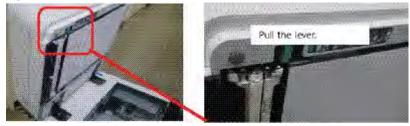
### Table 1-18 MSO3

Max width	A3 SEF	A4 LEF	B4 SEF	B5 LEF	A4 SEF	A5 LEF	B5 SEF	A5 SEF
	(297 mm)	(297 mm)	(257 mm)	(257 mm)	(210 mm)	(210 mm)	(182 mm)	(148 mm)
Length								
A3 SEF		Х						
(420 mm)								
A4 LEF	Х							
(210 mm)								
B4 SEF	Х	Х		Х				
(363 mm)								
B5 LEF	Х	Х	Х					
(182 mm)								
A4 SEF	Х	Х	Х	Х		Х		
(297 mm)								
A5 LEF	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х			
(148 mm)								
B5 SEF			Х	Х	Х	Х		
(257 mm)								
A5 SEF					Х	Х		
(210 mm)								

# Dual sensor cleaning method (GX/z models)

- Component: LEVER GUIDE EXIT F, GUIDE-EXIT UPPER ASSEMBLY.
- Open LEVER GUIDE EXIT F.
- Cleans with a D-CIS GLASS in the direction indicated.
- Cleans the GUIDE EXIT UPPER ASSEMBLY in the direction indicated.

#### Figure 1-55 Dual sensor cleaning method



#### Figure 1-56 Dual sensor cleaning method



### Flow ADF (GX/z models)

Model	Engine	Scanner			
		Platen	Z-GX		
Color	40 ppm	Same at whole	Scan Speed	USM	Capacity
	50 ppm	– machine	120/240 ipm	0	250 sheet
	60 ppm	-			
Mono	40 ppm	_			
	50 ppm	-			
	60 ppm	-			

# Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) dn bundles (LX/dn models)

### Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) (LX/dn models) overview

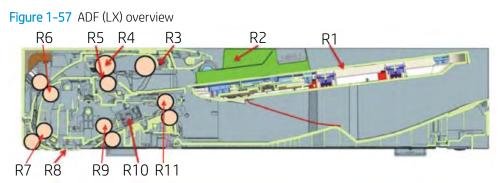
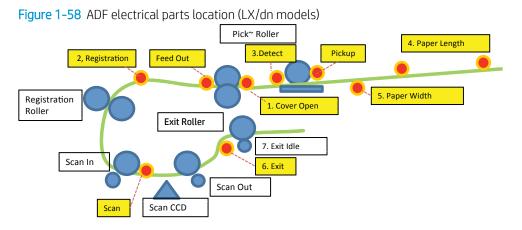


Table 1-19 ADF overview (LX/dn models)

Part		Function
R1	STACKER ASSY	Original paper input tray
R2	GUIDE-DOC F&R	Original paper guide (front/rear)
R3	PICK ROLLER	Pick up original paper from the input tray
R4	ADF ROLLER	Original paper feed roller
R5	SEPARATION ROLLER	Original paper separation roller
R6	REGISTRATION (REGI) ROLLER	Original paper alignment roller
R7	SCAN IN ROLLER	Feeds an original paper before scanning
R8	SIMPLEX WHITE-BAR	Support of scanning unit
R9	SCAN OUT ROLLER	Transfer a scanned original paper to the exit roller
R10	D-CIS MODULE	Back side image scan unit
R11	EXIT ROLLER	Sends an original paper to the exit tray

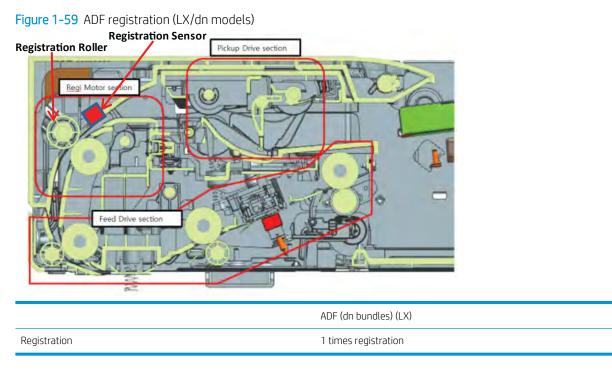
### Electrical parts location (LX/dn models)



#### Table 1-20 ADF electrical parts location (LX/dn models)

Callout	ltem	Function
1	Cover Open	Detects if cover is open or closed
2	Registration (Regi) Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the registration path
3	Detect Sensor	Detects if tray is empty
4	Paper Length Sensor	Detects paper length
5	Paper Width Sensor	Detects paper width
6	Exit Sensor	Paper Exit Sensing
7	Exit Idle Sensor	Sensing 'Exit Roller' rotation

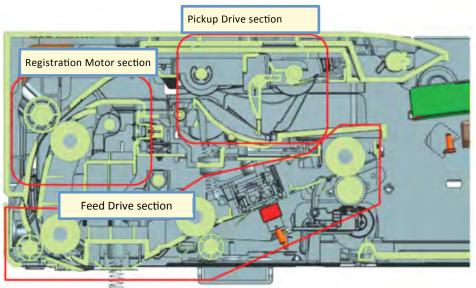
### ADF Registration (LX/dn models)



# ADF drive system (LX/dn models)

The ADF drive system (LX/dn models) consists of one motor and two clutches to transfer the paper.

Figure 1-60 ADF drive system (LX/dn models)



The ADF (DSDF) drive system (LX/dn modles) consists of two motors (BLDC and STEP) and one clutch that moves the paper.

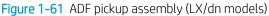
- BLDC Motor > Feed and pick
- STEP Motor > Regi
- Clutch > Pickup

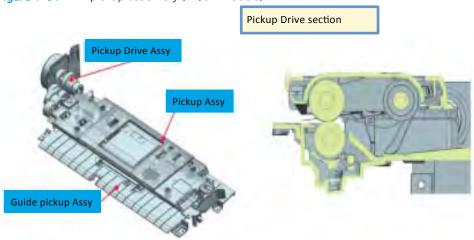
There are three sections: pickup drive section, registration (regi) motor section, and feed drive section.

The pickup drive section has three assemblies: pickup drive assembly, pickup assembly, and guide pickup assembly.

The registration motor section has the regi motor, trans gear, regi roller, regi-idle roller, regi sensor, and actuator.

### ADF original pickup assembly (LX/dn models)





After detecting the paper, one motor controls the drive system.

The CLUTCH-ELECTRIC provides the power to pick up the paper.

The CLUTCH cannot rotate inversely. The spring that is included in the ADF (LX/dn models) GUIDE PICKUP ASSEMBLY is connected to COVER-OPEN. When the CLUTCH does not drive, stand-by status occurs and stops the operation.

The ADF (LX/dn models) roller and pick roller are connected by the belt.

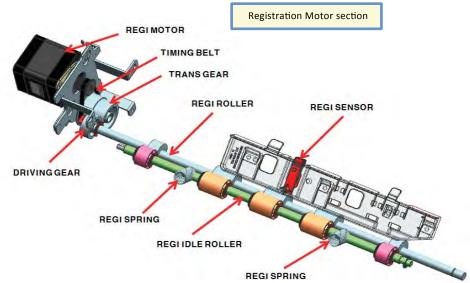
The ADF (LX/dn models) roller is provided with power while the paper is picked up and transferred to the registration roller. When the pickup drive is stopped and the registration roller is driven, the ADF (LX/dn models) roller becomes idle.

The normal process is:

- When the original is setting up, the detect-sensor is activated and the printing job starts. The motor and pickup clutch begin working. The pick roller then moves down and contacts the original in the tray.
- When the registration sensor detects paper, the pickup clutch stops.
- When the detect-sensor detects that the tray is empty, the motor stops and the printer enters stand-by status.

### ADF registration (regi) drive assembly (LX/dn models)

Figure 1-62 ADF registration (regi) drive assembly (LX/dn models)

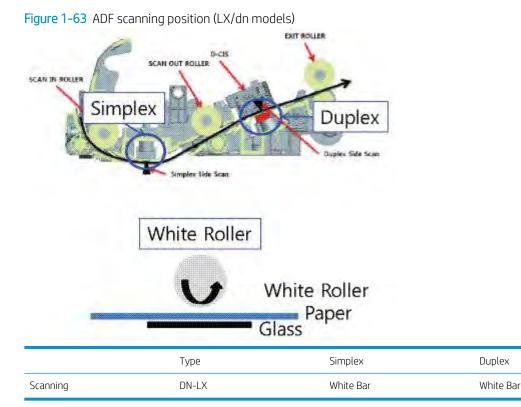


The registration drive uses the CLUTCH-ELECTRIC to drive the registration roller and transfer the paper to the ROLLER FEED.

The registration roller aligns the leading edge of the original. When the original is placed in the nip, the roller is rotated for alignment.

The CLUTCH-ELECTRIC repeats on/off to align each original.

# ADF Scanning position (LX/dn models)



# ADF Specification (LX/dn models)

	dn bundles (LX)
Capacity	100 pages
Scan Speed	80/160 ipm
Pickup	Semi-Retard
Registration	1 times registration
Motor	2 each
Stacker	_
Scanning	White Bar
MSO	-

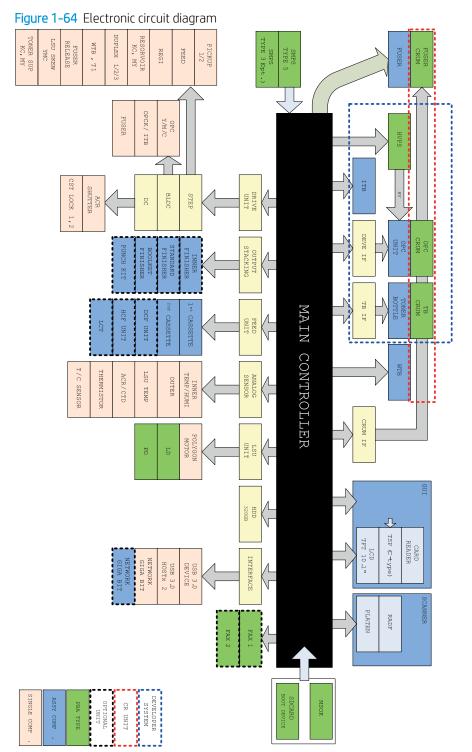
90 Chapter 1 Product specifications and description

# Hardware configuration

The electronic circuit system consists of the following:

- Main controller (main board)
- Control panel
- Document feeder (flow document feeder/document feeder) controller
- High-voltage power supply (HVPS) board
- Low-voltage power supply (LVPS-SMPS) board
- Fuser drive assembly

#### Electronic circuit diagram



The main controller handles the video controller, engine controller, and scan controller.

The main controller receives print data from the host through the network or USB port and receives copy data from the scan controller. The main controller uses this information to generate printable video bitmap data. It controls all modules required to print, including the laser scanner assembly, HVPS, FAN, fuser, and so on.

The main controller communicates with the drive system and other devices through Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (UART). The main controller communicates with and checks the life of the toner cartridge, drum, and developer units through I2C.

The main controller uses Quad Core CPU 1.5 GHz, DDR3 4 GB memory, Micro SD 4 GB, and a 320 GB SATA HDD to control the engine drive, video signal processing, and user interface.

A MICOM controls power to the fuser lamp and power to the system according to an optimized energy saving algorithm. The MICOM communicates with the OPE controller through the USB 3.0 protocol to display the system information on the control panel.

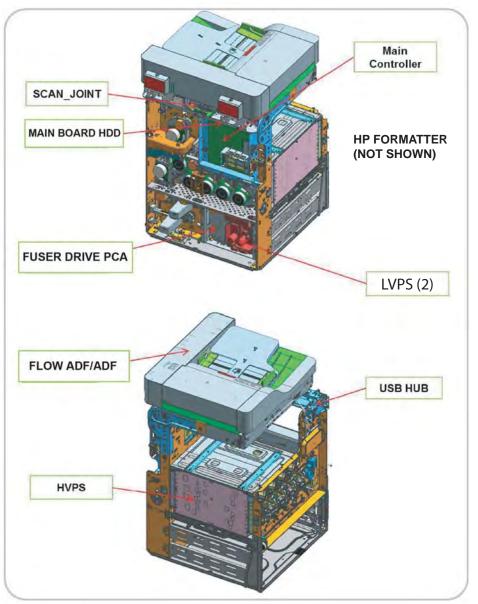
The document feeder controller controls some mechanisms required to scan continuously from the document feeder. The document feeder controller communicates with the main controller to synchronize scan timing.

The HVPS board generates and controls high-voltage channels. The fuser drive assembly controls power to the fuser lamp. The LVPS (SMPS) board generates 5 V and 24 V power for the system.

#### **Circuit Board Locations**

The following diagram shows the location of the printer circuit boards.

Figure 1-65 Circuit board locations



### Main controller (main board)

The main controller consists of the main processor (Chrous4N), memory (DDR3 2GB), flash (4 GB on main board; 2 GB on the front side and 2 GB on the back side), 1G Ethernet PHY, USB 2.0 HUB, Micom (power/fuser control), can/video/UI/fax signal interface connection, motor drive IC, engine signal interface connection, and power interface.

The main processor (Dual Core 1GHz CPU) controls video, engine, UI display, and communicates with various devices. The HDD is connected to the main controller by SATA cable and to other devices (ADF, dual cassette feeder, finisher, modem) by UART.

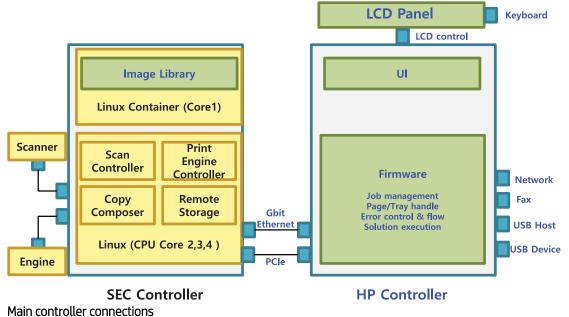
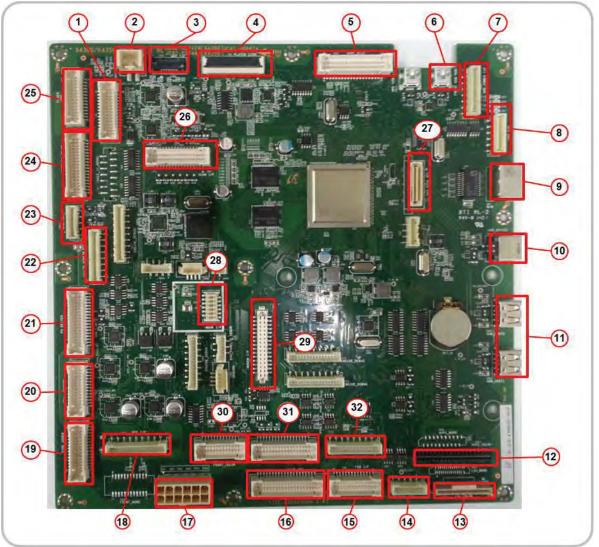


Figure 1-66 Hardware controller architecture

Figure 1-67 Main controller connections



Connection

Table 1-21 Main controller connections

1	EXIT	12	HVPS COLOR	23	SHUTTER
2	HDD POWER	13	Laser scanner assembly COLOR	24	TONER I/F COLOR
3	HDD I/F	14	HVPS PWR	25	FUSER
4	Image scanner CCDM	15	Fuser drive assembly I/F	26	SCAN I/F
5	Flow ADF DCIS	16	DEVE MTR	27	2nd GIGA NPC
6	FRONT USB HUB	17	POWER I/F	28	MSOK I/F
7	OPE POWER I/F	18	Dual cassette feeder I/F	29	MODEM JOINT
8	FIH I/F	19	Right door	30	COLOR FRONT
9	GIGA N/W RJ45	20	РІСКИР	31	OPC SENSOR

#### Table 1-21 Main controller connections (continued)

10	USB HOST 1/2	21	PH DRIVER	32	FINISHER
11	USB DEVICE	22	ID SENSOR		

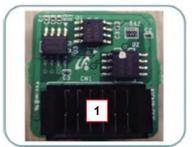
- Information
  - Part number: JC82-00540A (E77822, E77825, E77830 series)
  - Part name: PCA-MAIN

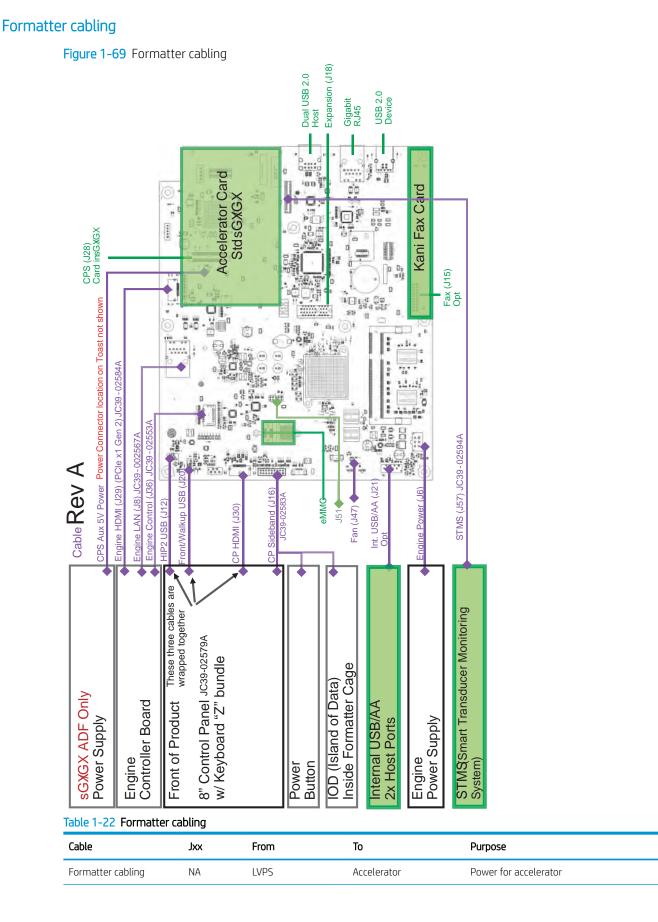
#### Master System Operation Key (MSOK board)

The MSOK board is used to store all system information and consists of serial flash memory, an EEPROM and an X-CRUM. The flash memory (4MB), EEPROM (256 kb), and X-e-label are used for all system operations (system parameter, device status, tech information, and service information).

NOTE: When a main board needs to be replaced, the MSOK board must be reinstalled to the new main board to retain the system information.

Figure 1-68 MSOK board





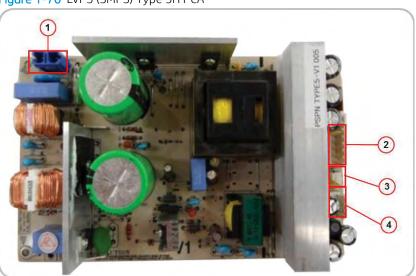
Cable	Jxx	From	То	Purpose
Engine HDMI	J29	Main board	Formatter	High speed print data (JC39-02584A)
Engine LAN	8L	Main board	Formatter	High speed print data (JC39-02567A)
Engine control	J36	Main board	Formatter	Low level engine control (JC39-02553A)
HIP2 USB	J12	Formatter	HIP	USB for HIP
Front walk-up USB	J20		Front of printer	USB for walk up
CP HDMI	J30		СР	Data to CP
				These three cables are wrapped together JC39-02579A
CP side band	J16	Formatter	CP	Power, reset, wake-lines, display power, keyboard. 3 cable assembly (SAM- JC39-02579A)
Power button	J16	Formatter	Power button	Power ON/OFF
IOD	J16	Formatter	IOD	Data to/from Island of Data
Internal USB/AA	J21	Formatter	Accessory	Accessory
Engine power	JG	LVPS	Formatter	5V supply to formatter

Table 1-22 Formatter cabling (continued)

<sup>1</sup> These cables are bundled together.

# Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS; Type 5H) / Switching Mode Power Supply (SMPS)

The Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS-SMPS) Type 5H PCA supplies electric power to the main PCA and other boards. The voltage provided includes +5V, and +24V from a 110V/220V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and overload.



#### Figure 1-70 LVPS (SMPS) Type 5H PCA

Specification

General input/output voltage

- AC 110V (90V-135V)
- AC 220V (180V-270V)
- Input current: 13.7A (110V)/6.8A (220V)
- Output power: 1500W
  - DC 5V: 55W/DC 5VS: 30W/DC 24V: 432W 0

#### Information

	110 V	220 V
Part number	JC44-00249A	JC44-00250A
Part name	LVPS 110V Type 5H	LVPS 220V Type 5H

# Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 4) (GX/z models)

**NOTE:** Some models have three LVPS boards. (Type 5 x 1 each, Type 4 x 2 each)

The low voltage power supply (LVPS) board supplies electric power to the main board and other boards. The voltage provided includes +5 V, and +24 V from a 110 V/220 V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and overload.

Figure 1-71 LVPS PCA (Type 4) (GX/z models) 2 3

1	INPUT_AC
2	OUTPUT_DC +24 V1/2/3 and DC +5 V 1/2 (to Main PCA)
3	24 V on/off

#### Specification

General input/output voltage 

- AC 110 V (110 V 127 V)
- AC 220 V (220 V 240 V)
- Input current: 6.3 A (110 V)/5 A (220 V)
- Output power: 205 W
  - DC 5 V: 25 W
  - DC 24 V: 180 W

### Information (Type 4) (GX/z models)

	110 V	220 V
Part number	JC44-00091D	JC44-00092D
Part name	LVPS 110V Type 4	LVPS 220V Type 4

### Input/output connector (Type 4) (GX/z models)

• AC input connector (CN1)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	AC_L	AC input
2	AC_N	_

#### • DC output connector (CN4)

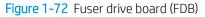
PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	+5V1	Power
2	GND	5 V ground
3	+5V2	Power
4	GND	5 V ground
5	+24V1	Power
6	GND	24 V ground
7	+24V2	Power
8	GND	24 V ground
9	+24V3	Power

#### • Signal Connector (CN3)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	GND	Active Low
2	24 V On/Off	-
3	GND	-

# Fuser drive board (FDB)

This PCA supplies voltage to the fuser AC, heater, and main PCA.

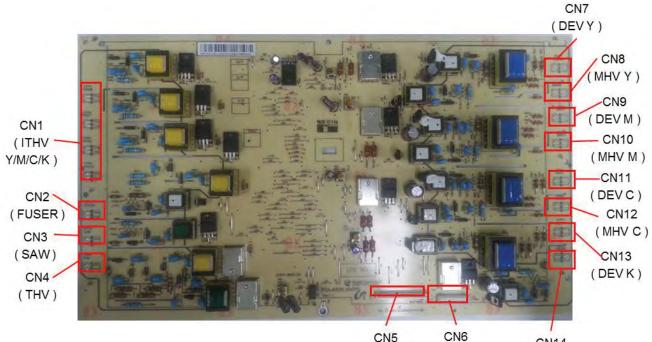


	Information			
		110V	220V	
	Part name	Fuser drive assembly V1	Fuser drive assembly V2	
•	Connection			
1	Heater I/F			
2	Fuser AC			
3	Fuser drive PCA I/F			
4	Туре 5Н			
5	Main S/W			
6	Inlet			
7	Heater S/W			

# High-voltage power supply (HVPS) PCA

The HVPS PCA generates 15 high-voltage channels, including ITHV (4), MHV (4), DEV (4), FUSER, SAW, and THV.

#### Figure 1-73 HVPS PCA



CN5 CN6 CN14 (HVPS I/F) (HVPS (MHV K) VOLTAGE)

### Specification

- Input voltage: DC 24V, 5V
- Output voltage:
  - MHV Y/M/C/K: -1182V
  - DEV DC Y/M/C/K: -498V
  - DEV AC Y/M/C/K: Vpp 1000V
  - THV1 Y/M/C/K: 19.97uA
  - THV2+: 1893V, THV2 -: 2250V
  - FUSER: 819V
  - SAW: -703V

# Eraser PCA (color models)

The eraser PCA has one LED. The LED is used for erasing the negative charges on the surface of the drum after printing.

Figure 1-74 Eraser PCA (color models)



# Waste Sensor PCA

The waste sensor PCA detects the waste toner level inside the toner collection unit.

Figure 1-75 Waste sensor PCA



### Information

- Part number:
- Part name: WASTE SENSOR RX

# **CRUM PCA**

THE CRUM PCA includes memory for the drum, toner cartridge, and fuser.

Figure 1-76 CRUM PCA



### Information

- Part number: JC92-02164A
- Part name: PCA-ZCRUM

# Toner CRUM joint PCA

The toner CRUM joint PCA is the interface PCA between the toner cartridge and the printer.

### Figure 1-77 Toner CRUM joint PCA



# Paper Size sensor PCA

The paper size sensor PCA is used for detecting the size of the paper in the tray.

Figure 1-78 Paper size sensor PCA

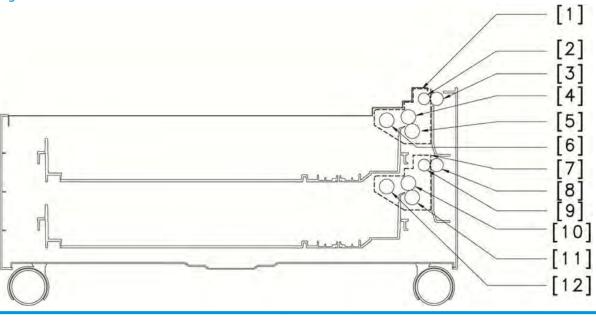


# Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) unit

The DCF is an optional device that stores additional paper.

#### Front sectional view

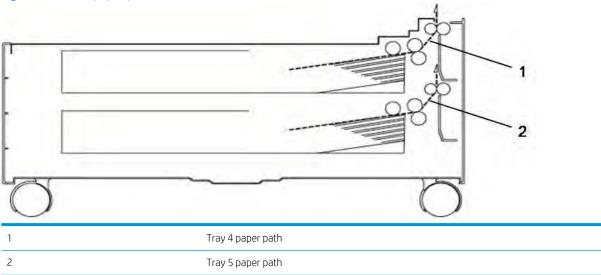
Figure 1-79 DCF front sectional view



ltem	Description	ltem	Description
1	Global HCI to tray	7	HCI 4 pickup assembly
2	Feed roller (HCI 3)	8	Feed roller (HCI 4)
3	Idle roller (HCI 3)	9	Idle roller (HCI 4)
4	Feed roller (HCI 3)	10	Feed roller (HCI 4)
5	Separation roller (HCI 3)	11	Separation roller (HCI 4)
6	Pickup roller (HCI 3)	12	Pickup roller (HCI 4)

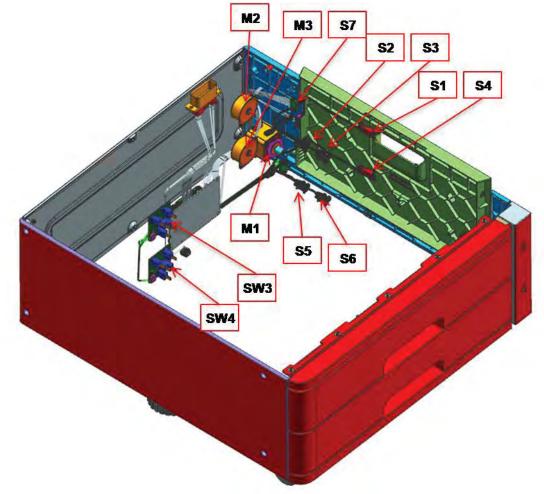
Paper path

Figure 1-80 DCF paper path



### Layout of electrical parts

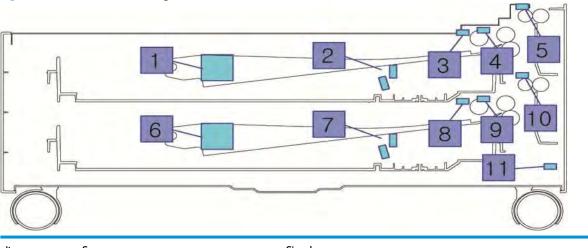
Figure 1-81 DCF electrical parts layout



ltem	Description	Part number	DC controller PCA
M1	Feed motor	9	CN5 3 to 6
M2	Tray 4 pickup motor	10	CN5 9 to 12
M3	Tray 5 pickup motor	11	CN5 13 to 16
SW1	Tray 4 auto size switch	12	CN9 1 to 4
SW2	Tray 5 auto size switch		CN9 5 to 8
S1	Tray 4 feed sensor		CN6 7 to 9
S2	Tray 4 limit sensor		CN6 4 to 6
S3	Tray 4 paper empty sensor		CN6 1 to 3
S4	Tray 5 feed sensor		CN6 16 to 18
S5	Tray 5 limit sensor		CN6 13 to 15
S6	Tray 5 paper empty sensor		CN6 10 to 12
S7	Door open sensor		CN3 1 to 2

### Sensor and signal

Figure 1-82 DCF sensor and signal

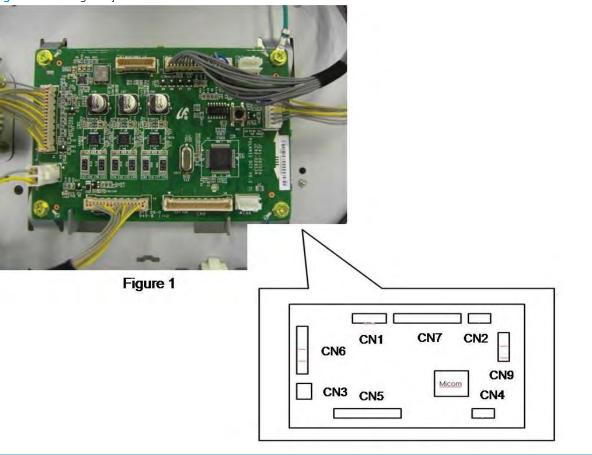


ltem	Sensor	Signal
1	P_Size_DCF 1	Tray 4 paper size analog signal
3	nP_Empty_DCF 1_IHCF	Tray 4 paper empty signal
4	Limit_DCF 1_IHCF	Tray 4 paper limit signal
5	Feed_DCF 1_IHCF	Tray 4 feed signal
6	P_Size_DCF 2	Tray 5 paper size analog signal
8	nP_Empty_DCF 2	Tray 5 paper empty signal
9	Limit_DCF 2	Tray 5 paper limit signal

ltem	Sensor	Signal
10	Feed_DCF 2	Tray 5 feed signal
11	nDoor_open	Door open signal

### Plug and jack location list

Figure 1-83 Plug and jack locations

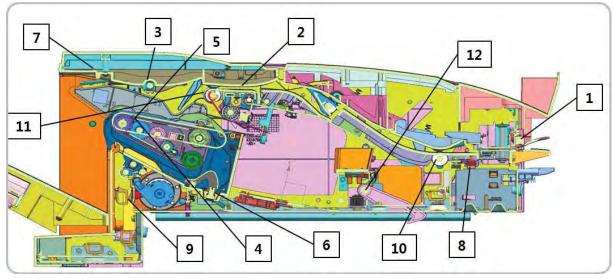


Number	Connection
CN1	Download tool I/F (minicube)
CN2	Debug I/F
CN3	Cover open switch (24V interlock switch)
CN4	USB I/F
CN5	EMPTY/LIFT/FEED (Tray 4 and 5) sensor
CN6	FEED/PICKUP 3, 4 motor
CN7	Interface with main
CN9	Paper size sensor (Tray 4 and 5)

# Inner finisher

### Sectional view

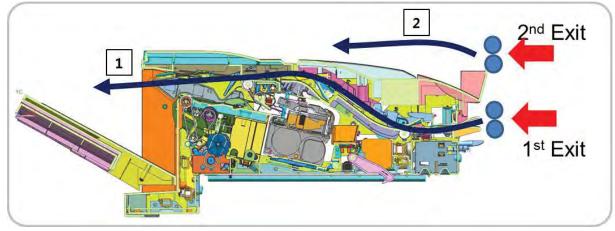
Figure 1-84 Inner finisher sectional view



1	Entrance sensor	8	Front door open sensor
2	Passthru sensor	9	Stacker tray home sensor
3	Paddle home sensor	10	Paper feed roller
4	Alignment home_F sensor	11	Paper exit roller
5	Alignment home_r sensor	12	Turning knob
6	Eject home sensor		
7	Jam door open sensor		

### Paper path

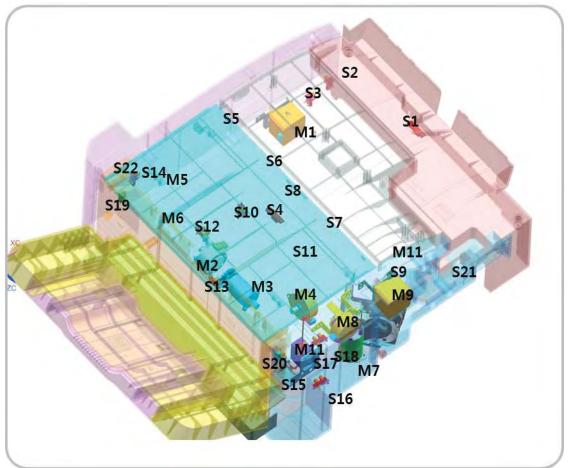
Figure 1-85 Inner finisher paper path



1	Finisher main tray — staple/offset/punch
2	Finisher top tray — stack only

### Electrical parts layout

Figure 1-86 Electrical parts layout

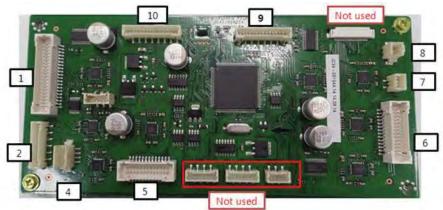


Callout	Part number	Part name
S1	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001381)	Entrance sensor
S2	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Shaft docking sensor
S3	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Dust box sensor
54	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001381)	Sub stay sensor
S5	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Stapler position sensor rear
S6	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Staple position sensor center 1
S7	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Staple position sensor center 2
58	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Exit sensor
59	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Stapler position sensor front
S10	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	End defence sensor

Callout	Part number	Part name
S11	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Eject sensor
S12	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Paper support sensor
S13	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Eject 2 motor sensor
S14	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Alignment position sensor rear
S15	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Paper holder position sensor
S16	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Tray home position sensor
S17	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Alignment position sensor front
S18	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Main paddle position sensor
S19	JC81-07403A	AS- sensor
S20	JC81-07403A	AS- sensor
S21	JC39-01610A	Switch front cover open
S22	JC39-02175A	Switch jam door open
M1	JC31-00169A	Entrance motor
M2	JC31-00009C	EJECTOR_1 motor
M3	Mabuchi	EJECTOR_2 motor
M4	JC31-00149A	Alignment motor front
M5	JC31-00149A	Alignment motor rear
M6	JC31-00149A	Paper support
M7	KIG	Tray motor
M8	JC31-00149A	Main paddle motor
M9	JC31-00169A	Exit motor
M10	JC31-00149A	Traverse motor
M11	TDS-10SL	Paper holder solenoid

### PCA connections

Figure 1-87 PCA connections



Number	Connection
1	CN3: REAR joint I/F
2	CN1: REAR sensor
3	CN10: Traverse mid sensor
4	CN8: Debug
5	CN2: REAR I/F
6	CN7: FRONT I/F
7	CN6: Stacker switch
8	CN9: Solenoid
9	CN4: Ejector and supporter I/F
10	CN5: Main I/F

# 2 Parts, diagrams, removal and replacement

- <u>Support portals and documentation resources</u>
- How to search for printer documentation
- Order parts, accessories, and supplies
- How to use the parts list and diagrams
- ESD precautions
- <u>Service approach</u>
- <u>Maintenance</u>
- <u>Main parts</u>
- <u>HP LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)</u>
- <u>HP LaserJet High-capacity input (HCI) tray (workgroup)</u>

# Support portals and documentation resources

# For additional service and support

HP service personnel, go to one of the following Web-based Interactive Search Engines (WISE) sites:

### AMS

- <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/ams-en</u>
- <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/ams-es</u>
- <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/ams-pt</u>

### APJ

- <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-en</u>
- <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-ja</u>
- <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-ko</u>
- <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-zh-Hans</u>
- <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-zh-Hant</u>

#### **EMEA**

• <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/emea-en</u>

### Channel partner resources

Channel partners, go to HP Channel Services Network (GCSN) at <u>www.hp.com/partners/csn</u>.

At these locations, find information on the following topics:

- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting

To view a list of control panel message documents per printer in WISE, enter document ID c05048451, to locate CPMD list.

Go to WISE and enter this document ID c05791539 for written instructions.

- Refer to "Error code and control panel message troubleshooting overview" on page 888 for more details.
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty and regulatory information

Channel partners, access training materials in the Partner First Learning Center at <u>www.hpi-external.sabacloud.com</u>.

To access HP PartSurfer information from any mobile device, go to <a href="http://partsurfermobile.hp.com/">http://partsurfermobile.hp.com/</a>.

# How to search for printer documentation

The CPMD, error codes, and other support documentation for each printer is found on the internal HP portals <u>GCSN</u> and <u>WISE</u> (formerly SAW). GCSN is available to HP channel partners and WISE is available to call agents, service technicians, and other HP internal users. The level of detail available will depend on your access credentials.

## How to search WISE for printer documentation

These instructions are for HP internal use by call agents, service technicians, and other internal users. To learn how to find support content in WISE, watch the video <u>here</u>.

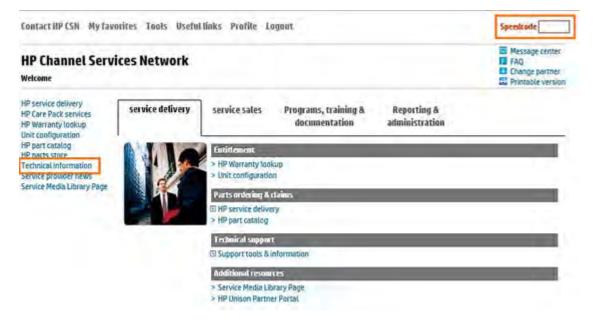
To view a list of control panel message documents per printer in **WISE**, enter document ID **c05048451**, to locate CPMD list.

Go to **WISE** and enter this document ID **c05791539** for written instructions.

### How to search GCSN for printer documentation

These instructions are for internal use by HP Channel Partners. To learn how to find support content in GCSN, watch the video <u>here</u> or follow these steps:

- 1. On the Home screen in GCSN, open **Technical information** using one of the following two methods:
  - Type TINF in the **Speedcode** field found in the upper right corner and press Enter, or
  - On the Home page, click **Technical information** in the left pane.



- 2. Under **Product Search**, select the **Type**, **Category**, **Family**, and **Series** that match your product model (leave the **Model** field as blank or the default).
- NOTE: Make sure to login to GCSN using your service-qualified credentials to access the most comprehensive content list available. To find out how to become service-qualified, contact your HP representative.

ria
tes
~
~
_
~
~
Y

3. Click Add Favorites and then click Add to add the printer to your Favorites list and allow you to bypass the **Product Search** fields next time for that particular model (Optional).

Product Search	Add Favorites	
Туре		
Printers and Multifunction	~	
Category	100	
Multifunction and All-in-One	~	
Family		
HP Laser Jet MFP and All-in-One P	roducts 🔽	

4. Clear all of the high-level check boxes.

Support Communications	Annuals and Guides	Support Information
Customer Advisory	Illustrated Parts Map	L ActionProcedureMap
Customer Bulletin	Install Guide	СРМВМар
Customer Notice	Maintenance/Service Guide	Support Information
Customer Work Instruction (CSR)	Parts Guide	Top Issue Notes If you are selecting top issue it will return only top issue document
Product Change Notification	QuickSpec	Software Support & Drivers Information
Security Bulletin	Reference Manual	Product Butletin/QuickSpes
Service Action Advisory	Service Guide/Manual	Buy Care Packs
Service Advisory	Technical Reference Guide	
Service Bulletin	Training Material	

- 5. Select the check boxes for the document types for which you want to search.
- NOTE: Select only the high-level **Manuals and Guides** search option if you are not sure in which type of manual or guide the content might be listed.

Support Communications	Manuals and Guides	Support Information
Customer Advisory	🖸 Illustrated Parts Map	C ActionProcedureMap
Customer Bulletin	🗆 Install Guide	CPMDMap
Customer Notice	Maintenance/Service Guide	Support Information
Customer Work Instruction (CSR)	Parts Guide	Top Issue Plater If you are selecting top issue it will return only top issue documental
Product Change Notification	QuickSpec	Software Support & Drivers Information
Security Bulletin	Reference Manual	D Product Balletin/QuickSpet
Service Action Advisory	Service Guide/Manual	Buy Care Parks
Service Advisory	Technical Reference Guide	
Service Bulletin	Training Material	
Service Notice	Troubleshooting Guide	
Service Product Announcement	Dpgrade Manual	
Service Program Announcement	🗹 User Gnide	
Technical Work Instruction (TWI)	Warranty Statement	
	White Papers	

- 6. Select Submit.
- 7. If needed, click **Back To selection Criteria** and narrow your search (the maximum allowed search result is 100 documents).
- NOTE: Do not select the **Top Issue** option unless you only want to view top issues for that model. All other available content will be filtered out.

Technical information type	Select this checkbox
CPMD	CPMD-Map
List of all CPMDs per product	Support Information
Installation Guide or Hardware Install Guide	Maintenance/Service Guide or Install Guide
Service cost document	Install Guide or Service Guide/Manual
Service guide or Service manual	Service Guide/Manual
Self-solve or troubleshooting document	Support Information
User manual or User guide	User Guide
Warranty and Legal Guide	Warranty Statement

# Order parts, accessories, and supplies

# Ordering

Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order genuine HP parts or accessories	www.hp.com/buy/parts
	or
	partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported Web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply Web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

# Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the diagrams in this chapter can be ordered. Refer to the table following the diagram or the parts lists at the end of this chapter to determine if a part is orderable.

# How to use the parts list and diagrams

The figures in this chapter show the major subassemblies in the printer and their component parts. A parts list table follows each exploded view assembly diagram. Each table lists the item number, the associated part number, and the description of each part. If a part is not listed in the table, then it is not a field replacement unit (FRU).

NOTE: In this manual, the abbreviation "PCA" stands for "printed circuit-board assembly." Components described as a PCA might consist of a single circuit board or a circuit board plus other parts, such as cables and sensors.

# **ESD** precautions

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when

removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

# Service approach

# Before performing service

- Turn off the power using the power button.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.

- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridges.
- Remove the Tray 2 cassette.

### After performing service

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

### Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

#### **Print-quality test**

- 1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
- 2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
- 3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
- 4. Print a configuration page.
- 5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
- 6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

#### Copy-quality test

- 1. Place the configuration page in the document feeder, print a copy job, and then verify the results.
- 2. Place the configuration page on the flatbed glass, print a copy job, and then verify the results

#### Fax-quality test

- 1. Place the configuration page in the document feeder.
- 2. Type a valid fax number, and send the fax job.
- 3. Verify that the send quality and the receive quality meet expectations.

#### Parts removal order

For procedures and/or steps that require identifying the right, left, or rear side of the printer, face the front of the printer for correct orientation.

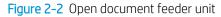
# Maintenance

## Machine cleaning for maintenance

- <u>Cleaning the document feeder white bar and contact image sensor (CIS) (LX/dn models)</u>
- <u>Cleaning the flow ADF white bar and CIS (GX/z models)</u>
- <u>Cleaning the scan glass</u>
- <u>Cleaning the laser scanner assembly window</u>
- <u>Cleaning the transfer roller</u>
- <u>Cleaning the color toner density (CTD) sensor</u>

### Cleaning the document feeder white bar and contact image sensor (CIS) (LX/dn models)

1. Open the document feeder unit.





2. Clean the document feeder white bar and CIS using a lint-free cloth.

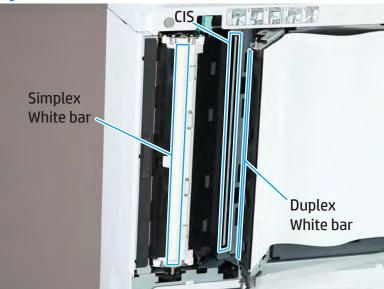


Figure 2-3 Clean document feeder white bar (LX/dn models)

### Cleaning the flow ADF white bar and CIS (GX/z models)

1. Open the ADF unit, peel back the white backing (callout 1), and then release the green tab (callout 2).

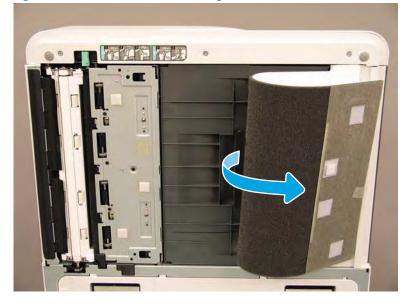


Figure 2-4 Peel back the white backing and release one tab (GX/z models)

2. Open the access door. Clean the simplex white bar (callout 1), the CIS (callout 2), and the duplex white bar (callout 3) using a soft, lint-free, clean cloth.

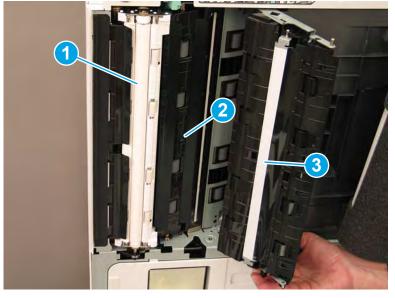


Figure 2-5 Clean flow document feeder white bar (GX/z models)

## Cleaning the scan glass

1. Open the document feeder unit.

Figure 2-6 Open document feeder unit



2. Clean the scanner glass using a lint-free cloth.

Figure 2-7 Clean scanner glass



### Cleaning the laser scanner assembly window

1. Open the front cover. Remove the toner collection unit.

Figure 2-8 Remove toner collection unit



2. Remove the laser scanner assembly window cleaning tool located on the front cover.

Figure 2-9 Remove laser scanner assembly window cleaning tool



3. Insert the laser scanner assembly window cleaning tool into each color entrance.

Slowly remove and reinsert the cleaning tool.



Figure 2-10 Laser scanner assembly color entrances

4. Repeat the previous step at least five times for each laser scanner assembly window.

## Cleaning the transfer roller

1. Open the right door.

Figure 2-11 Open right door



2. Clean the transfer roller (A) using a lint-free cloth.

Figure 2-12 Transfer roller cleaning

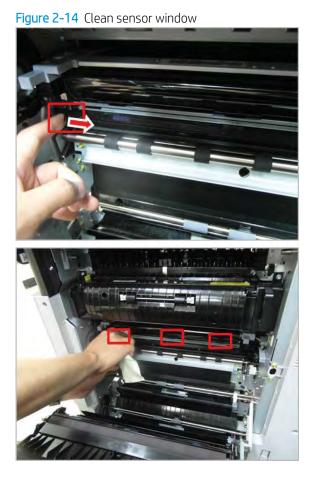


## Cleaning the color toner density (CTD) sensor

- 1. Open the right door.
  - Figure 2-13 Open right door



2. Clean the sensor window using a lint-free cloth while pushing the shutter to the right.



- **3.** Close the right door.
- 4. Enter service mode. Select "CTD Sensor Cleaning".

Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment > CTD Sensor Cleaning

5. When the confirmation screen appears, select "Yes".

# Main parts

# Main assembly

Figure 2-15 Main assembly

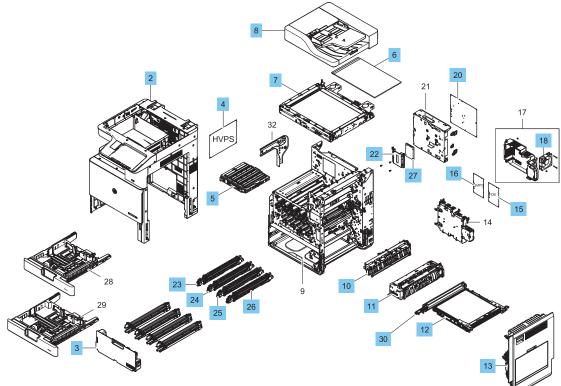


Table 2-1 Main assembly

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Cover, top	JC96-02090A	1
3	Toner Collection Unit (TCU)	X3A83-67923	1
4	HVPS 24	JC44-00212C on page 358	1
5	Laser scanner unit	JC97-04864A on page 361	1
6	ADF White backing (LX/dn bundles)	JC63-05410A on page 135	1
6	ADF White backing (GX/z bundles)	JC63-05795A on page 138	1
7	Scanner assembly	JC97-04907A on page 150	1
8	ADF, whole unit (LX/dn models only)	JC97-04954A on page 141	1
8	Flow ADF, whole unit (GX/z models only)	JC97-04955A on page 145	1
10	Exit	JC90-01118B on page 160	1
11	Fuser, 220V	JC82-00485A on page 163	1
11	Fuser, 110V	JC82-00472A on page 163	1
12	Image Transfer Belt Assembly	JC98-00980D on page 172	1
13	Right door	JC95-02079A on page 165	1
15	Fuser drive board, 220V	JC44-00211D on page 179	1
15	Fuser drive board, 110V	JC44-00210D on page 179	1
16	LVPS (SMPS), type 5H, 110V	JC44-00249A on page 183	1
16	LVPS (SMPS), type 4, 110V	JC44–00091D on page 183	1
16	LVPS (SMPS), type 5H, 220V	JC44-00250A on page 183	1
16	LVPS (SMPS), type 4, 220V	JC44-00092D on page 183	1
18	Fan-Type 8 LVPS	JC31-00162A on page 187	1
20	Main board PCA with heat sink	JC82-00540A on page 213	1
22	HDD Bracket	JC93-01440A	1
23	Developer unit, Y	JC96-11663A on page 219	1
24	Developer unit, M	JC96-11664A on page 219	1
25	Developer unit, C	JC96-11665A on page 219	1
26	Developer unit, K	JC96-11666A on page 219	1
27	HDD 320GB	5851-6712 on page 237	1
30	ITB cleaner	JC96-06246A on page 169	1
Not shown	Cable,Sata, Main HDD	JC39-01202A	1
Not shown	Formatter HDD - 320 GB SED	5851-6712 on page 201	1
Not shown	Cable, PWR, Main HDD	JC39-01943A	1
Not shown	PCA Sada Riser	B5L29-60001	1
Not shown	2.5" 500G 5400r FIPS, Yarra BP1	B5L29-67903	1

# Table 2-1 Main assembly (continued)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
Not shown	HDD cradle	B5L46-40014	1
Not shown	Formatter PCA	X3A92-60001	1
Not shown	Formatter PCA - Obsidian Blue Angle	X3A92-60003	1
Not shown	Accelerator PCA	X3A62-60001	1
Not shown	Accelerator PCA - Toast Blue Angle	X3A62-60002	1
Not shown	Wire Clip Formatter	6502-001131	1
Not shown	eMMC card-16gb	B5L32-60002	1
Not shown	HIP Cover	B5L46-40021	1
Not shown	Formatter Cage	JC63-05674A	1
Not shown	HP LJ MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500	CC487A	1
Not shown	Island of Data Board	X3A92-60002	1
Not shown	Control Panel Interface Cable	JC39-02554A	1
Not shown	STMS PCA (SDS)	X3A61-60001	1
Not shown	HDMI Cable Formatter - DC Controller	JC39-02584A	1
Not shown	Imaging drum	X3A83-67905 on page 224	1
Not shown	Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) (service)	<u>B5L31-90902 on page 204</u>	1
Not shown	Jetdirect Wireless Print Server with NFC Kit	<u> J8030-61001 on page 206</u>	1
Not shown	Formatter HDD - 500 GB FIPS	B5L29-67903 on page 201	1
Not shown	Formatter HDD - 320 GB SED	5851-6712	1
Not shown	Switch, front cover open	JC93-00466A on page 228	1
Not shown	Switch, right door open	JC93-01467A on page 234	1
Not shown	Formatter PCA	X3A92-60001 on page 191	1
Not shown	Formatter cage	JC63-05674A on page 191	1
Not shown	320 GB main disk drive assembly	5851-6712 on page 201	1
Not shown	Control panel, Pulsar	B5L47-60101 on page 242	1
Not shown	Keyboard assembly (US)	<u>B5L47-60102 on page 246</u>	1
Not shown	Keyboard assembly (UK)	<u>B5L47-60103 on page 246</u>	1

# ADF white backing (LX/dn bundles)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the white backing assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC63-05410A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• ADF White backing (LX / dn bundles)

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing

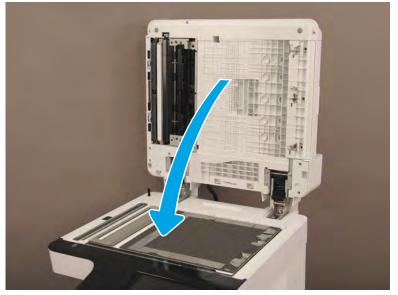
# White backing

- 1. Open the document feeder cover.
- 2. Peel the white backing away to remove.

**IMPORTANT:** Remove all the tape and foam from the bottom of the document feeder.

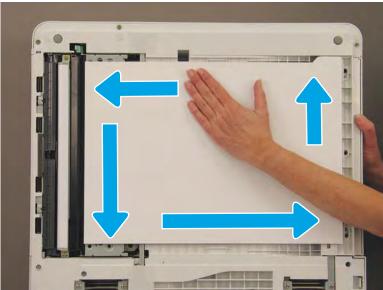
- **3**. Position the new white backing on the scanner glass.
- 4. Peel the adhesive tape backing off the new white backing.
- 5. Close the document feeder cover to attach the white backing.

Figure 2-16 Close the document feeder cover



6. Open the cover again and smooth the white backing.

Figure 2-17 Smooth the white backing



## Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# ADF white backing (GX/z bundles)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the white backing assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC63-05795A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• ADF White backing (GX / z bundles))

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

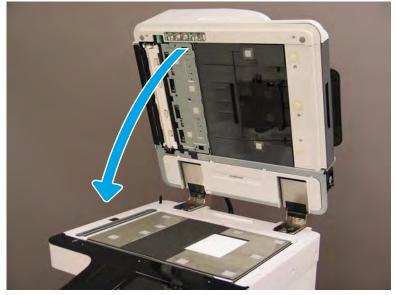
Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing

# White backing

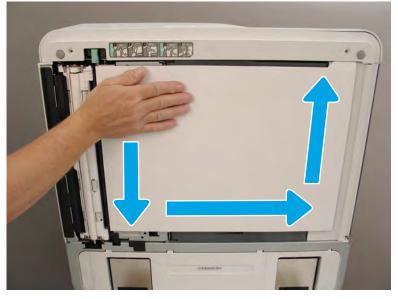
- 1. Open the document feeder cover.
- 2. Peel the white backing away to remove.
- **3**. Position the new white backing on the scanner glass.
- 4. Replace any damaged or missing velcro tabs by positioning them on the new white backing.
- 5. Close the document feeder cover to attach the white backing.

Figure 2-18 Close the document feeder cover



6. Open the cover again and smooth the white backing.

Figure 2-19 Smooth the white backing



#### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# ADF whole unit (LX/dn bundles)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder whole unit</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the document feeder whole unit assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC97-04954A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Document feeder whole unit assembly (LX/dn models)

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

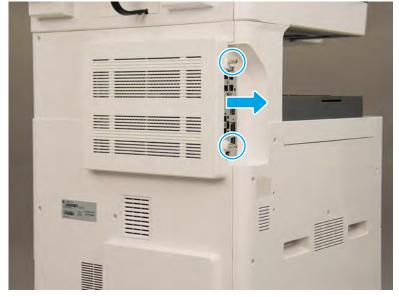
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the document feeder whole unit

1. Remove the formatter cover and the upper rear cover.

Figure 2-20 Remove the formatter cover and the upper rear cover



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

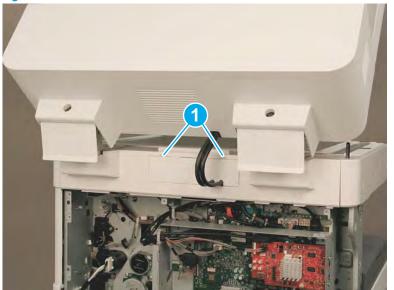


Figure 2-21 Remove the document feeder connector cover

**3.** Remove the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

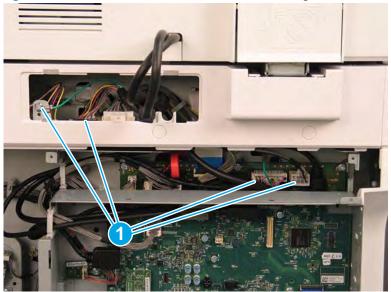


Figure 2-22 Remove the document feeder harness and ground wire

- 4. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the PCA ADF HIC. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.
- 5. Release one screw on each hinge stop on the back of the document feeder.



Figure 2-23 Release the document feeder hinge screws

6. Remove two screws. Slide the assembly back, and then lift the document feeder to remove.

Figure 2-24 Lift and remove the document feeder



# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Flow ADF whole unit (GX/z bundles)

- Introduction
- <u>Step 1: Remove the ADF whole unit</u>

• <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the flow ADF whole unit assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC97-04955A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• ADF whole unit assembly (GX/z models)

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

#### Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

#### Step 1: Remove the ADF whole unit

1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 2-25 Remove document feeder connector cover



2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.



Figure 2-26 Remove the cable choke

**3.** Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scanner PCA. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.



Figure 2-27 Disconnect document feeder harness

- 4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.
  - **IMPORTANT:** Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

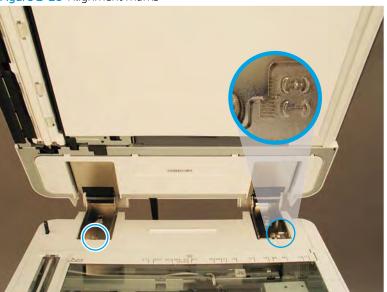
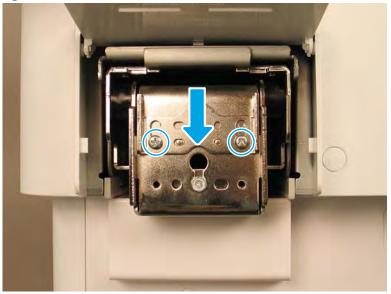


Figure 2-28 Alignment marks

5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

# Figure 2-29 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

Figure 2-30 Release the document feeder

NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🛕 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Scanner whole unit

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the scanner whole unit</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the scanner whole unit.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC97-04907A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Scanner whole unit part number

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the scanner whole unit

1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 2-31 Remove document feeder connector cover



2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

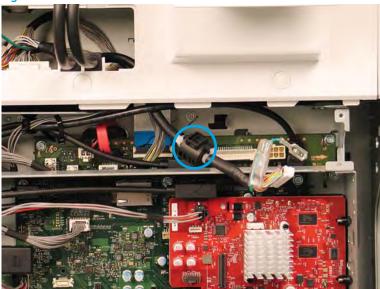


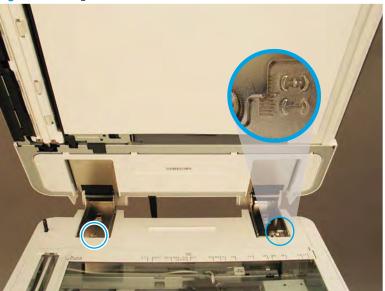
Figure 2-32 Remove the cable choke

**3.** Disconnect the document feeder harness from the PCA - ADF HIC. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.



Figure 2-33 Disconnect document feeder harness

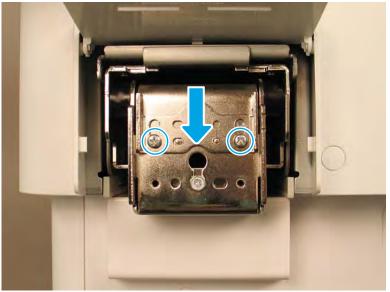
- 4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.
- **IMPORTANT:** If installing a replacment document feeder, note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.





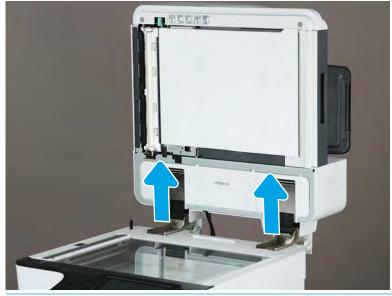
5. Loosen the two screws on each hinge stop.

# Figure 2-35 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

Figure 2-36 Release the document feeder



NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

7. Remove three screws.

# Figure 2-37 Remove three screws



- 8. Place the control panel in the upright position.
- 9. Gently pry the control-panel bezel from the center screw hole, and then pry from the center of the controlpanel bezel to the edges to release.

**CAUTION:** Do not pry against the scanner glass when removing the control-panel bezel.

**10.** Remove two screws on the control-panel frame.

Figure 2-38 Remove two screws



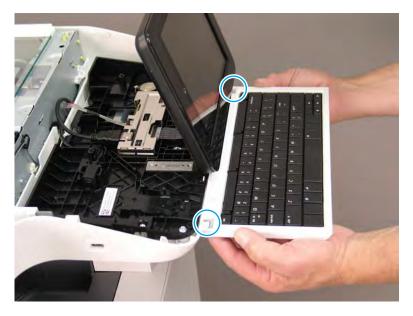
**11.** Disconnect one FFC, one connector, the HIP USB cable, and one HDMI connector.

12. Remove the USB interconnect cable from its retainer and reroute out of the way.



Figure 2-39 Remove USB interconnect cable

**13.** Slide the keyboard out, and then depress two latches to remove the keyboard.



- 14. Lift the control panel up from the front to release the tabs at the rear, and then remove the control panel.
  - 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Align the four tabs at the rear of the control panel, and then snap in the control panel.

**15.** Remove six screw-caps and six screws. It might be necessary to use leverage near the left hinge and then pull the cover toward the back.

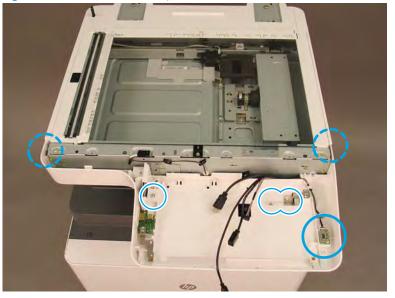
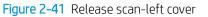
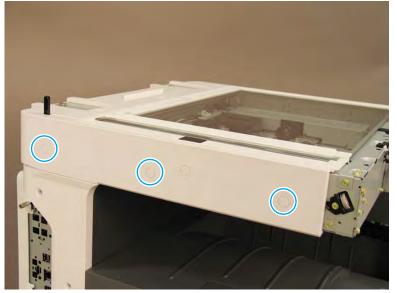


Figure 2-40 Remove screw-caps and screws and release scan-front cover

**16.** Remove three screw-caps and three screws. Release the scan-left cover.





- **17.** Remove three screw-caps and three screws (callout 1). Release the scan-right cover.
  - **NOTE:** At the front of the scanner, remove the bracket (callout 2) and install it on the replacement scanner whole unit.

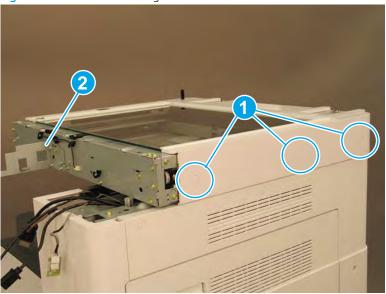
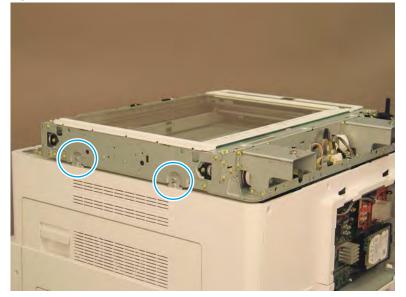


Figure 2-42 Remove scan-right cover

**18.** Remove two screws.

Figure 2-43 Remove two screws



**19.** Disconnect the two scan cables and one FFC at the top of the main board.

Figure 2–44 Disconnect scan cables



20. Remove three screws. Lift the scanner straight up and off of the printer to remove it.

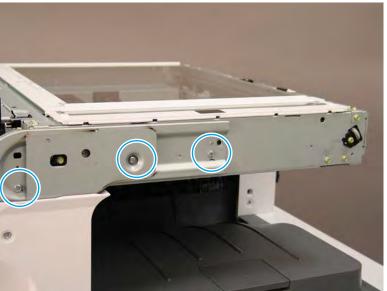


Figure 2-45 Remove three screws

- **NOTE:** After reassembly, utilize the target to adjust the scanner location as necessary.
- ☆ Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the scan bed by lowering the left side first and then lower the right. Align the screw holes on the right, and then install the screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reinstall the lower cover and ensure the cables are routed through the opening for the control panel and the bracket is properly aligned in the cover.

# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Exit unit

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the exit unit</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the exit unit.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC90-01118B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Exit unit

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

# After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the exit unit

- **NOTE:** Remove second exit drive if installed.
  - 1. Open the right door. Disconnect the Exit unit connector and two cable restraints.

Figure 2-46 Disconnect exit unit connector and cable restraints



2. Remove three screws, and then remove the exit unit.

Figure 2-47 Remove screws and exit unit

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

# **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Fuser unit

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the fuser unit</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the fuser unit.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC82-00472A

• Kit-HP LaserJet 110V Fuser

#### JC82-00485A

Kit-HP LaserJet 220V Fuser

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

•

# **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

## Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the fuser unit

- 1. Open the right door.
- 2. Remove the two screws shown below, and then remove the fuser unit.

Figure 2-48 Remove two fuser unit screws



#### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Right door assembly

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right door</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the right door assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC95-02079A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Right door assembly

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the right door

- **NOTE:** Remove second exit drive if installed.
  - 1. Remove three screws, and then remove the cover (A).
    - Figure 2-49 Remove cover



2. Disconnect the right door connector.

Figure 2-50 Disconnect right door connector



- **3.** Release the right hinge (callout 1).
  - **CAUTION:** The right hinge spring tension can be dangerous. Use caution when releasing the right hinge to avoid injury.

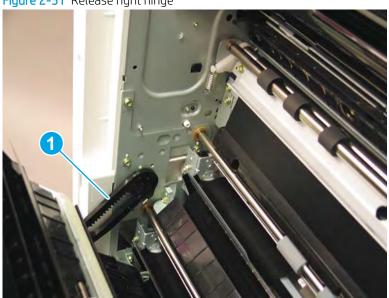
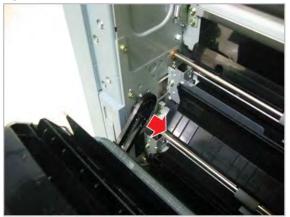


Figure 2-51 Release right hinge

4. Release the left dampener (callout 1).

Figure 2-52 Release left dampener



- 5. Remove the right door.
  - NOTE: Open the lower access door. If there is an HCI or 2x520 input device, release the dampener to clear the lower right door. Remove clockwise.



#### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Image transfer belt (ITB) cleaner

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the ITB cleaner</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the image transfer belt (ITB).

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC96-06246A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Image transfer belt (ITB) cleaner assembly

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

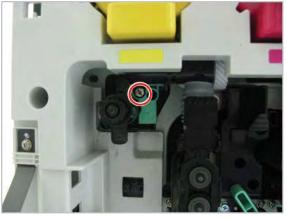
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the ITB cleaner

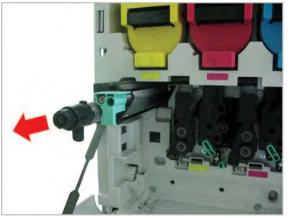
- 1. Open the front cover.
- 2. Loosen the captive screw.

# Figure 2-54 Loosen screw



**3.** Release the ITB cleaner.

Figure 2-55 Release ITB cleaner



# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Image transfer belt (ITB) assembly

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the ITB cleaner</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the right door</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the ITB unit</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the image transfer belt (ITB).

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC98-00980D

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Image transfer belt (ITB) assembly

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

## Turn the printer power on

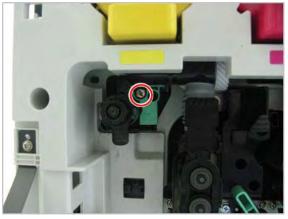
- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

## Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

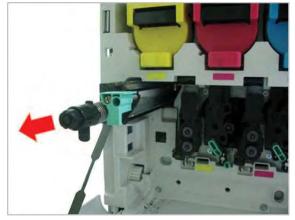
## Step 1: Remove the ITB cleaner

- 1. Open the front cover.
- 2. Loosen the captive screw.
  - Figure 2-56 Loosen screw



**3.** Release the ITB cleaner.

Figure 2-57 Release ITB cleaner



# Step 2: Remove the right door

- NOTE: Remove second exit drive if installed.
  - 1. Remove three screws, and then remove the cover (A).

Figure 2-58 Remove cover



2. Disconnect the right door connector.

Figure 2-59 Disconnect right door connector



- **3.** Release the right hinge (callout 1).
  - **CAUTION:** The right hinge spring tension can be dangerous. Use caution when releasing the right hinge to avoid injury.

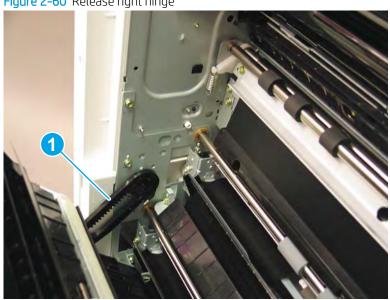
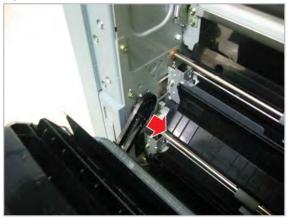


Figure 2-60 Release right hinge

4. Release the left dampener (callout 1).

Figure 2-61 Release left dampener



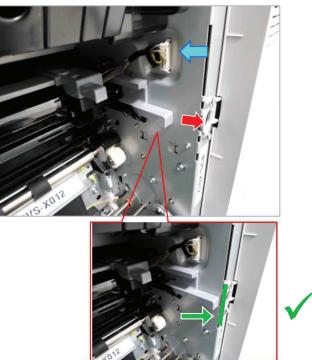
- 5. Remove the right door.
- NOTE: Open the lower access door. If there is an HCI or 2x520 input device, release the dampener to clear the lower right door. Remove clockwise.



## Step 3: Remove the ITB unit

1. Disconnect the ITB connector from the right. Slide the ITB latch toward the front of the printer to release the coupled drive.

Figure 2-63 Disconnect ITB connector and slide the latch



2. Remove two screws.

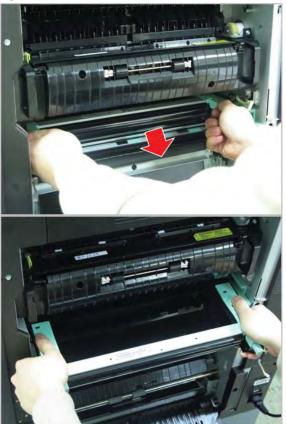
Figure 2-64 Remove two screws



3. Remove the ITB unit until the handles are fully visible. Release the ITB unit smoothly.

 $\triangle$  CAUTION: Make sure not to touch the belt surface of the ITB.

Figure 2-65 Release ITB unit



4. Before installing the new ITB unit, align the CAM position with the two arrows shown.

## Figure 2-66 Align CAM



5. Install the new ITB unit, and then install the ITB cleaner.

## Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Fuser drive assembly board (FDB)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the rear covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the LVPS cover</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the fuser drive assembly board</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the fuser drive assembly board.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

CAUTION: Wait five minutes after disconnecting the power cable before replacing the Fuser drive assembly board. Not waiting long enough after disconnecting the power cable can cause electric shock.

#### JC44-00210D

Fuser drive assembly board (110V)

#### JC44-00211D

Fuser drive assembly board (220V)

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

## Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

## Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the rear covers

1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

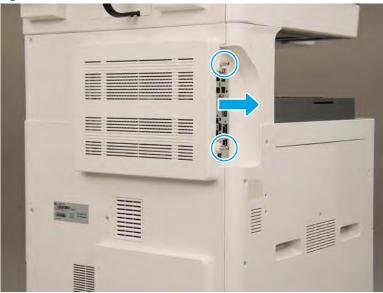


Figure 2-67 Remove the formatter cover

2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

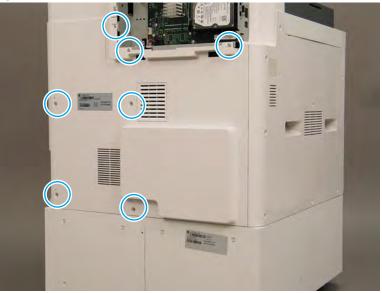
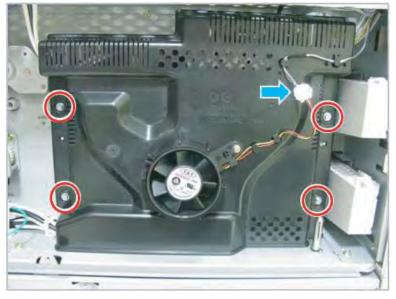


Figure 2-68 Remove the rear-bottom cover

## Step 2: Remove the LVPS cover

A Remove four screws, and then remove the LVPS cover.

Figure 2-69 Remove the LVPS cover



# Step 3: Remove the fuser drive assembly board

- ▲ Disconnect seven connectors and cable restraints on the fuser-drive assembly board. Remove four screws, and then remove the fuser-drive assembly board.
- NOTE: Several of the connectors have tabs that need to be pressed in order to release.

Figure 2-70 Remove the fuser-drive assembly board



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

## **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Scanner LVPS (Type 5) board

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear covers
- Step 2: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 3: Remove the scanner LVPS (Type 5) board
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the scanner LVPS board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

Click here for additional video instructions of this procedure.

MPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

Disconnect the power cable.

🛆 CAUTION: Wait five minutes after disconnecting the power cable before replacing the LVPS board. Not waiting long enough after disconnecting the power cable can cause electric shock.

#### JC44-00249A

## JC44-00250A

## JC44-00091D

## JC44-00092D

- LVPS 110V Type 5H (SMPS V1)
  - LVPS 220V Type 5 (SMPS
- LVPS 110 Type 4 (SMPS

#### LVPS (SMPS), Type 4, 220V

- V2)
- V1)
- To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

## **Required tools**

#2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip 

## After performing service

## Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on. 0

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the rear covers

1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

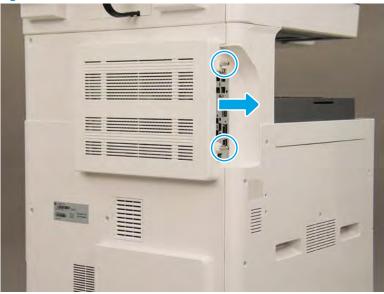


Figure 2-71 Remove the formatter cover

2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

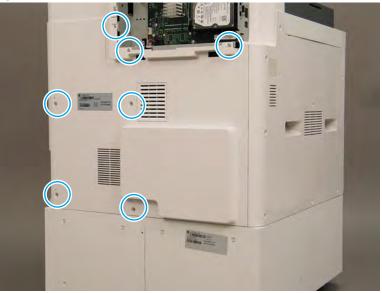
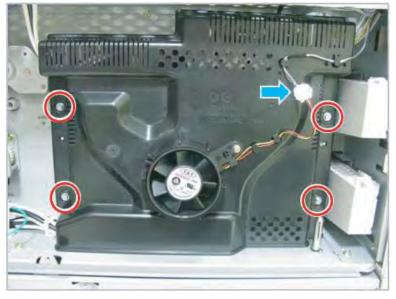


Figure 2-72 Remove the rear-bottom cover

## Step 2: Remove the LVPS cover

A Remove four screws, and then remove the LVPS cover.

Figure 2-73 Remove the LVPS cover



# Step 3: Remove the scanner LVPS (Type 5) board

▲ Disconnect four connectors, including one fuser-drive assembly connector and four other connectors, on the LVPS PCA (Type 5). Remove four screws, and then remove the scanner LVPS board (Type 5).

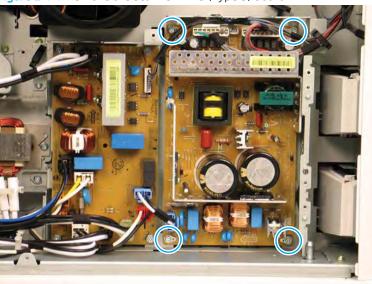


Figure 2-74 Remove the scanner LVPS (Type 5) board

# Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

**1.** Dispose of the defective part.

## **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# LVPS fan

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the rear covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the LVPS cover</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the LVPS fan</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the LVPS fan assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

## JC31-00162A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Fan-Type 8 LVPS

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

## Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

## Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the rear covers

1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

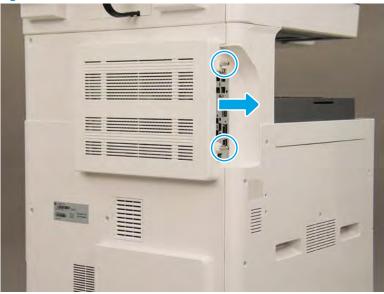


Figure 2-75 Remove the formatter cover

2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

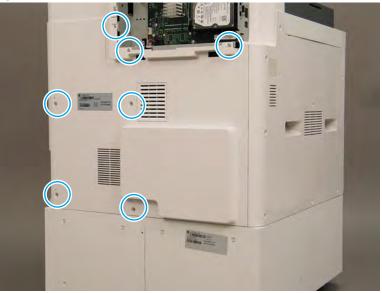
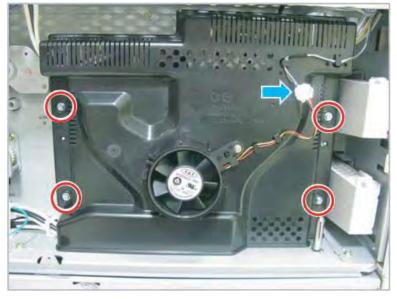


Figure 2-76 Remove the rear-bottom cover

## Step 2: Remove the LVPS cover

A Remove four screws, and then remove the LVPS cover.

Figure 2-77 Remove the LVPS cover



# Step 3: Remove the LVPS fan

Disconnect the connector and remove wire from retainer. Remove one screw, and then remove the LVPS fan.

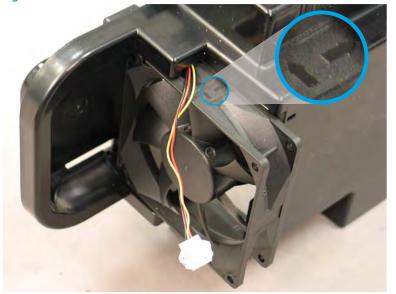


Figure 2-78 Remove the LVPS fan

Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling, verify that the fan is oriented as indicated by the arrows on the fan housing.

## Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

## **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Formatter and formatter cage

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the rear covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the accelerator board</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the hard-disk drive</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the Island of data (IOD)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the formater PCA</u>
- <u>Step 6: Remove the formatter cage</u>
- <u>Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the formatter assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

## JC63-05674A

Formatter Cage

- X3A92-60001
- Formatter PCA

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

## Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

## Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the rear covers

1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

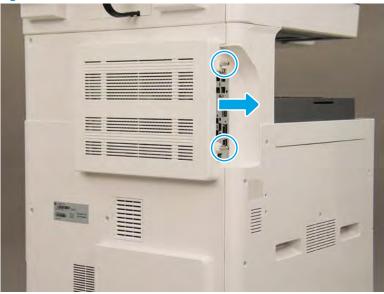


Figure 2-79 Remove the formatter cover

2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

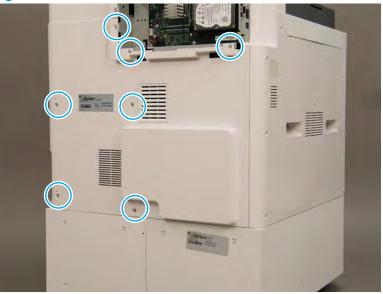
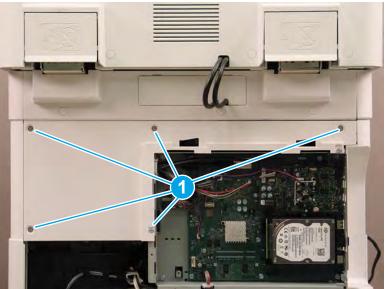


Figure 2-80 Remove the rear-bottom cover

3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

Figure 2-81 Remove the rear-top cover



## Step 2: Remove the accelerator board

- 1. Loosen two screws, retained in plastic clips, on the outside of the formatter cage.
- 2. Disconnect one connector, release the plastic locator pin, and then gently pry the accelerator board by the edges.
  - **IMPORTANT:** Do not lift the accelerator board by the heat sink.

Figure 2-82 Remove formatter screws



## Step 3: Remove the hard-disk drive

Release one retainer, and then remove the HDD.

**IMPORTANT:** The HDD and the IOD cannot be replaced at the same time.

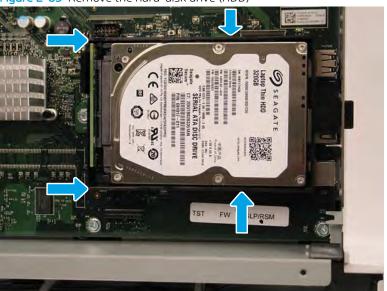


Figure 2-83 Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

## Step 4: Remove the Island of data (IOD)

- Disconnect one connector and remove one screw, and then remove the IOD.
- IMPORTANT: The HDD and the IOD cannot be replaced at the same time.

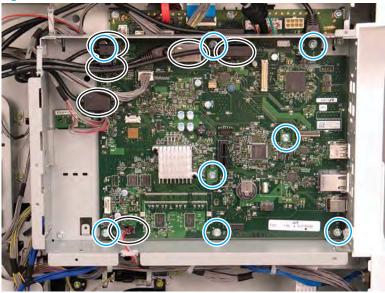
Figure 2-84 Remove the IOD



#### Step 5: Remove the formater PCA

Disconnect seven connectors and eight screws, and then remove formatter PCA.

Figure 2-85 Remove the formatter connectors and screws



# Step 6: Remove the formatter cage

- 1. Disconnect ten connectors and two cable restraints.
- 2. Remove four screws and screw-caps, and then remove the left-upper cover.

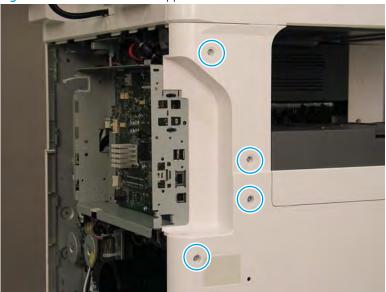


Figure 2-86 Remove the left-upper cover

3. Remove one screw from the side of the formatter cage (beneath the left-upper cover location).



Figure 2-87 Remove the formatter cage side screw

4. Remove three screws from the formatter cage face, and then release one tab to remove the formatter cage.



Figure 2-88 Remove three screws to remove the formatter cage

## Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Accelerator board

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the formatter cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the accelerator board</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the accelerator board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

• Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

## X3A62-60001

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

Accelerator PCA

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

#### Post service test

Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

#### Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

▲ Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

,

Figure 2-89 Remove the formatter cover

## Step 2: Remove the accelerator board



▲ Loosen two screws, retained in plastic clips, on the outside of the formatter cage. Disconnect one connector, release the plastic locator pin, and then gently lift the accelerator board away from the formatter by the edges.

🖉 NOTE: A connector on the back of the accelerator board holds the board on the formatter.

**IMPORTANT:** Do not lift the accelerator board by the heat sink.



## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Hard-disk drive (HDD - formatter)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the formatter cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This procedure is for removing the HDD installed on the formatter.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure.</u>

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### B5L29-67903

#### 5851-6712

• 500 GB FIPS HDD

• Formatter HDD - 320 GB SED

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

## Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

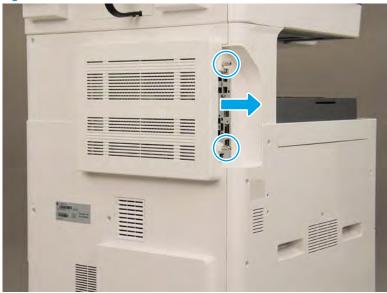
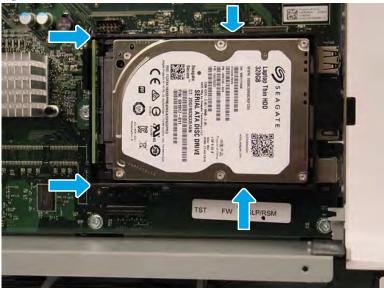


Figure 2-90 Remove the formatter cover

## Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

- Release one retainer, and then remove the HDD.
- IMPORTANT: The HDD and the IOD cannot be replaced at the same time.

Figure 2-91 Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Install accessory: HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Unpack the Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) accessory</u>
- <u>Step 2: Install the FIH accessory</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to install the Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) accessory.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

### Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.
- WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

## B5L31-90902

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) (service)

## **Required tools**

• No special tools are required to remove this part.

## After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

## Post service test

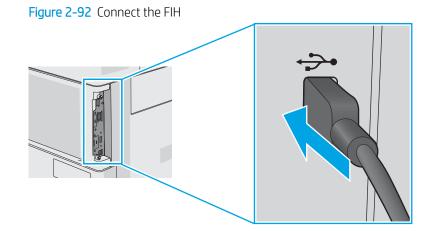
Make sure that the printer initializes to a **Ready** state.

Connect a third party solution to the FIH, and then verify it correctly functions.

## Step 1: Unpack the Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) accessory

### Step 2: Install the FIH accessory

Locate the USB connector on the printer formatter. Connect the FIH to this connector



#### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

**A** CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# NFC Kit Installation

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Unpack the NFC kit</u>
- <u>Step 2: Install the NFC kit</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to install the NFC kit accessory.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure.</u>

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

## Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### J8030-61001

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Jetdirect Wireless Print Server with NFC Kit

### **Required tools**

• No special tools are required to remove this part.

## After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

### Post service test

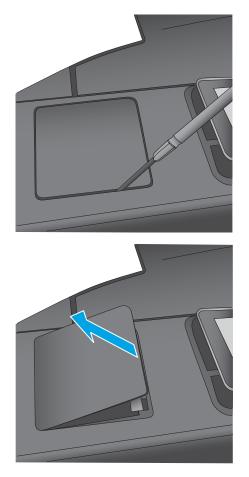
Make sure that the printer initializes to a **Ready** state.

Connect a third party solution to the FIH, and then verify it correctly functions.

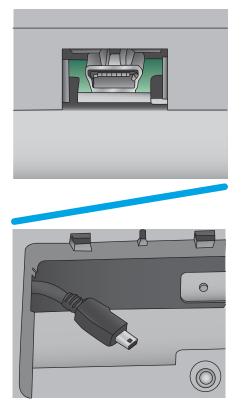
## Step 1: Unpack the NFC kit

## Step 2: Install the NFC kit

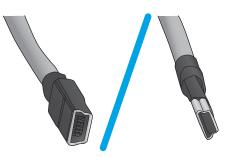
- 1. Turn off the power to the product.
- **2.** Remove the HIP cover.



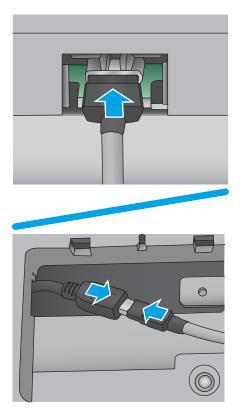
- 3. Identify the USB connector in the HIP and attach the appropriate USB cable:
  - **a.** Locate the USB connector that is along one of the short edges. A USB Mini B receptacle (callout 1.1) is the most common. However, on some models, a USB Mini B plug (callout 1.2) is used.



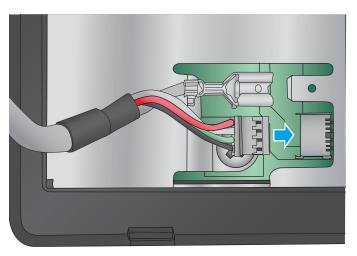
**b.** Select the appropriate cable from the two that are provided.



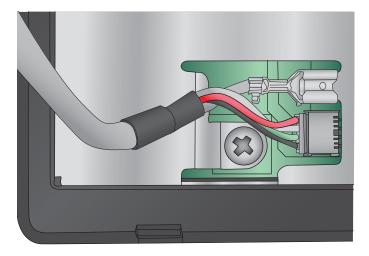
**c.** Plug the USB cable into the socket in the HIP. Note that the USB logo on the connector may face down on some models of printers/MFPs.



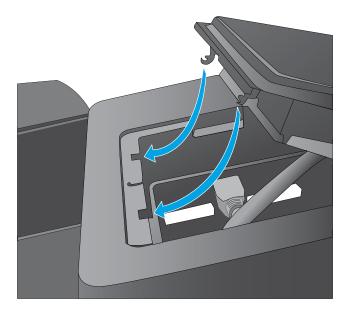
- 4. Attach the power and grounding ends of the USB cable:
  - NOTE: Before connecting the NFC accessory to the USB connector, verify that the product power is turned off.
    - **a.** Attach the white power connector of the cable into the corresponding receptacle on the underside of the NFC accessory with the contacts facing down.



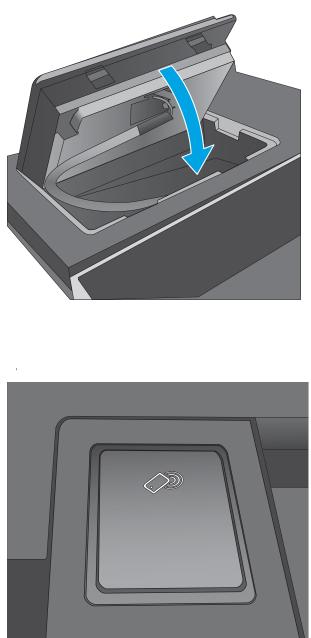
**b.** Attach the metal ground connector of the cable to the grounding tab on the underside of the



- 5. Insert the NFC accessory into the HIP recess.
  - **a.** Insert the NFC accessory into the HIP recess using the hook-shaped clips first.



**b.** Gently push the NFC accessory onto the rounded clips so that it is held securely in place within the recess.



6. Turn ON the power to the product. The NFC accessory will light up to confirm the installation is correct. A wireless network icon will also appear on the control panel.

# Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

## **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Main board

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the rear covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the formatter cage</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the main board</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the main board assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Click here for additional video instructions of this procedure.

## Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

## JC82-00540A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Main board whole unit

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the rear covers

1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

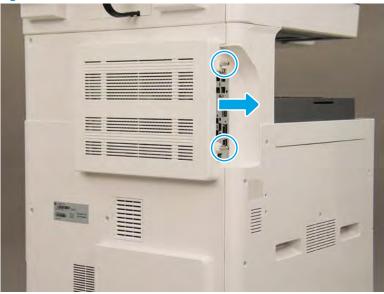


Figure 2-93 Remove the formatter cover

2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

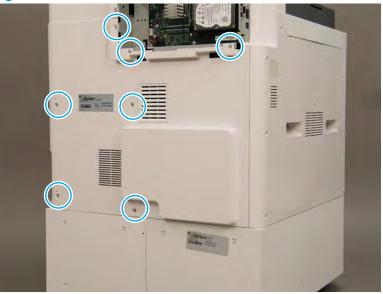
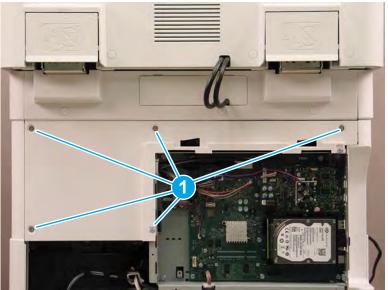


Figure 2-94 Remove the rear-bottom cover

3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

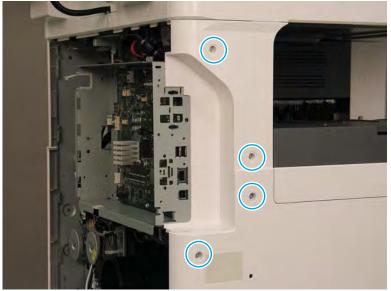
Figure 2-95 Remove the rear-top cover



# Step 2: Remove the formatter cage

- 1. Disconnect ten connectors and two cable restraints.
- 2. Remove four screws and screw-caps, and then remove the left-upper cover.

Figure 2-96 Remove the left-upper cover



3. Remove one screw from the side of the formatter cage (beneath the left-upper cover location).



Figure 2-97 Remove the formatter cage side screw

4. Remove three screws from the formatter cage face, and then release one tab to remove the formatter cage.



Figure 2-98 Remove three screws to remove the formatter cage

## Step 3: Remove the main board

1. Disconnect 24 connectors and three FFCs on the main board.

Figure 2-99 Remove the main board connectors and screws



- 2. Remove nine screws, and then remove the main board.
- **3.** Disconnect the MSOK from the removed main board, noting its orientation. Transfer the MSOK to the replacement main board and install it using the same orientation.
- TIP: The main board is marked to show the correct orientation of the MSOK when installed.



Figure 2-100 MSOK installation orientation

**Reinstallation tip:** See the screen-printed icon on the main board to ensure that the MSOK is aligned correctly during reinstallation.

### Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

Main parts 217

## **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Developer unit

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the developer unit</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the developer unit(s).

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC96-11666A

#### JC96-11663A

### JC96-11664A

•

- Kit-HP LaserJet Black Developer Unit
- Kit-HP LaserJet Yellow Developer Unit
- Kit-HP LaserJet Magenta Developer Unit

### JC96-11665A

•

Kit-HP LaserJet Cyan Developer Unit

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the developer unit

1. Turn off the printer. Open the front door and remove the toner collection unit.



Figure 2-101 Remove the toner collection unit

- 2. Remove the imaging drum that corresponds with the developer unit being replaced.
- **3.** Fold down the toner supply shutter.
  - **<u>A</u> CAUTION:** The toner supply cap contains toner. Use caution to avoid spilling toner during removal.

Figure 2-102 Fold down the toner supply shutter

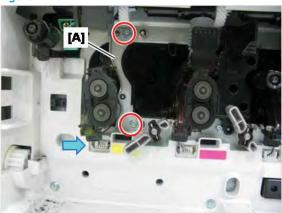


- 4. Push the shutter in to close the toner supply (callout 1). Grasp the toner supply connection on the black plastic and wiggle and pull out to disengage the connection from the developing unit. Rotate the toner supply up (callout 2).
  - **CAUTION:** Do not compress or squeeze the gray supply pipe. This supply pipe is filled with toner and will leak if squeezed.

Figure 2-103 Rotate swivel

5. Remove 2 screws and then remove the bracket (A). Disconnect the connector.

Figure 2-104 Remove bracket



6. Remove the developer unit.

Figure 2-105 Remove developer unit



- NOTE: The carrier in this printer series developer unit cannot be changed. The entire developer unit must be replaced.
- 7. Install the new developer unit. Make sure that the bracket is seated correctly and that the bracket screws are installed. Install the toner supply by swiveling down to the normal position, and make sure the toner supply shutter is pulled up to the "open" position.
- 8. Reinstall the imaging drum, and then reinstall the toner collection unit.
- 9. Turn on the printer while the front cover is open.

## NOTE:

- Service engineers must execute "Life Count Update" and "TC calibration" when replacing the developer unit.
- If the printer is turned on after closing the front cover, the toner will be supplied without TC calibration and might affect the image quality.
- **10.** When the control panel is activated, select the "Developer Unit" menu.

Information > Supply Status > Field Replacement Unit > Developer Unit

- 11. Select the "Developer Unit" for all colors that are replaced.
- **12.** Select the "OK" button.
- **13.** Close the front cover.

**WOTE:** TC calibration starts after the front cover is closed. Wait for the warm-up operation to complete.

### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Imaging drum

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the imaging drum</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the imaging drum.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

### X3A83-67905

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Imaging drum

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the imaging drum

1. Open the front cover.





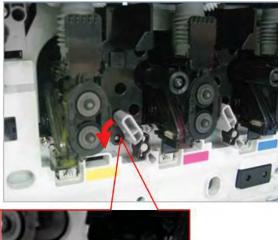
- 2. Open the right door and make sure the latch releases.
- **3.** Remove the toner collection unit.

Figure 2-107 Remove the toner collection unit.



4. Turn the locking level counterclockwise.

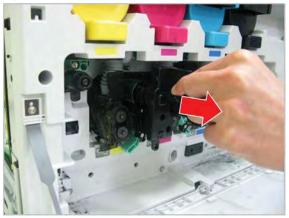
Figure 2-108 Turn level counterclockwise





5. Remove the imaging drum.

Figure 2-109 Remove the imaging drum



- 6. If installing a new imaging drum, remove from the imaging drum from its packaging, and then rotate the locking lever clockwise until it makes a solid "click".
- NOTE: If you intend to reuse an imaging drum, make sure the imaging drum surface is covered and not exposed to direct light or sunlight. Cover the imaging drum with a few sheets of paper or keep it in the original packaging until ready to install. When handling any imaging drum, do not touch the drum surface.

### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Front cover open switch

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the front cover open switch</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the front cover open switch assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

### JC93-00466A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Front cover open switch

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the front cover open switch

1. Open the right door.

Figure 2-110 Open right door



- 2. LX/dn models: Remove two screw-caps and two screws (callout 1).
  - **NOTE:** Do not dislodge the power button (callout 2) when the cover is removed.

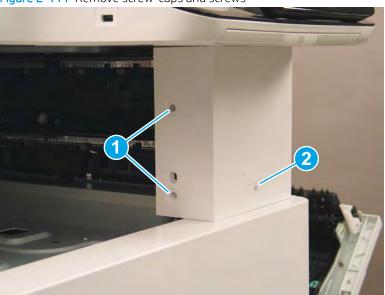
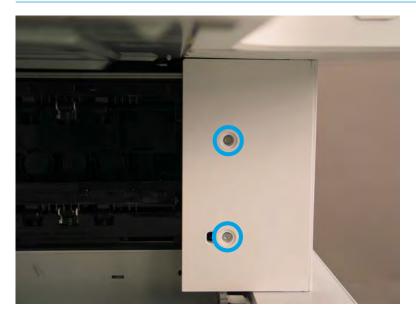


Figure 2-111 Remove screw-caps and screws

## 3. GX/z models: Remove two screws.

**NOTE:** Do not dislodge the power button when the cover is removed.



4. LX/dn Models: Remove one screw inside of right door.

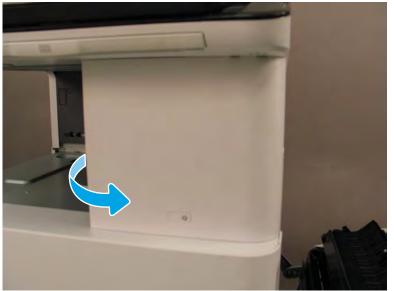


- 5. GX/z models: Remove two screws.
  - Figure 2-112 Remove screw



6. Remove the front-top cover.

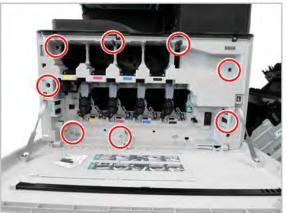
Figure 2-113 Remove front-top cover



- 7. Open the front door. Remove the Toner Collection Unit (TCU). Remove all toner cartridges.
- 8. Remove three tapping screws and remove the top front cover.

9. Remove eight screws, and then remove the front inner cover.

Figure 2-114 Remove screws and front inner cover



**10.** Remove one screw, and then remove the cover-open switch.

Figure 2–115 Remove screw and cover-open switch



# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Right door open switch

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right door open switch</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the right door open switch.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

### JC93-01467A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Right door open switch

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

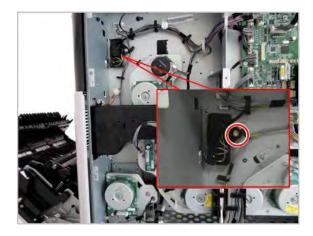
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the right door open switch

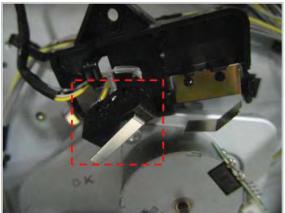
1. Remove the rear cover. Remove one screw securing the sensor.

## Figure 2-116 Remove rear cover and screw



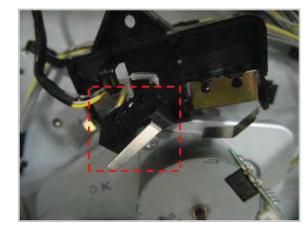
**2.** Remove the micro-switch.

Figure 2–117 Remove micro-switch



# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

**1.** Dispose of the defective part.



## **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# 320GB Main PCA HDD

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the main disk drive</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This procedure is for removing the 320GB Main PCA HDD installed beneath the rear exit cover and connected to the main board.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure.</u>

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## 5851-6712

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• 320 GB Main PCA HDD

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

## Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the main disk drive

- 1. Remove the inner finisher or paper pass, if installed.
- 2. Remove two screw-caps and two screws from the power-switch cover.

Figure 2-118 Remove the power-switch cover



3. Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then remove the exit tray.



Figure 2-119 Remove screw-caps and screws

4. Remove one screw and cover exit right.

Figure 2-120 Remove the cover exit right



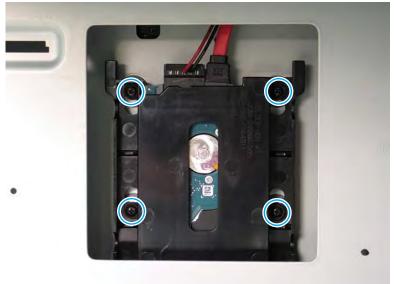
5. Remove four screws and three screw covers. Remove the cover exit rear by pulling from the right and rotating out.



Figure 2-121 Remove screws and cover exit rear

6. Remove four screws. Disconnect the cable and remove the main disk drive assembly.

Figure 2-122 Remove screws, disconnect cable and remove main disk drive assembly



- 7. Remove four screws, and then remove main disk drive from its bracket.
- 8. Install the new main disk drive assembly.
- **Reinstallation tip:** When reinstalling, make sure the plastic locator tabs on the rear exit cover are seated correctly.

#### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

**IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

**NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Control panel

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the control-panel</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the control panel assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure.</u>

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### B5L47-60101

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Control panel assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

# Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel

1. Open the document feeder, and then remove three screws.



Figure 2-123 Remove the document feeder bezel

- 2. Place the control panel in the upright position.
- **3.** Gently pry the control-panel bezel from the center screw hole, and then pry from the center of the control-panel bezel to the edges to release.

**A** CAUTION: Do not pry against the scanner glass when removing the control-panel bezel.

# Step 2: Remove the control-panel

1. Place the control panel in the upright position.

2. Disconnect one FFC, one connector, and one HDMI connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws on the control-panel frame.

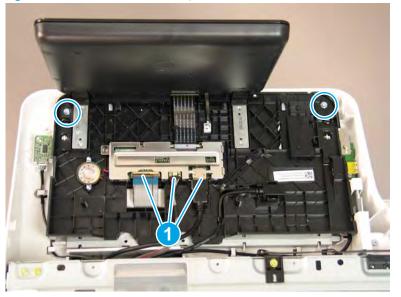


Figure 2-124 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors

3. Remove the USB interconnect cable from its retainer and reroute out of the way.

Figure 2-125 Remove the USB interconnect cable



- 4. Lift the control panel up from the front to release the tabs at the rear, and then remove the control panel.
  - Reinstallation tip: Align the four tabs at the rear or control panel, and then snap in the control panel.

# Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Keyboard

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the keyboard</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the keyboard assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### B5L47-60102

#### B5L47-60103

• US English Keyboard Assy

UK English Keyboard Assy

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

# After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

# Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel

1. Open the document feeder, and then remove three screws.



Figure 2-126 Remove the document feeder bezel

- 2. Place the control panel in the upright position.
- **3.** Gently pry the control-panel bezel from the center screw hole, and then pry from the center of the control-panel bezel to the edges to release.

**A** CAUTION: Do not pry against the scanner glass when removing the control-panel bezel.

# Step 2: Remove the keyboard

1. Disconnect one FFC.

# Figure 2-127 Disconnect one FFC



2. Slide the keyboard out, and then depress two latches to remove the keyboard.



Figure 2–128 Remove the control-panel keyboard

#### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Exit assembly

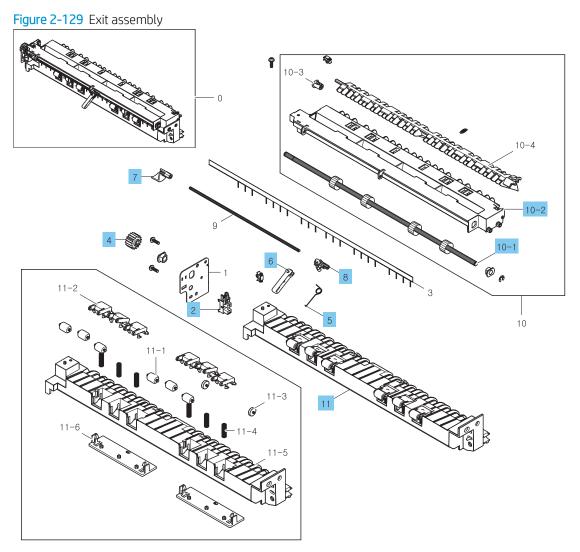
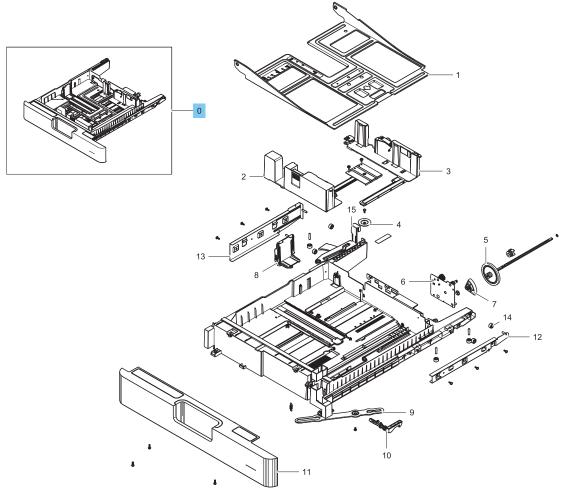


Table 2-2 Exit assembly

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Photo interrupter	0604-001393	1
4	Gear, exit	JC96-11649A	1
5	Spring, ts	JC61-07185A	1
6	Actuator, Exit Bin Full	JC66-04339A	1
7	Actuator, Full Exit	JC66-02218A	1
8	Actuator, Full Exit	JC66-02278A	1
10-1	Roller, face down exit	JC66-03183A	1
10-2	Upper exit guide	JC61-04799A	1
11	Lower exit guide	JC90-01133A	1

# Cassette Tray 2

Figure 2-130 Cassette Tray 2



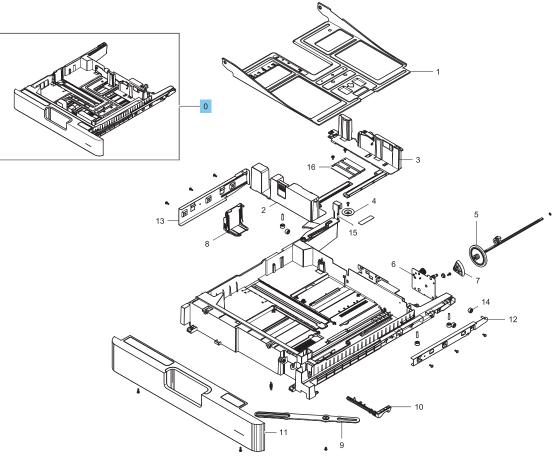
1

# Table 2-3 Cassette Tray 2

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Cassette Tray 2	JC90-01619A	1

# Cassette Tray 3

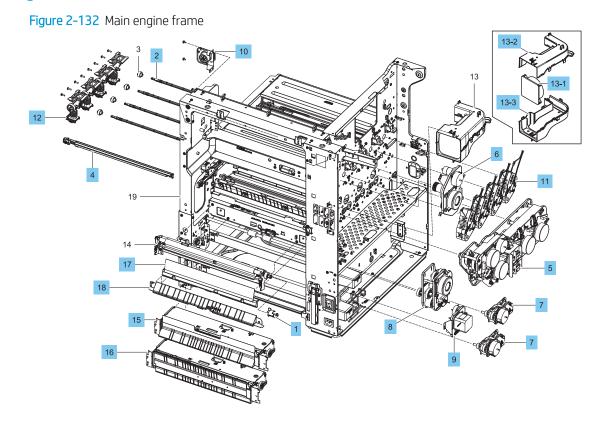
Figure 2-131 Cassette Tray 3



# Table 2-4 Cassette Tray 3

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Cassette Tray 3	JC90-01620A	1

# Main engine frame



# Table 2-5 Main engine frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Registration stopper	JC61-04900A	1
2	Feeding Duct Shaft	JC66-03164A	4
4	Registration Cleaner	JC93-00078C	1
5	Main drive	JC93-00915B on page 257	1
6	Fuser exit drive	JC93-00441A on page 263	1
7	Pickup drive	JC93-00442A	2
8	Registration assembly	JC93-00443A on page 332	1
9	Feed drive	JC93-00444A on page 267	1
10	TCU drive	JC93-00445A on page 270	1
11	Toner supply drive	JC93-00446B on page 273	4
12	Toner Duct	JC93-00483B on page 282	4
13-1	Fan, type 7 Fuser	JC93-00161A on page 287	1
13-2	Fuser duct, upper	JC67-00570A on page 287	1
13-3	Fuser duct, lower	JC67-00571A on page 287	1
15	Main frame first pickup	JC93-00511A on page 291	1
16	Main frame second pickup	JC93-00512A on page 291	1
17	Main feed first color	JC93-00536A	1
18	Main feed second	JC93-00537D	1
Not shown	Feed sensor 1	0604-001393 on page 295	1
Not shown	Feed sensor 2	0604-001393 on page 300	1
Not shown	Automatic color registration (ACR)	JC93-00895A on page 306	1
Not shown	Sensor, toner collection unit full	JC93-00492A on page 279	1
Not shown	Photo interrupter (fuser out sensor)	0604-001381 on page 313	1
Not shown	Photo interrupter (duplex sensor)	0604-001393 on page 317	1
Not shown	Photo interrupter (loop sensor)	0604-001393 on page 317	1
Not shown	Harness, engine side for DCF with connector	JC39-02187A	1

# Main drive unit

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the TCU</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the imaging units</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the rear covers</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the main drive unit</u>
- <u>Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the main drive unit assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure.</u>

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC93-00915B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Main drive unit assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

# Step 1: Remove the TCU

• Open the front door and remove the toner collection unit (TCU).



# Figure 2-133 Remove the TCU

# Step 2: Remove the imaging units

A Remove all imaging units.

#### Step 3: Remove the rear covers

1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

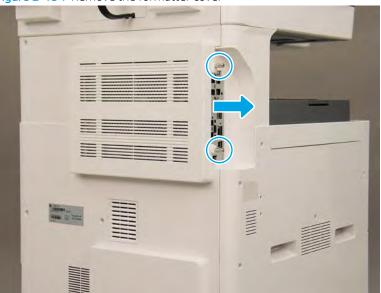


Figure 2-134 Remove the formatter cover

2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

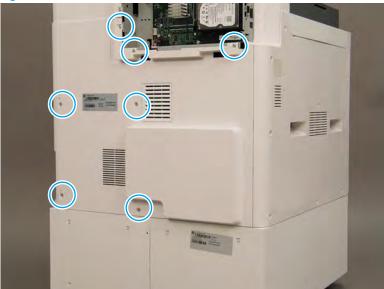
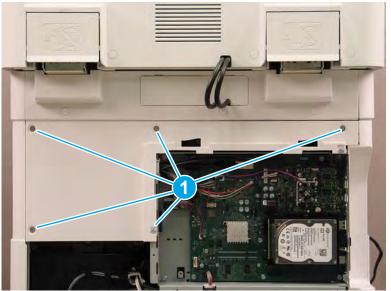


Figure 2-135 Remove the rear-bottom cover

3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

Figure 2-136 Remove the rear-top cover



# Step 4: Remove the main drive unit

1. Disconnect the alienation motor and the ITB motor.

- 2. Remove eight screws, and then remove the main drive unit.
- **IMPORTANT:** Remove and replace the screws in the order indicated on the chassis.

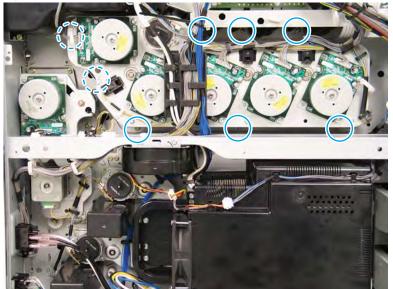


Figure 2-137 Remove screws and the main drive unit

- **3**. Remove the connector(s) for the motor(s) to be replaced.
  - NOTE: The following graphics show *all* the connectors associated with the main motors for reference purposes.

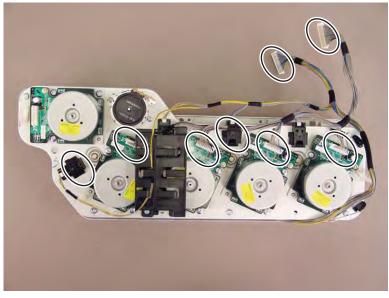


Figure 2-138 Main drive motor electrical connectors – top view

Figure 2-139 Main drive motor electrical connectors – photo interrupters



NOTE: To remove the photo interrupters, release the tabs on the back side. Use caution not to damage the plastic hooks.

# Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

# **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Fuser/exit drive assembly

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the rear covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the fuser/exit drive unit</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the fuser/exit drive assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure.</u>

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC93-00441A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Fuser/exit drive assembly

# **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

# Step 1: Remove the rear covers

1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.



Figure 2-140 Remove the formatter cover

2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

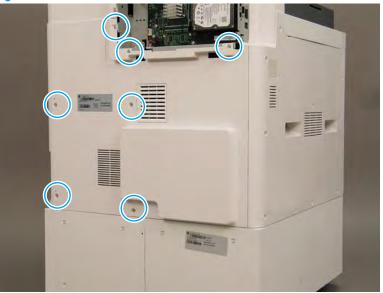
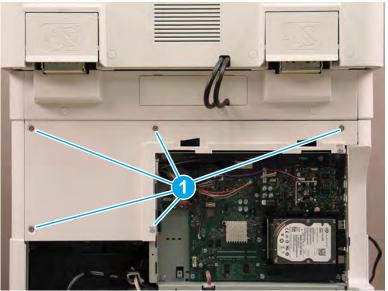


Figure 2-141 Remove the rear-bottom cover

3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

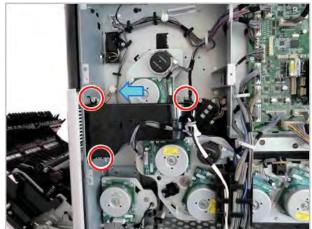
Figure 2-142 Remove the rear-top cover



# Step 2: Remove the fuser/exit drive unit

1. Disconnect the connector and remove the cable from the cable restraint. Remove the cable from the guides on the duct housing. Remove three screws, and then remove the Fuser-Duct.

Figure 2-143 Remove the fuser-duct



2. Disconnect two motor connectors. Remove three screws, and then remove the fuser/exit drive unit.

Figure 2-144 Remove screws and the fuser/exit drive unit



# Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Feed drive assembly

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the rear covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the feed drive unit</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the feed drive assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC93-00444A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Feed drive assembly

# **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

#### Step 1: Remove the rear covers

1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

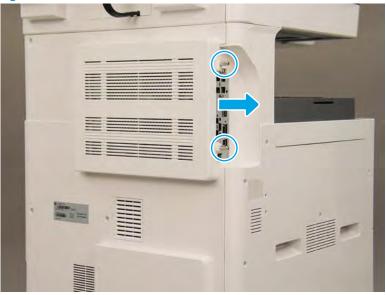


Figure 2-145 Remove the formatter cover

2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

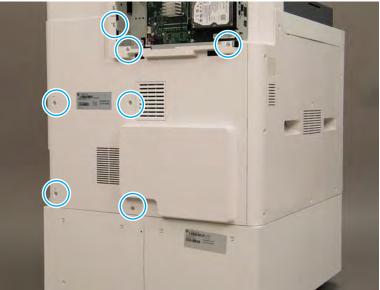
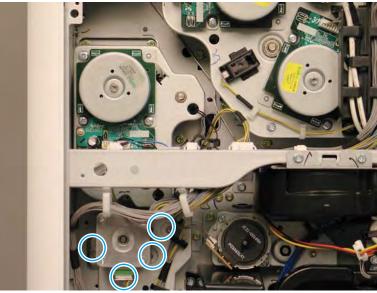


Figure 2-146 Remove the rear-bottom cover

# Step 2: Remove the feed drive unit

Release the cable from two cable restraints and disconnect the connector. Remove three yellow screws, and then remove the Feed Drive unit.

Figure 2-147 Remove screws and feed drive unit



#### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Toner collection unit drive

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the toner cartridges</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the front inner cover</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the toner collection drive unit</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the toner collection unit drive assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

# JC93-00445A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Toner collection unit drive assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

# After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

### Post service test

# Step 1: Remove the toner cartridges

• Open the front door and remove the toner collection unit and toner cartridges.

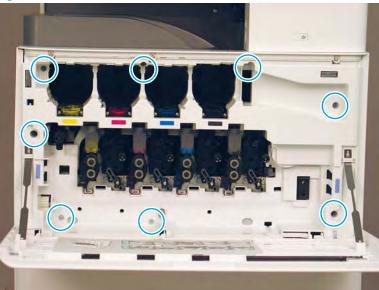


# Figure 2-148 Remove the TCU

# Step 2: Remove the front inner cover

- Remove eight screws, and then remove the front inner cover.
- **NOTE:** The TCU cleaning blade must be removed to remove the front inner cover.

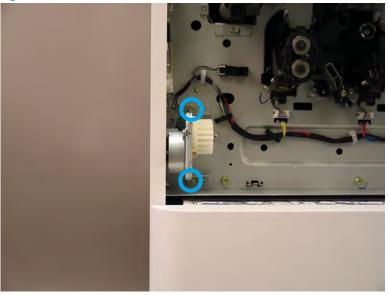
Figure 2-149 Remove the front inner cover



# Step 3: Remove the toner collection drive unit

Disconnect two connectors. Remove two screws, and then remove the toner collection unit drive unit.

Figure 2-150 Remove screws and toner collection unit drive unit



# Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Toner supply drive assembly

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the rear covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the formatter cage</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the main board cage</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the toner supply drive unit</u>
- <u>Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the toner supply drive assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Click here for additional video instructions of this procedure

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

### JC93-00446B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Toner supply drive assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

# Step 1: Remove the rear covers

1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

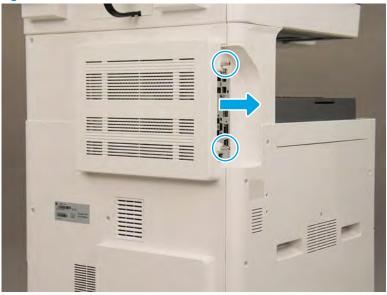


Figure 2-151 Remove the formatter cover

2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

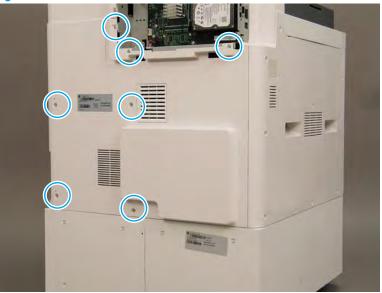
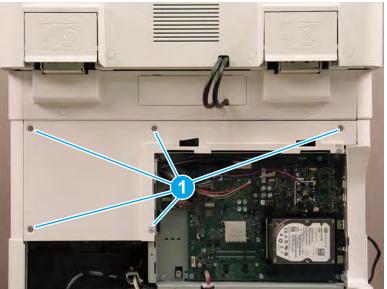


Figure 2-152 Remove the rear-bottom cover

3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

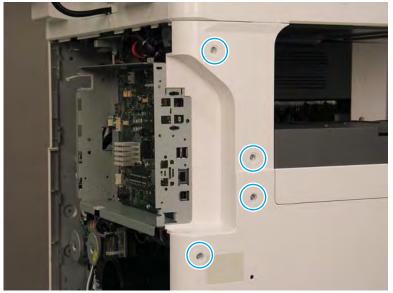
Figure 2-153 Remove the rear-top cover



# Step 2: Remove the formatter cage

- 1. Disconnect ten connectors and two cable restraints.
- 2. Remove four screws and screw-caps, and then remove the left-upper cover.

Figure 2-154 Remove the left-upper cover



3. Remove one screw from the side of the formatter cage (beneath the left-upper cover location).



Figure 2-155 Remove the formatter cage side screw

4. Remove three screws from the formatter cage face, and then release one tab to remove the formatter cage.



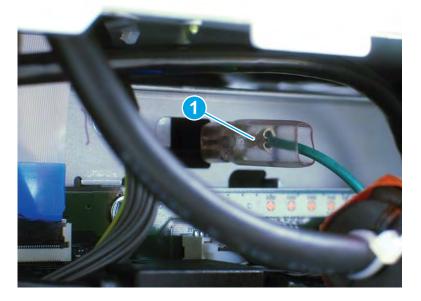
Figure 2-156 Remove three screws to remove the formatter cage

# Step 3: Remove the main board cage

1. Remove the FFC retainer at the bottom-right.

2. Pinch the ground strap (callout 1) to remove it from the top of the cage.

Figure 2-157 Remove the ground strap



- **3.** Open seven cable retainers.
- 4. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-158 Remove the main board cage screws

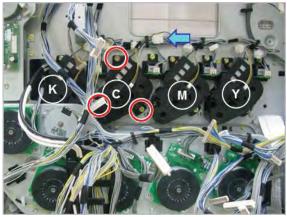


5. Lift the main board cage up slightly to release one bracket, and then pull out to remove.

# Step 4: Remove the toner supply drive unit

▲ Disconnect two connectors, one on the body and one inline. Remove three screws, release one cable harness, and then remove the Toner Supply Drive unit by carefully releasing the snaps.

Figure 2-159 Remove the toner supply drive



# NOTE:

- To remove the K Toner supply drive unit, first remove the main drive unit.
- The toner supply drive units are interchangeable.

NOTE: Reinstall note: The duct drive shaft might not engage when installing the new drive. Push on the shaft from the front of the printer (the toner cartridge area) to engage gears in the back of the printer.

#### Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Toner collection full sensor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the toner cartridges and TCU</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the front inner cover</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the toner collection full sensor</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the toner collection full sensor.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC93-00492A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Toner collection full sensor

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the toner cartridges and TCU

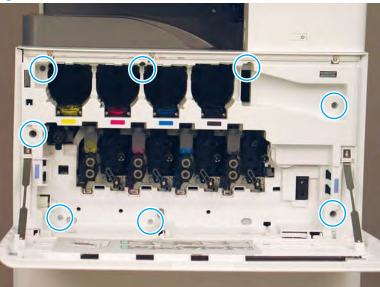
• Open the front door and remove the toner collection unit and toner cartridges.



## Step 2: Remove the front inner cover

- Remove eight screws, and then remove the front inner cover.
- **NOTE:** The TCU cleaning blade must be removed to remove the front inner cover.

Figure 2-161 Remove the front inner cover



# Step 3: Remove the toner collection full sensor

- 1. Release the cable from three restraints.
- **2.** Disconnect one inline connector.

3. Remove one screw, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 2–162 Remove the TCU full sensor

### Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Toner duct assembly

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the toner cartridges and TCU</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the front inner cover</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the toner duct assembly</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the toner duct assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC93-00483B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Toner duct assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

# After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the toner cartridges and TCU

• Open the front door and remove the toner collection unit and toner cartridges.

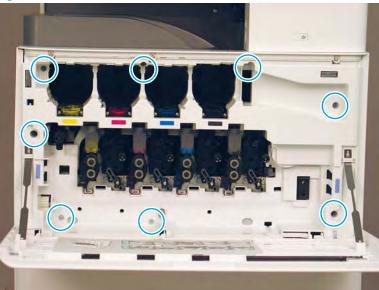


# Figure 2-163 Remove the TCU

## Step 2: Remove the front inner cover

- Remove eight screws, and then remove the front inner cover.
- **NOTE:** The TCU cleaning blade must be removed to remove the front inner cover.

Figure 2-164 Remove the front inner cover



## Step 3: Remove the toner duct assembly

1. Close the shutter duct on the developer unit.

Figure 2-165 Close the developer unit shutter duct for the station being replaced



2. Remove the shutter from the top of the developer unit.

Figure 2-166 Remove the developer unit shutter duct



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover at the front of the duct assembly.

**CAUTION:** Be careful not to spill toner while removing the toner duct assembly.



Figure 2-167 Remove the toner duct cover

4. Remove the toner duct assembly.

Figure 2-168 Remove the toner duct assembly



**IMPORTANT:** The toner supply shutters must be in the open (up) position whenever performing service in this area of the printer.

#### Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

# **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Fuser-duct fan

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the rear covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the fuser duct</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the fuser-duct fan assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC67-00570A

# JC67-00571A

# JC93-00161A

•

Fan-Type 7 Fuser

- Upper fuser-duct fan assembly
- To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Lower fuser-duct fan assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the rear covers

1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

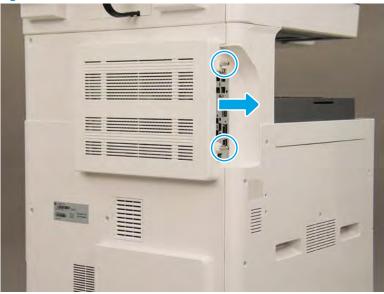


Figure 2-169 Remove the formatter cover

2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

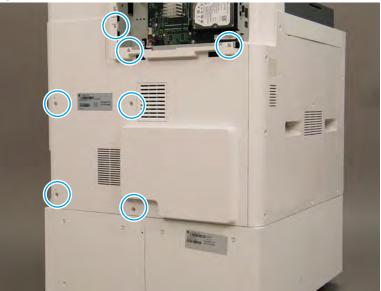
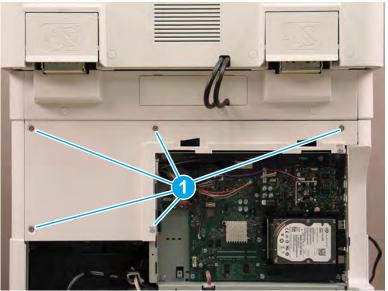


Figure 2–170 Remove the rear-bottom cover

3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

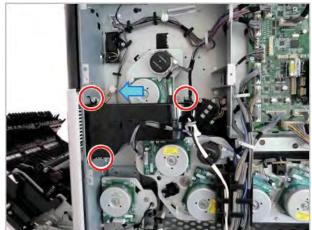
Figure 2-171 Remove the rear-top cover



# Step 2: Remove the fuser duct

1. Disconnect the connector and remove the cable from the cable restraint. Remove the cable from the guides on the duct housing. Remove three yellow screws, and then remove the fuser-duct.

Figure 2-172 Remove the fuser-duct



2. Release the fan by separating the fuser-duct.

Figure 2-173 Separate the fuser-duct



**CAUTION:** When installing the new fan, make sure not to change the fan direction. The label must be visible on the outside of the fan.

## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Pickup drive units

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the rear covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the pickup drive unit</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the pickup drive assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure.</u>

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC93-00511A

• 1st pickup drive assembly

## JC93-00512A

• 2nd pickup drive assembly

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

# After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the rear covers

1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

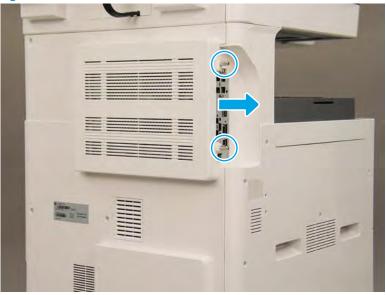


Figure 2–174 Remove the formatter cover

2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

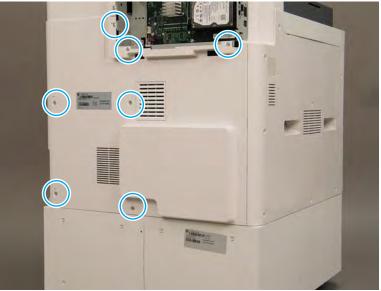
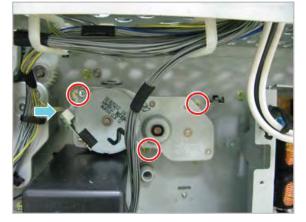


Figure 2-175 Remove the rear-bottom cover

# Step 2: Remove the pickup drive unit

1. Release the cable from the cable restraint and disconnect the connector. Remove three yellow screws, and then remove the Pickup Drive unit 1.

Figure 2-176 Remove screws and pickup drive unit 1



2. Disconnect the connector. Remove three screws, and then remove the Pickup Drive unit 2.



Figure 2-177 Remove screws and pickup drive unit 2

# Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

# **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Feed sensor 1

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right door</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove feed sensor 1</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the feed sensor 1.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## 0604-001393

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Feed sensor 1

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

# After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the right door

- **NOTE:** Remove second exit drive if installed.
  - 1. Remove three screws, and then remove the cover (A).
    - Figure 2-178 Remove cover



2. Disconnect the right door connector.

Figure 2-179 Disconnect right door connector



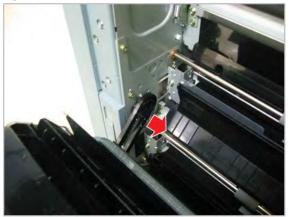
- Release the right hinge (callout 1). З.
  - **CAUTION:** The right hinge spring tension can be dangerous. Use caution when releasing the right hinge to avoid injury.



Figure 2-180 Release right hinge

Release the left dampener (callout 1). 4.

Figure 2-181 Release left dampener



- 5. Remove the right door.
- NOTE: Open the lower access door. If there is an HCI or 2x520 input device, release the dampener to clear the lower right door. Remove clockwise.



## Step 2: Remove feed sensor 1

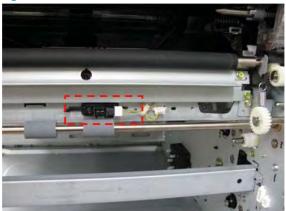
1. Remove two screws, and then remove the sensor cover.

Figure 2-183 Remove screws and sensor cover



2. Disconnect the connector, remove one screw, and then remove the feed sensor cover.

Figure 2-184 Remove feed sensor



# Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Feed sensor 2

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right door</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove feed sensor 2</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the feed sensor 2.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### 0604-001393

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Feed sensor 2

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

# After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the right door

- NOTE: Remove second exit drive if installed.
  - 1. Remove three screws, and then remove the cover (A).
    - Figure 2-185 Remove cover



2. Disconnect the right door connector.

Figure 2-186 Disconnect right door connector

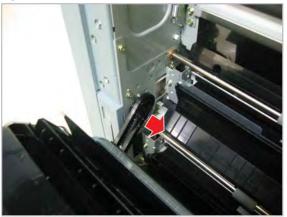


- Release the right hinge (callout 1). 3.
  - **A** CAUTION: The right hinge spring tension can be dangerous. Use caution when releasing the right hinge to avoid injury.



Release the left dampener (callout 1). 4.

Figure 2-188 Release left dampener



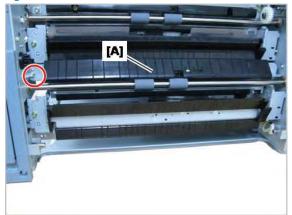
- 5. Remove the right door.
  - NOTE: Open the lower access door. If there is an HCI or 2x520 input device, release the dampener to clear the lower right door. Remove clockwise.



# Step 2: Remove feed sensor 2

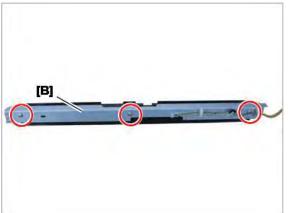
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the Feed Unit (A).

Figure 2-190 Remove screw and feed unit



2. Remove three screws, and then remove the bracket (B).

Figure 2-191 Remove screws and bracket



3. Disconnect the connector, and then remove the feed sensor.



# Figure 2-192 Remove feed sensor

# Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Automatic color registration (ACR)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right door</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the automatic color registration unit</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the automatic color registration (ACR) assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC93-00895A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Automatic color registration assembly

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the right door

- NOTE: Remove second exit drive if installed.
  - 1. Remove three screws, and then remove the cover (A).
    - Figure 2-193 Remove cover

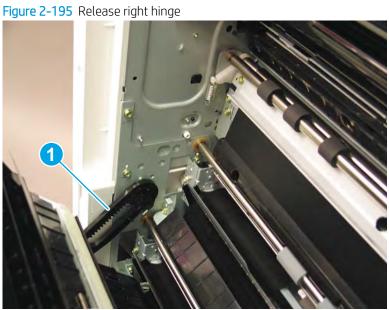


2. Disconnect the right door connector.

Figure 2-194 Disconnect right door connector

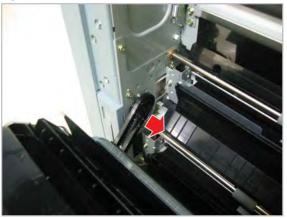


- **3.** Release the right hinge (callout 1).
  - **CAUTION:** The right hinge spring tension can be dangerous. Use caution when releasing the right hinge to avoid injury.



- 4. Release the left dampener (callout 1).

Figure 2-196 Release left dampener



- 5. Remove the right door.
  - NOTE: Open the lower access door. If there is an HCI or 2x520 input device, release the dampener to clear the lower right door. Remove clockwise.



# Step 2: Remove the automatic color registration unit

1. Remove two screws, and then remove the feed sensor cover.

Figure 2-198 Remove the feed sensor cover



2. Remove the black plastic bushing retainer at the rear of the REGI unit, disconnect one connector, and then remove two screws at the front and rear of the REGI unit.

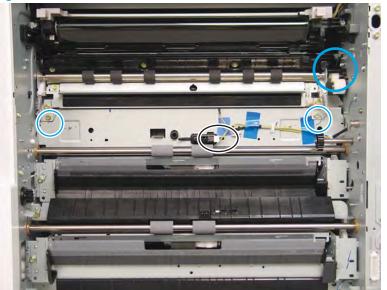


Figure 2-199 Remove the REGI unit

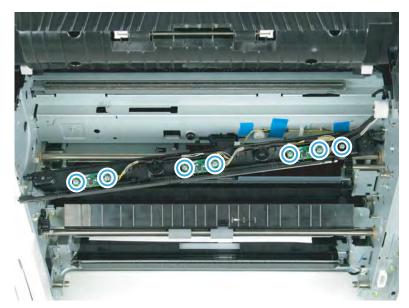
- 3. Release the front side of the REGI unit first, and then release the back side to remove.
- **IMPORTANT:** Note the bushings on the REGI assembly—they are not retained and can fall from the assembly during removal.
- 4. Locate and remove the clip at the rear (make note of the orientation of the spring and the clip before removal).



5. Release the spring from the hook at the rear.



- 6. Slide the shutter toward rear.
- 7. Remove the spring (make note of the orientation of the spring before removal).
- 8. Remove four screws in the cover.
- 9. Release the left cover at the front and slide off at the rear of the assembly.
- 10. Replace the sensor (remove two screws and one connector) or thermistor (remove one screw and one connector).



11. Disconnect the thermistor cable and three connectors at the sensor PCA.

- NOTE: After replacing the CPR sensor assembly, make sure the assembly rests forward, but moves backward freely.
- **12.** An Color Plane Registration must be performed from the Diagnostics menu whenever a sensor is replaced.

## Fuser-out sensor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the fuser out sensor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the fuser-out sensor.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### 0604-001381

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Fuser-out sensor

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

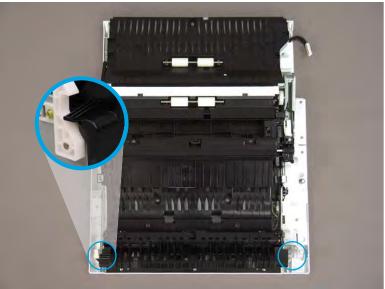
- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the fuser out sensor

- **NOTE:** Remove second exit drive if installed.
  - 1. Remove two screws and two plastic guides. Lift up the right-door exit.
    - Figure 2-200 Lift right-door exit



2. Disconnect the connector and remove the cable from the cable guide. Remove the right-door exit. Use caution as the springs are not retained.

Figure 2-201 Remove right-door exit



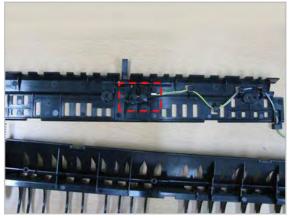
3. Separate the right-door exit after removing three plastic, self-tapping screws.

Figure 2-202 Remove screws and separate right-door exit



- 4. Disconnect the connector and remove the fuser-out sensor.
  - TIP: When removing the sensor lift the flag, compress the bottom tabs and push from hole, and then rotate and release the top tabs.

Figure 2-203 Disconnect connector and remove fuser-out sensor



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

## **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Duplex sensor and loop sensor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the duplex sensor and loop sensor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the duplex sensor and loop sensor.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## 0604-001393

Duplex sensor

0604-001393

Loop sensor

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

## Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

## Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the duplex sensor and loop sensor

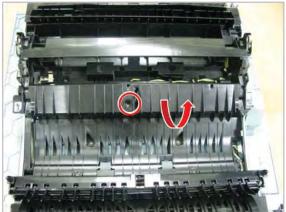
1. Push down on transfer roller assembly at the front to release one tab. Move the transfer roller assembly slightly toward the back, and then release one tab. Rotate the transfer roller assembly outward to remove.



Figure 2-204 Remove transfer roller assembly

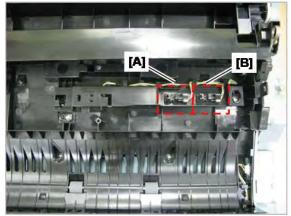
2. Remove one screw. Turn over the Guide-transfer roller Upper.

Figure 2-205 Remove screw and turn over guide-transfer roller upper



3. Remove the duplex sensor (A) and loop sensor (B). To remove the sensors, remove two screws, pinch the tabs and push to release the sensors. Use caution while handling the plastic snaps as they can become damaged when handled with force.

Figure 2-206 Remove duplex and loop sensors



## Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

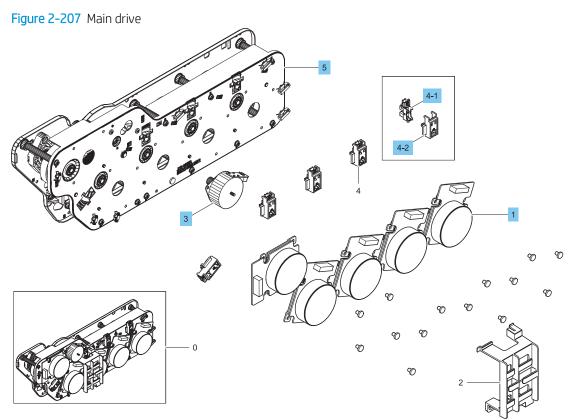
A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Main drive

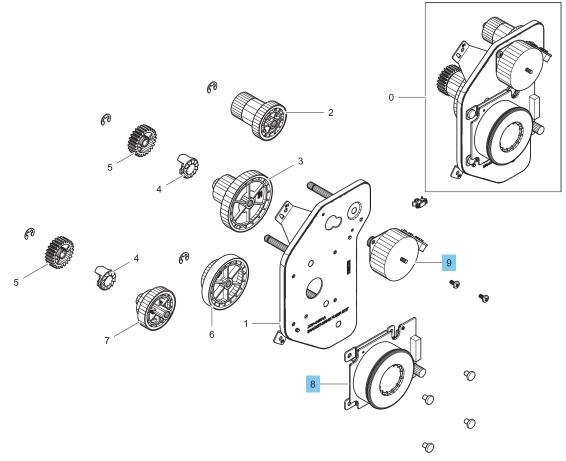


## Table 2-6 Main drive

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Motor, bldc	JC31-00123A	5
3	Drive motor, step	JC93-00452A	1
4-1	Photo interrupter	0604-001393	4
4-2	OPC sensor holder	JC61-04538A	4
5	Main sub drive	JC93-00914B	1

# Fuser output drive

Figure 2-208 Fuser output drive

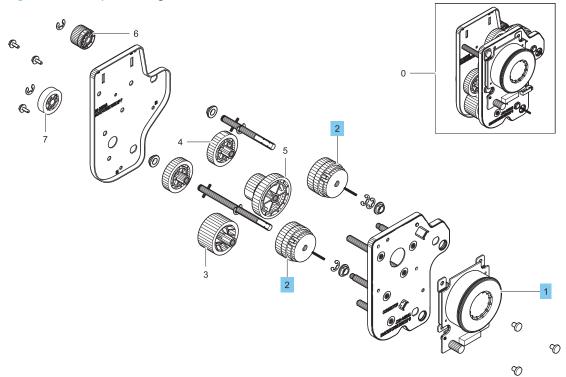


## Table 2-7 Fuser output drive

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
8	Motor, bldc	JC31-00123B	1
9	Drive motor, step	JC93-00452A	1

## Tray 1 registration drive

Figure 2-209 Tray 1 (MP) registration drive

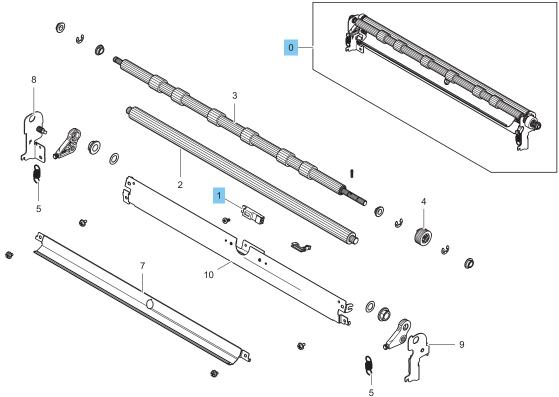


## Table 2-8 Tray 1 (MP) registration drive

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Motor, bldc	JC31-00123B	1
2	Electric clutch	JC47-00037A	2

# Registration sub frame





## Table 2-9 Registration sub frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Registration assembly	JC93-01371A on page 328	1
1	Photo interrupter	0604-001381	1

## Registration drive assembly

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the rear covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the registration drive assembly</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the registration assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC93-01371A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Registration drive assembly

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

## Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the rear covers

1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.



Figure 2-211 Remove the formatter cover

2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

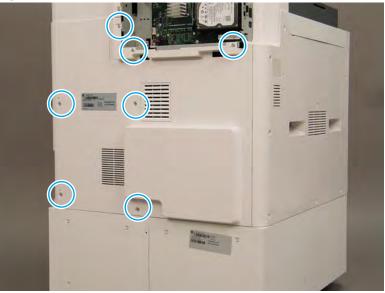
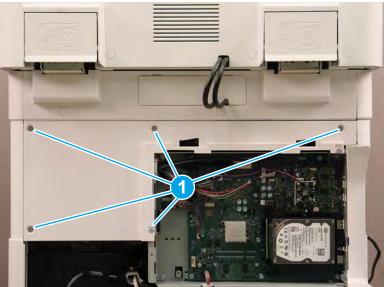


Figure 2-212 Remove the rear-bottom cover

3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

Figure 2-213 Remove the rear-top cover

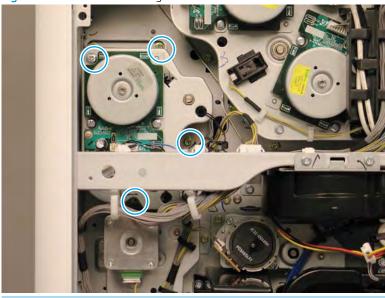


## Step 2: Remove the registration drive assembly

- 1. Disconnect three connectors, one at the motor and two at the frame.
- 2. Release the cables from the cable guides.
- 3. Remove four screws, and then remove the registration drive unit by lifting up and out at the top. Clear the white gear and the cable guide while removing.

**IMPORTANT:** Remove and replace the screws in the order indicated on the chassis.

Figure 2–214 Remove the registration drive unit





## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

▲ CAUTION:

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Registration assembly

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right door</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the registration unit</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the registration assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC93-00443A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Registration assembly

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

## Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

## Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the right door

**NOTE:** Remove second exit drive if installed.

- 1. Remove three screws, and then remove the cover (A).
  - Figure 2-215 Remove cover



2. Disconnect the right door connector.

Figure 2-216 Disconnect right door connector



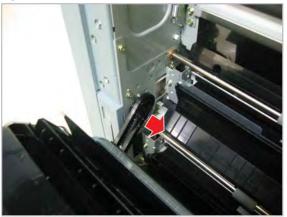
- **3.** Release the right hinge (callout 1).
  - **CAUTION:** The right hinge spring tension can be dangerous. Use caution when releasing the right hinge to avoid injury.



Figure 2-217 Release right hinge

4. Release the left dampener (callout 1).

Figure 2-218 Release left dampener



- 5. Remove the right door.
  - NOTE: Open the lower access door. If there is an HCI or 2x520 input device, release the dampener to clear the lower right door. Remove clockwise.



## Step 2: Remove the registration unit

1. Remove two screws, and then remove the feed sensor cover.

Figure 2-220 Remove the feed sensor cover



2. Remove the black plastic bushing retainer at the rear of the REGI unit, disconnect one connector, and then remove two screws at the front and rear of the REGI unit.

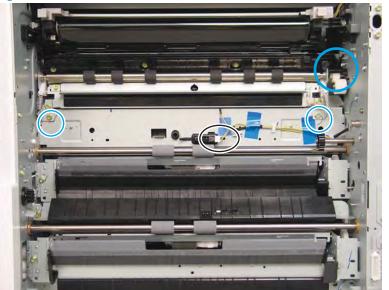


Figure 2-221 Remove the REGI unit

- 3. Release the front side of the REGI unit first, and then release the back side to remove.
- **IMPORTANT:** Note the bushings on the REGI assembly—they are not retained and can fall from the assembly during removal.

## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

**A** CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

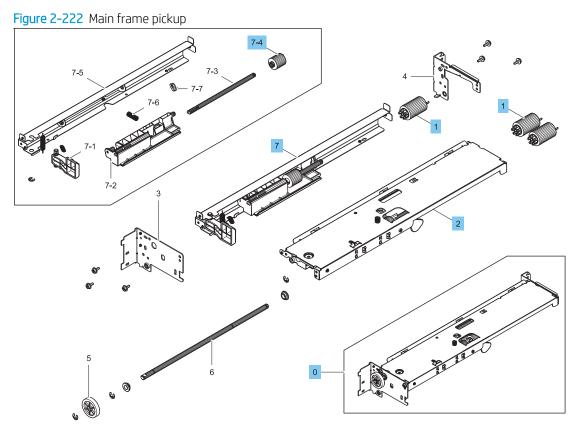
an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

**IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Main frame pickup



## Table 2-10 Main frame pickup

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Sub frame pickup	JC93-00510A	1
1	Pick, reverse and feed roller assembly	JC93-00540A on page 339	3
2	Main pickup, upper	JC93-00504A on page 345	1
7	Main pickup, lower	JC93-00503A on page 345	1
7-4	Coupler, torque limiter	JC67-00455A	1
Not shown	Photo interrupter (empty/level sensor)	0604-001381 on page 345	1

## Trays 2-x main rollers

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right door</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the pick/feed/reverse rollers</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Tray 2-x main rollers

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

<u>Click here for addtional video instructions of this procedure.</u>

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC93-00540A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Trays 2-x main rollers

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

## Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

## Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the right door

- **NOTE:** Remove second exit drive if installed.
  - 1. Remove three screws, and then remove the cover (A).
    - Figure 2-223 Remove cover



2. Disconnect the right door connector.

Figure 2-224 Disconnect right door connector



- Release the right hinge (callout 1). З.
  - **CAUTION:** The right hinge spring tension can be dangerous. Use caution when releasing the right hinge to avoid injury.

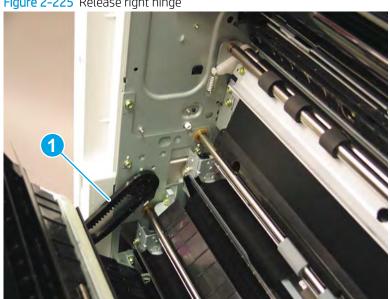
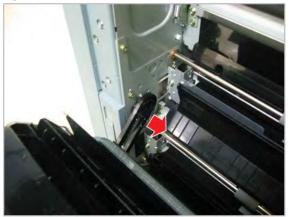


Figure 2-225 Release right hinge

Release the left dampener (callout 1). 4.

Figure 2-226 Release left dampener



- 5. Remove the right door.
- NOTE: Open the lower access door. If there is an HCI or 2x520 input device, release the dampener to clear the lower right door. Remove clockwise.



## Step 2: Remove the pick/feed/reverse rollers

1. Remove one screw and disconnect one connector. Remove the pickup assembly.

Figure 2-228 Remove the pickup assembly



2. Release the small tab and remove the pick/feed/separation roller. Note the location of the clutches and gears.

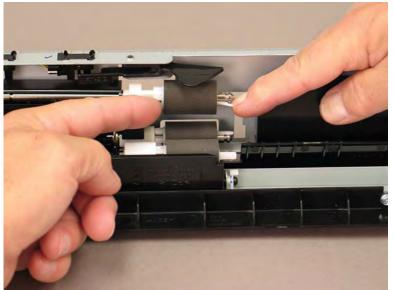
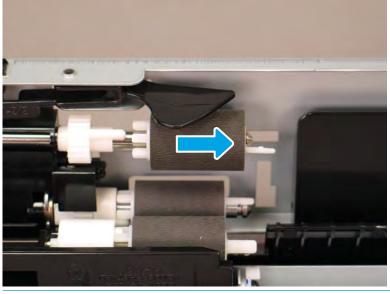


Figure 2-229 Remove pick/feed/separation roller (1 of 2)

Figure 2-230 Remove pick/feed/separation roller (2 of 2)





3. Enter service mode. Select the "Field Replacement Unit" menu item for the pick/feed/separation roller (Information > Supply Status > Field Replacement Unit). Select "Reset" to reset the current count to "0".

## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

## **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Paper pickup assemblies and empty/level sensor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right door</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the paper trays</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the paper pickup unit</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the empty and level sensors</u>
- <u>Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the paper pickup assemblies and empty/level sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

click here for additional video instructions of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC93-00504A

- Main Pick Up Upper
- JC93-00503A

• Main Pick Up Lower

## 0604-001381

• Photo interrupter

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

## Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the right door

- **NOTE:** Remove second exit drive if installed.
  - 1. Remove three screws, and then remove the cover (A).
    - Figure 2-231 Remove cover



2. Disconnect the right door connector.

Figure 2-232 Disconnect right door connector



- Release the right hinge (callout 1). З.
  - **CAUTION:** The right hinge spring tension can be dangerous. Use caution when releasing the right hinge to avoid injury.

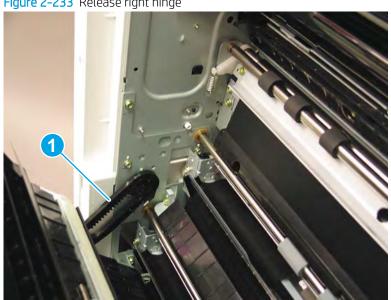
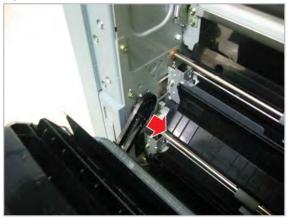


Figure 2-233 Release right hinge

Release the left dampener (callout 1). 4.

Figure 2-234 Release left dampener



- 5. Remove the right door.
- NOTE: Open the lower access door. If there is an HCI or 2x520 input device, release the dampener to clear the lower right door. Remove clockwise.



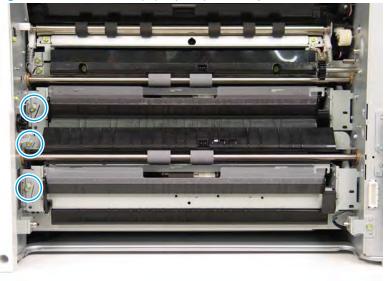
#### Step 2: Remove the paper trays

A Remove the paper trays.

# Step 3: Remove the paper pickup unit

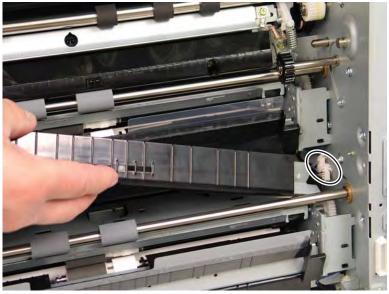
1. Remove one screw and one connector for each paper pickup assembly.

Figure 2-236 Remove the paper pickup assembly screw(s)



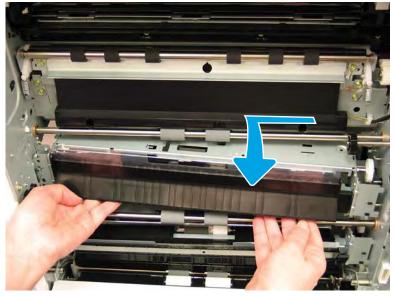
Before removing the Tray 2 paper pickup assembly, remove one screw and disconnect one connector, and then remove the feed sensor bar.

Figure 2-237 Remove the feed sensor bar



2. Remove the paper pickup assemblies.

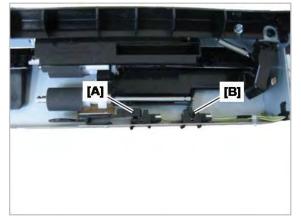
Figure 2-238 Remove the paper pickup assemblies



# Step 4: Remove the empty and level sensors

1. Release the sensor after disconnecting the connector. (Empty sensor [A], level sensor [B]).

Figure 2-239 Release the empty and level sensor



2. Remove one screw and disconnect one sensor, and then remove the sensor assembly.

# Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

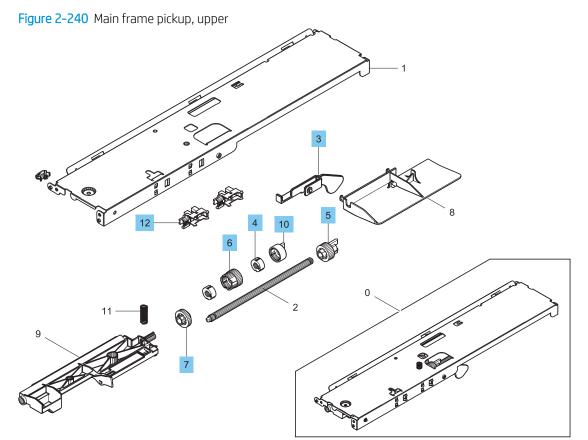
CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Main frame pickup, upper

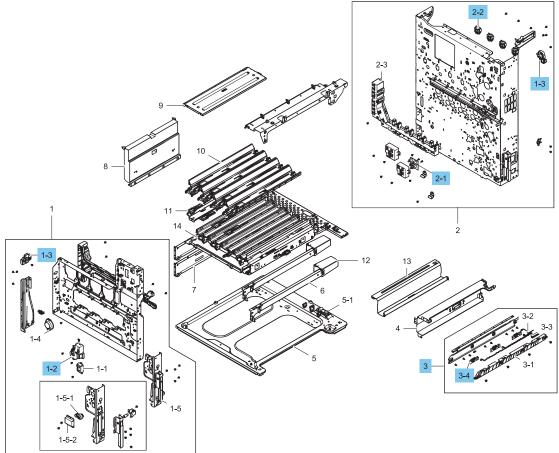


# Table 2-11 Main frame pickup, upper

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
3	Actuator, empty pickup	JC66-03199A	1
4	Clutch one way	JC66-00977A	1
5	Gear-m, joint	JC66-00943A	1
6	Gear-m, one way	JC66-00941A	1
7	Gear-m, idle	JC66-00940A	1
10	Holder-m, idle one way	JC61-01288A	1
12	Photo interrupter	0604-001393	4

# Main frame

Figure 2-241 Main frame



# Table 2-12 Main frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-2	ACR shutter drive	JC93-00894A on page 355	1
1-3	Front Door Switch Open	JC93-00466A	2
2-1	PCA, Toner Crum	JC92-02622A on page 369	2
2-2	PCA, toner e-label joing	JC92-02164A	4
3	Automatic Color Registration (ACR)	JC93-00894A on page 355	1
3-4	CTD sensor	JC32-00014A	3
Not shown	Photo interrupter	0604-001381	1
Not shown	Guide - Toner Cartridge	JC61-04784A	1
Not shown	TCU presence photo sensor	JC93-00492A on page 366	1

# ACR shutter motor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the toner cartridges and TCU</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the front inner cover</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the ACR shutter motor</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the ACR shutter motor.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

# JC93-00894A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• ACR shutter motor

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the toner cartridges and TCU

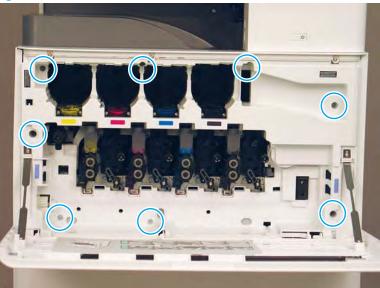
• Open the front door and remove the toner collection unit and toner cartridges.



# Step 2: Remove the front inner cover

- Remove eight screws, and then remove the front inner cover.
- **NOTE:** The TCU cleaning blade must be removed to remove the front inner cover.

Figure 2-243 Remove the front inner cover



# Step 3: Remove the ACR shutter motor

Disconnect one inline connector and remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

Figure 2-244 Remove the CPR shutter motor



# Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# High-voltage power supply (HVPS) board

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the left cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the high-voltage power supply (HVPS)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the High-Voltage Power Supply (HVPS) board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

# JC44-00212C

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• High-Voltage Power Supply (HVPS) board

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the left cover

Remove the left trim cover, and then remove ten screws to remove the left cover. 



Figure 2-245 Remove the left trim cover

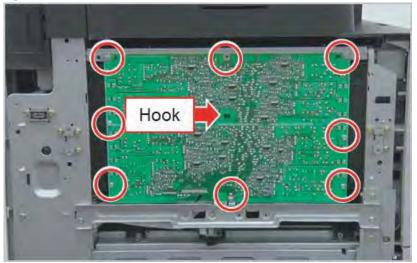
Figure 2-246 Remove the left cover



# Step 2: Remove the high-voltage power supply (HVPS)

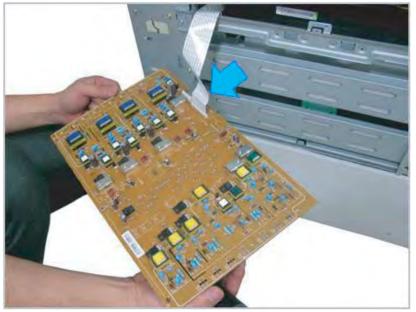
1. Remove eight screws, and then release middle hook.

Figure 2-247 Remove the bracket



- 2. Unplug the connector and then remove the HVPS.
  - TIP: To easily disconnect the connectors, remove the LSU.





#### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

**IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Laser scanner assembly

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the left cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the HVPS</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the laser scanner assembly</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the laser scanner assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

MARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### JC97-04864A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Laser scanner assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the left cover

Remove the left trim cover, and then remove ten screws to remove the left cover. 



Figure 2-250 Remove the left cover



# Step 2: Remove the HVPS

1. Remove eight screws, and then release middle hook.

Figure 2-251 Remove the bracket

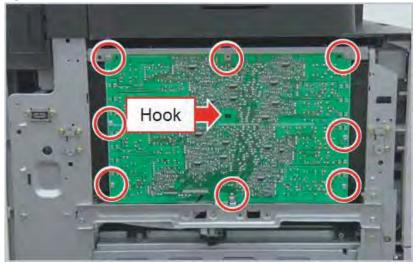


Figure 2-249 Remove the left trim cover

- 2. Unplug the connector and then remove the HVPS.

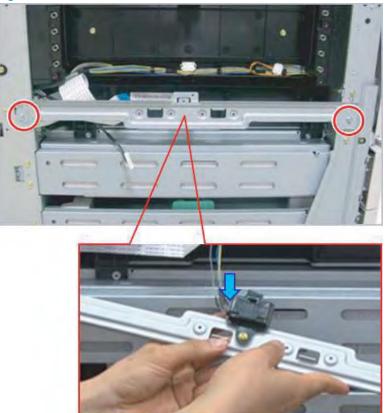


Figure 2-252 Remove the HVPS board

# Step 3: Remove the laser scanner assembly

1. Remove two screws, and then release the bracket.

Figure 2-253 Release the bracket



2. Remove two screws and disconnect one sensor.

Figure 2-254 Remove the laser scanner assembly



- 3. Disconnect the laser scanner assembly harness at the left, and then partially remove the assembly from the chassis. Disconnect the FFC cable, and then remove the laser scanner assembly completely.
  - **CAUTION:** If the laser scanner assembly is removed too rough or fast, the harness can be damaged.



Figure 2-255 Disconnect the laser scanner assembly harness and FFC cable

4. Complete a laser scanner assembly adjustment after a new laser scanner assembly has been installed.

# Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

**A** CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# TCU presence photo sensor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- Step 1: Remove the toner cartridges and TCU
- <u>Step 2: Remove the TCU presence photo sensor</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the TCU presence photo sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC93-00492A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• TCU presence photo sensor

# **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

# After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the toner cartridges and TCU

• Open the front door and remove the toner collection unit and toner cartridges.



# Figure 2-256 Remove the TCU

# Step 2: Remove the TCU presence photo sensor

- 1. Remove the yellow imaging and developer units.
- 2. Disconnect one connector. Reach inside the chassis and squeeze two tabs on the connector side of the sensor, and then release the hook on the right side of the sensor assembly.

Figure 2-257 Remove the TCU presence sensor



# Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

# **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# PCA, Paper size sensor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the paper size sensor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the PCA, paper size sensor.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC92-02622A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• PCA, Paper Size Sensor

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

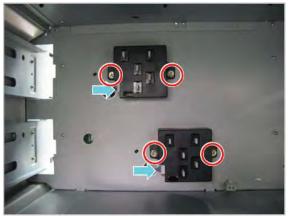
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the paper size sensor

- Do the following:
  - Remove all trays to access the inside of the printer.
  - Disconnect the connector. Remove two screws, and then remove the sensor.

#### Figure 2-258 Remove screws



# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

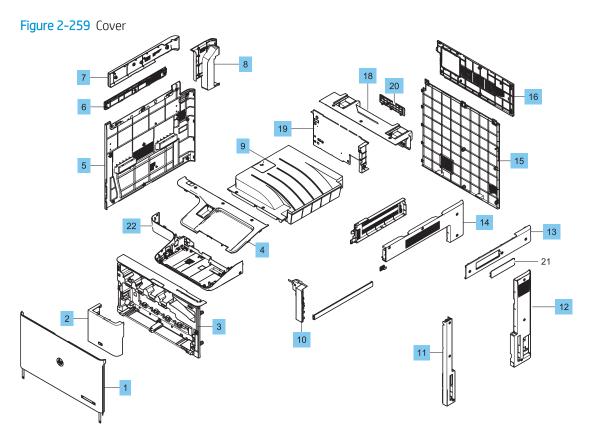
CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Cover



# Table 2-13 Cover

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Front cover	JC95-02116A	1
2	Right cover, middle	JC95-02082A	1
3	Inner cover	JC95-02089A	1
4	Cover, Control Panel Top	JC63-05587A	1
4-1	Cover, Control Panel Top	JC63-05638A	1
5	Left cover	JC95-02085A on page 376	1
6	Left cover, top	JC63-04534B	1
7	Left scan cover	JC63-05576A	1
8	Left cover, upper	JC63-05623A	1
9	Exit cover	JC95-02087A	1
10	Front cover, lower	JC63-04536B	1
11	Right cover, front	JC63-04531B	1
12	Right cover, rear	JC63-04532B	1
13	Right scan cover	JC63-05575A	1
14	Right cover, upper	JC63-04520B	1
15	Rear cover, lower	JC63-05619A on page 373	1
16	Rear cover, upper	JC63-05618A on page 373	1
18	Rear scan cover	JC63-05577A	1
19	Exit cover, rear	JC95-02088A	1
20	Rear cover, dummy	JC63-04567B	1
22	Lower cover	JC63-05638A	1
Not shown	Keyboard blank for non Flow	B5L46-40002	1
Not shown	US English Keyboard Assy	B5L47-60102	1
Not shown	UK English Keyboard Assy	B5L47-60103	1
Not shown	Bushing for Keyboard	B5L46-40029	1
Not shown	Strap, front cover	JC61-04626A	1
Not shown	PCA, sub USB host	JC41-00964A	1
Not shown	PCA, front power switch	JC92-02969A	1

# **Rear covers**

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the rear covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the rear covers.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC63-05618A

Rear-upper cover

JC63-05619A

Rear-lower cover

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

.

# **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

No post service tests are required for this assembly.

# Step 1: Remove the rear covers

1. Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.



Figure 2-260 Remove the formatter cover

2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear-bottom cover.

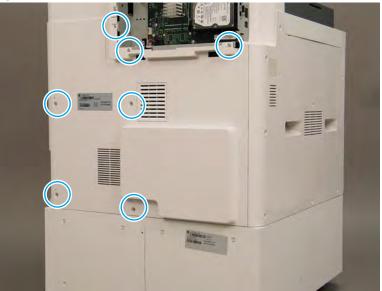
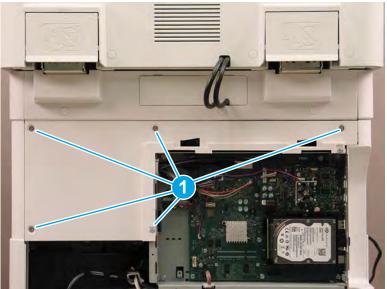


Figure 2-261 Remove the rear-bottom cover

3. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-top cover.

Figure 2–262 Remove the rear-top cover



# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Left cover

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the left cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the left cover assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC95-02085A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Left cover assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

# After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

No post service tests are required for this assembly.

# Step 1: Remove the left cover

Remove the left trim cover, and then remove ten screws to remove the left cover.



Figure 2-263 Remove the left trim cover

Figure 2-264 Remove the left cover



# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

# **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

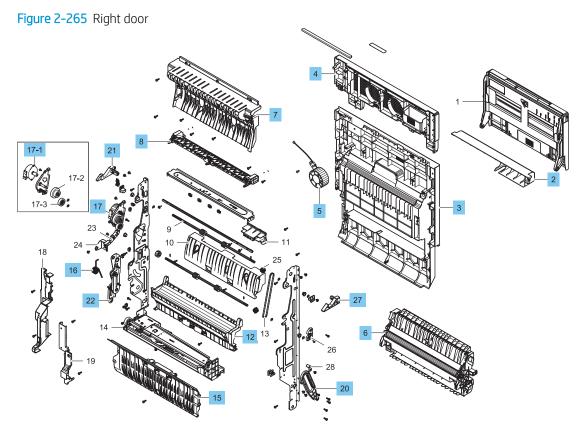
an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

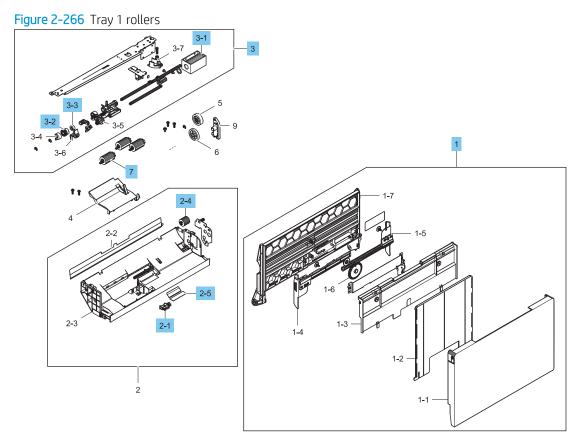
# Right door



# Table 2-14 Right door

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Cover, Front Tray 1	JC63-03356C	1
3	Cover, Right door	JC63-04570B	1
4	Cover, Right door Upper	JC63-04573B	1
5	Fan, type 6	JC31-00160C	1
6	Right Door Feed	JC95-02081A	1
7	Duplex guide, upper	JC61-04795A	1
8	Right door, exit	JC95-01509C	1
12	Right Door Feed Duplex	JC95-01517A	1
15	Right Door Take Away	JC95-01516A	1
16	Spring, TS	6107-003052	1
17	Motor Right Door Duplex	JC95-01510A	1
17-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-00802A	1
20	Right Door Dampner	JC66-03235A	1
21	Right Rear Lock	JC64-00711A	1
22	Right door link rear	JC95-01518A	1
27	Right Door Lock	JC64-00710A	1
Not shown	Sensor, sheet	JC63-05750A	1

# Tray 1 rollers



# Table 2-15 Tray 1 rollers

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Tray 1 Door	JC90-01668A on page 387	1
2-1	Photo interrupter	0604-001393	1
2-4	Coupler, torque limiter	JC67-00455A	1
2-5	Seal Pad, Tray 1	JC62-01085A	1
3	Tray 1 Bracket Pick Up	JC61-04727A	1
3-1	Solenoid Tray 1	JC33-00029B on page 387	1
3-2	One Way Clutch	JC90-00918A	1
3-3	Clutch, one way	JC66-00977A	2
7	Pick roller	JC93-00540B on page 383	3
Not shown	Right door cover	JC95-02079A on page 387	3

# Tray 1 rollers

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 rollers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Tray 1 (MP) main rollers.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC93-00540B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Tray 1 rollers

## **Required tools**

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 rollers

- 1. Open Tray 1. Use a small flat blade screwdriver to release the tab on the right side of the cover.
  - **IVID** NOTE: The plastic tabs on the edges of the cover might require extra pressure to remove.

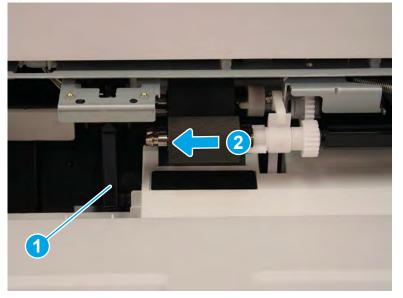


- 2. Remove the cover shown using a small flat blade screwdriver to release the tab on the right side of the cover.
- NOTE: The flag, it will need to be moved out of the way to remove cover.



- 3. Release the small tab and remove the Tray 1 pick/reverse/feed roller (callout 2). The flag (callout 1) will need to be moved out of the way to release rollers. Use caution and remove slowly to avoid loosening the parts behind the rollers. If these parts come loose, they might fall into the printer and will be difficult to retrieve. Note the location of all components.
  - **NOTE:** It is recommended to replace all three rollers at the same time.

Figure 2-269 Remove the Tray 1 pick/reverse/feed roller



4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Tray 1 pick/reverse/feed roller

- After the replacement rollers are installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:
  - i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.
  - ii. Select the Service menu.
  - iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the service access code.
  - iv. Select the Service Tools menu.
  - v. Select the Supply Status menu.
  - vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.
  - vii. Select Tray X Rollers.
  - viii. Select Tray 1 Roller Kit.
  - ix. Select Reset.

# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

# **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Tray 1 unit and Tray 1 assemblies

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right door</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 unit and Tray 1 assemblies</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Tray 1 assembly.

JC90-01668A

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC95-02079A

- Tray 1 assembly
- Tray 1



JC95-01924A

JC33-00029B • Solenoid Tray 1

# Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

## After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the right door

- **NOTE:** Remove second exit drive if installed.
  - 1. Remove three screws, and then remove the cover (A).
    - Figure 2-270 Remove cover



2. Disconnect the right door connector.

Figure 2-271 Disconnect right door connector



- Release the right hinge (callout 1). З.
  - **CAUTION:** The right hinge spring tension can be dangerous. Use caution when releasing the right hinge to avoid injury.

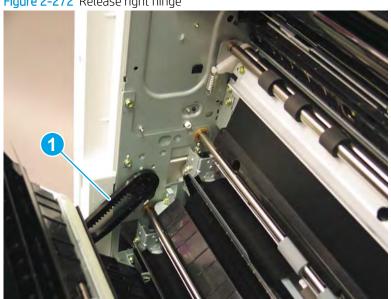
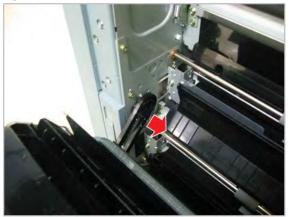


Figure 2-272 Release right hinge

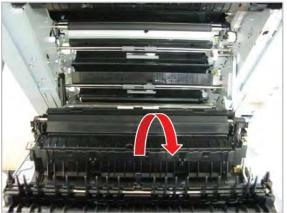
Release the left dampener (callout 1). 4.

Figure 2-273 Release left dampener



- 5. Remove the right door.
- NOTE: Open the lower access door. If there is an HCI or 2x520 input device, release the dampener to clear the lower right door. Remove clockwise.





# Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 unit and Tray 1 assemblies

1. Open Tray 1 tray and remove the Tray 1 roller cover. Release tabs at back of the roller cover and rotate to release.



Figure 2-275 Remove Tray 1 (MP) front cover

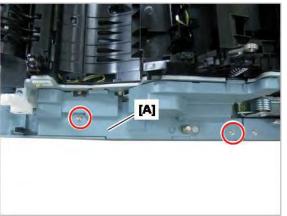
2. Open Tray 1 and release the hinge from the right, flexing the linker to remove.



Figure 2-276 Open Tray 1 (MP) and release link

3. Remove two screws and then remove the cable cover.

Figure 2-277 Remove screws and cable cover



4. Remove three screws and then remove the cable cover lower.

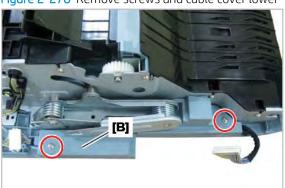


Figure 2-278 Remove screws and cable cover lower

5. Remove one screw. Prop up the hinge on the door edge to keep it out of the way.



Figure 2-279 Remove screw and prop up hinge

6. Remove three screws.

Figure 2-280 Remove screws



7. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-281 Remove screw



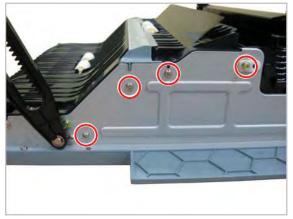
8. Remove two screws from the other side of the door.

Figure 2-282 Remove screws



9. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-283 Remove screws



**10.** Swing out the guide feed (C) to the right. Remove the hinge pin from the front.

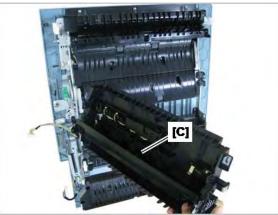
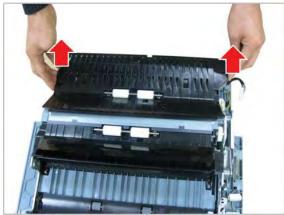


Figure 2-284 Remove hinge pin

**11.** Gently lift up the right door.

Figure 2-285 Lift right door duplex lower



**12.** Remove two screws.

Figure 2-286 Remove screws



**13.** Disconnect three connectors near the hinge.

**IMPORTANT:** Make sure the connector couplers stay attached to the door.

Figure 2-287 Disconnect connectors



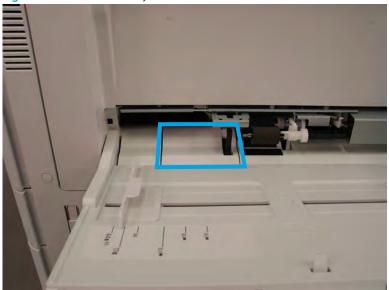
**14**. Remove one screw, and then remove the Tray 1 unit.

Figure 2-288 Remove screw and Tray 1 (MP) unit



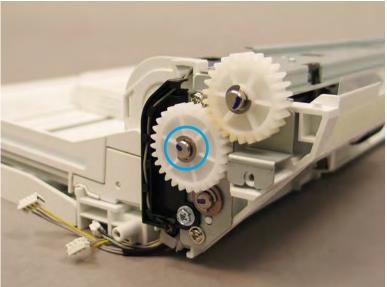
**15.** Remove the Tray 1 cover base.

Figure 2-289 Remove Tray 1 (MP) cover base



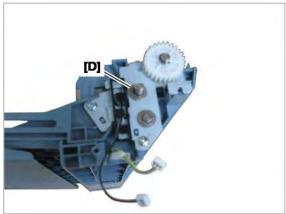
**16.** Remove the E-ring, and then remove the gear (C).

Figure 2-290 Remove e-ring and gear



17. Remove the E-ring, and then remove the bushing (D).

Figure 2-291 Remove e-ring and bushing



**18**. Remove one screw, and then remove the Bracket-Solenoid.



Figure 2-292 Remove screw and bracket-solenoid

- **NOTE:** Reinstallation note: Route the cable before putting the cover back on during reinstallation.
- **19.** Remove four screws, and then release the Tray 1 bracket pickup. Release the cable from the cable harness.

Figure 2-293 Release MP bracket pickup and release cable from harness



20. Release the cable from the cable retainer, and release the cable from the cable harness. Remove two screws, and then remove the MP solenoid.

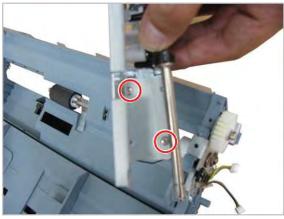


Figure 2-294 Release cable and remove MP solenoid

NOTE: Reinstallation note: When reinstalling, the paper stopper needs to be located in the appropriate slot in the housing.

#### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

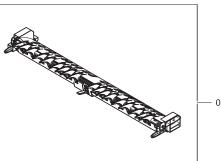
an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

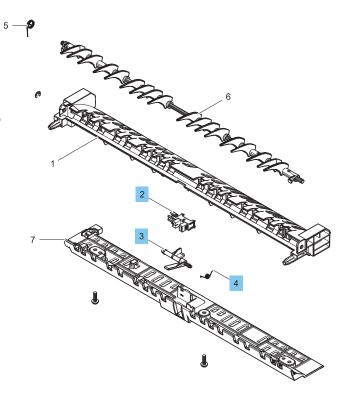
If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Right door output

# Figure 2-295 Right door output

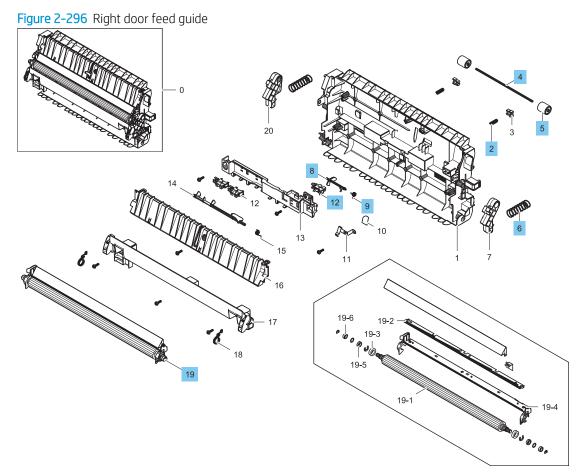




## Table 2-16 Right door output

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Photo interrupter	0604-001393	1
3	Actuator, fuser out	JC66-03307A	1
4	Spring, ts	6107-001737	1

# Right door feed guide



# Table 2-17 Right door feed guide

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Spring, CS	6107-001731	2
4	Roller shaft	JC66-02354A	1
5	Idle roller	JC66-02289B	2
6	Spring, cs	6107-003048	2
8	Actuator, duplex 2	JC66-02180A	1
9	Spring, TS	6107-001737	1
12	Photo interrupter	0604-001393	1
19	Transfer Roller	JC95-01942A on page 403	1

# Transfer roller

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the transfer roller</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the transfer roller.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure</u>.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC95-01942A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Kit HP LaserJet Transfer Roller

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the transfer roller

- 1. Open the right door.
- 2. Hold and release both sides of the transfer roller to remove.

## Figure 2-297 Remove transfer roller



#### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

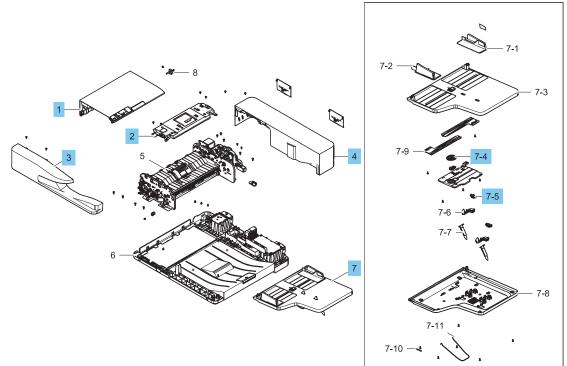
an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# ADF (LX/dn models)

Figure 2-298 ADF (LX/dn models)



# Table 2-18 ADF (LX/dn models)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	ADF cover open (LX/dn)	JC97-04853A on page 407	1
2	ADF pickup (LX/dn)	JC97-04856A	1
3	ADF, front cover (LX/dn)	JC63-05563A	1
4	ADF, cover rear (LX/dn)	JC63-05561A	1
7	ADF stacker (LX/dn)	JC97-04859A on page 413	1
7-4	ADF pinion gear (LX/DN)	JC66-04079A	1
7-5	Photo interrupter	0604-001393	1

# Document feeder (ADF) jam access cover (LX/dn models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover (LX/dn models)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the document feeder (ADF) jam access cover</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the jam access cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC97-04853A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Jam access cover

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover (LX/dn models)

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

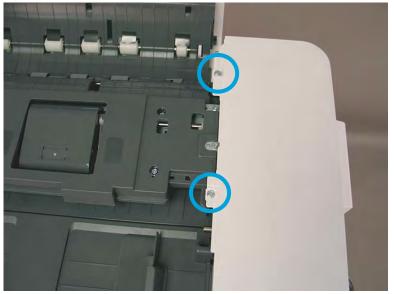
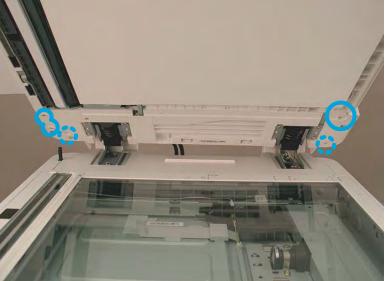


Figure 2-299 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws

2. Using a JIS #2 stubby screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.





**3.** Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

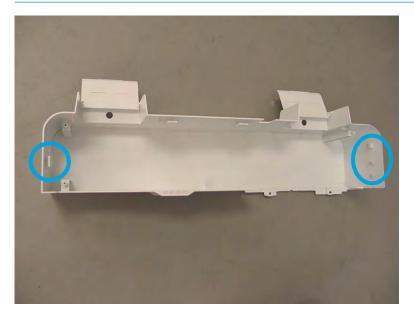
Figure 2-301 Release one tab on the right side of back cover.



4. Release the three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

Figure 2-302 Release three tabs on the back cover.

**NOTE:** The tabs on the underside of the cover.



5. Remove the back cover from the left to right as shown in the photo.

Figure 2-303 Remove back cover.

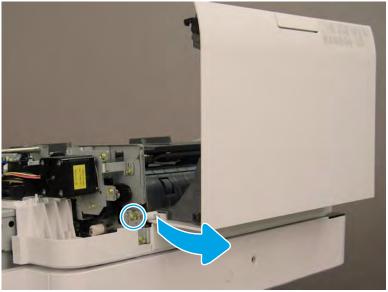


2 TIP: To reinstall cover, install from the right to left.

# Step 2: Remove the document feeder (ADF) jam access cover

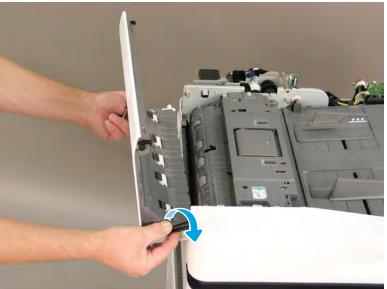
1. Open the jam access cover, and then remove one screw.

Figure 2-304 Remove the jam access cover screw



2. Remove the pivot pin, and then pivot the cover and release the hinge to remove the jam access cover.

Figure 2-305 Remove the jam access cover



# Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Document feeder (ADF) input tray (LX/dn models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover (LX/z models)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the document feeder (ADF) input tray</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the document feeder input tray.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC97-04859A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• ADF stacker (LX/dn models)

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover (LX/z models)

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 2-306 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

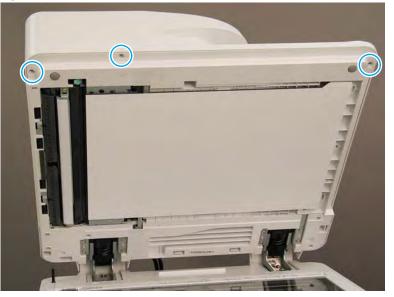
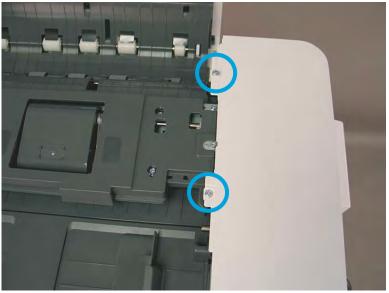


Figure 2-307 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

# Step 2: Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-308 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Using a JIS #2 stubby screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

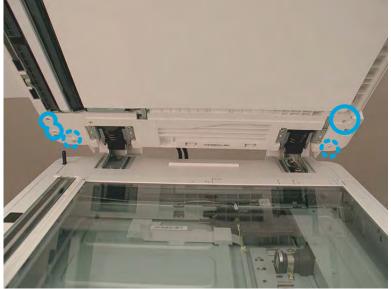


Figure 2-309 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

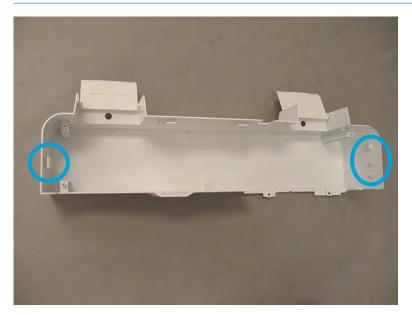
Figure 2-310 Release one tab on the right side of back cover.



4. Release the three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

Figure 2-311 Release three tabs on the back cover.

**NOTE:** The tabs on the underside of the cover.



5. Remove the back cover from the left to right as shown in the photo.

## Figure 2-312 Remove back cover.



☆ TIP: To reinstall cover, install from the right to left.

# Step 3: Remove the document feeder (ADF) input tray

1. Disconnect one connector on document feeder board (callout 1), remove one screw, and then remove the hinge pin (callout 2).



Figure 2-313 Remove the input tray connector, screw, and hinge pin

2. Remove the input tray. Carefully guide the cable out of the chassis while removing the tray.

## Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Document feeder (ADF) contact image sensor (CIS) (LX/dn models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the pick and feed roller assembly</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the CIS assembly</u>
- <u>Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the CIS assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### JC97-04722A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Contact Image Sensor (CIS) (LX/dn models)

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

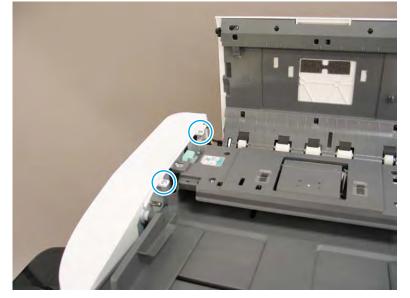
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 2-314 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

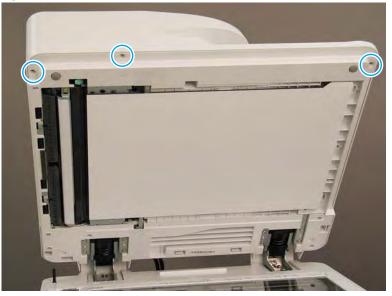
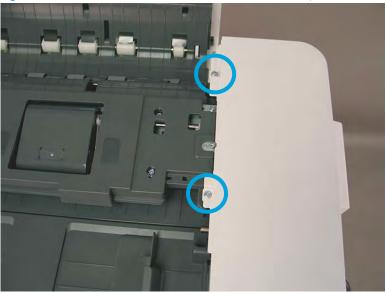


Figure 2-315 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

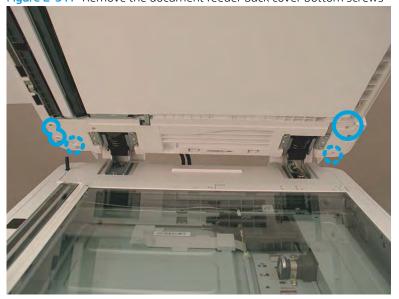
#### Step 2: Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-316 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



Using a JIS #2 stubby screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.
 Figure 2-317 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



**3.** Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-318 Release one tab on the right side of back cover.



4. Release the three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

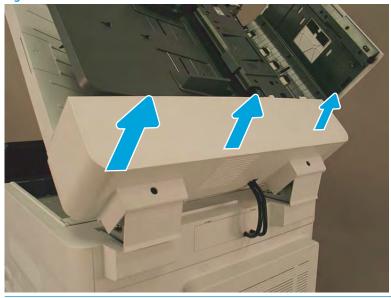
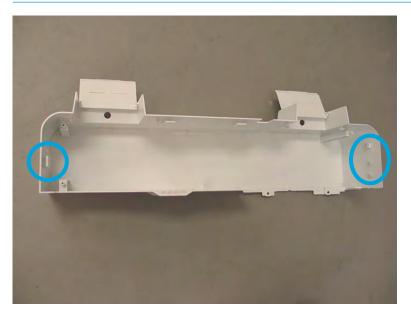


Figure 2-319 Release three tabs on the back cover.

**NOTE:** The tabs on the underside of the cover.



5. Remove the back cover from the left to right as shown in the photo.

Figure 2-320 Remove back cover.



 $rac{1}{2}$  TIP: To reinstall cover, install from the right to left.

# Step 3: Remove the pick and feed roller assembly

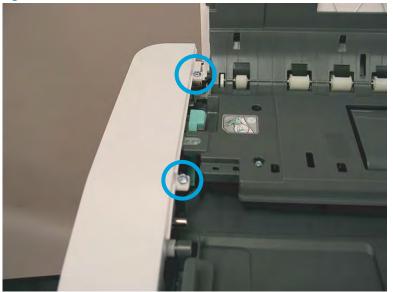
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-321 Remove four screws.



2. Remove two screws on the front cover.

Figure 2-322 Remove 2 screws on front cover.

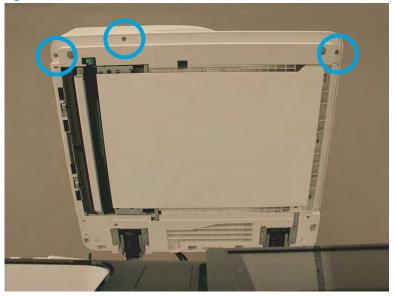


Open the ADF and then remove three screw caps. 3.

Figure 2-323 Remove 2 screw caps.

4. Remove three screws and, then remove front cover.

Figure 2-324 Remove three screws and, then remove front cover.



5. Rotate the pick/feed roller assembly to release the sheet metal tab from ADF frame.

Figure 2-325 Rotate pick/feed roller assembly to release sheet metal tab from ADF frame.



6. To remove the pick/feed roller assembly lift up on the front side (callout 1) and, then slide towards the front (callout 2) to release the pick/feed roller assy.

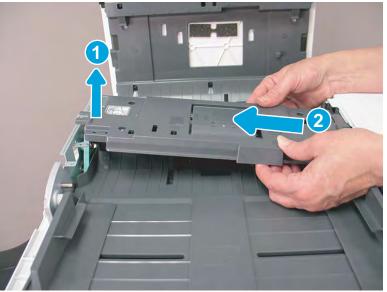


Figure 2-326 Release the pick/feed roller assembly.

7. Rrotate the roller assembly over, and then disconnect one connectors. Remove the document feeder pick roller assembly.

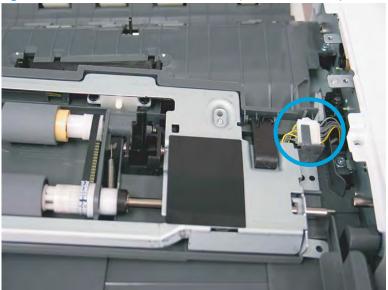


Figure 2-327 Remove the document feeder pick roller assembly

TIP: Note the four flags (callout 1) on the bottom of the pick/feed roller assembly. When reinstalling, hold up the flags while reinstall to allow for proper installation.

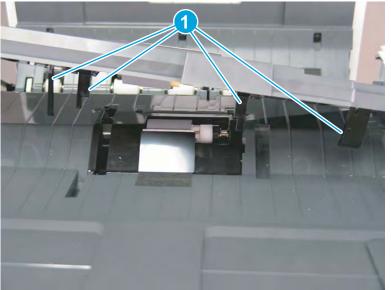


Figure 2-328 Pick/Feed roller assembly four flags.

# Step 5: Remove the CIS assembly

- 1. Remove one screw, and then remove the CIS front alignment cover.
  - **Reinstallation tip:** Note the orientation of the CIS front alignment cover for reinstallation; the cover must reinstalled with the same orientation.

Figure 2-329 Remove the CIS front alignment cover screws

2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then lift the alignment pin to release the CIS assembly (callout 2).

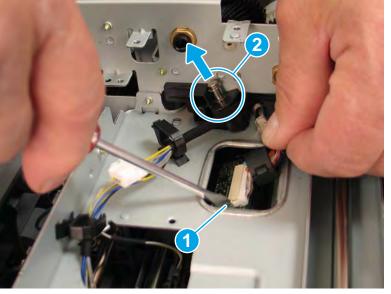


Figure 2-330 Disconnect the CIS connector and lift the alignment pin

**3.** Remove the CIS assembly from the chassis.

# Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Document feeder (ADF) main motor (LX/dn models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the main motor</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the main motor assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC31-00163A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

Main motor assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

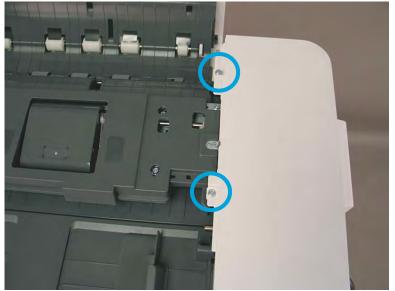
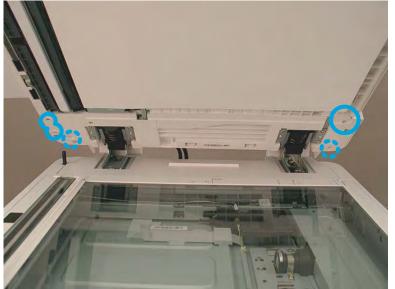


Figure 2-331 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws

2. Using a JIS #2 stubby screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.





**3.** Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

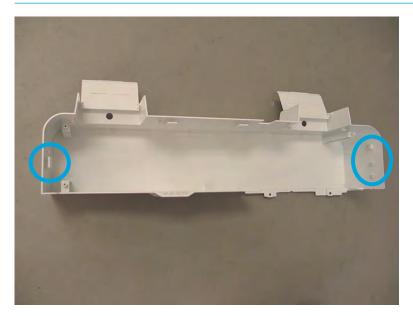
Figure 2-333 Release one tab on the right side of back cover.



4. Release the three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

Figure 2-334 Release three tabs on the back cover.

**NOTE:** The tabs on the underside of the cover.



5. Remove the back cover from the left to right as shown in the photo.

## Figure 2-335 Remove back cover.



☆ TIP: To reinstall cover, install from the right to left.

# Step 2: Remove the main motor

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove the tension spring (callout 2), and then remove four screws (callout 3).

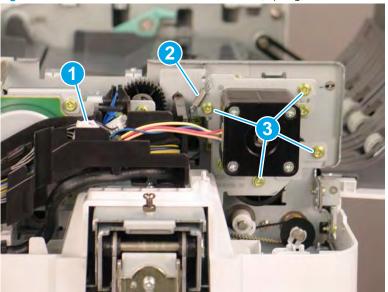
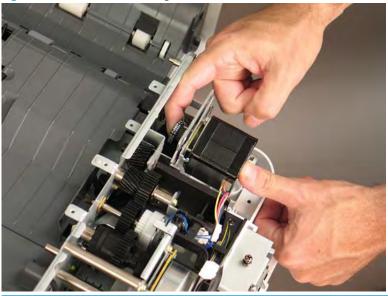


Figure 2–336 Remove the main motor connector, spring, and screws

2. Carefully lift the motor out while releasing the gear belt.

Figure 2-337 Main motor and gear belt



- Reinstallation tip:
  - **a.** Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.
  - **b.** Loosely install the motor mount screws.
  - **c.** Install the tension spring.
  - **d.** Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

#### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)

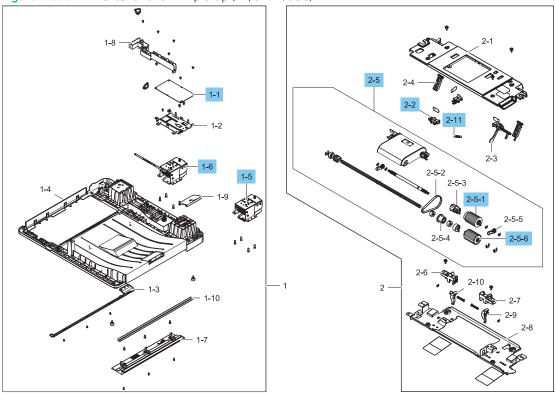


Figure 2-338 ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX/dn models)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	LX/dn PCA	JC92-02962A on page 446	1
1-5	LX/dn, hinge r	JC97-04528A	1
1-6	LX/dn, hinge l	JC97-04527A	1
2-2	Photo interrupter	0604-001393	1
2-5	Pick Roller Assy - LX/dn	JC97-04857A on page 441	1
2-5-1	LX/dn pick roller	JC97-04099A	1
2-5-6	LX feed roller	JC97-04860A	1
2-11	LX/dn - Spring	6107-003581	1

# Document feeder (ADF) pick/feed roller assembly (LX/dn model)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) (LX/dn models) pick and feed roller assembly</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

Two document feeder types are available for this product. Products with "z" bundles are equipped with "Flow" document feeders. Products with "dn" bundles are equipped with the standard document feeder.

This document provides the procedures to remove the document feeder pickup roller assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC97-04857A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Pick feed roller assy (LX/nd models)

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

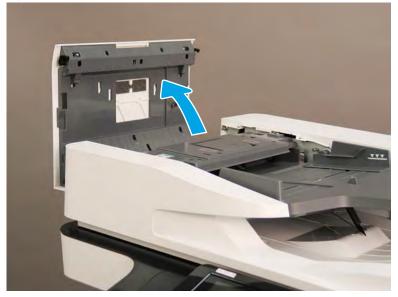
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the document feeder (ADF) (LX/dn models) pick and feed roller assembly

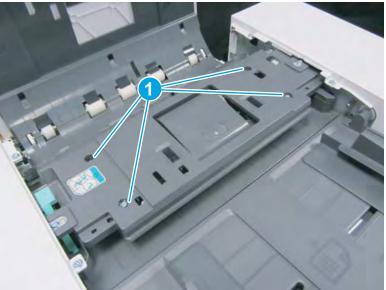
1. Open the document feeder cover.

Figure 2-339 Open the document feeder cover



- 2. Remove four screws in the document feeder pick roller assembly cover.
- NOTE: Remove one spring (callout 2; not shown)

Figure 2-340 Remove the document feeder cover screws



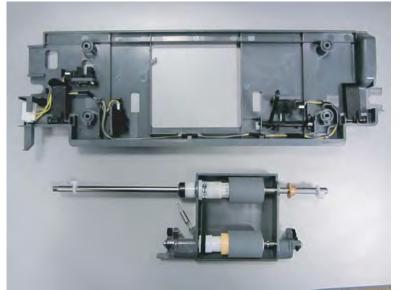
3. Rotate the document feeder pickup cover up, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 2-341 Turn the cover over and disconnect connector



4. NOTE: The figure below shows the roller cover and the roller assembly when removed.

Figure 2-342 Document feeder pick roller cover and roller assembly



- 5. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sensor flag bracket (callout 2).
  - **Reinstallation tip:** When the roller assembly is reinstalled, make sure that the sensor flags (on both sides of the assembly) are correctly isntalled and move freely.

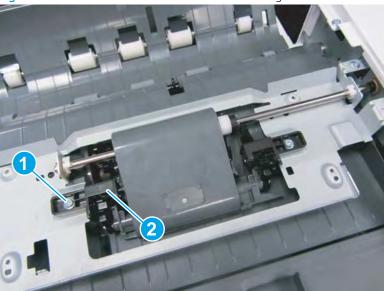
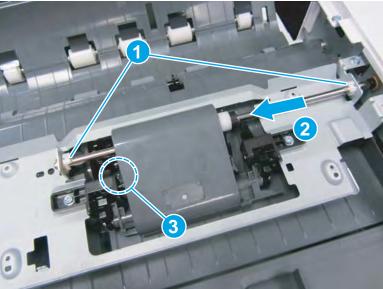


Figure 2-343 Remove one screw and the sensor flag bracket

- 6. Release two plastic clips (callout 1), slide bushing toward roller assembly (callout 2), and then slide the shaft towards front of printer to release it (callout 3). Remove the roller assembly.
  - **CAUTION:** Do not damage the sensor flags when handling the roller assembly.
  - **NOTE:** The bushing is not captive. Do not lose it when handling the roller assembly.





Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Document feeder (ADF) PCA (LX/dn models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the document feeder (ADF) PCA</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the document feeder PCA.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

### JC92-02962A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Document feeder PCA assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

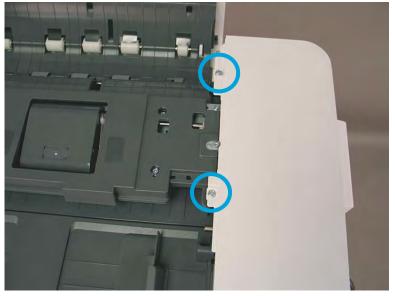
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-345 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Using a JIS #2 stubby screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

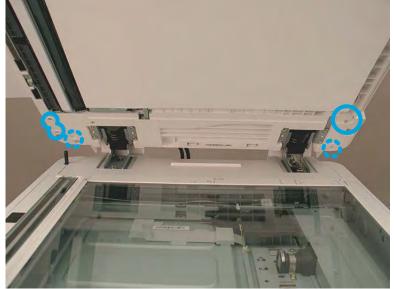


Figure 2-346 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

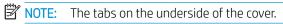
Figure 2-347 Release one tab on the right side of back cover.

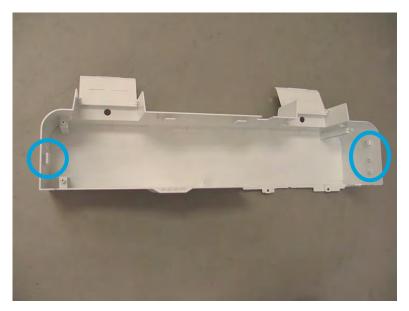


4. Release the three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

Figure 2-348 Release three tabs on the back cover.







5. Remove the back cover from the left to right as shown in the photo.

### Figure 2-349 Remove back cover.

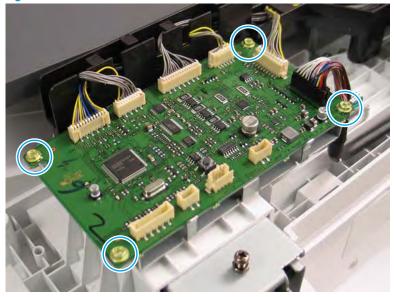


☆ TIP: To reinstall cover, install from the right to left.

# Step 2: Remove the document feeder (ADF) PCA

1. Disconnect six connectors and the ground wire from PCA, and then remove four screws.

Figure 2-350 Document feeder PCA



2. Remove the document feeder PCA.

# Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

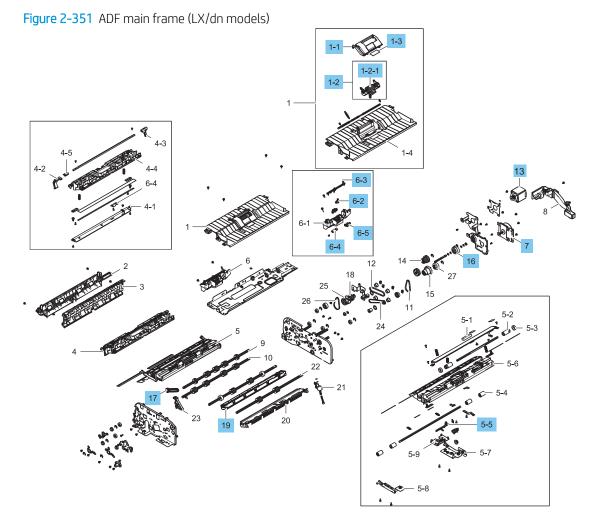
🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)



Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	LX/dn separation housing	JC97-04586A	1
1-2	ADF separation roller	JC97-04852A on page 454	1
1-2-1	ADF separation sub roller	JC97-04861A	1
1-3	Friction pad	JC69-01326A	1
5-5	Actuator, output	JC66-04104A	1
6-2	Actuator, feed out	JC66-04105A	1
6-3	Actuator, registration	JC66-04103A	1
6-4	Photo interrupter	0604-001381	1
6-5	Photo interrupter	0604–001393	1
7	Motor, bldc type 1	JC31-00156A on page 461	1
13	Motor - Step main	JC31-00163A	1
16	LX/dn - Motor feed DC	JC47-00038A	1
17	LX/dn - Link Cover Open	JC66-04100A	1
19	LX/dn - Contact Image Sensor	JC97-04722A	1

Table 2-20 ADF main frame assembly (LX/dn models)

# Document feeder separation roller assembly (LX/dn models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the LX document feeder pickup/reverse/feed roller assembly</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the LX document feeder separation roller</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the document feeder separation roller assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

### JC97-04852A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• ADF Separation roller assembly (LX/dn models)

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

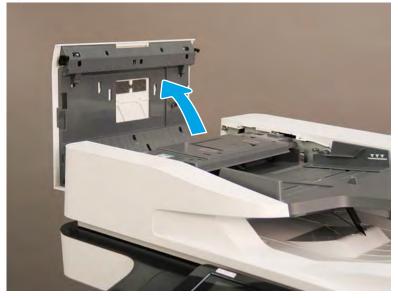
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the LX document feeder pickup/reverse/feed roller assembly

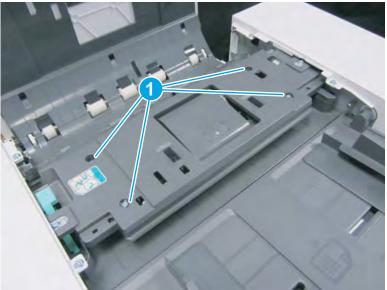
1. Open the document feeder cover.

Figure 2-352 Open the document feeder cover



- 2. Remove four screws in the document feeder pick roller assembly cover.
  - NOTE: Remove one spring (callout 2; not shown)

Figure 2-353 Remove the document feeder cover screws



3. Rotate the document feeder pickup cover up, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 2-354 Turn the cover over and disconnect connector



4. **NOTE**: The figure below shows the roller cover and the roller assembly when removed.

Figure 2-355 Document feeder pick roller cover and roller assembly



- 5. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sensor flag bracket (callout 2).
  - **Reinstallation tip:** When the roller assembly is reinstalled, make sure that the sensor flags (on both sides of the assembly) are correctly isntalled and move freely.

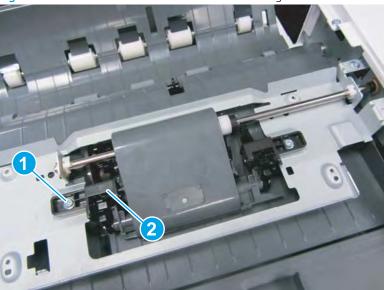


Figure 2-356 Remove one screw and the sensor flag bracket

- 6. Release two plastic clips (callout 1), slide bushing toward roller assembly (callout 2), and then slide the shaft towards front of printer to release it (callout 3). Remove the roller assembly.
  - **CAUTION:** Do not damage the sensor flags when handling the roller assembly.
  - **NOTE:** The bushing is not captive. Do not lose it when handling the roller assembly.

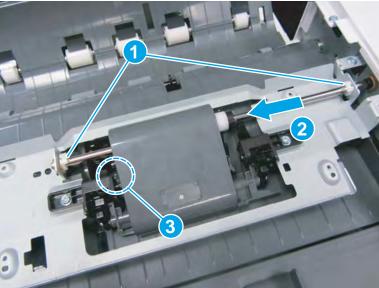
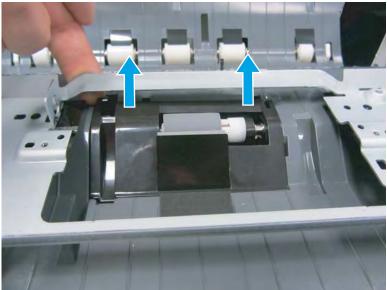


Figure 2-357 Remove the document feeder pick roller assembly clips.

# Step 2: Remove the LX document feeder separation roller

1. Rotate the separation roller cover up to release it, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-358 Remove the separation roller cover



2. NOTE: The figure below shows the roller cover and the roller assembly when removed.

Figure 2-359 Document feeder separation roller cover and roller assembly



- 3. Release two claws, and then remove the separation roller assembly.
- **NOTE:** The separation roller assembly spring under the roller is not captive.



Figure 2-360 Remove the separation roller assembly

4. When the assembly is reinstalled, make sure that the spring is correctly seated in the holder.

Figure 2-361 Separation roller assembly spring



# Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

# **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Document feeder feed motor (LX/dn models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the feed motor</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the feed motor assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC31-00156A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Feed motor assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

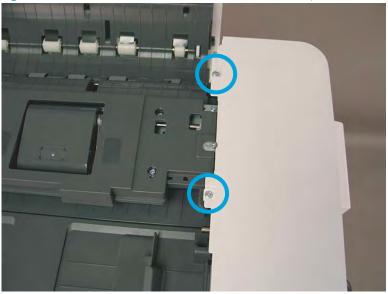
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

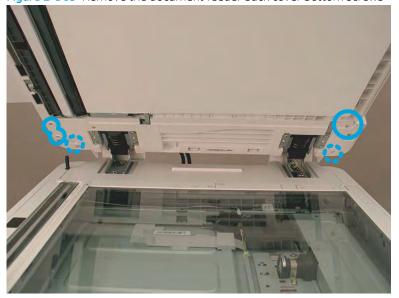
#### Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-362 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



Using a JIS #2 stubby screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.
 Figure 2–363 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



**3.** Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

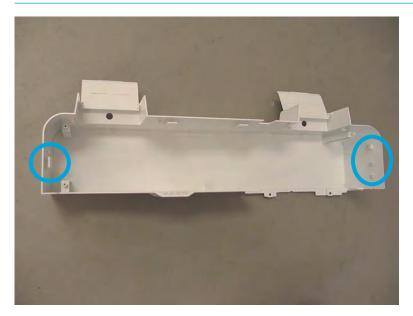
Figure 2-364 Release one tab on the right side of back cover.



4. Release the three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

Figure 2-365 Release three tabs on the back cover.

**NOTE:** The tabs on the underside of the cover.



5. Remove the back cover from the left to right as shown in the photo.

Figure 2-366 Remove back cover.

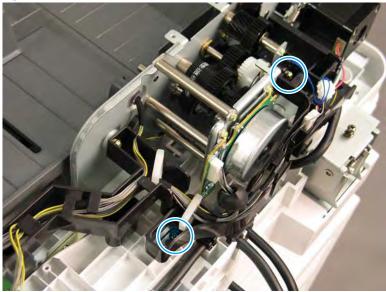


2 TIP: To reinstall cover, install from the right to left.

# Step 2: Remove the feed motor

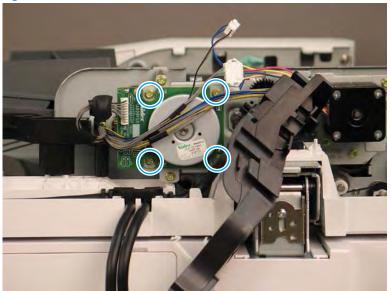
1. Loosen the cables in the cable guide, remove two screws and then move the cable guide out of the way.

Figure 2-367 Feed motor cable guide



2. Disconnect one connector, remove four screws, and then carefully lift the motor out to remove.

Figure 2-368 Remove the feed motor



# Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

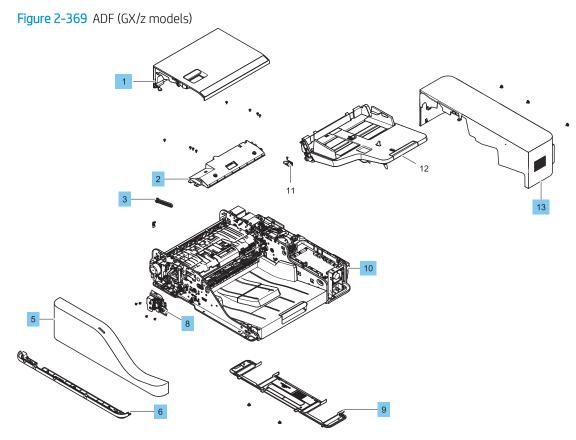
A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# ADF (GX/z models)



# Table 2-21 ADF (GX/z models only)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	GX/z ADF open cover	JC97-04869A	1
2	GX/z ADF pickup upper	JC37-04872A	1
3	GX/z ADF cover hinge	JC66-02270A	1
5	GX/z ADF front cover	JC97-04881A	1
6	GX/z ADF dummy front	JC97-04879A	1
8	GX/z ADF damper	JC97-04692A	1
9	GX/z ADF cover, bottom	JC97-04880A	1
10	GX/z ADF main frame	JC97-04883A	1
12	GX/z ADF Stacker	JC97-04658B	1
13	GX/z ADF cover, rear	JC63-05566A	1

# Document feeder input tray (GX/z models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the dampening unit</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the pick and feed unit</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the input tray</u>
- <u>Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the input tray assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

### JC97-04658B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Input tray assembly

#### **Required tools**

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- #2 JIS stubby screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 2-370 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

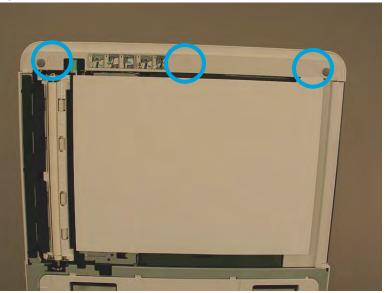
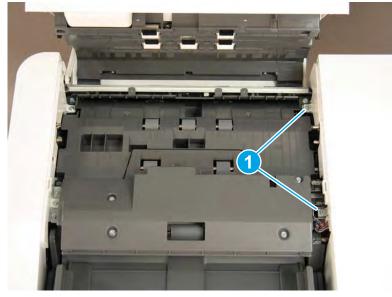


Figure 2-371 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

# Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-372 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

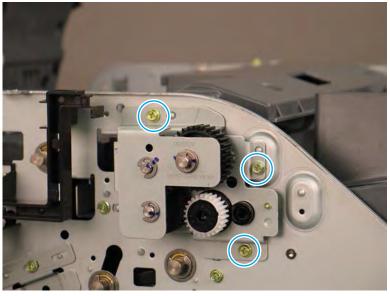


Figure 2-373 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

# Step 3: Remove the dampening unit

Remove three screws, and then remove the damping unit.

Figure 2-374 Remove the document feeder damping unit



# Step 4: Remove the pick and feed unit

Remove four screws (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and one ground wire (callout 3), and then remove the pick feed roller assembly.

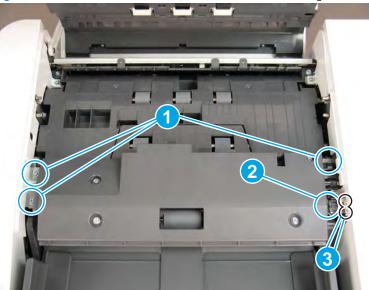
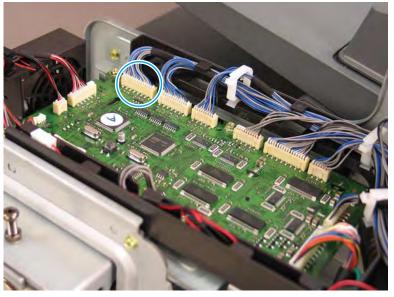


Figure 2-375 Remove four screws, two connectors and one ground wire.

# Step 5: Remove the input tray

1. Disconnect the document feeder PCA connector, and then remove cable from guide.

Figure 2-376 Disconnect the document feeder PCA connector



2. Lift the tray from the front, and pivot the tray outward to remove.

### Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Document feeder contact image sensor (CIS) (GX/z models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the document feeder pick and feed assembly</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the paper path cover</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the CIS assembly</u>
- <u>Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the CIS assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### 0609-001558

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• CIS assembly

## **Required tools**

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- #2 JIS stubby screwdriver with a magnetic tip

# After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

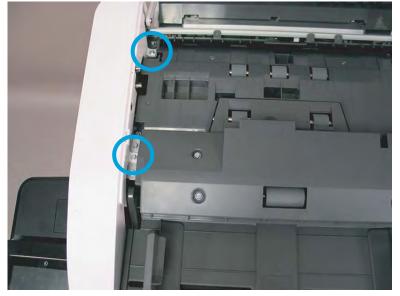


Figure 2-377 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

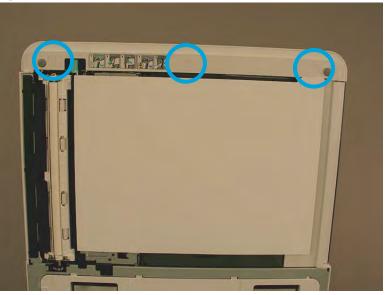
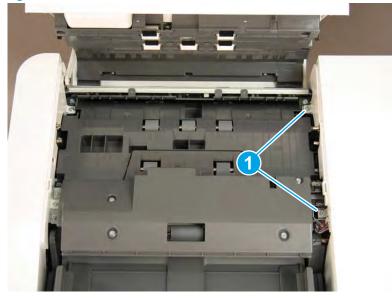


Figure 2-378 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

# Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-379 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

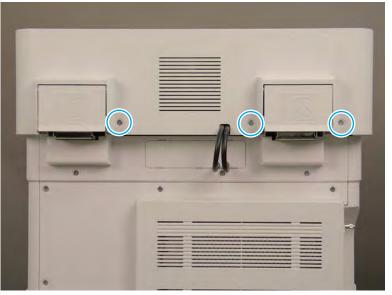
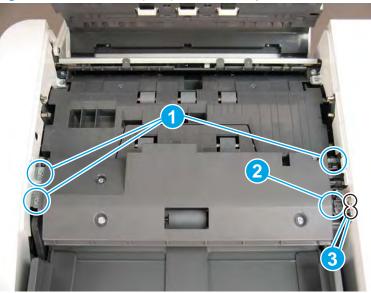


Figure 2-380 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

# Step 3: Remove the document feeder pick and feed assembly

▲ Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2, including one ground wire), and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

Figure 2-381 Remove the pickup roller assembly



# Step 4: Remove the paper path cover

A Remove five screws, and then remove the paper path cover.

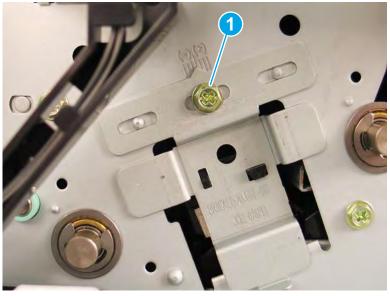
Figure 2-382 Remove the document feeder paper path cover



# Step 5: Remove the CIS assembly

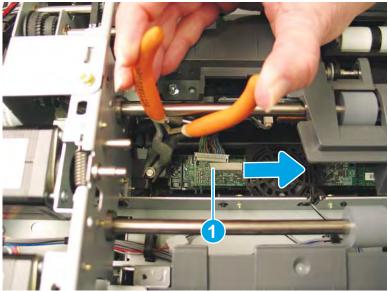
- 1. Remove one screw, and then remove the CIS front alignment cover.
- Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the CIS front alignment cover for reinstallation; the cover must reinstalled with the same orientation.

Figure 2-383 Remove the CIS front alignment cover screws



- 2. Do the following:
  - **a.** Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
  - **b.** Use a pair of needle nose pliers to pull up on the metal pin, and then slide the CIS as shown below to remove it.

Figure 2-384 Remove the CIS



**3.** Remove the CIS assembly from the chassis.

# Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

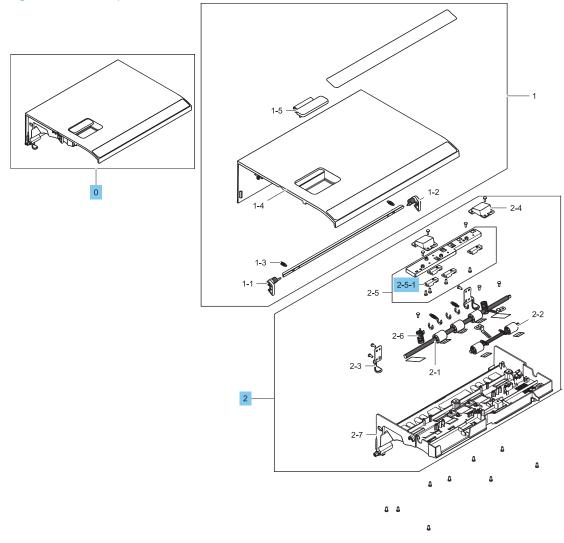
an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# ADF jam access cover (GX/z models)

Figure 2-385 ADF open cover (GX/z models)



# Table 2-22 ADF open cover (GX/z models)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	GX/z ADF open cover	JC97-04869A on page 482	1
2	GX/z ADF open cover, lower	JC97-04696B	1
2-5-1	Photo interrupter	0604-001381	4

# ADF jam access cover (GX/z models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the document feeder open cover</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the open cover assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video for this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

# JC97-04869A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Jam access cover assembly

#### **Required tools**

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- #2 JIS stubby screwdriver with a magnetic tip

# After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

# Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 2-386 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

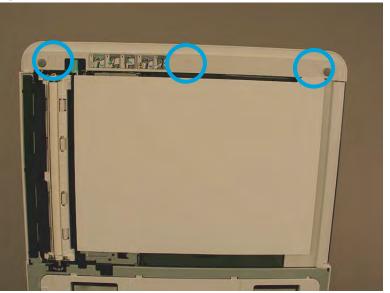
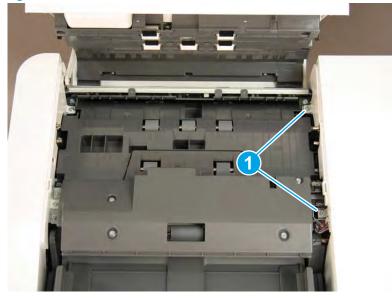


Figure 2-387 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

# Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-388 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

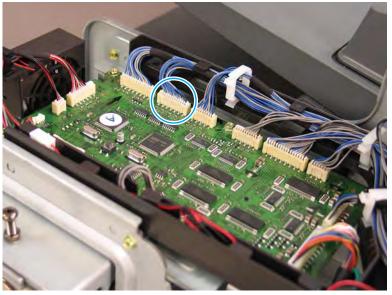


Figure 2-389 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

# Step 3: Remove the document feeder open cover

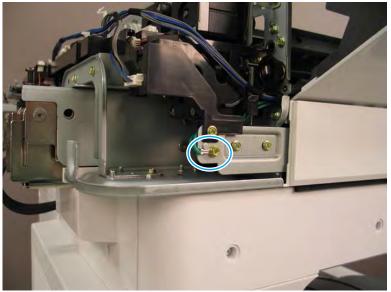
1. Disconnect connector at document feeder PCA and route cable out.

Figure 2-390 Disconnect one connector



2. Disconnect the ground wire.

Figure 2-391 Remove the jam access cover ground wire



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), remove hinge (pivot) pin, and then remove door arm support (callout 2)

Figure 2-392 Remove the jam access cover door arm support

4. Remove the open cover.

# Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

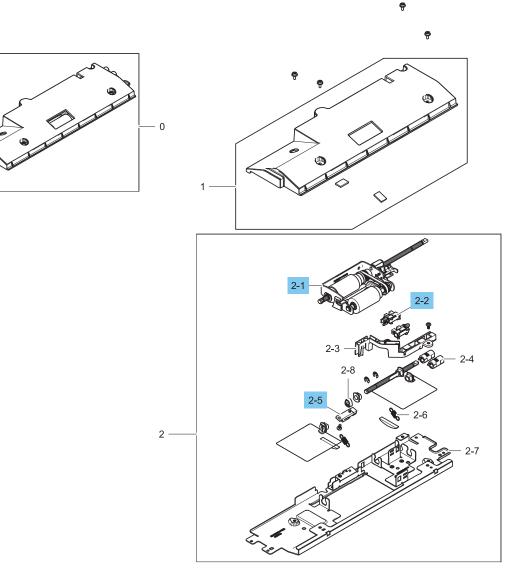
an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# ADF upper pick (GX/z models)

Figure 2-393 ADF upper pickup (GX/z models)



Main parts 487

# Table 2-23 ADF upper pickup (GX/z models)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2-1	GX/z ADF, sub-pickup	JC97-04650A on page 489	1
2-2	Photo interrupter	0604-001393	1
2-5	Photo interrupter	0604-001381	1
Not shown	Document feeder separtation roller assembly (GX/z models)	JC97-04915A on page 493	1

# Flow document feeder pick roller assembly (GX/z models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the flow document feeder pick/reverse/feed rollers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

Two document feeder types are available for this product. Products with "z" bundles are equipped with "Flow" document feeders. Products with "dn" bundles are equipped with the standard document feeder.

This document provides the procedures to remove the flow document feeder pickup roller assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC97-04650A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Pick roller assembly (GX/z models)

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

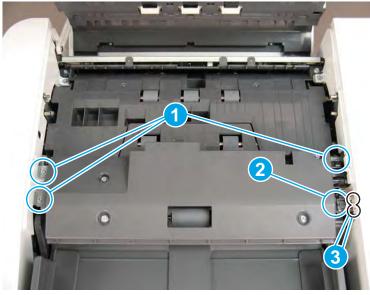
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the flow document feeder pick/reverse/feed rollers

- Open the document feeder top cover. 1.
- 2. Remove the pick feed roller assembly.
  - Remove four screws (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and one ground wire (callout • 3), and then remove the pick feed roller assembly.

Figure 2-394 Remove four screws, two connectors, one ground wire, and then pick feed roller assembly.



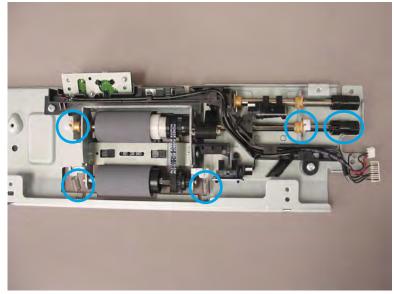
- Remove Remove the pick feed rollers: 3.
  - Remove four screws and then remove the roller assembly cover. •

Figure 2-395 Remove 2 screws on front cover.



- Remove two plastic clips and two bushings, disconnect two springs, and then remove the shaft
- **NOTE:** The shaft is engaged in the coupler.

Figure 2-396 Remove the pickup roller components.



• Slide the roller shaft and then remove the pick feed roller assembly.

Figure 2-397 Remove the pick feed roller assembly.

- 4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.
  - After the replacement roller is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter.
    - i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.
    - **ii.** Select the Service menu.
    - iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop down menu, and then enter the service access code.
    - iv. Select the Service Tools menu.
    - v. Select the Supply Status menu.

- vi. Select Field Replacement Unit..
- vii. Select ADF Pickup Roller.
- viii. Select ADF Pickup Roller.
- ix. Select Reset.

# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# ADF separation roller assembly (GX/z models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder pick/feed roller assembly (GX/z models)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the document feeder separation roller</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

Two document feeder types are available for this product. Products with "z" bundles are equipped with "Flow" document feeders. Products with "dn" bundles are equipped with the standard document feeder.

This document provides the procedures to remove the flow document feeder separation roller assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video for this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC97-04915A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Separation roller assembly (GX/z models)

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the document feeder pick/feed roller assembly (GX/z models)

Remove four screws (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and one ground wire (callout 3), and then remove the pick feed roller assembly.

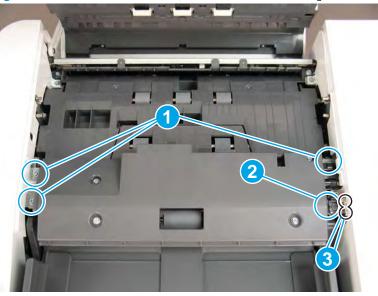
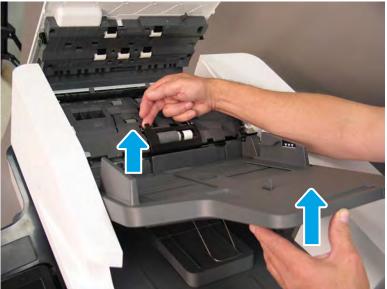


Figure 2-398 Remove four screws, two connectors and one ground wire.

# Step 2: Remove the document feeder separation roller

1. Slightly lift the input tray, and then remove the separation roller cover.

Figure 2-399 Remove the separation roller cover



- **2.** Remove one plastic clip.
  - NOTE: The shaft is engaged in the coupler.

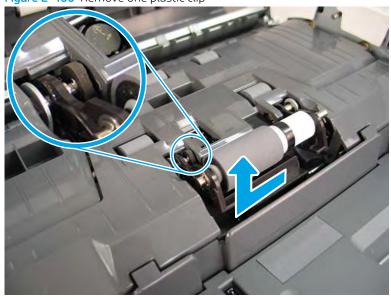


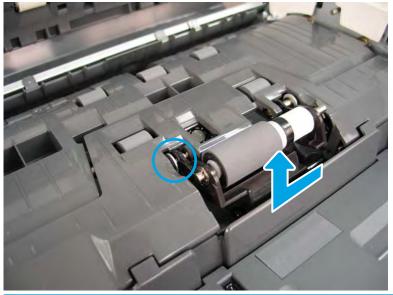
Figure 2-400 Remove one plastic clip

3. Slide the roller assembly to the front, and then pull up to release the claws from the shaft.

Figure 2-401 Remove the separation roller



Figure 2-402 Remove the separation roller



- NOTE: Ensure the sponge washer (circled above) is retained during the removal of the roller assembly–it may fall off.
- $\dot{\phi}$ : **Reinstallation tip:** Position the spring and shaft before attaching the claws to the shaft.
- 4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

# Special installation instructions: Flow ADF separation roller

- After the replacement roller is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:
  - i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.
  - ii. Select the Service menu.

- iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the service access code.
- iv. Select the Service Tools menu.
- v. Select the Supply Status menu.
- vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.
- vii. Select ADF Separation (Reverse) Roller.
- viii. Select ADF Separation Roller.
- ix. Select Reset.

### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

- 2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.
  - CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

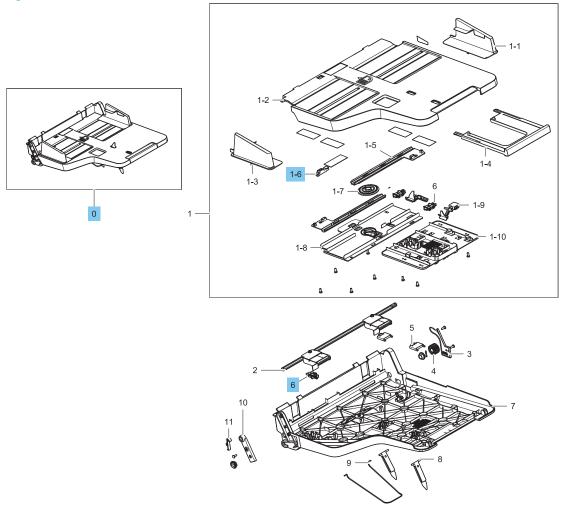
an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# ADF stacker (GX/z models)

Figure 2-403 ADF stacker (GX/z models)

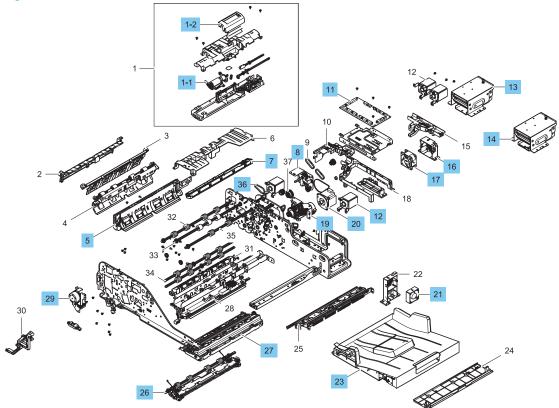


# Table 2-24 Flow ADF stacker (GX/z models)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	GX/z Flow ADF stacker	JC97-04658B	1
1-6	Photo interrupter	0604-001381	1
6	Photo interrupter	0604-01393	1

# ADF main frame (GX/z models)

**Figure 2-404** ADF main frame (GX/z models)



Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	GX Separation Roller Assy	JC97-04915A	1
1-2	GX ADF - Separation Roller Cover	JC97-04652A	1
5	GX ADF scan in lower	JC97-04656B	1
7	GX Contact image sensor	0609-001558	1
8	GX ADF, pickup release drive	JC97-04681A on page 506	1
11	GX ADF, PCA	JC92-02964A on page 528	1
12	GX ADF, feed drive motor	JC97-04680A on page 506	4
13	GX ADF, hinge L	JC97-04640A	1
14	GX ADF, hinge R	JC97-04641A	1
16	GX Fan motor housing	JC61-07694A	1
17	Fan, ADF CIS	JC31-00168A on page 519	1
19	GX ADF, lift drive	JC97-04679A on page 506	1
20	GX Step motor, ip	JC31-00177A on page 502	1
21	Fan, ADF PCA (GX)	JC31-00146A on page 516	1
23	GX ADF - Input Tray	JC97-04668B	1
26	GX ADF, white simplex roller	JC97-04687A	1
27	GX ADF scan out	JC97-04830A	1
29	GX ADF - Motor Drive Release Scan	JC97-04682A	1
36	Timing belt, gear	6602-001730	3
Not shown	PCA - ADF HIC (GX only)	JC92-02964A on page 522	1
Not shown	PCA - ADF Receiver (GX only)	JC92-02967A on page 522	1
Not shown	PCA - ADF Transmitter (GX only)	JC92-02966A on page 522	1

# Table 2-25 ADF main frame (GX/z models)

# Document feeder front motor (GX/z models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the document feeder front motor</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the front motor assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video for this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

# JC31-00177A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Front motor assembly

### **Required tools**

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- #2 JIS stubby screwdriver with a magnetic tip

# After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

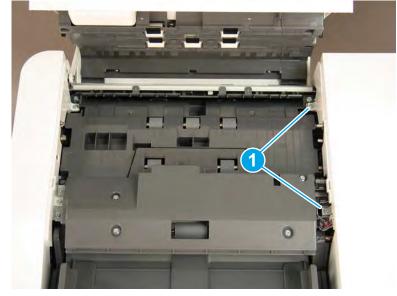
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-405 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

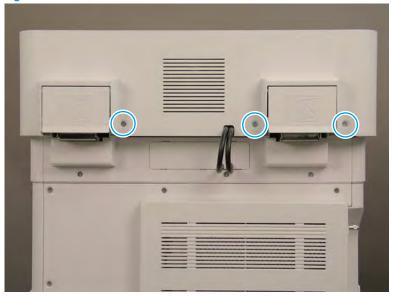
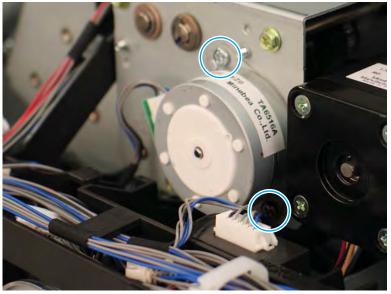


Figure 2-406 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

# Step 2: Remove the document feeder front motor

Remove two screws and disconnect one connector, and then remove the motor.

Figure 2-407 Remove the document feeder front motor



Reinstallation tip:

- **a.** Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.
- **b.** Loosely install the motor mount screws.
- **c.** Install the tension spring.
- **d.** Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

**NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Document feeder rear motors (GX/z models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Identify the document feeder motors</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove motors 1 and 2</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the pickup and pre-REGI motors</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the exit motor</u>
- <u>Step 6: Remove the document feeder feed motor</u>
- <u>Step 7: Remove the REGI motor</u>
- <u>Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the rear motor assemblies.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

JC97-04679A	JC97-04681A	JC97-04680A	JC97-04680A	JC97-04680A	JC97-04680A	JC31-00177A

- Motor 1-Flow ADF drive
- Motor 2-Flow ADF drive release

pickup

Pre-REGI • Exit motor motor

•

Feed motor 

REDI t
motor

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

Pickup

motor

# **Required tools**

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- #2 JIS stubby screwdriver with a magnetic tip

# After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

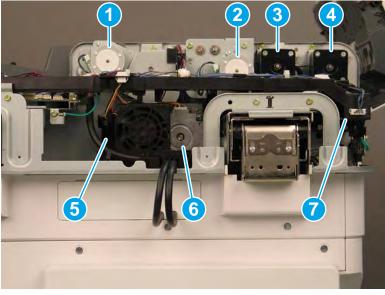
# Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Identify the document feeder motors

Use the figure below to locate the motor.

# Figure 2-408 Document feeder motors



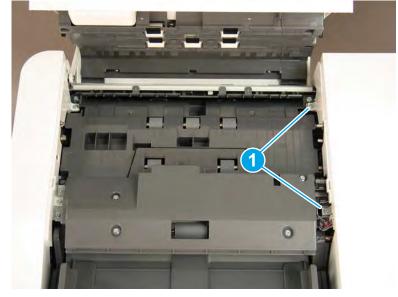
#### Table 2-26 Document feeder motors

Callout	Description
1	Motor 1
	Go to <u>Step 3: Remove motors 1 and 2 on page 510</u> .
2	Motor 2
	Go to <u>Step 3: Remove motors 1 and 2 on page 510</u> .
3	Pickup motor
	Go to <u>Step 4: Remove the pickup and pre-REGI motors on page 511</u> .
4	Pre_REGI motor
	Go to <u>Step 4: Remove the pickup and pre-REGI motors on page 511</u> .
5	Exit motor
	Go to <u>Step 5: Remove the exit motor on page 513</u> .
6	Feed motor
	Go to <u>Step 6: Remove the document feeder feed motor on page 514</u> .
7	REGI motor
	Go to <u>Step 7: Remove the REGI motor on page 515</u> .

# Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-409 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

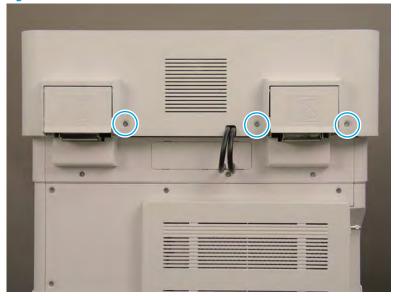
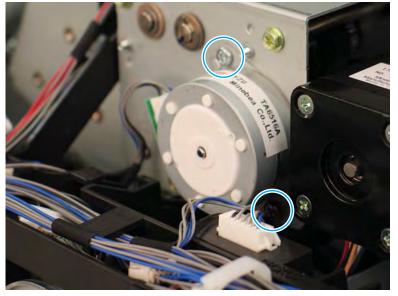


Figure 2-410 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

# Step 3: Remove motors 1 and 2

- Remove two screws and one connector, and then remove the motor.
- 2 Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

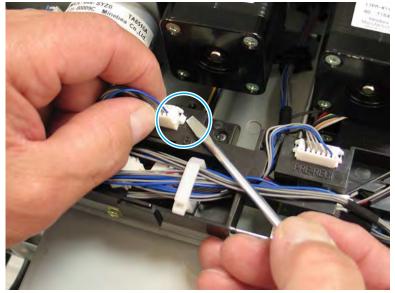
Figure 2-411 Remove the motor



# Step 4: Remove the pickup and pre-REGI motors

- 1. Loosen the cable guide
- 2. Disconnect one connector from the motor.
  - % TIP: Remove the connector harness from the cable retainer, and then disconnect the connector.

Figure 2-412 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove one spring (callout 1), and then loosen (but do not remove) three screws. Slide the motor off the screws to remove.

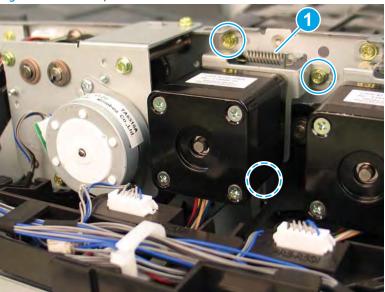
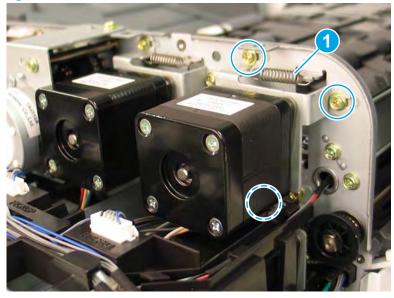


Figure 2-413 Pickup motor

Figure 2-414 Pre-REGI motor



- 4. To reinstall the motor, do the following:
  - Reinstall the motor on the motor mounting screws, and then lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.
  - Install the tension spring.
  - Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

### Step 5: Remove the exit motor

1. Remove two screws and one connector, and then remove the main fan.

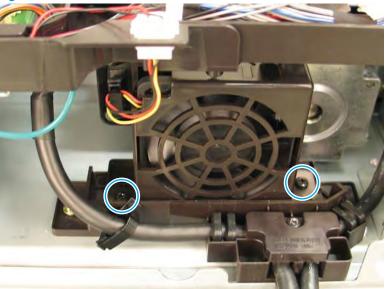
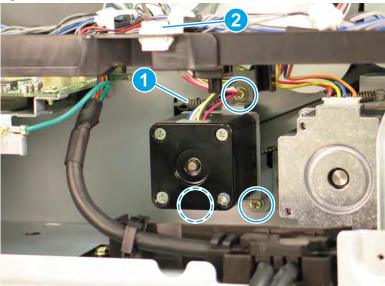


Figure 2-415 Remove the main fan

- 2. Remove the spring (callout 1), disconnect one connector (callout 2), loosen three screws, and then remove the exit motor.
  - Reinstallation tip:
    - **a.** Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.
    - **b.** Install the tension spring.
    - **c.** Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

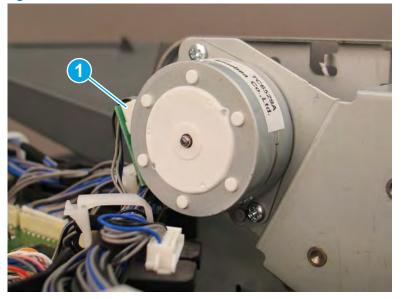
Figure 2-416 Remove the motor



# Step 6: Remove the document feeder feed motor

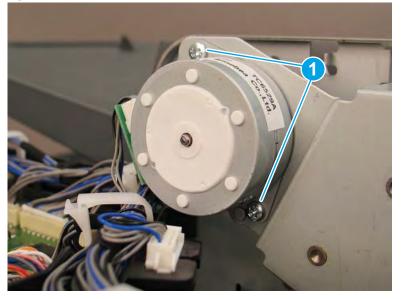
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 2-417 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove two screws, and then remove motor.

Figure 2-418 Remove the motor



#### Step 7: Remove the REGI motor

- 1. Remove the rear cover
- 2. Remove the Pre-REGI motor
- **3.** Disconnect one connector from the motor.
  - $m \ref{TIP:}$  Remove the connector harness from the cable retainer, and then disconnect the connector.
- 4. Remove one spring, loosen (do not remove) 3 screws, and then slide the motor off the screws to remove.
  - Reinstallation tip:
    - **a.** Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.
    - **b.** Install the tension spring.
    - **c.** Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

#### Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Document feeder PCA fan (GX/z models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the document feeder PCA fan</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the document feeder PCA fan assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.</u>

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

# JC31-00146A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Document feeder PCA fan assembly

### **Required tools**

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- #2 JIS stubby screwdriver with a magnetic tip

# After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

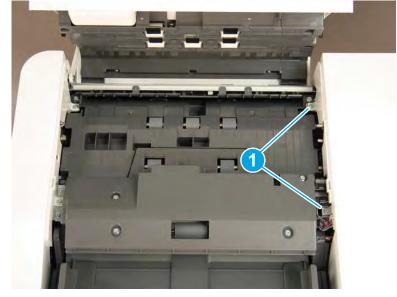
### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-419 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

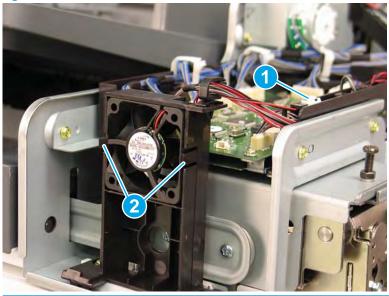


Figure 2-420 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

# Step 2: Remove the document feeder PCA fan

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1) and then release two tabs (callout 2) to remove the fan.

Figure 2-421 Remove the document feeder PCA fan connector



🔆 Reinstallation tip: Install the fan with the correct orientation when reinstalling.

### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

**CAUTION:** Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Document feeder contact image sensor (CIS) fan (GX/z models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the document feeder CIS fan</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the CIS fan assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for a HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

# JC31-00168A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

CIS fan

### Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- #2 JIS stubby screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

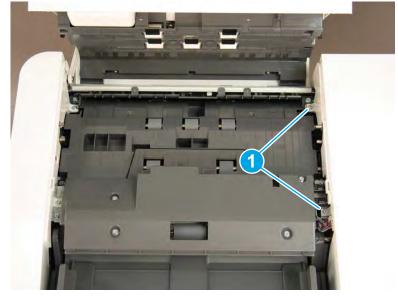
### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-422 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

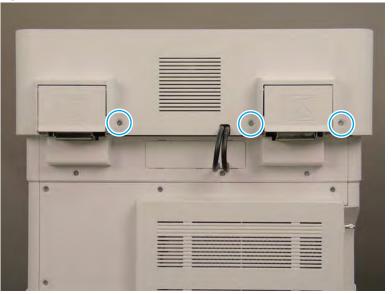
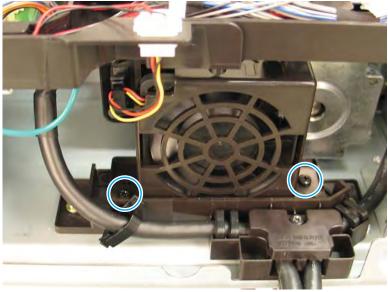


Figure 2-423 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

# Step 2: Remove the document feeder CIS fan

Remove one connector, and then remove two mounting screws to remove the fan.

### Figure 2-424 Remove the document feeder PCA fan



# Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Document feeder with ultrasonic sensor PCA (GX/z models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the document feeder paper path cover</u>
- Step 5: Remove the document feeder ultrasonic sensor with PCA
- <u>Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the ultrasonic sensor with PCA assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

### JC92-02964A

# JC92-02967A

# JC92-02966A

- PCA- ADF HIC (GX only)
- PCA- ADF Receiver (GX only)
- PCA- ADF Transmitter (GX only)

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

### **Required tools**

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- #2 JIS stubby screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 2-425 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

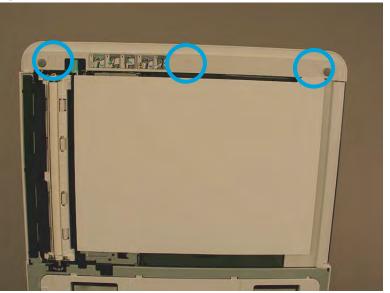
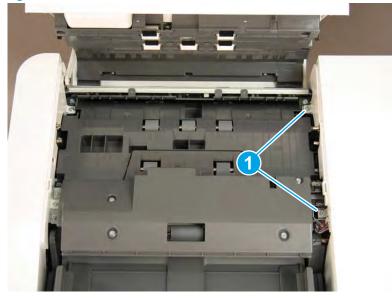


Figure 2-426 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

# Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-427 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

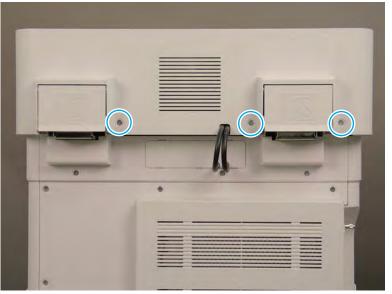
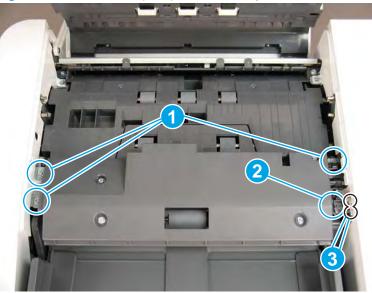


Figure 2-428 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

### Step 3: Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly

▲ Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2, including one ground wire), and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

Figure 2-429 Remove the pickup roller assembly



# Step 4: Remove the document feeder paper path cover

A Remove five screws, and then remove the paper path cover.

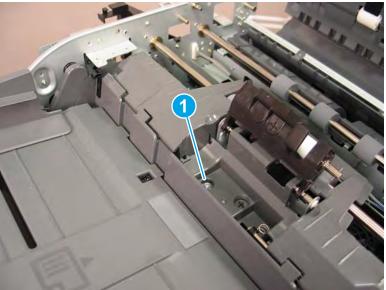
Figure 2-430 Remove the document feeder paper path cover



# Step 5: Remove the document feeder ultrasonic sensor with PCA

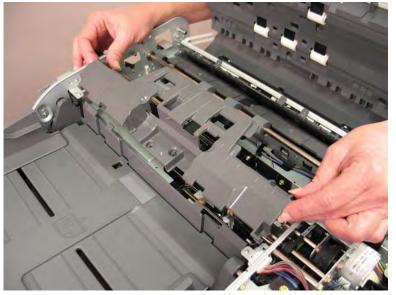
1. Remove the separation roller, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 2-431 Remove one screw



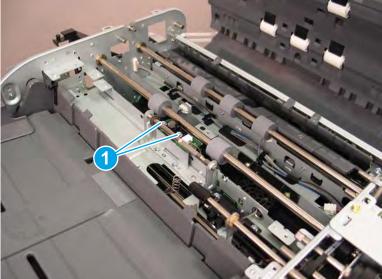
2. Remove the pick/feed cover.

Figure 2-432 Remove the pick/feed cover



Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the ultrasonic sensor. 3.

Figure 2-433 Remove the ultrasonic sensor



# Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

- Dispose of the defective part. 1.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- MPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps. 3.
- **When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the** removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# PCA - ADF HIC (GX/z models)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the PCA ADF HIC (GX only)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the PCA - ADF HIC (GX only).

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP Color LaserJet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

# JC92-02964A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• PCA - ADF HIC (GX only)

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

# Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

## Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the PCA - ADF HIC (GX only)

Disconnect all harnesses. Remove four screws, and then release the PCA - ADF HIC.

**NOTE:** There are two empty connectors.

Figure 2-434 Remove screws and release PCA - ADF HIC



#### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Image scanner

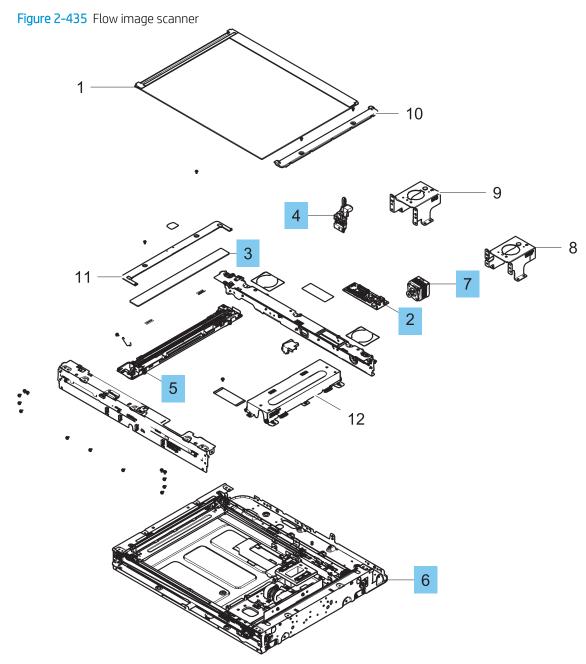
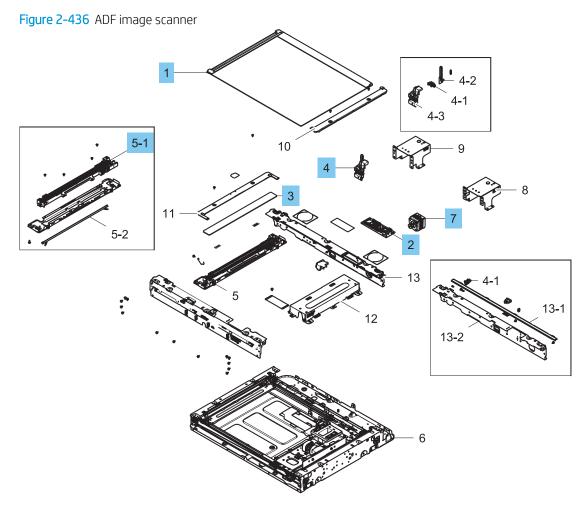


Table 2-27 Image scanner

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	PCA - Scan Joint	JC92-02781A	1
3	SSA Tempered Glass	JC01-00101A	1
4	Image scanner open sensor	JC97-04516A	1
5	Scanner - FR Lamp	JC97-04521A	1
6	Image scanner, lower	JC97-04515A	1
7	Step motor, ip	JC31-00158A	1

# Image scanner assembly



# Table 2-28 ADF image scanner

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Image scanner scan glass	JC97-04522B on page 534	1
2	PCA scanner	JC92-02781A	1
3	Tempered scan glass	JC01-00101A	1
4	Scanner assembly-DDC and lens	JC97-04516A	1
5-1	Image scanner lamp	JC97-04521A on page 536	1
7	Step motor, ip	JC31-00158A	1

# Scan glass

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the scanner glass</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the scanner glass.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP

Click here to view a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC97-04522B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Scanner glass part number

# **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the scanner glass

• Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scanner glass to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-437 Remove scanner glass



# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

**A** CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Scanner LED lamp module

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the scanner glass</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the scanner LED lamp module</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the LED lamp module assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP Color Laserjet MFP.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

# JC97-04521A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• LED lamp module assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

# After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

## Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the scanner glass

Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scanner glass to the right to remove it.

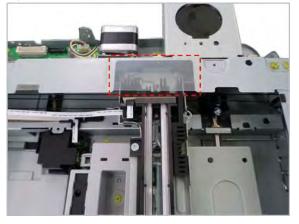
Figure 2-438 Remove scanner glass



# Step 2: Remove the scanner LED lamp module

1. Remove the transparent tape.

Figure 2-439 Remove transparent tape



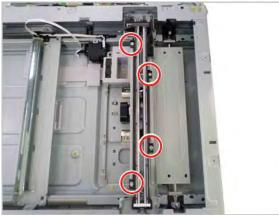
**2.** Disconnect the flat cable.

Figure 2-440 Disconnect cable



3. Remove four screws. Release the LED lamp module.

Figure 2-441 Remove screws and release LED lamp module



#### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

▲ CAUTION:

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)

Figure 2-442 ADF image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)

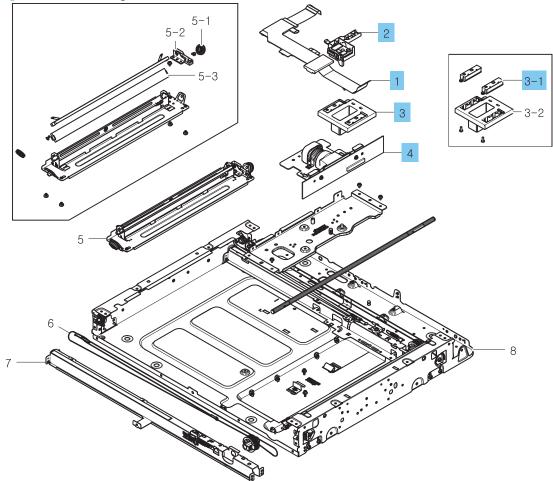


Table 2-29 ADF image scanner, lower (LX/dn models)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Image scanner, FFC CCD	JC97-04509A	1
2	Image scanner guide harness	JC97-04512A	1
3	Image scanner, aps	JC97-04507A on page 545	1
3-1	Photo interrupter	0604-001453	2
4	Image scanner lens	JC97-04523B on page 542	1

# Scanner assembly – CCD and lens

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the scanner glass</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the scanner imaging unit</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the scanner assembly and lens.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP Color LaserJet MFP

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP LaserJet MFP.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC97-04523B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Scanner assembly - CCD and lens

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

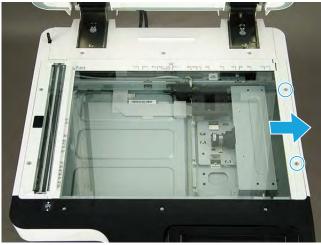
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the scanner glass

Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scanner glass to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-443 Remove scanner glass



# Step 2: Remove the scanner imaging unit

1. Remove four screws, and then release the imaging unit cover.

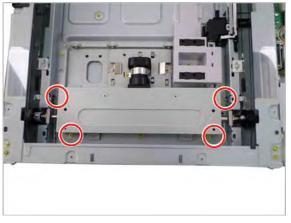


Figure 2-444 Remove screws and release imaging unit cover

**2.** Disconnect the flat cable.

Figure 2-445 Disconnect flat cable



3. Remove two screws and release the scanner imaging unit.

**CAUTION:** Do not remove or adjust the other two screws shown as they require factory setting only.

Figure 2-446 Remove screws and release scanner imaging unit

#### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

**IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Scanner APS sensor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the scanner glass</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the scanner APS sensor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the APS sensor assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP Color LaserJet MFP

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP LaserJet MFP.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC97-04507A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• APS sensor assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

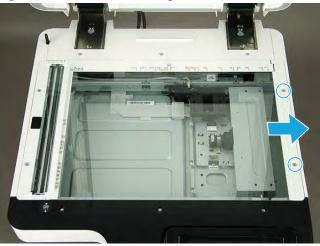
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the scanner glass

• Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scanner glass to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-447 Remove scanner glass



# Step 2: Remove the scanner APS sensor

1. Remove the joint board cover.

Figure 2-448 Remove joint board cover



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-449 Remove screw



3. Disconnect the harness.

Figure 2-450 Disconnect harness



Remove two screws. Release the APS sensor. 4.



# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Dispose of the defective part. 1.

# **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)

Figure 2-452 image scanner, lower (GX/z models) 

#### Table 2-30 Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
4	Scanner lamp	JC97-04523B	1

# Image scanner, lower (GX/z models)

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the scan in lower assembly.

<u>Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP Color LaserJet MFP.</u>

Click here to view a video of this procedure for the HP LaserJet MFP

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC97-04656B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Scan in lower assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

# After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 2-453 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

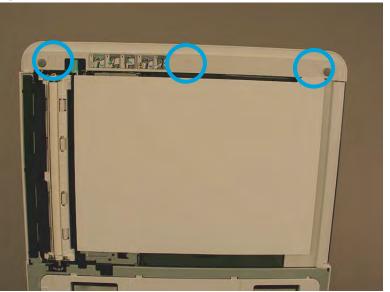
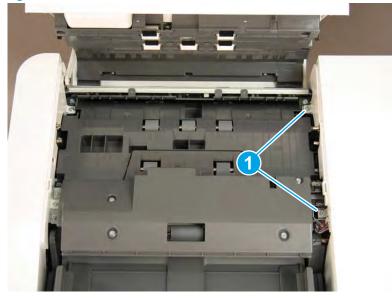


Figure 2-454 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

# Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws (callout 1) from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-455 Remove two screws from document back cover.



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

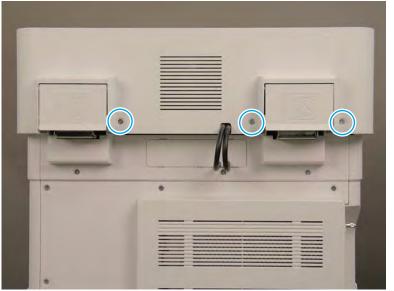


Figure 2-456 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

# Step 3: Remove the scan in lower assembly

1. Remove two screws (ADF front).

Figure 2-457 Remove two screws



Remove five screws (ADF back; four sheet-metal and one ground). 2.

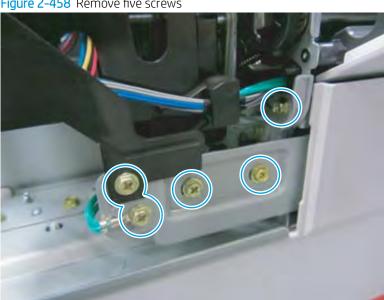
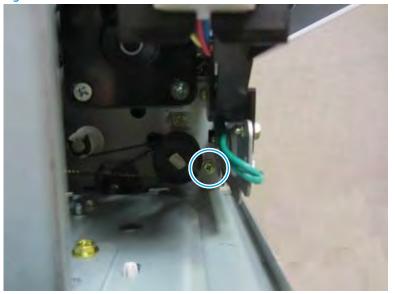


Figure 2-458 Remove five screws

3. Remove one screw (ADF back).

## Figure 2-459 Remove one screw



- 4. At the front corner, carefully pry the scan in lower assembly away from the ADF frame.
  - **IMPORTANT:** Locate the dimples in the scan in lower assembly. Separate the dimples from the ADF frame.
  - When installing a replacement scan in lower assembly, do not crease or wrinkle the attached Mylar.
  - $\frac{1}{2}$  TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 2-460 Pry the scan in lower assembly away from the ADF



# Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

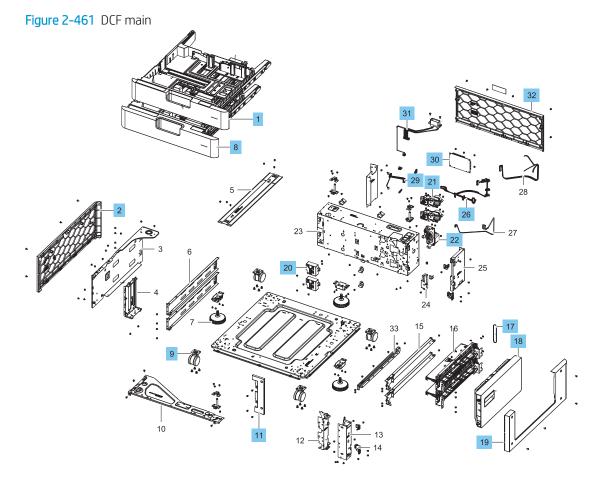
an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# HP LaserJet Dual cassette feeder (DCF)

# DCF main



# Table 2-31 DCF main

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cassette, four	JC90-01666A	1
2	DCF, left cover	JC63-04607B	1
8	Cassette five	JC90-01664A	1
9	Caster wheel	6109-001138	4
11	DCF, front cover	JC63-04606B	1
17	Timing belt, gear	6602-003185	1
18	Right Door	<u>JC90-01285A on page 560</u>	1
19	DCF, right cover	JC63-04605B	1
20	Rear auto-size holder	JC93-00018A	2
21	Drive assembly - main, (DCF pickup motor)	JC93-00442B	1
22	Drive Feed Assy (DCF motor)	JC93-00447A	1
26	Drive Feed Assy	JC39-01692A	1
29	Cable, DCR Size Sensor	JC39-01695A	1
30	PCA - MX4 DCF	JC92-02978A on page 563	1
31	IF Cable	JC39-01690A	1
32	DCF, rear cover	JC63-04604B on page 558	1
Not shown	PCA Paper Size Sensor	JC92-02622A	1
Not shown	PCA, dual cassette feeder (DCF)	JC92-02978A on page 563	1

# Dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

# JC63-04604B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover assembly

# **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

## Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover

Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 2-462 Remove the DCF rear cover



#### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the DCF right door</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

# JC90-01285A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• DCF right door

# **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

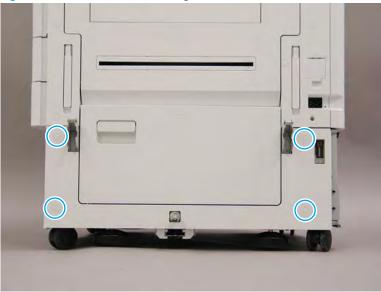
## Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the DCF right door

1. Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the lower right cover.

Figure 2-463 Remove the lower right cover



2. Open the DCF right door and slide the hinge pin to the left. Make sure that the pin slides under the tab (callout 1).

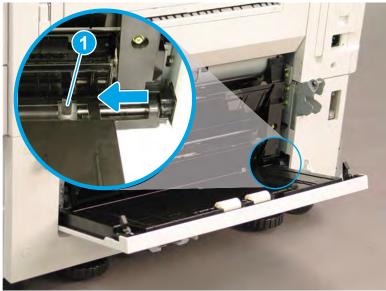


Figure 2-464 Slide the hinge pin

3. Rotate the right edge of the door away from the feeder (callout 1), and then slide the door to the right to remove it (callout 2).

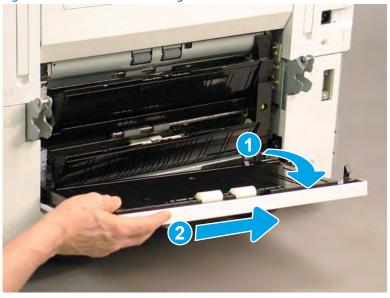


Figure 2-465 Remove the DCF right door

# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the Dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the DCF PCA</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### JC92-02978A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the Dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover

Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 2-466 Remove the DCF rear cover



#### Step 2: Remove the DCF PCA

Disconnect eight connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the DCF PCA.

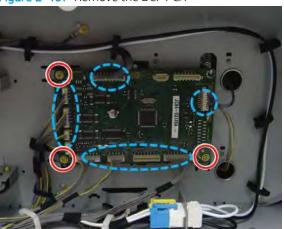


Figure 2-467 Remove the DCF PCA

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the DCF motor</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the DCF motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### JC93-00447A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• DCF motor

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover

A Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 2-468 Remove the DCF rear cover



# Step 2: Remove the DCF motor

1. Disconnect two connectors, and then open one retainer.

Figure 2-469 Disconnect two connectors and open one retainer



2. Remove three screws, and then remove the feed drive unit.

Figure 2-470 Remove the feed drive unit

3. Remove two screws, and then remove the feed motor.

Figure 2-471 Remove the feed motor

# Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🟡 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the DCF pickup motor</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the DCF pickup motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### JC93-00442B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• DCF pickup motor assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover

Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 2-472 Remove the DCF rear cover

	0	
0		Ó
	$\bigcirc$	

#### Step 2: Remove the DCF pickup motor

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. remove two screws, and then remove the DCF pickup motor.

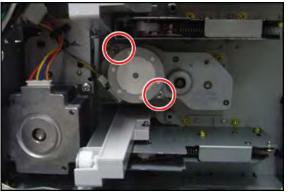


Figure 2-473 Remove the DCF pickup motor

#### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

I: 🧟 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

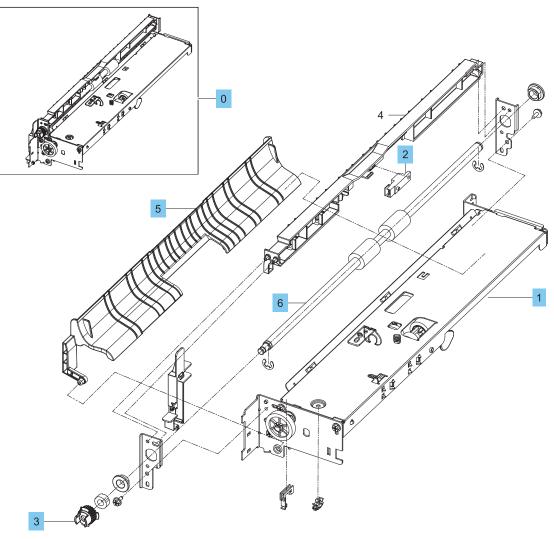
- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

<sup>▲</sup> CAUTION:

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# DCF main frame pickup 1

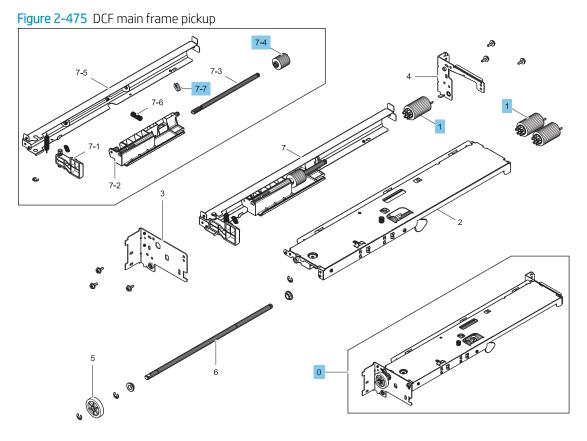
Figure 2-474 DCF main frame pickup 1



#### Table 2-32 DCF main frame pickup 1

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	DCF, main pickup	JC93-00513A	2
1	Main Pickup Sub Assy	JC93-00510A	2
2	Photo interrupter	0640-001381	2
3	Feed pulley	JC66-03288A	2
5	Second pickup guide	JC61-04717A	2
6	Idle feed roller	JC66-03287A	2

# DCF main frame pickup



#### Table 2-33 DCF main frame pickup

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Main Pickup lower and upper	JC93-00510A on page 577	2
1	Tray 2-x rollers	JC93-00540A	6
7-4	Coupler, torque limiter	JC67-00455A	2
7-7	Fixer, e-ring	JC61-01367A	2

# Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

MARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### JC93-00510A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

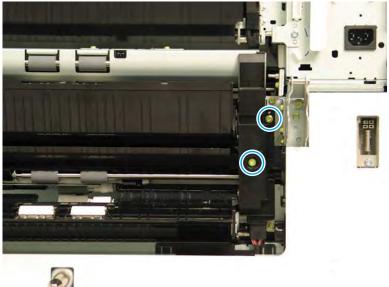
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units

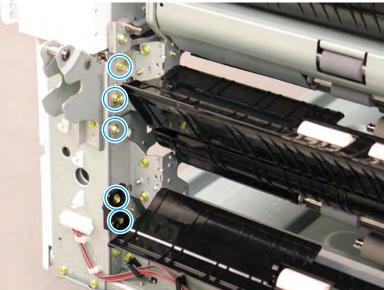
- 1. Remove the DCF right door.
- 2. Remove two screws, and then remove the cable cover.

Figure 2-476 Remove two screws and the cable cover



3. At the front of the printer, remove five screws, and then remove two brackets.

Figure 2-477 Remove five screws and two brackets



4. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the wire harness from the cable guide (callout 2). Remove eight screws (callout 3).

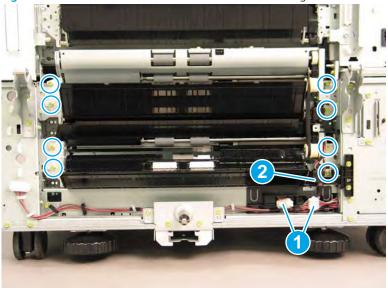


Figure 2-478 Disconnect two connectors and remove eight screws

5. Rotate both pickup units away from the feeder on the left (callout 1). Release the belt (callout 2) that connects the two units. Slide the pickup units to the left (callout 3) to remove them.

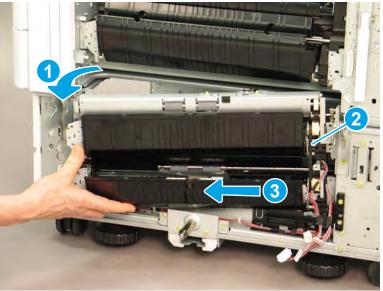


Figure 2-479 Remove the pickup units

#### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

#### **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

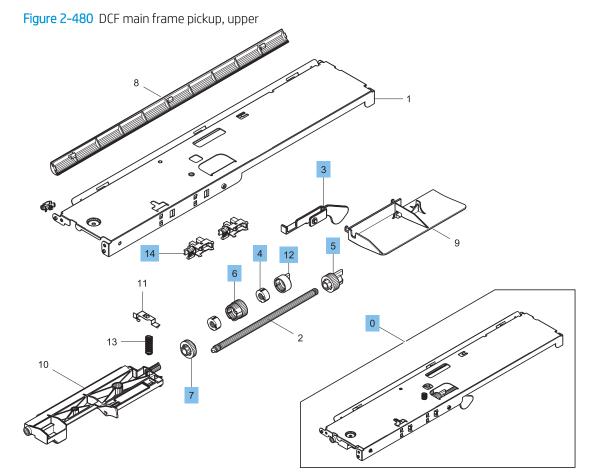
an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# DCF main frame pickup, upper



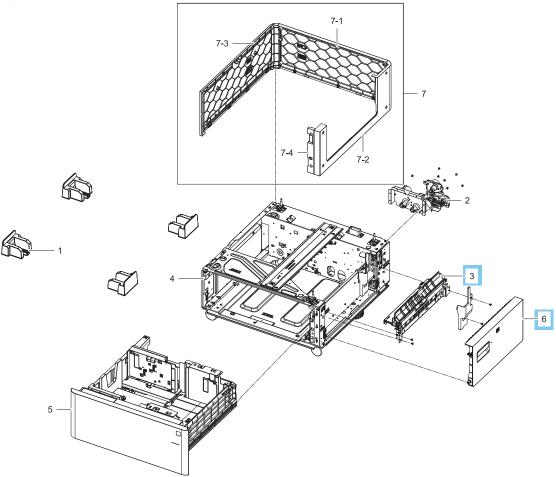
#### Table 2-34 DCF main frame pickup, upper

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Main frame pickup, upper	JC93-00504A	2
3	Actuator, empty pickup	JC66-03199A	2
4	Clutch one way	JC66-00977A	4
5	Gear-m, joint	JC66-00943A	2
6	Gear-m, one way	JC66-00941A	2
7	Gear-m, idle	JC66-00940A	2
12	Holder-m, idle one way	JC61-01288A	2
14	Photo interrupter	0604-001393	4

# HP LaserJet High-capacity input (HCI) tray (workgroup)

# **HCI** main

Figure 2-481 HCI main



#### Table 2-35 HCI main

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
3	Sub-pickup (HCI)	JC90-01727A on page 585	1
6	Takeaway (HCI) (right door)	JC90-01734A on page 595	1

# HCl sub - pickup

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the HCl rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the HCI drive assembly feed</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the HCl right door</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the HCI drive assembly -sub pulley</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the HCI belt timing gear</u>
- <u>Step 6: Remove the HCl sub pickup</u>
- <u>Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCl sub - pickup.

Click here to see a video of this procedure.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC90-01727A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• HCI sub - pickup

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

#### Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

#### Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover

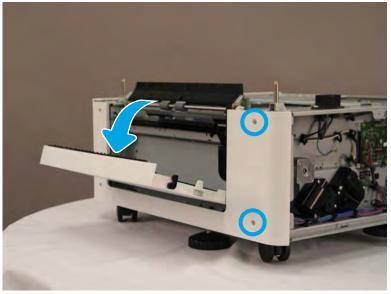
- Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.
- 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-482 Remove the HCI rear cover

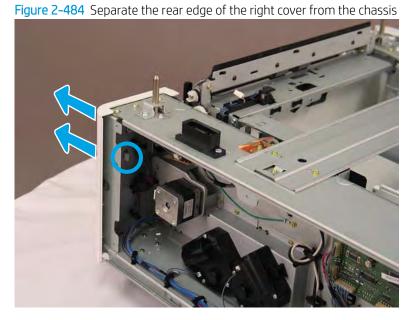
#### Step 2: Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed

1. Open the right door, and then remove two screws

### Figure 2-483 Remove two screws



2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.



3. Disconnect one connector, and then release the wire harness from the retainer.

Figure 2-485 Disconnect one connector

- 4. Remove three screws, and then remove the HCI drive assembly feed.
- **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

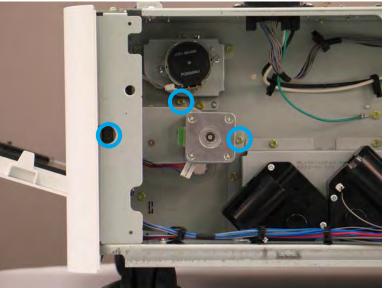
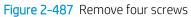


Figure 2-486 Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed

#### Step 3: Remove the HCI right door

1. Remove four screw caps (if installed), and then remove four screws.

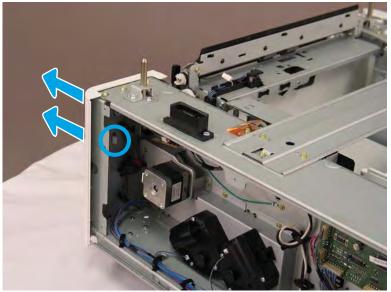
**WOTE:** If the feed drive assembly is removed, there are only two screws that secure this cover.





2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

Figure 2-488 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis



3. Lift up on the cover while rotating it away from the chassis to release three bosses.

**CAUTION:** Do not attempt to fully remove the cover. Stop as shown below. Fully removing the cover at this step will damage the remaining tab and boss on the cover.

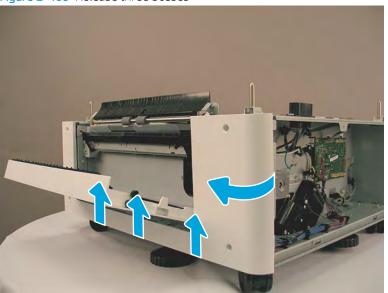


Figure 2-489 Release three bosses

4. If the tray was not removed prior to servicing the HCl, remove it now.

Look in the tray cavity and locate the right cover front tab. Release this tab.

Figure 2-490 Release one tab



- 5. Remove the HCl right cover.
- **NOTE:** The HCI right door will not stay in the latched potion when this cover is removed.



- 6. Rotate the right door front hinge pin out of the holder, and then slide the right door towards the front of the HCI to release the rear hinge pin and remove the door.
  - Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

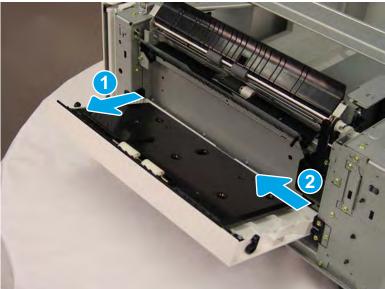
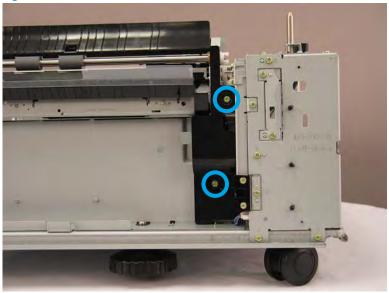


Figure 2-492 Remove the HCI right door

## Step 4: Remove the HCI drive assembly -sub pulley

1. Remove two screws, and then remove the black-plastic cover.

#### Figure 2-493 Remove one cover



- 2. Remove two screws, and then remove the drive assembly sub-pulley.
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

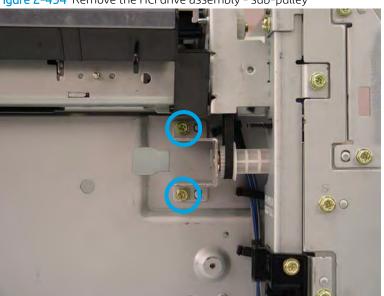
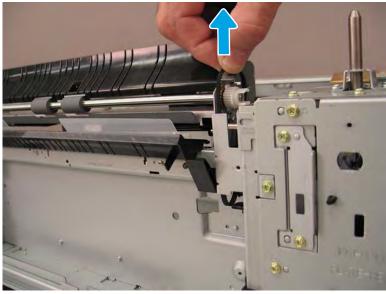


Figure 2-494 Remove the HCI drive assembly - sub-pulley

#### Step 5: Remove the HCI belt - timing gear

- Remove the belt from the drive gear, and then remove it.
- ☆ Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-495 Remove the belt - timing gear



# Step 6: Remove the HCl sub – pickup

1. Disconnect one connector, and then release three retainers.

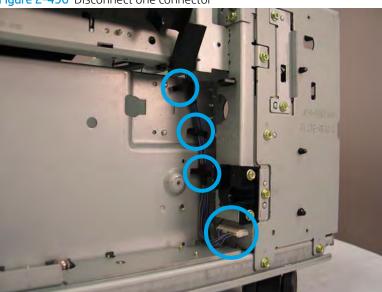
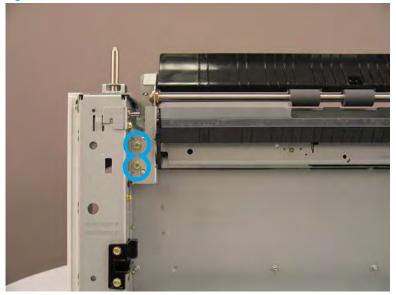


Figure 2-496 Disconnect one connector

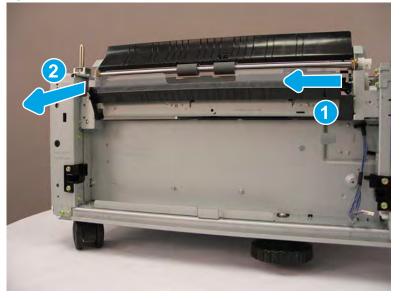
2. Remove two screws.

#### Figure 2-497 Remove two screws



- 3. Rotate the front end of the sub pickup away from the HCl, and then slide it toward the front to remove it.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-498 Remove the sub - pickup



#### Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# HCI right door

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the HCI right door</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI right door.

Click here to see a video of this procedure

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC90-01734A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• HCl right door

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

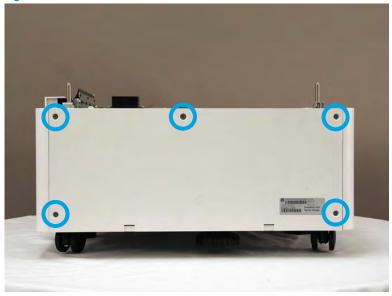
#### Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

#### Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover

- Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.
- 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

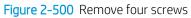
Figure 2-499 Remove the HCI rear cover



#### Step 2: Remove the HCI right door

1. Remove four screw caps (if installed), and then remove four screws.

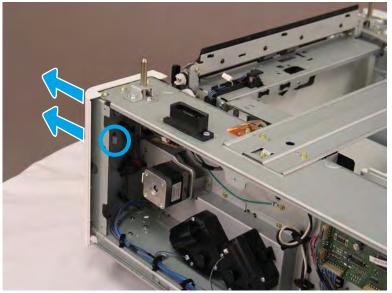
**WOTE:** If the feed drive assembly is removed, there are only two screws that secure this cover.





2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

Figure 2-501 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis



3. Lift up on the cover while rotating it away from the chassis to release three bosses.

**CAUTION:** Do not attempt to fully remove the cover. Stop as shown below. Fully removing the cover at this step will damage the remaining tab and boss on the cover.

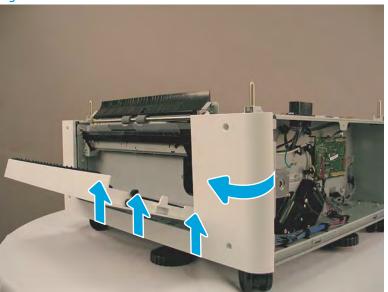


Figure 2-502 Release three bosses

4. If the tray was not removed prior to servicing the HCl, remove it now.

Look in the tray cavity and locate the right cover front tab. Release this tab.

Figure 2-503 Release one tab



- 5. Remove the HCl right cover.
- NOTE: The HCI right door will not stay in the latched potion when this cover is removed.

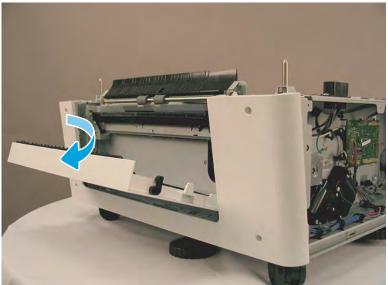


Figure 2-504 Remove the HCI right cover

- 6. Rotate the right door front hinge pin out of the holder, and then slide the right door towards the front of the HCI to release the rear hinge pin and remove the door.
  - 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

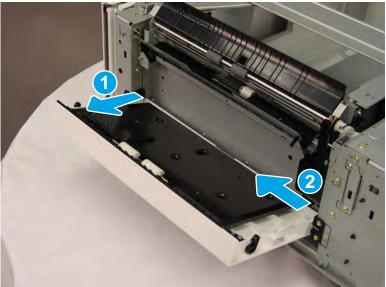


Figure 2-505 Remove the HCI right door

## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

## **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

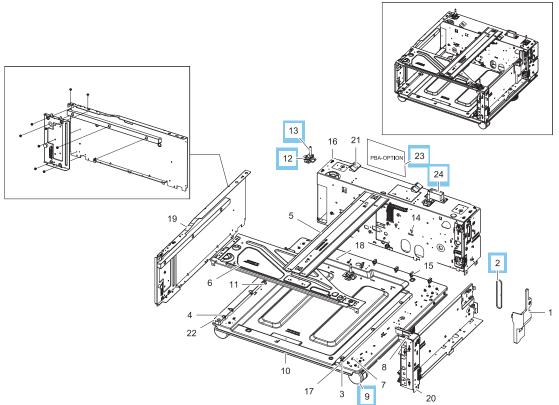
If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# HCl sub - frame

Figure 2-506 HCl sub - frame



#### Table 2-36 HCI sub - frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Belt timing gear (HCI)	<u>6602-003185 on page 602</u>	1
9	Caster wheel (HCI)	6109-001138 on page 617	4
12	Plate guide post upper (HCI)	<u>JC61-04660A on page 619</u>	3
13	Plate guide post (HCI)	JC61-04659A on page 619	3
23	Printed circuit assembly (HCI)	JC92-02738G on page 611	1
24	Main electrical connector (HCI)	JC39-02600A on page 614	3

## HCI belt - timing gear

- Introduction
- <u>Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the HCI drive assembly feed</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the HCl right door</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the HCI drive assembly sub pulley</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the HCI belt timing gear</u>
- <u>Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCl belt - timing gear.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

### 6602-003185

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• HCI belt - timing gear

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

## Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

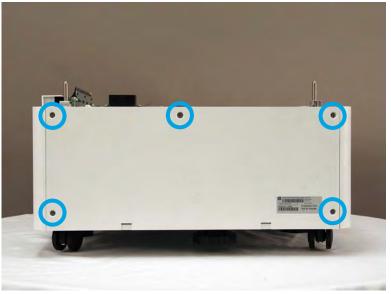
## Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

## Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover

- Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.
- 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

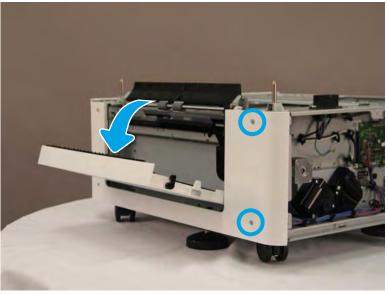
Figure 2-507 Remove the HCI rear cover



## Step 2: Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed

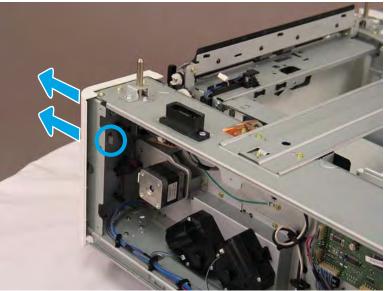
1. Open the right door, and then remove two screws

## Figure 2-508 Remove two screws



2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

Figure 2-509 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis



3. Disconnect one connector, and then release the wire harness from the retainer.

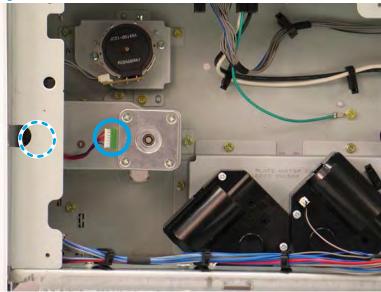
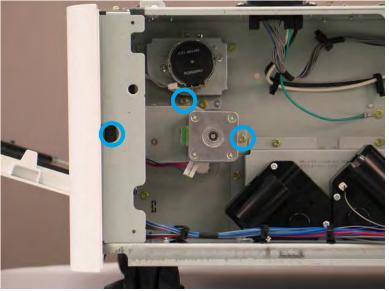


Figure 2-510 Disconnect one connector

- 4. Remove three screws, and then remove the HCI drive assembly feed.
  - **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

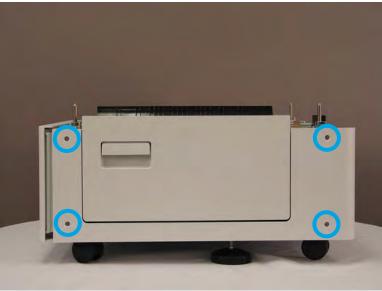
Figure 2-511 Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed



## Step 3: Remove the HCl right door

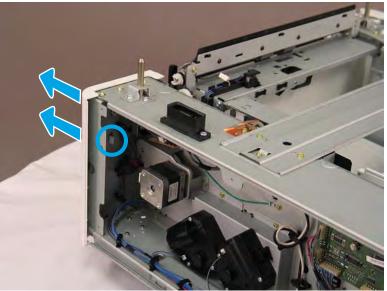
- 1. Remove four screw caps (if installed), and then remove four screws.
  - **WNOTE:** If the feed drive assembly is removed, there are only two screws that secure this cover.

## Figure 2-512 Remove four screws



2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

Figure 2-513 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis



3. Lift up on the cover while rotating it away from the chassis to release three bosses.

**CAUTION:** Do not attempt to fully remove the cover. Stop as shown below. Fully removing the cover at this step will damage the remaining tab and boss on the cover.

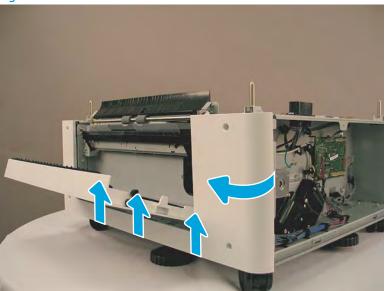


Figure 2-514 Release three bosses

4. If the tray was not removed prior to servicing the HCl, remove it now.

Look in the tray cavity and locate the right cover front tab. Release this tab.

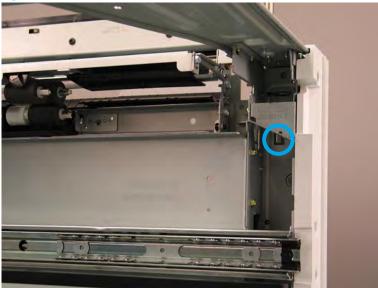


Figure 2-515 Release one tab

- 5. Remove the HCl right cover.
- **NOTE:** The HCI right door will not stay in the latched potion when this cover is removed.

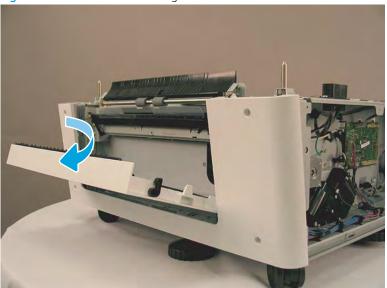


Figure 2-516 Remove the HCI right cover

- 6. Rotate the right door front hinge pin out of the holder, and then slide the right door towards the front of the HCI to release the rear hinge pin and remove the door.
  - Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

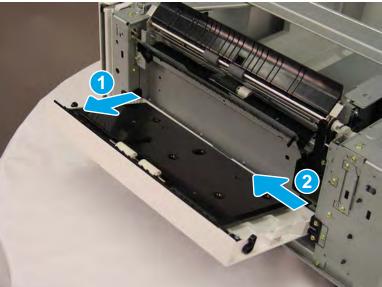


Figure 2-517 Remove the HCI right door

# Step 4: Remove the HCI drive assembly – sub pulley

1. Remove two screws, and then remove the black-plastic cover.

## Figure 2-518 Remove one cover



- 2. Remove two screws, and then remove the drive assembly sub-pulley.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

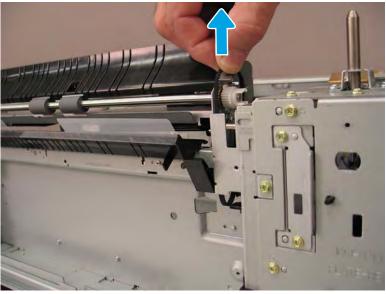


Figure 2-519 Remove the HCI drive assembly - sub-pulley

## Step 5: Remove the HCI belt - timing gear

- Remove the belt from the drive gear, and then remove it.
- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-520 Remove the belt - timing gear



## Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# **HCI PCA**

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the HCI PCA</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI PCA.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC92-02738G

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• HCI PCA

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

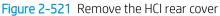
- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

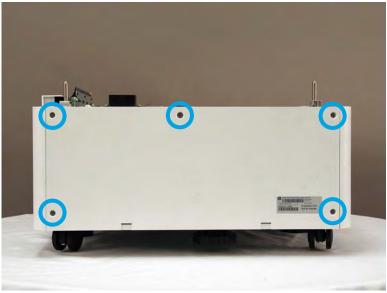
#### Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

#### Step 1: Remove the HCl rear cover

- Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.
  - **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.





## Step 2: Remove the HCI PCA

- Disconnect five connectors (callout 1), remove three screws, and then remove the HCI PCA.
- 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

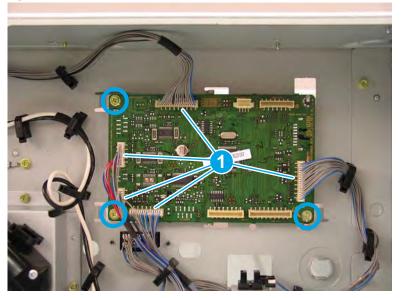


Figure 2-522 Remove the HCI PCA

# Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

🟡 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# HCI main electrical connector

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the HCl rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the main electrical connector</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI main electrical connector.

click here to see a video of this procedure

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC39-02600A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• HCI main electrical connector

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

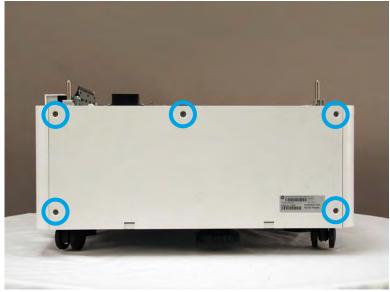
#### Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

#### Step 1: Remove the HCl rear cover

- Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.
- $rac{1}{2}$  Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

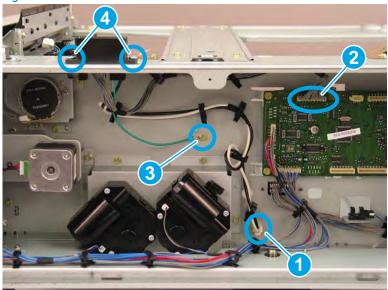
### Figure 2-523 Remove the HCI rear cover



## Step 2: Remove the main electrical connector

- Do the following:
  - Squeeze two tabs and release one connector (callout 1; black and white wire harness) from the chassis, and then release five retainers.
  - Disconnect one connector (callout 2; on the HCI PCA), and then release two retainers.
  - Remove one ground screw (callout 3; green wire).
  - Remove two shoulder screws (callout 4); main electrical connector), and then remove the main connector.
- 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-524 Remove the HCI main electrical connector



#### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# HCI caster wheel

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the HCI caster wheel</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCl caster wheel.

Click here for a video of this procedure

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### 6109-001138

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• HCI caster wheel

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

#### Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

#### Step 1: Remove the HCI caster wheel

- Carefully position the HCI on its side, remove four screws, and then remove the HCI caster wheel.
- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-525 Remove the HCI caster wheel



## Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# HCl guide post and guide post plate

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the HCI guide post upper and guide post plates</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCl guide post upper and guide post plates.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC61-04660A

HCl guide post

JC61-04659A

• Plate - HCI guide post

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

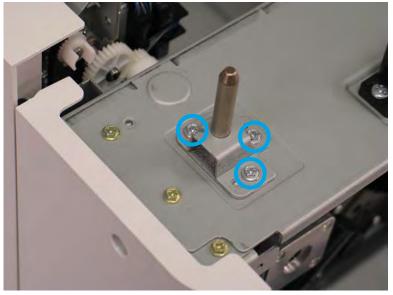
#### Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

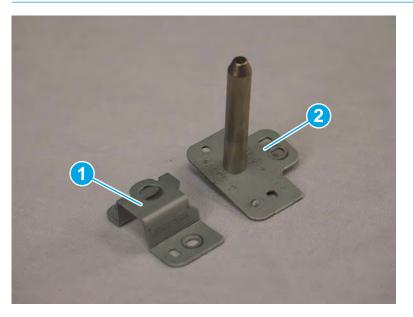
#### Step 1: Remove the HCI guide post upper and guide post plates

1. Remove four screws, and then remove the HCI guide post upper and guide post plates.

Figure 2-526 Remove the HCI guide post upper and guide post plates



- 2. Separate the guide post upper (callout 1) and guide post (callout 2) plates.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.



# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

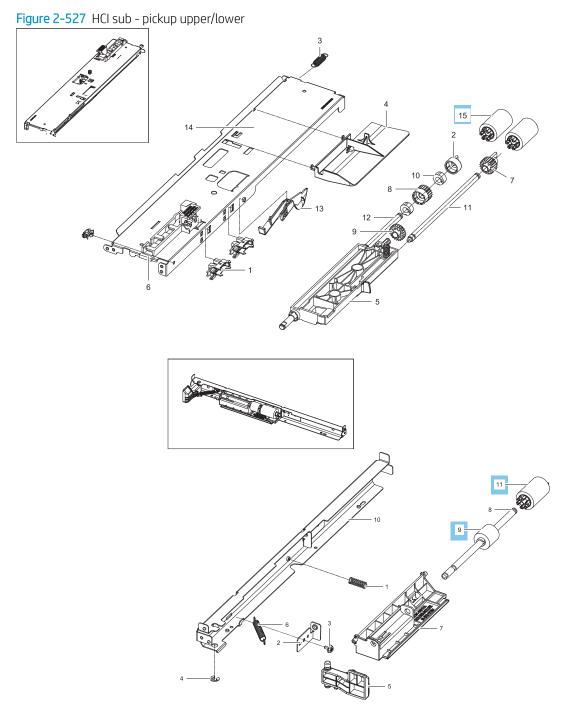
🟡 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# HCI sub - pickup upper/lower



Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
9	HCI kit - HP LaserJet E7 tray 2-z rollers (coupler torque limiter) (HCI)	<u>JC67–00455A on page 624</u>	1
11	HCI kit - HP Laser Jet E7 tray 2-x rollers (separation) (HCI)	JC67-00455A on page 624	2
15	HCI kit - HP LaserJet E7 tray 2-z rollers (pick/feed) (HCI)	JC67–00455A on page 624	1

Table 2-37 HCl sub - pickup upper/lower

# HCI kit - HP LaserJet E7 tray rollers

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the HCI tray</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the HCI LaserJet E7 tray rollers</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI LaserJet E7 tray 2-x rollers.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC67-00455A

## JC93-00504A

JC93-00540A

- HCI kit HP LaserJet E7 tray 2–z rollers (coupler torque limiter) (HCI)
- HCI kit HP LaserJet E7 tray 2–z rollers (separation) (HCI)
- HCI kit HP LaserJet E7 tray 2–z rollers (pick/feed) (HCI)

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

#### **Required tools**

• No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

## Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

#### Step 1: Remove the HCI tray

1. Pull the tray fully out of the HCI, and then at the left side of the tray release the hook lever on the tray.

TIP: Slightly pull out on the left side of the tray so that the hook lever remains unlatched.

Figure 2-528 Release the tray left side hook lever

2. At the right side of the tray push in on the slide lock (callout 1) to release it, and then pull the tray away from the HCI (callout 2).

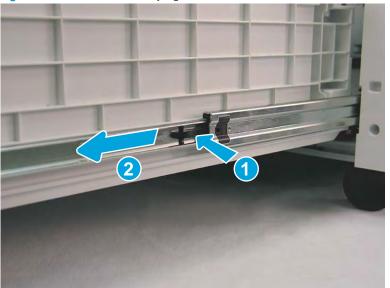
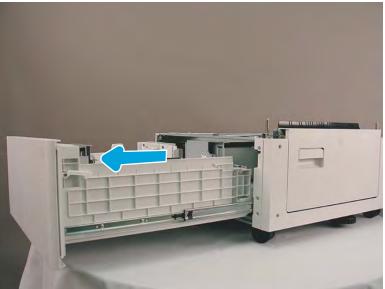


Figure 2-529 Release the tray right-side slide lock

3. Continue to slide the tray away from the HCI to remove it.

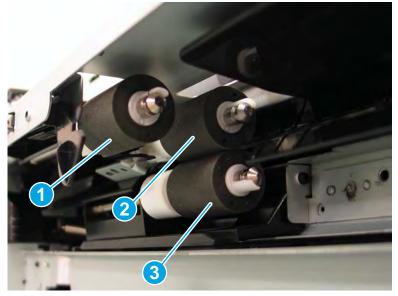




## Step 2: Remove the HCI LaserJet E7 tray rollers

1. Look up into the tray cavity, and locate the feed (callout 1), pick (callout 2), and separation (callout 3) rollers.

Figure 2-531 Locate the feed, pick, and separation rollers



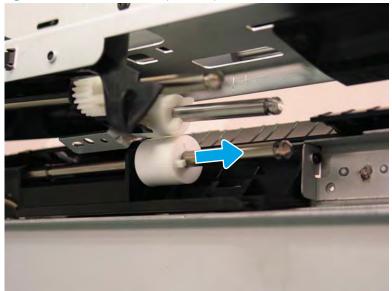
- 2. Release one tab (for each roller), and then slide the roller off of the shaft.
- **NOTE:** Open the right door before attempting to remove the rollers.



- 3. Slide the coupler (torque limiter) off of the separation roller shaft.
- **Reinstallation tip:** When the coupler (torque limiter) is installed, make sure it is fully seated on the separation roller shaft. If it is not fully seated, the separation roller will not correctly install on the shaft.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-533 Remove the coupler (torque limiter)



## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

## **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

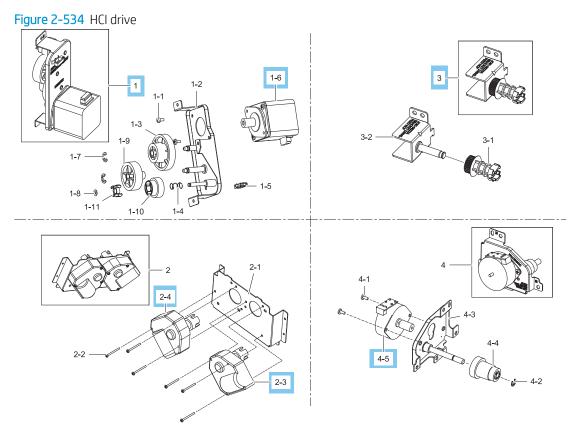
an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# HCI drive



#### Table 2-38 HCI drive

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Drive assembly - feed (HCI)	JC93-00447A on page 630	1
1-6	Motor - feed (HCI)	JC31-00033B on page 635	1
2-3	Motor - lifter drive right (HCI)	JC31-00109A on page 640	1
2-3	Motor - lifter drive left (HCI)	JC31-00125A on page 640	1
3	Drive assembly- sub-pulley (HCI)	JC93-01465A on page 645	1
4-5	Motor - step drive (HCI)	JC93-00452A on page 643	1

# HCI drive assembly - feed

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the HCI drive assembly feed</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI drive assembly - feed.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### JC93-00447A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• HCI drive assembly - feed

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

## Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

## Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover

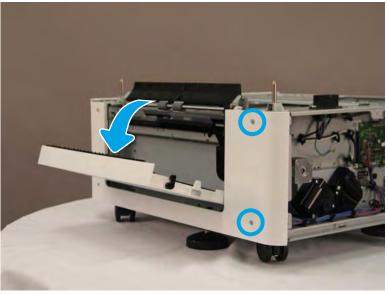
- Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.
- 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-535 Remove the HCI rear cover

## Step 2: Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed

1. Open the right door, and then remove two screws

## Figure 2-536 Remove two screws



2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

Figure 2-537 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis



3. Disconnect one connector, and then release the wire harness from the retainer.

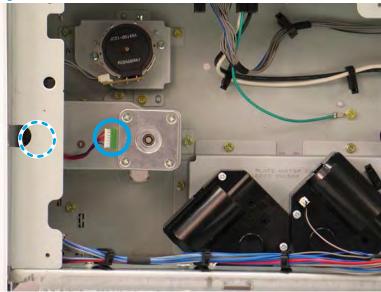
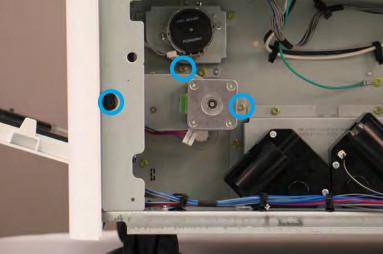


Figure 2-538 Disconnect one connector

- 4. Remove three screws, and then remove the HCI drive assembly - feed.
  - **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-539 Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed



## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

## **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## HCI motor - feed drive

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the HCI drive assembly feed</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the HCl motor feed drive</u>
- <u>Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCl motor - feed drive.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

### JC31-00033B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• HCl motor - feed drive

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

## Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

#### Step 1: Remove the HCl rear cover

Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

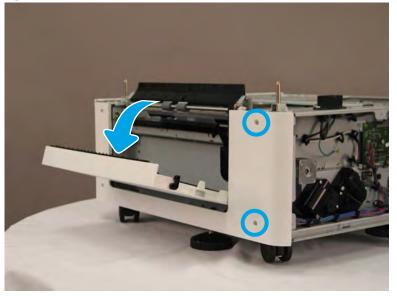


## Figure 2-540 Remove the HCI rear cover

## Step 3: Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed

Open the right door, and then remove two screws 1.

Figure 2-541 Remove two screws



2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

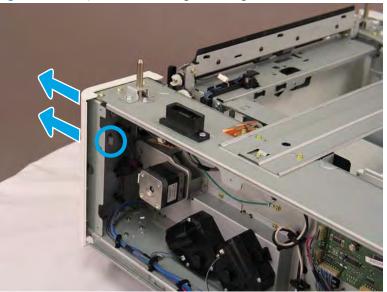
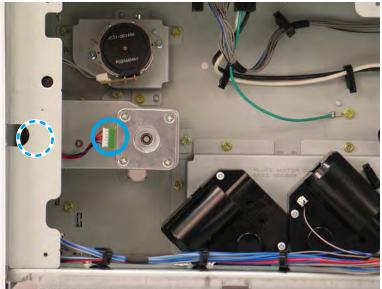


Figure 2-542 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis

3. Disconnect one connector, and then release the wire harness from the retainer.

Figure 2-543 Disconnect one connector



- 4. Remove three screws, and then remove the HCI drive assembly feed.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

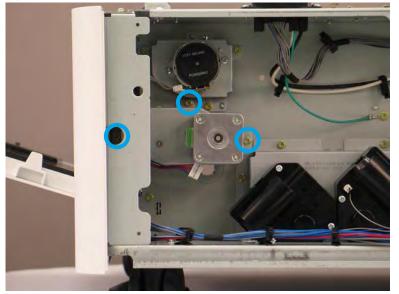
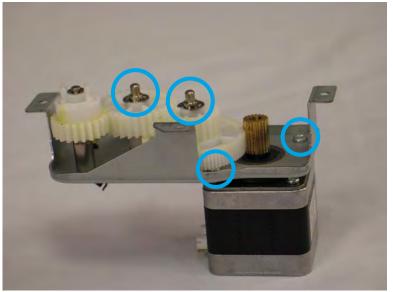


Figure 2-544 Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed

## Step 4: Remove the HCI motor - feed drive

- Remove two e-rings, remove two gears, and then remove two screws to separate the HCI motor feed drive.
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-545 Remove the HCI motor - feed drive



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

🟡 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## HCI motor - lift drive right and motor - lift drive left

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the HCI motor lift drive right and motor lift drive left</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI motor - lift drive right and motor - lift drive left.

Click here for a video of this procedure

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC31-00109A

• HCI motor - lift drive right

## JC31-00125A

• HCI motor - lift drive left

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

## Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

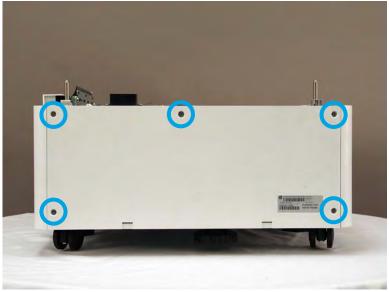
## Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

## Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover

- Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.
- 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

## Figure 2-546 Remove the HCI rear cover



## Step 2: Remove the HCI motor - lift drive right and motor - lift drive left

- 1. Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and the remove the HCI motor lift drive right and motor lift drive left.
  - **WNOTE:** It might take some force to release the assembly from the chassis.



Figure 2-547 Remove the HCI motor - lift drive right and motor - lift drive left

- 2. Do one or both of the following:
  - To remove the **right-lift drive motor** (callout 1): remove three screws.
  - To remove the **left-lift drive motor** (callout 2): remove three screws.
  - **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

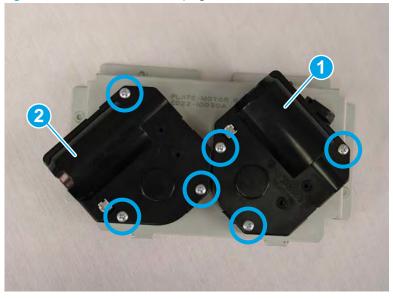


Figure 2-548 Remove the HCI tray right- and left-lift drive motors

## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## HCl motor - step drive

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the HCl motor step drive</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI motor - step drive.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC93-00452A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• HCI motor - step drive

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

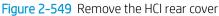
- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

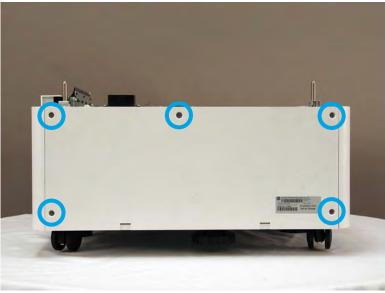
#### Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

#### Step 1: Remove the HCl rear cover

- Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.
  - **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.





## Step 2: Remove the HCI motor - step drive

- Disconnect the one connector, remove two screws, and remove the HCl motor step drive.
- 🔆 TIP: It might be easier to disconnect the connector after the motor is removed from the bracket.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

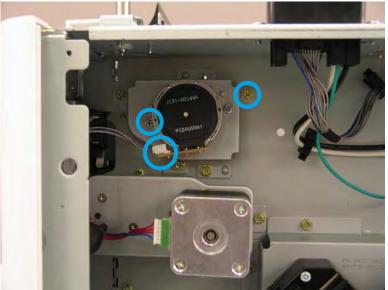


Figure 2-550 Remove the HCI motor - step drive

## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## HCI drive assembly - sub-pulley

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the HCI drive assembly feed</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the HCl right door</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the HCI drive assembly sub-pulley</u>
- <u>Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI drive assembly - sub-pulley.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC93-01465A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• HCI drive assembly - sub-pulley

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

## Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

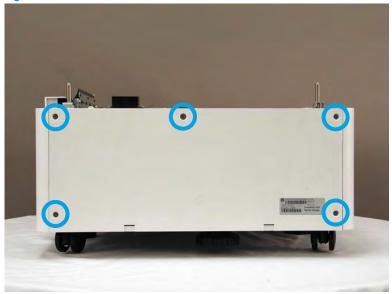
## Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

## Step 1: Remove the HCI rear cover

- Remove five screw caps (if installed), remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.
- **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

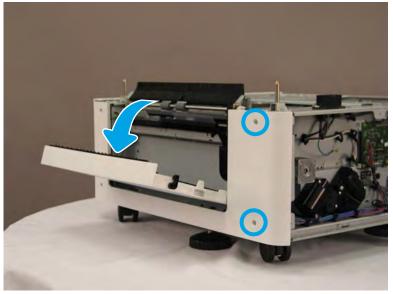
Figure 2–551 Remove the HCl rear cover



## Step 2: Remove the HCI drive assembly – feed

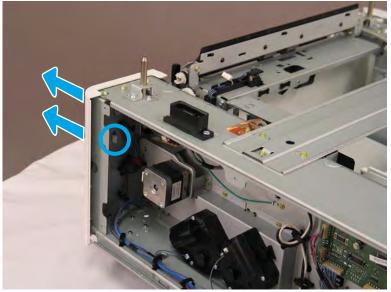
1. Open the right door, and then remove two screws

## Figure 2-552 Remove two screws



2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

Figure 2-553 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis



3. Disconnect one connector, and then release the wire harness from the retainer.

Figure 2-554 Disconnect one connector

- 4. Remove three screws, and then remove the HCI drive assembly feed.
- **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

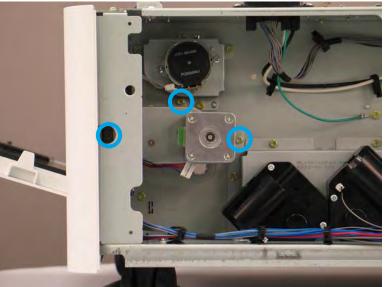
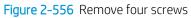


Figure 2-555 Remove the HCI drive assembly - feed

## Step 3: Remove the HCI right door

1. Remove four screw caps (if installed), and then remove four screws.

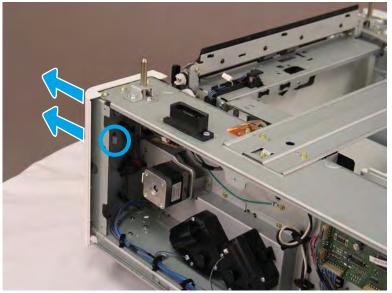
**WOTE:** If the feed drive assembly is removed, there are only two screws that secure this cover.





2. Release one tab, and then separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis.

Figure 2-557 Separate the rear edge of the right cover from the chassis



3. Lift up on the cover while rotating it away from the chassis to release three bosses.

**CAUTION:** Do not attempt to fully remove the cover. Stop as shown below. Fully removing the cover at this step will damage the remaining tab and boss on the cover.

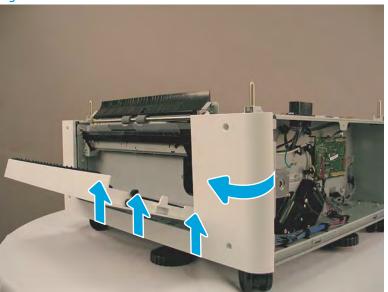


Figure 2-558 Release three bosses

4. If the tray was not removed prior to servicing the HCl, remove it now.

Look in the tray cavity and locate the right cover front tab. Release this tab.

Figure 2-559 Release one tab



- 5. Remove the HCl right cover.
- **NOTE:** The HCI right door will not stay in the latched potion when this cover is removed.

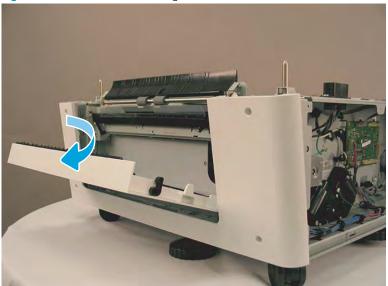


Figure 2–560 Remove the HCI right cover

- 6. Rotate the right door front hinge pin out of the holder, and then slide the right door towards the front of the HCI to release the rear hinge pin and remove the door.
  - 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

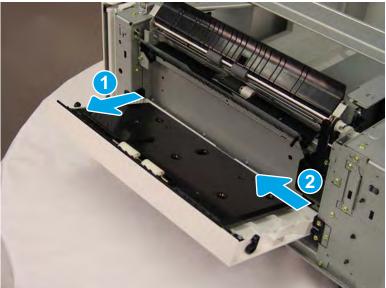
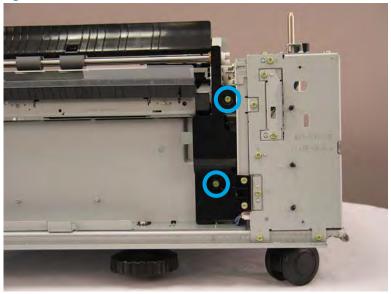


Figure 2-561 Remove the HCl right door

## Step 4: Remove the HCI drive assembly - sub-pulley

1. Remove two screws, and then remove the black-plastic cover.

## Figure 2-562 Remove one cover



- 2. Remove two screws, and then remove the drive assembly sub-pulley.
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.



Figure 2-563 Remove the HCI drive assembly - sub-pulley

## Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

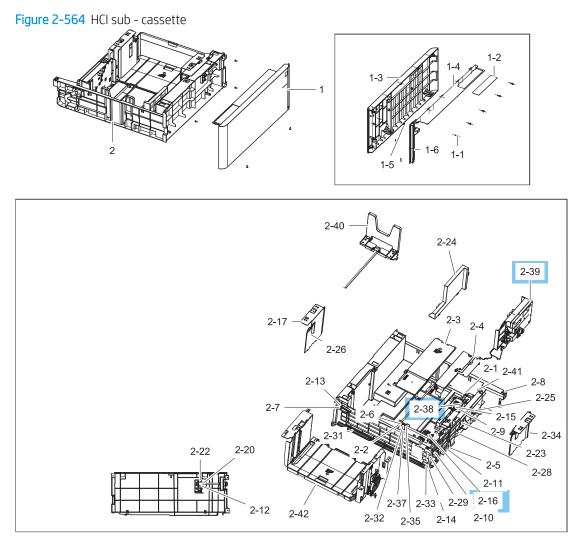
🟡 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## HCl sub - cassette



## Table 2-39 HCI sub - cassette

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2-16	Bracket sensor (HCI)	JC81-07468A on page 663	1
2-38	Photo interrupter (HCI)	0604-001393 on page 663	1
2-39	Sub-paper side right (HCI)	JC90-01723A on page 656	1

## HCl sub-paper side right

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the HCI tray</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the HCI sub-paper side right</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCl sub-paper side right.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

<u>Click here for a video of this procedure.</u>

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

## JC90-01723A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• HCI sub-paper side right

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

## Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

#### Step 1: Remove the HCI tray

- 1. Pull the tray fully out of the HCI, and then at the left side of the tray release the hook lever on the tray.
  - TIP: Slightly pull out on the left side of the tray so that the hook lever remains unlatched.

Figure 2-565 Release the tray left side hook lever



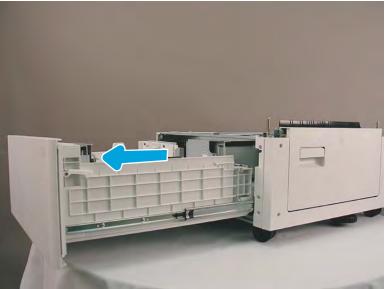
2. At the right side of the tray push in on the slide lock (callout 1) to release it, and then pull the tray away from the HCI (callout 2).



Figure 2-566 Release the tray right-side slide lock

3. Continue to slide the tray away from the HCI to remove it.





## Step 2: Remove the HCl sub-paper side right

1. Look into the tray, disconnect one connector, and then remove one screw.

Figure 2-568 Disconnect connector and remove screw



- 2. Slide the sub-paper side right assembly to the left to release it, and then slightly lit it up.
  - **CAUTION:** Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly. It is still attached to the tray by a wire harness and ground wire.



3. Remove one screw, and then release the wire harness from the retainer.



Figure 2-569 Remove one screw and release the wire harness

**4.** Remove one screw.

## Figure 2-570 Remove one screw



5. Raise the paper shelf, hold the sub-paper side right assembly up and out of the way, and then remove the sheet-metal cover.

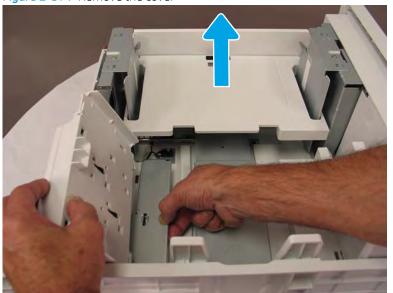


Figure 2-571 Remove the cover

- 6. Disconnect three connectors, and then release the wire harness from the retainers.
  - TIP: Fully raise the paper shelf to access two connectors.

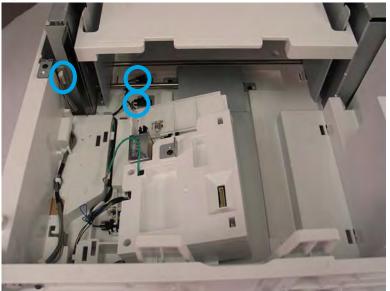


Figure 2-572 Disconnect three connectors

- 7. Disconnect two connectors, release the wire harnesses from the guides, and then remove the sub-paper side right assembly.
  - 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

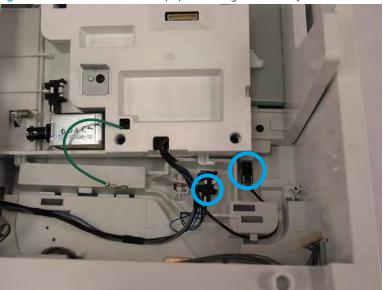


Figure 2-573 Remove the sub-paper side right assembly

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

## **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## HCl photo interrupter and sensor bracket

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the HCI tray</u>
- Step 2: Remove the HCI photo interrupter and sensor bracket
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the HCI photo interrupter and sensor bracket.

Click here for a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

#### 0604-001393

HCl photo interrupter

## JC81-07468A

HCl sensor bracket

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

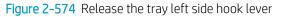
- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

## Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

#### Step 1: Remove the HCI tray

- 1. Pull the tray fully out of the HCI, and then at the left side of the tray release the hook lever on the tray.
  - $rac{1}{2}$  TIP: Slightly pull out on the left side of the tray so that the hook lever remains unlatched.





2. At the right side of the tray push in on the slide lock (callout 1) to release it, and then pull the tray away from the HCI (callout 2).



Figure 2-575 Release the tray right-side slide lock

3. Continue to slide the tray away from the HCI to remove it.

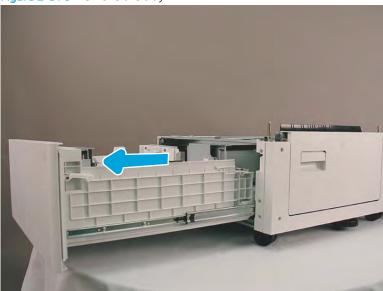
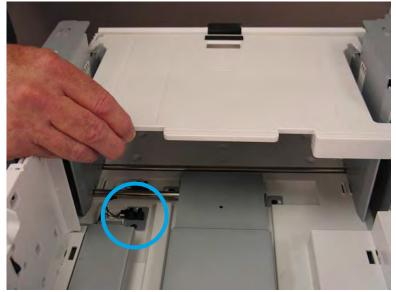


Figure 2-576 Remove the tray

## Step 2: Remove the HCI photo interrupter and sensor bracket

- Raise the paper shelf, disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the HCI photo interrupter and sensor bracket.
- **WOTE:** It might be easier to disconnect the connector after the screw is removed.
- ☆ Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-577 Remove the HCI photo interrupter and sensor bracket



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

## **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# 3 Problem solving

- Error code and control panel message troubleshooting overview
- <u>Troubleshooting process</u>
- <u>Tools for troubleshooting</u>
- <u>Clear paper jams</u>
- <u>Service mode (tech mode)</u>
- <u>Print quality troubleshooting guide</u>
- Adjusting the laser scanner assembly skew error
- Adjusting the flow ADF/ADF skew

## Error code and control panel message troubleshooting overview

## **Error codes**

Error codes and control-panel messages display on the printer control panel to indicate the current printer status or situations that might require action. Error codes are numerical, or alphanumerical, and have a set structure with six characters (example: 13.WX.YZ).

- The first two characters are numeric and represent the system component that is causing the error. For example, in error code 10.22.15, **10** = **Supplies** for HP LaserJets.
- The remaining four characters (WX, Y, and Z values) further define the error.

HP LaserJet and HP PageWide Enterprise error codes are documented in the control panel message document (CPMD) for each printer.

The CPMD is a comprehensive list of error codes, diagnostic and troubleshooting steps to clear or resolve the error, and other helpful information such as service mode pins and part numbers.

The CPMD is continually updated and republished with the latest information for the following error codes.

Error code	System Component	System Error Description	
10.WX.YZ	Supplies (LaserJet)	Supply error or supply memory error.	
11.WX.YZ	Real-time clock	Internal error with the clock on the formatter.	
13.WX.YZ	Jam (LaserJet)	Paper jam or open door jam error.	
15.WX.YZ	Jam (PageWide)	Paper jam or open door jam error.	
17.WX.YZ	Supplies (PageWide)	Supply error or supply memory error.	
20.WX.YZ	Printer memory	Insufficient memory or buffering error.	
21.WX.YZ	Page	Page complexity causing a decompression error when trying to process job.	
30.WX.YZ	Scanner	Flatbed scanner error occurring inside the unit.	
31.WX.YZ	Document feeder	Document feeder, scanner, or jam error.	
32.WX.YZ	Backup, restore, or reset	Backup, restore, or reset notification or error.	
33.WX.YZ	Security	Backup, Disk, EFI BIOS, Firmware integrity (SureStart), or error.	
40.WX.YZ	Input/Output (I/O)	Partition manager, secure erase, or USB accessory error.	
41.WX.YZ	Fuser, Laser scanner, or Paper path	Miscellaneous error including general and misprint or mismatch errors typically involving (but not limited to) the fuser, the laser scanner, or the paper path.	
42.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware failure involving the Event Log, Shell, System Manager, or other component.	

#### Table 3-1 ERROR CODES: The first two characters

44.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware failure involving a digital sending component.	
45.WX.YZ	OXPd/Web Kit (PageWide)	Informational notifications involving the OXPd Web Kit (communications log).	
46.WX.YZ	Engine (LaserJet)	Engine communication error.	
47.WX.YZ	Firmware	Job parser or printer calibration error.	
48.WX.YZ	Firmware	PJA job accounting, job management, or jol pipeline error.	
49.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware communication error.	
50.WX.YZ	Fuser (LaserJet)	Fuser error.	
51.WX.YZ	Laser scanner (LaserJet)	Laser scanner beam error.	
52.WX.YZ	Laser scanner (LaserJet)	Laser scanner startup error.	
54.WX.YZ	Sensor	Sensor error (not jam related).	
55.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	DC controller communication error.	
56.WX.YZ	Paper handling (LaserJet)	Paper input/output or accessory error.	
57.WX.YZ	Fan	Fan error.	
58.WX.YZ	Sensor	Engine sensor failure.	
59.WX.YZ	Motor (LaserJet)	Motor error.	
50.WX.YZ	Tray motor error (LaserJet)	Tray lifting or pick up error.	
61.WX.YZ	Engine (PageWide and LaserJet)	Print engine error with the 8–bit data package.	
62.WX.YZ	System (LaserJet)	LaserJet internal system error.	
	Print bar (PageWide)	PageWide print system error.	
63.WX.YZ	Engine (LaserJet)	General engine error (electrical, communication, etc.).	
65.WX.YZ	Connector	Output accessory connection error.	
56.WX.YZ	Output accessory	Output accessory error.	
67.WX.YZ	Input accessory	Input accessory connection error	
69.WX.YZ	Duplexer	Duplexer error.	
70.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	DC controller firmware error.	
BO.WX.YZ	Managed device	Embedded Jetdirect error.	
B1.WX.YZ	Near Field Communication (NFC)	Wireless, Bluetooth or internal EIO error.	
32.WX.YZ	Memory (hard disk, EMMC, etc.)	Disk hardware error.	
90.WX.YZ	Internal diagnostics	Internal test of systems (i.e. disk, CPB, display) or interconnection error.	
98.WX.YZ	Hard disk	Hard disk partition error.	
99.WX.YZ	Firmware installer	Remote Firmware Upgrade (RFU), firmwar install (engine or accessory), or disk error.	

Table 3-1 ERROR CODES: The first two characters (continued)

## How to search for printer documentation

The CPMD, error codes, and other support documentation for each printer is found on the internal HP portals <u>GCSN</u> and <u>WISE</u> (formerly SAW). GCSN is available to HP channel partners and WISE is available to call agents, service technicians, and other HP internal users. The level of detail available will depend on your access credentials.

## How to search WISE for printer documentation

These instructions are for HP internal use by call agents, service technicians, and other internal users. To learn how to find support content in WISE, watch the video <u>here</u>.

To view a list of control panel message documents per printer in **WISE**, enter document ID **c05048451**, to locate CPMD list.

Go to **WISE** and enter this document ID **c05791539** for written instructions.

## How to search GCSN for printer documentation

These instructions are for internal use by HP Channel Partners. To learn how to find support content in GCSN, watch the video <u>here</u> or follow these steps:

- 1. On the Home screen in GCSN, open **Technical information** using one of the following two methods:
  - Type TINF in the **Speedcode** field found in the upper right corner and press Enter, or
  - On the Home page, click **Technical information** in the left pane.



- 2. Under **Product Search**, select the **Type**, **Category**, **Family**, and **Series** that match your product model (leave the **Model** field as blank or the default).
  - NOTE: Make sure to login to GCSN using your service-qualified credentials to access the most comprehensive content list available. To find out how to become service-qualified, contact your HP representative.

Figure 3-1 Sample product search crite	eria
Product Search Add Favori	tes
Туре	
Printers and Multifunction	~
Category	
Multifunction and All-in-One	~
Family	
HP Laser Jet MFP and All-in-One Products	~
Series	
HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M682 series	~
Model	
Select a Model	Y

3. Click Add Favorites and then click Add to add the printer to your Favorites list and allow you to bypass the **Product Search** fields next time for that particular model (Optional).

Product Search	Add Favorites
Туре	
Printers and Multifunction	~
Category	
Multifunction and All-in-One	~
Family	
HP Laser Jet MFP and All-in-One	roducts 🔽

4. Clear all of the high-level check boxes.

Support Communications	Annuals and Guides	Support Information
Customer Advisory	Illustrated Parts Map	LI ActionProcedureMap
Customer Bulletin	Install Guide	🖾 СРМВМар
Customer Notice	Maintenance/Service Guide	Support Information
Customer Work Instruction (CSR)	Parts Guide	Top Issue Notes If you are selecting top issue it will return only top issue document
Product Change Notification	QuickSpec	Software Support & Drivers Information
Security Bulletin	Reference Manual	Product Buttetin/QuickSpes
Service Action Advisory	Service Guide/Manual	Buy Care Packs
Service Advisory	Technical Reference Guide	
Service Bulletin	Training Material	

- 5. Select the check boxes for the document types for which you want to search.
- NOTE: Select only the high-level Manuals and Guides search option if you are not sure in which type of manual or guide the content might be listed.

Support Communications	Manuals and Guides	Support Information
Customer Advisory	🖸 Illustrated Parts Map	C ActionProcedureMap
Customer Bulletin	🗆 Install Guide	CPMDMap
Customer Notice	Maintenance/Service Guide	Support Information
Customer Work Instruction (CSR)	Parts Guide	Top Issue Plater If you are selecting top issue it will return only top issue documental
Product Change Notification	QuickSpec	Software Support & Drivers Information
Security Bulletin	Reference Manual	DProduct Balletin/QuickSpet
Service Action Advisory	Service Guide/Manual	Buy Care Pades
Service Advisory	Technical Reference Guide	
Service Bulletin	Training Material	
Service Notice	Troubleshooting Guide	
Service Product Announcement	Dupgrade Manual	
Service Program Announcement	🗹 User Guide	
Technical Work Instruction (TWI)	Warranty Statement	

#### 6. Select Submit.

- 7. If needed, click **Back To selection Criteria** and narrow your search (the maximum allowed search result is 100 documents).
- NOTE: Do not select the **Top Issue** option unless you only want to view top issues for that model. All other available content will be filtered out.

Technical information type	Select this checkbox
CPMD	СРМД-Мар
List of all CPMDs per product	Support Information
Installation Guide or Hardware Install Guide	Maintenance/Service Guide or Install Guide
Service cost document	Install Guide or Service Guide/Manual
Service guide or Service manual	Service Guide/Manual
Self-solve or troubleshooting document	Support Information
User manual or User guide	User Guide
Warranty and Legal Guide	Warranty Statement

# Troubleshooting process

# Determine the problem source

When the printer malfunctions or encounters an unexpected situation, the printer control panel alerts you to the situation. This section contains a pre-troubleshooting checklist to filter out many possible causes of the problem. A troubleshooting flowchart helps you diagnose the root cause of the problem. The remainder of this chapter provides steps for correcting problems.

• Use the troubleshooting flowchart to pinpoint the root cause of hardware malfunctions. The flowchart guides you to the section of this chapter that contains steps for correcting the malfunction.

Before beginning any troubleshooting procedure, check the following issues:

- Are supply items within their rated life?
- Are supply items Genuine HP supplies?
- Does the configuration page reveal any configuration errors?

NOTE: The customer or service provider is responsible for checking supplies and for using supplies that are in good condition.

# Power subsystem

# Power-on checks

The basic printer functions should start up when the printer is connected into an electrical outlet and the power switch is pushed to the *on* position. If the printer does not start, use the information in this section to isolate and solve the problem.

If the control-panel display remains blank, random patterns display, or asterisks remain on the control-panel display, perform power-on checks to find the cause of the problem.

## Power-on troubleshooting overview

During normal operation, a cooling fan begins to spin briefly after the printer power is turned on. Place your hand over the vents at the rear of the printer, next to the formatter, or on the on the rear of the scanner. If the fan is operating, you will feel air passing out of the printer. You can lean close to the printer and hear the fan operating.

A fan begins to blow on the right door (fuser), and then the control panel goes through a series of set up functions. The main motor turns on (unless the left door or cartridge access door is open, a jam condition is sensed, or the paper-path sensors are damaged). You might be able to visually and audibly determine if the main motor is turned on.

If the fan and main motor are operating correctly, the next troubleshooting step is to isolate print engine, formatter, and control panel problems.

If the control panel is blank 1 minute after turning on the printer, check the following items:

- 1. Make sure that the printer is connected directly into an active electrical outlet (not a power strip) that delivers the correct voltage.
- 2. Make sure that the power switch is in the *on* position, and then verify that the LED is on.
- 3. Make sure that the fan runs briefly, which indicates that the power supply is operational.

- 4. Depress the button on the back of the control panel to test the control panel functionality.
- 5. Make sure that the control-panel display wire harness is connected.
- 6. Remove any external solutions, and then try to turn the printer on again.

## Troubleshooting a blank display, black display, no display, or no power situation

Customers usually report that the control-panel display is not showing anything. It is very important to collect as much information as possible from the customer about the issue to help resolve it.

Following are some printer behaviors the customer might encounter:

- The control panel is completely blank (no LEDs or back light).
- The control Panel is blank, but there might be LEDs illuminated.
- The control Panel is blank (LEDs are on or flashing) and the back light is on (but no text visible).

Following are some possible causes of a blank control-panel display:

- No power to the printer.
- The control panel contrast setting is not correctly adjusted.
- The formatter connector(s) are not fully seated into the connector(s) on the DC controller, or the connectors are not fully seated on the formatter.
- A faulty component is installed on the formatter (for example a memory DIMM, fax PCA, network PCA, USB device, or other component).
- The formatter is defective.
- The control panel connector is not fully seated, or the control panel is defective.
- The DC controller is defective.

Following are some questions to ask the customer:

- Was the printer newly install or has the printer been properly functioning?
  - For a new install, investigate to see if there was any shipping damage to the printer.
  - Did the customer notice any damage to the shipping box or any visible damage to the printer?
- What happened just prior to the control panel going blank?
  - Was the printer serviced recently, a power outage occurred?
  - Has a lightning storm recently occurred?
  - Did the customer recently add a memory DIMM or install a third-party component?
- Make sure to get a complete description of the failure.
  - Is the control-panel display completely blank (might be faint text and no back light)?
  - Is the control-panel display back light on?
  - Has a print job been sent to the printer? The customer might report that their print jobs seemed to
    print but when they go to the printer the control-panel display is blank.

#### **Recommended actions**

If the control-panel display is completely blank (no LEDs illuminated or no back light) check to see if the printer is getting power. Listen for fans or any printer initialization sounds when the power is turned on.

If there are no signs of power, then perform the following:

- 1. Make sure that the printer is plugged directly into an active electrical outlet (not a power strip or interruptible power supply) that delivers the correct voltage.
- ☆ TIP: Try using a different power cable if possible.
- 2. Turn the printer power on, and make sure that the fan(s) run briefly (this indicates that the power supply is operational).
- **3.** Check if the yellow LED on formatter is flashing. If so, there is a communication issue between the formatter and the control panel.
- 4. Turn the printer power off.
- 5. Make sure that the control-panel display wire harness (and/or flat cable) is properly connected (and fully seated), and then turn the printer power on again.
- 6. Check control panel diagnostics by pressing the button on the back of the control panel to run different diagnostic tests.
- Verify the status LEDs are illuminated, but the control-panel display is blank. If applicable: Check if the contrast setting is adjusted to very low. If so, try turning the contrast knob to see if the control-panel display becomes visible.
- 8. From a host computer, send a print job to the printer.

 $\mathbb{Z}$  NOTE: If the print job correctly prints, then the problem is most likely to a defective control panel.

- **9.** Turn the printer power off, and then make sure that the memory DIMM is installed in the correct slot and is fully seated.
  - **NOTE:** For some printers, there may be more than one memory DIMM installed. Some printers have third-party solutions/applications or fonts that use memory.
- **10.** Remove all of the components/accessories installed on the formatter (for example, hard drive, solid-state drive, memory DIMM(s), fax PCA, network PCA, USB devices, or other devices).
  - Make sure that the formatter is fully seated.

**IMPORTANT:** This is important because the formatter or a component on the formatter might be defective or shorted, which causes the printer to lose power.

11. Reinstall the formatter. Make sure that it makes a good connection and is fully seated.

Make sure that all of the connectors on the formatter are correctly connected and fully seated.

- **12.** Turn the printer power on, and then check the control-panel display.
- **13.** If the printer control panel is properly working, replace each removed component (one at a time) to determine which one is causing the problem.

**CAUTION:** Turn the printer power off, and then on again, after replacing a component on the formatter.

14. If the control-panel display is still blank after performing the above troubleshooting steps, and the control panel diagnostics do not function, replace the control panel. If the control panel diagnostics are functioning, then replace the formatter.

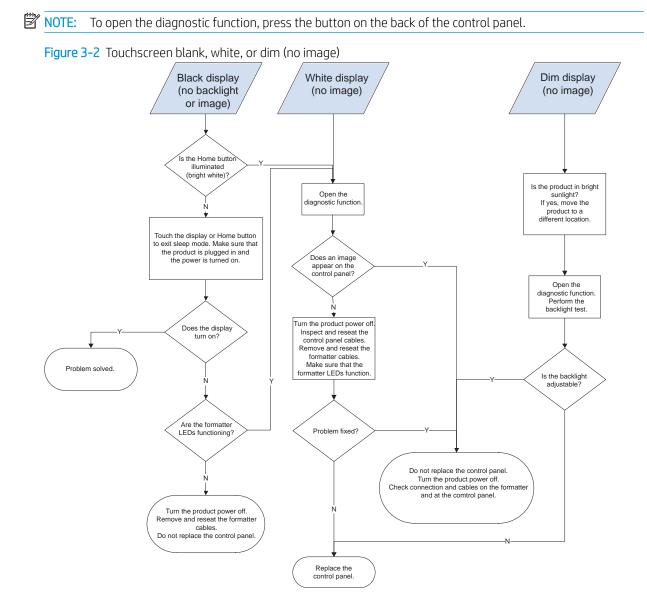
# Control panel checks

# Control panel diagnostic flowcharts

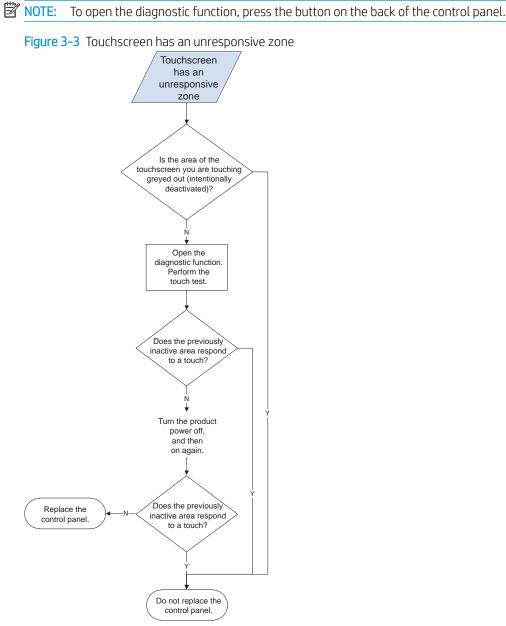
Use the flowcharts in this section to troubleshoot the following control panel problems.

- Touchscreen is blank, white, or dim (no image).
- Touchscreen is slow to respond or requires multiple presses to respond.
- Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone.
- No control panel sound.
- Home button is unresponsive.
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional).

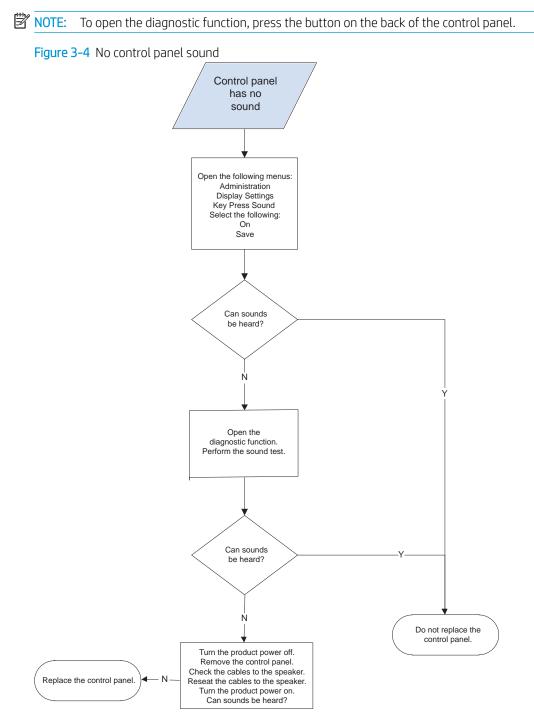
# Touchscreen black, white, or dim (no image)



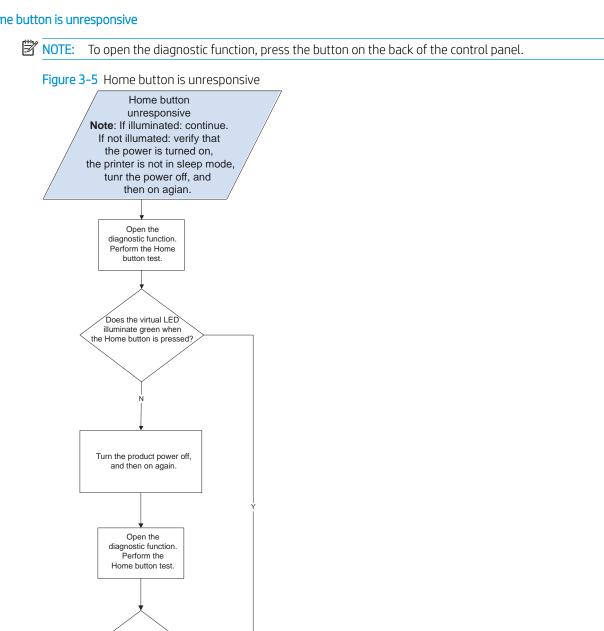
# Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone



# No control panel sound



## Home button is unresponsive



Does the virtual LED illuminate green when the Home button is pressed?

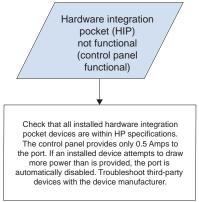
Replace the control panel.

Do not replace the

control panel.

## Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)

Figure 3-6 Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)



# Individual component diagnostics

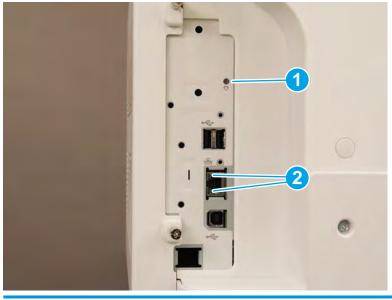
# Tools for troubleshooting: LED diagnostics

LED, engine, and individual diagnostics can identify and troubleshoot printer problems.

#### Understand lights on the formatter

Three LEDs on the formatter indicate that the printer is functioning correctly.

### Figure 3-7 LEDs



- 1 Heartbeat LED
- 2 HP Jetdirect LEDs

# **HP Jetdirect LEDs**

The embedded HP Jetdirect print server has two LEDs. The yellow LED indicates network activity, and the green LED indicates the link status. A blinking yellow LED indicates network traffic. If the green LED is off, a link has failed.

For link failures, check all the network cable connections. In addition, try to manually configure the link settings on the embedded print server by using the printer control-panel menus.

- 1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select **Settings**.
- **2.** Open the following menus:
  - Networking
  - Ethernet
  - Link Speed
- 3. Select the appropriate link speed, and then select **OK**.

#### Tools for troubleshooting: Engine diagnostics

The printer contains extensive internal engine diagnostics that help in troubleshooting print quality, paper path, noise, assembly, and timing issues.

## **Defeating interlocks**

Different tests can be used to isolate different types of issues. For assembly or noise isolation, run the diagnostic test when the toner cartridge door or right door is open.

Defeating the door interlocks allows observation of the paper pick operation (and view the page enter registration).

WARNING! Be careful when performing printer diagnostics to avoid risk of injury. Only trained service personnel should open and run the diagnostics with a door open. Never touch any of the power supplies when the printer is turned on.

## Defeat the toner cartridge door interlock

- 1. Open the toner cartridge door.
- 2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.
  - \* TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into two 10 mm (.375 in) strips, and insert the strips into the slot for the cartridge door logic switches.

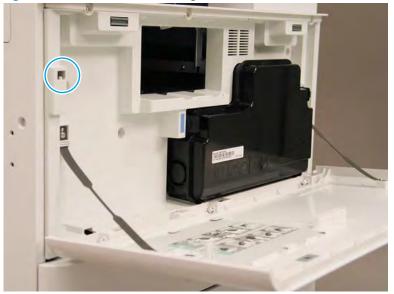


Figure 3-8 Defeat the toner cartridge door interlock

## Defeat the front door interlock

1. Open the front door.

- 2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.
  - TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into two 10 mm (.375 in) strips, and insert the strips into the slot for the front door logic switches.

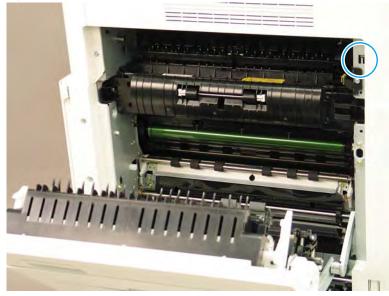


Figure 3-9 Defeat the front door interlock

# Tools for troubleshooting

Use the procedure below to test various printer mechanical and electromechanical assemblies.

# Individual component diagnostics (special-mode test)

This test activates individual parts independently to isolate problems.

Each component test can be performed once or repeatedly.

Each component test can be performed once or repeatedly.

**NOTE:** The cartridge door interlocks must be defeated to run the component tests.

# Access the individual component diagnostics from a touchscreen control panel

- 1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
- 2. Select one of the following tests:
  - Continuous Scan
  - Run Fax Test
- **3.** Select the component test options for the test.

# Tools for troubleshooting

# Problem-solving checklist

Follow these steps when trying to solve a problem with the printer.

- <u>Step 1: Check that the printer power is on</u>
- <u>Step 2: Check the control panel for error messages</u>
- <u>Step 3: Test print functionality</u>
- <u>Step 4: Test copy functionality</u>
- <u>Step 5: Test the fax sending functionality</u>
- <u>Step 6: Test the fax receiving functionality</u>
- <u>Step 7: Try sending a print job from a computer</u>
- <u>Step 8: Test the Plug and Print USB Drive printing functionality</u>
- <u>Factors that affect printer performance</u>

# Step 1: Check that the printer power is on

- 1. Make sure that the printer is plugged in and turned on. The power button should be lit with a white light. If it is not, press the power button. If the power button does not light up, check the following conditions.
  - Make sure that the power cable is connected to the printer and the outlet.
  - Check the power source by connecting the power cable to a different outlet.
- 2. If the printer motors do not rotate, make sure that the toner cartridges are installed and that the doors are all closed. The control panel displays messages to indicate these problems.

# Step 2: Check the control panel for error messages

The control panel should indicate ready status. If an error message appears, resolve the error.

Print a supplies status page to ensure that the supplies are not at or over end of life.

NOTE: HP long-life consumable and maintenance kit life specifications are estimations. Actual individual life or yield during normal use will vary depending on usage, environment, media, and other factors. Estimated life is not an implied warranty.

# Step 3: Test print functionality

- 1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the Reports button.
- 2. Open the Reports menu, touch the Configuration/Status Pages menu, select the Configuration Page item, and then touch the Print button to print the report.
- 3. If the report does not print, make sure that paper is loaded in the tray, and check the control panel to see if paper is jammed inside the printer.

**NOTE:** Make sure that the paper in the tray meets specifications for this printer.

# Step 4: Test copy functionality

- 1. Place the configuration page into the ADF and make a copy. If paper does not feed smoothly through the ADF, you might need to clean the ADF rollers and separation pad. Make sure that the paper meets specifications for this printer.
- 2. Place the configuration page onto the scanner glass and make a copy.
- 3. If the print quality on the copied pages is not acceptable, clean the scanner glass and the small glass strip.

# Step 5: Test the fax sending functionality

- 1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the Support Tools button.
- 2. Open the Troubleshooting menu, and then open the Diagnostics Tools menu. Touch the Run Fax Test button to test the fax functionality.
- 3. Touch the Fax on the printer control panel, and then touch the Start Fax button.

# Step 6: Test the fax receiving functionality

- 1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the Support Tools button.
- 2. Touch the Troubleshooting menu, and then open the Diagnostics Tests menu. Touch the Run Fax Test button to test the fax functionality.
- **3.** Use another fax machine to send a fax to the printer.
- 4. Review and reset the printer fax settings.

# Step 7: Try sending a print job from a computer

- 1. Use a word-processing program to send a print job to the printer.
- 2. If the job does not print, make sure that you selected the correct printer driver.
- **3.** Uninstall and then reinstall the printer software.

# Step 8: Test the Plug and Print USB Drive printing functionality

- 1. Load a .PDF document or .JPEG photo onto a USB flash drive, and insert it in the USB port near the control panel.
- 2. The USB Flash Drive menu opens. Try printing the document or photo.
- 3. If no documents are listed, try a different type of USB flash drive.

# Factors that affect printer performance

Several factors affect the time it takes to print a job:

- The software program that you are using and its settings
- The use of special paper (such as heavy paper or custom-size paper)
- Printer processing and download time
- The complexity and size of graphics

- The speed of the computer you are using
- The USB or network connection
- Whether the printer is printing in color or in monochrome
- The type of USB drive, if you are using one
- Environmental factors, such as low temperature or high humidity

# Print menu map

To more easily navigate individual settings, print a report of the complete Reports menu.

# Print the menu map from a touchscreen control panel

- 1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Reports button.
- 2. Open the Configuration/Status Pages menu.
- **3.** Select the Settings Menu Map option.
- **4.** Touch the Print button to print the report.
  - ☆ TIP: Multiple report pages can be selected, and then printed together.

# Print current settings pages

Printing the current settings page provides a map of the user configurable settings that might be helpful in the troubleshooting process.

# Print the current settings page from a touchscreen control panel

- 1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Reports button.
- 2. Open the Configuration/Status Pages menu.
- 3. Select the Current Settings Page option.
- **4.** Touch the Print button to print the report.
  - 🔆 TIP: Multiple report pages can be selected, and then printed together.

# Print event log

Printing the event log might be helpful in the troubleshooting process. For more information, see the Interpret control-panel messages and event log entries section in the printer troubleshooting manual.

## Print the event log from the Reports menu from a touchscreen control panel

- 1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
- 2. Open the following menus:
  - Troubleshooting
  - Event Log
- 3. The event log displays on the screen. To print it, touch the Print button.

## Print the event log from the Service menu from a touchscreen control panel

- 1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
- **2.** Open the Service menu.
- 3. Enter the following service access code for the printer:

- 04077817
- **4.** Touch the Event Log item.

# Clear the event log from a touchscreen control panel

- 1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
- **2.** Open the Service menu.
- **3.** On the sign-in screen, select the Service Access Code option from the drop-down list.
- 4. Enter the following service access code for the printer:
  - 04077817
- 5. Select the trash icon to clear the event log.

# Pre-boot menu options

The Pre-boot menus are available prior to the printer initializing.

- **CAUTION:** The Format Disk option (printers with a hard-disk drive only) performs a disk initialization for the entire disk. The operating system, firmware files, and third party files (among other files) will be completely lost. HP does not recommend this action.
- ☆ TIP: The Pre-boot menu can be remotely accessed by using a telnet network protocol to establish an administration connection to the printer. See <u>Remote Admin on page 701</u>.

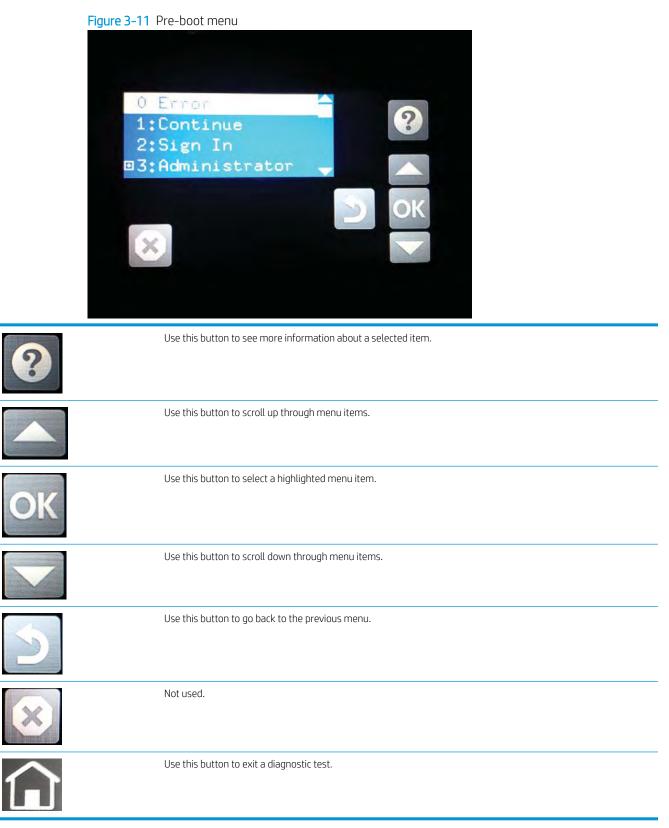
#### Open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 3–10 Open the Pre-boot menu



2. On the Pre-boot menu screen, use the following buttons to navigate the tests.



- 3. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to navigate the Pre-boot menu.
- 4. Touch the OK button to select a menu item.

# Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

**CAUTION:** This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 3-12 Open the Pre-boot menu



- 2. Use the  $\mathbf{\nabla}$  button to highlight the +3:Administrator item, and then touch the OK button.
- **3.** Use the  $\checkmark$  button to highlight the +8:Startup Options item, and then touch the OK button.
- 4. Use the ▼ button to highlight the 2 Cold Reset item, and then touch the OK button to select it.
- 5. Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the 1:Continue item, and then touch the OK button.

**NOTE:** The printer will initialize.

NOTE: Some of the pre-boot options in the following tables are not supported by the current version of the printer firmware and are included for information only. Future versions of firmware will support these options.

#### Table 3-2 Pre-boot menu options (1 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Continue				Selecting the Continue item exits the Pre-boot menu and continues the normal boot process.
				If a selection is not made in the initial menu within 30 seconds, the printer returns to a normal boot (the same as selecting Continue).
				If the user navigates to another menu, the timeout does not apply.
Sign In				Enter the administrator PIN or service PIN if one is required to open the Pre-boot menu.
Administrator				This item navigates to the Administrator submenus.
				If authentication is required (and the user is not already signed in) the Sign In prompt displays. The user is required to sign in.

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
	Download	Network		This item initiates a Pre-boot firmware download process. A
		USB		USB Thumbdrive option will work on all FutureSmart printers. USB or Network connections are not currently supported.
		USB Thumbdrive	2	
	Format Disk			This item reinitializes the disk and cleans all disk partitions.
				<b>CAUTION:</b> Selecting the Format Disk item removes <b>all</b> data.
				A delete confirmation prompt is <b>not</b> provided.
				The system is <b>not</b> bootable after this action and a <b>99.09.67</b> error displays on the control panel. A firmware download must be performed to return the system to a bootable state.
	Partial Clean			This item reinitializes the disk (removing all data except the firmware repository where the master firmware bundle is downloaded and saved).
				<b>CAUTION:</b> Selecting the Partial Clean item removes <b>all</b> data except the firmware repository. A delete confirmation prompt is <b>not</b> provided.
				<b>CAUTION:</b> This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).
				This allows a user to reformat the disk by removing the firmware image from the active directory without having to download new firmware code (printer remains bootable).
	Change Password	ł		Select this item to set or change the administrator password.
	Clear Password			Select the Clear Password item to remove a password from the Administrator menu. Before the password is actually cleared, a message will be shown asking to confirm that the password should be cleared. Press the OK button to confirm the action.
				When the confirmation prompt displays, press the OK button to clear the password.

# Table 3-2 Pre-boot menu options (1 of 7) (continued)

# Table 3-3 Pre-boot menu options (2 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Manage Disk	Clear disk		Select the <u>Clear disk</u> item to enable using an external device for job storage. Job storage is normally enabled only for the Boot device. This will be grayed out unless the <b>99.09.68</b> error is displayed.

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Manage Disk	Lock Disk		Select the Lock Disk item to lock (mate) a new secure disk to this printer.
(continued) (continued)			The secure disk already locked to this printer will remain accessible to this printer. Use this function to have more than one encrypted disk accessible by the printer when using them interchangeably.	
				The data stored on the secure disk locked to this printer always remains accessible to this printer.
		Leave Unlocked		Select the Leave Unlocked item to use a new secure disk in an unlocked mode for a single service event. The secure disk that is already locked to this printer will remain accessible to this printer and uses the old disk's encryption password with the new disk.
				The secure disk that is already locked to this printer remains accessible to this printer.
	Clear Disk Pwd		Select the Clear Disk Pwd item to continue using the non- secure disk and clear the password associated with the yet-to- be installed secure disk.	
				<b>CAUTION:</b> Data on the missing secure disk will be permanently inaccessible.
		Retain Password		Select the Retain Password item to use the non-secure disk fo this session only, and then search for the missing secure disk in future sessions.
		Boot Device	Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the dis and unlock it if required.
				This might take a long time.
			<b>NOTE:</b> The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command is a one-pass overwrite, which erases the entire disk including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.	
		Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all data on the disk and unlock the disk to allow a user to gain access to it from any printer.	
				<b>NOTE:</b> The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. It erases the encryption key. The encryption key is erased, so the disk becomes a non-encrypted disk.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.

# Table 3-3 Pre-boot menu options (2 of 7) (continued)

# Table 3-4 Pre-boot menu options (3 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Manage Disk	Internal Device		Select the Internal Device item to erase the internal device or get a status about the internal device.

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Manage Disk	Internal Device	Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required.
	(continued) (continued)		This might take a long time.	
			<b>NOTE:</b> The system will be unusable until the system files ar reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command erases the entire disk, including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.	
		Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all of the data on disk and unlock the disk to allow the user to gain access to it from any printer.	
			<b>NOTE:</b> The system will be unusable until the system files ar reinstalled. The HP High Performance Secure Hard Disk is erased.	
		Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.	
	External Device		Select the External Device item to erase the external device o get status about the external device.	
		Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required.	
				This might take a long time.
			<b>NOTE:</b> The system will be unusable until the system files ar reinstalled.	
				The ATA secure-erase command erases the entire disk, including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
		Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all of the data on disk and unlock the disk to allow a user to gain access to it from any printer.	
				<b>NOTE:</b> The system will be unusable until the system files ar reinstalled. The encryption key is erased, so the disk become a non-encrypted disk.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.

# Table 3-4 Pre-boot menu options (3 of 7) (continued)

# Table 3-5 Pre-boot menu options (4 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Configure LAN	IP Mode [DHCP]		The network can be configured to obtain the network settings from a DHCP server or as static.
	NOTE: This			5
	configuration is only active when the Pre-			Use this item for automatic IP address acquisition from the DHCP server.
	boot menu is open.	IP Mode [STATIC]		Use this item to manually assign the network addresses.
			IP Address	Use this item to manually enter the IP addresses.
			Subnet Mask	Use this item to manually enter the subnet mask.
			Default Gateway	Use this item to manually enter the default gateway.
			Save	Select the Save item to save the manual settings.

# Table 3-6 Pre-boot menu options (5 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Startup Options			Select the Startup Options item to specify options that can be set for the next time the printer is turned on and initializes to the <b>Ready</b> state.
		Show Revision		<b>Not currently functional:</b> Select the Show Revision item to allow the printer to initialize and show the firmware version when the printer reaches the <b>Ready</b> state.
				Once the printer power is turned on the next time, the Show Revision item is unchecked so that the firmware revision is not shown.
		Cold Reset		Select the Cold Reset item to clear the IP address and all customer settings. (This item also returns all settings to factory defaults.)
				<b>NOTE:</b> Items in the Service menu are not reset.
		Skip Disk Load		Select the Skip Disk Load item to disable installed third- party applications.
		Skip Cal		Select the Skip Cal item to skip the printer calibration for the very next power-initialization cycle only.
		Lock Service		<b>CAUTION:</b> Select the Lock Service item to lock the Service menu access (both in the Pre-boot menu and the Device Maintenance menu).
				Service personnel must have the administrator remove the Lock Service setting before they can open the Service menu.
		Skip FSCK		Select the Skip FSCK item to disable Chkdisk/ScanVolume during startup.
		First Power		Not currently functional: This item allows the printer to initialize as if it is the first time it has been turned on.
				For example, the user is prompted to configure first-time settings like date/time, language, and other settings.
				Select this item so that it is enabled for the next time the printer power is turned on.
				When the printer power is turned on the next time, this item is unchecked so that the pre-configured settings are used during configuration, and the first-time setting prompt is not used.
		Embedded Jetdirect Off		Select the Embedded Jetdirect Off item to disable the embedded HP Jetdirect.
				By default this item is unchecked so that HP Jetdirect is always enabled.
		WiFi Accessory		Select the WiFi Accessory item to enable the wireless accessory.

# Table 3-7 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Diagnostics			Diagnostic items are useful to diagnose hardware components and their interface connections. Use these items to troubleshoot specific hardware components, and the interface between them and other components.
		Memory	Do Not Run	Use the Do Not Run item to exclude the Memory diagnostic when executing multiple diagnostics.
			Short	Use the Short item to select a brief memory test.
				<b>NOTE:</b> This test requires about four minutes to execute.
			Long	Use the Long item to select an extended memory test.
				<b>NOTE:</b> This test requires about twenty minutes to execute.
		Disk	Do Not Run	Use the Do Not Run item to exclude the Disk diagnostic when executing multiple diagnostics.
			Short	Use the Short item to select a brief firmware self-test.
				<b>NOTE:</b> This test requires about two or three minutes to execute.
			Long	Use the Long item to select an extended firmware self-test.
				<b>NOTE:</b> This test requires about sixty minutes to execute.
			Optimized	Use the Optimized item to select a test that checks the active sectors on the disk.
				<b>NOTE:</b> This test requires about thirty minutes to execute.
			Raw	Use the Raw item to select a test that checks every sector on the disk.
				<b>NOTE:</b> This test requires about fifty minutes to execute.
			Smart	Use the Smart item to select a very brief test that checks the drive self-monitoring analysis and reporting technology (SMART) status—the drive detects and reports reliability indicators to help anticipate disk failures (SMART status).
		СРВ		Use the CPB item to verify the integrity of the copy processor board (CPB) and the formatter PCA connections.

Table 3-7 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		Interconnect		Use the Interconnect item to verify the integrity of the interconnect PCA (ICB) and its connections.
		Run Selected		Select the Run Selected item to execute a selected test.
				<b>NOTE:</b> If more than one test is selected, they are executed in sequence.

# Table 3-8 Pre-boot menu options (7 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Remote Admin	Start Telnet		The Remote Admin item allows a service technician to access to the printer Pre-boot menu remotely, and to navigate the menu selections from a remote location.
				<b>IMPORTANT:</b> A Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer.
				This person will also need to provide a randomly generated PIN to the remote service technician.
				<b>NOTE:</b> For more information about using the Remote Admin function, see <u>Remote Admin on page 701</u> .
		Stop Telnet		
		Refresh IP		
	System Triage	Copy Logs		If the device will not boot to the <b>Ready</b> state, or the diagnostic log feature found in the <u>Troubleshooting</u> menu is not accessible, then use the <u>System Triage</u> item to copy the diagnostic logs to a USB flash drive at the next printer start up.
				The files can then be sent to HP to help diagnose the problem.
	Change Svc PWD			Use this item to change the Service menu personal identification number (PIN).
	Reset Svc PWD			If the Service menu personal identification number (PIN) has been changed. Use this item to reset it to the original PIN.
Service Tools	Reset Password			Use this item to reset the Pre-boot administrator password.
	Subsystems			For manufacturing use only. Do not change these values.
Developer Tools	Netexec			

# **Remote Admin**

The Remote Admin feature allows remote access the printer Pre-boot menu (BIOS environment). The printer functions as a telnet server which uses the telnet networking protocol to transmit text data. Any computer (with telnet installed and enabled) can function as the telnet client to remotely display and interact with the Pre-boot menu.

IMPORTANT: While the Remote Admin function allows remote access the Pre-boot menu, for security reasons the Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer.

This section describes the following Remote Admin items.

- <u>Required software and network connection</u>
- <u>Connect a remote connection</u>
- <u>Disconnect a remote connection</u>

#### Required software and network connection

Before using the Remote Admin feature, make sure that the telnet network protocol is installed, and enabled, on the remote telnet client computer.

NOTE: This section describes enabling and configuring the telnet feature for computers using a Windows<sup>®</sup> operating system.

HP recommends that the telnet client computer be a Windows based system, however, there are other operating systems that support the telnet network protocol. For information about enabling and configuring the telnet network protocol for other operating systems, see the owner's manual for that operating system.

#### Telnet client

### Enable the Windows telnet client

All computers using the Windows operating system have the telnet client installed, however, the telnet client function might not be enabled by default.

NOTE: The figures and menus in this section are for the Windows 7 Enterprise<sup>®</sup> operating system. Screens and menu selections might vary slightly for other operating systems.

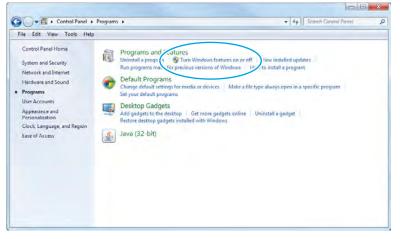
1. Use the Start menu to open the Control Panel, and then click the Programs item to select it.

#### Figure 3-13 Open the Control Panel

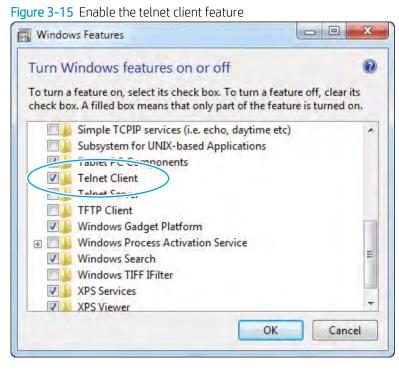


2. Click the Turn Windows features on or off item to select it.

Figure 3-14 Turn Windows features on or off



- 3. In the Windows Features box, scroll down to Telnet Client. If the check box is not checked, click the box to select it, and then click the OK button.
- ☆ TIP: If the check box is already checked then the telnet client function is already enabled. Click the Cancel button.



#### Network connection

The remote telnet client computer must have direct network access to the printer for the Remote Admin function to operate. This means that the telnet client computer must be on the same network as the printer. The Remote Admin function cannot be accessed through a network firewall or other remote access network security programs.

If a private network is not accessible, ask the network administrator to set up a virtual private network (VPN) connection to the network.

#### Connect a remote connection

#### Start the telnet server function at the printer

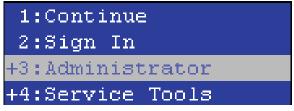
For security reasons the Remote Admin feature must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. The following steps must be performed by a person that is physically present at the printer.

NOTE: This person might need to sign in with an administrator or service password depending on how the printer is configured.

- 1. Turn the printer on.
- 2. The HP logo displays on the printer control panel. When a "1/8" with an underscore displays, touch the middle of the screen to open the Pre-boot menu.

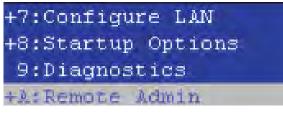
3. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the +3:Administrator item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-16 Select the +3:Administrator item



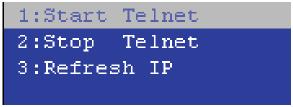
4. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-17 Select the +A:Remote Admin item



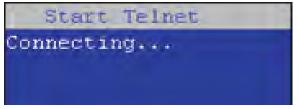
5. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **1:Start Telnet** item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-18 Select the 1:Start Telnet item



- 6. Do one of the following
  - If a connecting message displays briefly, go to step <u>7</u>.

Figure 3-19 Telnet connecting message



• If an error message displays, use the steps below to identify the problem.

Figure 3-20 Telnet error message

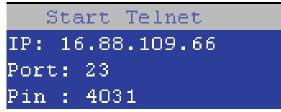


- **a.** The printer network cable is not correctly connected.
- **b.** The BIOS LAN settings are incorrect.
  - The printer should be configured to use a static IP address, but is configured to use DHCP instead.
  - The printer is configured to use a static IP address, but the IP address is incorrect.
- **c.** The printer is correctly configured to use DHCP, but the DHCP server is not turned on or is malfunctioning.
- 7. When the printer telnet server function is initialized, the following screen appears. Use the information on this screen to connect the remote telnet client computer to the printer.

**NOTE:** The printer is now ready to receive remote telnet client commands.

- IP: The static or dynamically allocated IP address for the printer.
- **Port**: The standard telnet port (23).
- **Pin**: A randomly generated 4-digit personal identification number (PIN).

Figure 3-21 Telnet server function initialized

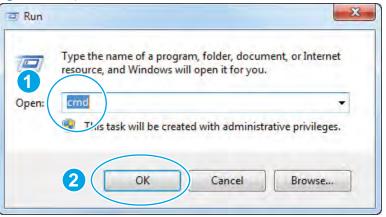


# Start the telnet client function at the remote computer

The following steps establish a Remote Admin connection from a remote computer to the printer.

1. From the **Start** menu click **Run** to open a dialog box, type cmd in the **Open** field, and then click the **OK** button to open a Windows command window.





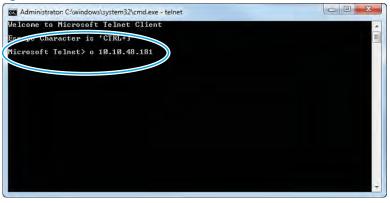
2. From any displayed directory, type telnet at the prompt, and then press the Enter key.

Figure 3-23 Start a telnet session

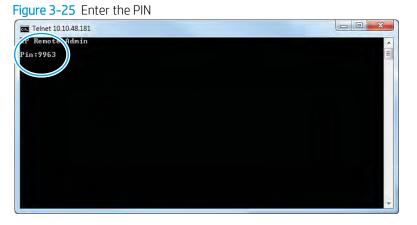


- 3. Type o <IP ADDRESS> at the telnet prompt, and then press the Enter key.
  - **NOTE:** For <IP ADDRESS>, substitute the IP address that was displayed in step <u>7</u> in <u>Start the telnet</u> server function at the printer on page 703.
  - ☆ TIP: If the telnet connection fails to establish a connection, the printer is probably behind a firewall or on a different network that the remote telnet client computer. See <u>Network connection on page 703</u>.

Figure 3-24 Establish a telnet connection



- **4.** Type the PIN that was displayed in step <u>7</u> in <u>Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 703</u> at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.
  - **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to type the PIN correctly. After five incorrect PIN entries, the printer terminates the Remote Admin connection. The Remote Admin feature must be re-initiated at the printer. See <u>Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 703</u>.



- 5. The following screen displays when the correct PIN is entered and the Remote Admin connection is successful. For information about the Pre-boot menu and options, see <u>Pre-boot menu options</u> on page 692.
- NOTE: Because a Remote Admin connection is an unsecure telnet network protocol connection, the following Pre-boot menu items are disabled for the remote telnet client computer.
  - The +3:Administrator menu 4:Change Password item.
  - The +3:Administrator menu 5:Clear Password item.
  - The +3:Administrator menu 6:Disk Manage item.

Figure 3-26 Remote Admin window



#### Disconnect a remote connection

The Remote Admin connection can be terminated from the printer control panel or the remote telnet client computer.

NOTE: The following procedure describes terminating a Remote Admin connection from the remote telnet client computer.

- 1. From the Pre-boot main menu, use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the +3:Administrator item, and then press the Enter key.
  - Telnet 10.10.48.181

Figure 3-27 Access the administrator menu

2. Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then press the **Enter** key.



Figure 3-28 Access the remote admin menu

3. Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **2:Stop Telnet** item, and then press the **Enter** key. The Remote Admin connection between the printer and the remote telnet client computer terminates.

**IMPORTANT:** The printer remains in the Pre-boot menu. Have the person that is physically present at the printer do the following:

• Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the **1:Continue** item, and then touch the OK button. The printer will continue to initialize.

#### Figure 3-29 Terminate the telnet connection



# Control panel menus

You can perform basic printer setup by using the Settings menu. Use the HP Embedded Web Server for more advanced printer setup. To open the HP Embedded Web Server, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address bar of a web browser.

- <u>Reports menu</u>
- <u>Settings menu</u>
- <u>Copy menu (MFP only)</u>
- Scan menu (MFP only)
- Fax menu (fax models only)
- Print menu
- Supplies menu
- <u>Trays menu</u>
- <u>Troubleshooting menu</u>
- <u>Maintenance menu</u>

## **Reports menu**

To display: At the printer control panel, select Reports.

In the following table, asterisks (\*) indicate the factory default setting.

#### Table 3-9 Reports menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages	Settings Menu Map	Print	Shows a map of the entire control panel system and the selected
		View	values for each setting.
	Current Settings Page	Print	Shows a summary of the current
		View	settings for the printer. This might be helpful if you plan to make changes and need a record of the
			present configuration.

## Table 3-9 Reports menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages (continued)	Configuration Page	Print	Shows the printer settings and installed accessories.
		View	
	How to Connect Page	Print	Shows the network information typically needed to connect the
		View	printer to a network.
	Supplies Status Page	Print	Shows the approximate remaining life for the supplies; reports
		View	statistics on total number of pages and jobs processed, serial number, page counts, and maintenance information.
			HP provides approximations of the remaining life for the supplies as a customer convenience. The actual remaining supply levels might be different from the approximations provided.
	Usage Page	Print	Shows a count of all paper sizes
		View	that have passed through the printer; lists whether they were simplex, duplex, monochrome, or color; and reports the page count.
	File Directory	Print	Shows the file name and folder name for files that are stored in the
		View	printer memory.
	Web Services Status Page	Print	Shows the detected Web Services for the printer.
		View	
	Color Usage Job Log	Print	Shows color jobs completed by the printer.
		View	piintei.
ax Reports (MFP fax models only)	Fax Activity Log	Print	Contains a list of the faxes that hav
		View	been sent from or received by this printer.
	Billing Codes Report	Print	Provides a list of billing codes that
		View	have been used for outgoing faxes. This report shows how many sent faxes were billed to each code.
	Blocked Fax List	Print	A list of phone numbers that are blocked from sending faxes to this
		View	printer.
	Speed Dial List	Print	Shows the speed dials that have been set up for this printer.
		View	been set up for this philter.
	Fax Call Report	Print	A detailed report of the last fax operation, either sent or received.
		View	
Other Pages	Demonstration Page	Print	Prints a demonstration page.

# Table 3-9 Reports menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Other Pages (continued)	RGB samples	Print	Prints color samples for different RGB values. Use the samples as a guide for matching printed colors.
	CMYK samples	Print	Prints color samples for different CMYK values. Use the samples as a guide for matching printed colors.
	PCL Font List	Print	Prints the available PCL fonts.
	PS Font List	Print	Prints the available PS fonts.

# Settings menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Settings menu.

In the following table, asterisks (\*) indicate the factory default setting.

## Table 3-10 Settings menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
General	Date/Time	Date/Time Format	Date Format		DD/MMM/YYYY	Use the Date/Time
	Settings				MMM/DD/YYYY	Settings menu to specify the date and
					YYYY/MMM/DD	time and to configure date/time settings.
			Time Format		12 hour (AM/PM)	Select the format
					24 hours	that the printer uses to show the date and time, for example 12-hour format or 24-hour format.
		Date/Time	Date		Select the time zone from a list.	Select the time zone date, and time that the printer uses.
			Time		Select the date from a pop-up calendar.	
			Time Zone		Select the time from a pop-up keypad.	
	Energy Settings	rgy Settings Sleep Schedule	A list of scheduled events displays.		+ (Add)	Use to configure the printer to
					Edit	automatically wake up or go to sleep at specific times on specific days. Using this feature saves energy.
					Delete	
						<b>NOTE:</b> You must configure the date and time settings before you can use this feature.
			New event	Event Type		Select whether to add or edit a Wake event or a Sleep event, and then select the time and the days for the wake or sleep event.
				Time		Set the wake or sleep event time parameters.
				Event Days	Select days of the week from a list.	Set the wake or sleep event day parameters.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
General (continued)	Energy settings (continued)	Sleep Settings	Auto Off After Sleep		Range: 1 to 110 minutes	Set the number of minutes after which
			Sleep After Inactivity		Default = 0 minutes	the printer enters Sleep or Auto Off mode. Touch the
			HP Auto Off/Auto On			existing number to open the virtual keypad, and then
			Shut Down			increase or decrease the number of minutes.
			Wake/Auto On to These Events		All Events*	
			THESE EVENUS		Network port	
					Power button only	
	Display Settings	Display Brightness	Automatic*		The Manual setting uses a slider to	Use to specify the
			Manual		display brightness.	intensity of the LCD control panel display.
		System Sound			On*	Use to specify
					Off	whether you hear a sound when you touch the screen or press buttons on th control panel.
		Language Settings	Language		Select from a list of languages that the printer supports.	Use to select a different language for control panel messages and specify the default keyboard layout. When you select a new language, the keyboard layout automatically changes to match the factory default for the selected language.
			Keyboard Layout		Each language has a default keyboard	Select the default keyboard layout tha
			M681z/M682z only		layout. To change it, select from a list of layouts.	matches the language you want to use.
		Information Screen			Show connection information*	Use this menu item to display or hide connection
					Hide connection information	information on the Home screen.
		DisplayDate and Time			Show Date and Time*	Select whether to display or hide the
		M681/M682 only			Hide Date and Time	date and time on th control panel Home screen.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
General (continued(	Display settings (continued)	Inactivity Timeout			Range: 10-300 seconds Default = 60 seconds	Specifies the amoun of time that elapses between any activity on the control panel and when the printer resets to the default settings. When the timeout expires, the control panel display returns to the Home menu, and any user signed in to the printer is signed out.
		Clearable Warnings			On Job*	Use this feature to set the period that a clearable warning displays on the control panel. If the On setting is selected, clearable warnings appear until the Clearable Warnings button is pressed. If the Job setting is selected, clearable warnings stay on the display during the job that generated the warning and disappear from the display when the next job starts.
		Continuable Events			Auto-continue (10 seconds)* Touch OK to continue	Use this option to configure the printer behavior when the printer encounters certain errors. If the Auto-continue (10 seconds) option is selected, the job will continue after 10 seconds. If the Toucl OK to continue option is selected, the job will stop and require the user to touch the OK button before continuing.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
General (continued)	Jam Recovery				Auto* Off On	This printer provides a jam recovery feature that reprints jammed pages. Select one of the
						following options: Auto: The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages wher sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting.
						Off: The printer does not attempt to reprint jammed pages. Because no memory is used to store the most recent pages, performance is optimal.
						<b>NOTE:</b> When using this option, if the printer runs out of paper and the job is being printed on both sides, some pages can be lost.
						On: The printer always reprints jammed pages. Additional memory is allocated to store the last few pages printed. This might cause a decrease in overall performance
	Auto Recovery				Enabled	The printer attempt
					Disabled*	to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting.
	Hold Off Print Job				Enabled*	Enable this feature i
					Disabled	you want to prevent print jobs from starting while a use is initiating a copy job from the control panel. Held print job start printing after the copy job is finished, provided that no other copy job is in the print

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description	
General (continued)	Restore Factory Settings				Restore	Use to restore all printer settings to	
					Cancel	their factory defaults.	
Copy/Print	Copy Settings	Image Preview				Display a preview o the image before printing it.	
	Enable Device USB				Enabled	Enables the printer to open a file from	
					Disabled*	USB drive.	
	Manage Stored Jobs	Job Sort Order			Job Name*	This option allows you list the jobs	
	5655				Date	either alphabetical or chronologically.	
	Retain Tempor Jobs After Rebo		Retain Temporary			Do not retain	Sets which temporary jobs wil
		JODS AILEI REDUUL			Personal jobs only	be retained in the event of a printer	
					All temporary jobs	reboot.	
		Temporary Job Storage Limit			1-300	Configure global settings for jobs th	
		Storage Linne			Default = 32	are stored in the printer memory.	
						The Temporary Jol Storage Limit featu specifies the numb of temporary jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.	
		Temporary Stored Job Retention			1-300	Configure global settings for jobs th	
		Job Retention			Default = 32	are stored in the printer memory.	
						The Temporary Stored Job Retenti feature specifies th number of temporary jobs tha can be stored on th printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.	

Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Manage Stored	Standard Stored			1-300	Configure global
JODS (continued)	Job Retention			Default = 32	settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory.
					The Temporary Stored Job Retentior feature specifies the number of standard jobs that can be stored on the printer The maximum allowed value is 300
Default Print	Number of Copies		Range: 1-32000	Sets the default	
options			Default = 1	copy job. This default applies when the Copy function or the Quick Copy function is initiated from the printer Home screen.	
	Paper Selection		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Configures the default paper size used for print jobs.	
	Default Custom Paper Size	X Dimension	Range: 3-8.5 inches	Configures the default paper size that is used when the user selects	
			Default = 8.5 inches	<b>Custom</b> as the paper size for a print job.	
		Y Dimension	Range: 5-14 inches		
			Default = 14 inches		
		Use Inches	Enabled*		
			Disabled		
	Output Sides		1-sided*	Use to indicate whether the original	
			2-sided	document is printed on one or both sides, and whether the copies should be printed on one or both sides. For example, select the 1-sided original, 2-sided output option when the original is printed on one side, but you	
	Manage Stored Jobs (continued)	Manage Stored Jobs (continued)Standard Stored Job RetentionDefault Print OptionsNumber of CopiesPaper SelectionPaper SelectionDefault Custom Paper SizeDefault Custom Paper Size	Manage Stored Jobs (continued)       Standard Stored Job Retention         Default Print Options       Number of Copies         Paper Selection       Paper Selection         Default Custom Paper Size       X Dimension         Paper Size       Y Dimension         Use Inches       Use Inches	Manage Stored Jobs (continued)Standard Stored Job RetentionDefault Print OptionsNumber of CopiesRange: 1-32000 Default = 1Paper SelectionSelect from a list of sizes that the printer supports.Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.Default Custom Paper SizeX Dimension Paper SizeRange: 3-8.5 inchesV DimensionRange: 3-8.5 inchesDefault = 8.5 inchesV DimensionRange: 5-14 inchesDefault = 14 inchesUse InchesUse InchesDefault = 14 inchesUse InchesDisabledDisabledOutput Sides1-sided*	Manage Stored Jobs (continued)       Standard Stored Job Retention       1-300         Default Print Options       Number of Copies       Range: 1-32000       Sets the default number of copies for a copy job. This default applies when the Copy function or the Quick Copy function is initiated from the printer supports.         Paper Selection       Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.       Configures the default applies used for printer supports.         Default Custom Paper Size       X Dimension       Range: 3-8.5 inches       Configures the default applies that is used print jobs.         V Dimension       Range: 5-14 inches       Configures the default applies that is used when the user selects         Use Inches       Default = 1       Use inches         Use Inches       Default = 1       configures the default applies selects         Use Inches       Default = 8.5 inches       Configures the default applies when the conjoint job.         V Dimension       Range: 5-14 inches       Custom as the paper size for a print job.         Output Sides       1-sided*       Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides, and whether the copies should be printed on one or both sides. For example, select in -sided

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Copy/Print	Default Print	Staple			None	Sets the position of
(continued)	Options (continued)				Top left	the staple on the page.
					Top right	
					Top left or right	
		Output Bin			Automatically select	
					Standard bin	
					Upper bin	
					Middle bin	
		Resolution			FastRes1200	Sets the resolution for sent documents
					1200x1200dpi	Higher resolution images have more dots per inch (dpi), so they show more detail. Lower resolution images have fewer dots per inch and show less detail, but the file size is smaller. Som file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might automatically change to a valid value.
	PCL and PostScript Settings	Courier Font			Regular* Dark	Select which version of the Courier font you want to use. The factory default setting is Regular, which uses an average stroke width. The Dark setting can be used if a heavier Courier font is needed.
Copy/Print	PCL and Postscript	Wide A4			Enabled	Changes the
(continued)	Settings (continued)				Disabled*	printable area of A4 size paper. If you enable this option, eighty 10-pitch characters can be printed on a single line of A4 paper.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Print PS Errors			Enabled	Use this feature to select whether a
					Disabled*	PostScript (PS) error page is printed when the printer encounters a PS error.
		Print PDF Errors			Enabled	Selects whether a
					Disabled*	PDF error page is printed when the printer encounters a PDF error.
		Personality			Auto*	Configures the default print
					PCL	language or personality for the
					PS	printer. Normally you
					PDF	should not change the printer language. If you change the setting to a specific printer language, the printer does not automatically switch from one language to another unless specific software commands are sent to it.
		PCL	Font Settings	Font Source	Internal	Selects the font source for the user-
					Disk resident	soft default font. The list of available options varies depending on the installed printer options.
Copy/Print (continued)	PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL (continued)	Font Settings (continued)	Font Number	Range: 0-110	Specifies the font number for the user-
	(continued)				Default = 0	soft default font using the source that is specified in the Font Source menu. The printer assigns a number to each font and lists it on the PCL font list. The font number displays in the Font # column of the printout.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Font Pitch	Range: 0.44-99.99 Default = 10	If the Font Source option and the Font Number setting
						indicate a condur font, then use this feature to select a default pitch (for a fixed-spaced font).
			PCL Settings	Form Length	Range: 5-128	Controls the PCL print-command
					Default = 60	options. PCL is a set of printer commands that HP developed to provide access to printer features.
						Use the Form Length feature to select the user-soft default vertical form length.
				Orientation	Portrait*	Select the orientation that is
					Landscape	most often used for copy or scan originals. Select the Portrait option if the short edge is at the top or select the Landscape option if the long edge is at the top.
				Symbol Set	Select from a list of symbol sets.	Select any one of several available symbol sets from the control panel. A symbol set is a unique grouping of all the characters in a font. The factory default value for this option is PC-8. Eithe PC-8 or PC-850 are recommended for line-draw characters

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Copy/Print (continued)	PCL and Postscript Settings (continued)	PCL (continued)	PCL Settings (continued)	Append CR to LF	No* Yes	Configure whether a carriage return (CR) is appended to each line feed (LF) encountered in backwards-compatible PCL jobs (pure text, no job control). Select Yes to append the carriage return. The default setting is No. Some environments, such as UNIX, indicate a new line by using only the line-feed control code. This option allows the user to append the required carriage return to each line feed.
				Suppress Blank Pages	No* Yes	This option is for users who are generating their own PCL, which could include extra form feeds that would cause blank pages to be printed. When the Yes option is selected, form feeds are ignored if the page is blank.
				Media Source Mapping	Standard* Classic	Use to select and maintain input trays by number when you are not using the printer driver, or when the software program has no option for tray selection. The following options are available: Standard: Tray numbering is based on newer
						on newer HP LaserJet models. Classic: Tray numbering is based on HP LaserJet 4 and older models.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Copy/Print	Print Quality	Adjust Color	Tonal Range	Highlights		
(continued)				Midtones		
				Shadows		
			Cyan			
			Magenta			
			Yellow			
			Black			
		Image Registration	Tray	Tray 1		Specify tray to be adjusted
				Tray 2		
				Tray 3		
				Tray 4		
				Tray 5		
				Depends upon number of trays installed		

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Copy/Print (continued)	Print Quality (continued)	Image Registration (continued)	Front-side Horizontal Shift Front-side Vertical Shift Back-side Horizizontal Shift		-5.00 mm to 5.00 mm	Shift the margin alignment to center the image on the page from top to bottom and from left to right. You can also align the image on the front with the
	Back-side Vertical Shift		image printed on the back. The direction that is perpendicular to the way the paper passes through the printer is referred to as X. This is also known as the scan direction. X1 is the scan direction for a single-sided page or for the second side of a two-sided page X2 is the scan direction for the first side of a two-sided page.			
						The direction that the paper feeds through the printer in referred to as Y. Y1 in the feed direction for a single-sided page or for the second side of a two-sided page. Y2 is the feed direction for the first side of a two-sided page.
						Use the Adjust Tray <x> menu to adjust the registration settings for each tray. Before adjusting these values, print a registration test page. It provides alignment guides in the X and Y directions so you ca determine which adjustments are necessary. You can</x>
						adjust values for X Shift, X2 Shift, Y1 Shift, and Y2 Shift.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Copy/Print (continued)	Print Quality (continued)	Image Registration (continued)		Print Test Page		Use the Print Test Page option to print a page to test the image registration. It provides alignment guides in the X and Y directions so you can determine which adjustments are necessary.
		Auto Sense Behavior	Tray 1		Sense every page	
		Denano			Sense first page	
					Sense transparency ony	
			All Other Trays		Sense first page	
					Sense transparency only	
		Adjust paper types			Select from a list of paper types	
					Reset Paper Types	
		Optimize			Normal Paper	
					Heavy paper	
					Envelope control	
					Tray 1	
					Background	
					Background 1	
					Uniformity Control	
					Tracking Control	
					Registration	
					Transfer Control	
					Moisture Control	
					Reset Optimize	
		Edge Control			Off	
					Light	
					Normal	
					Maximum	

Table 3-10 Settings menu	(continued)
--------------------------	-------------

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Copy/Print (continued)	Manage Trays	Use Requested Tray			Exclusively* First	Controls how the printer handles jobs that have specified a specific input tray. Two options are available: Exclusively: The
						printer never selects a different tray when the user has indicated that a specific tray should be used, even if that tray is empty.
						First: The printer pulls from another tray if the specified tray is empty, even though the user specifically indicated a tray for the job.
		Manually Feed Prompt			Always*	Indicate whether a prompt should
					Unless loaded	appear when the type or size for a job does not match the specified tray and the printer pulls from the multipurpose tray instead. Two options are available:
						Always: A prompt always displays before using the multipurpose tray.
						Unless loaded: A message displays only if the multipurpose tray is empty.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Copy/Print (continued)	Manage Trays (continued)	Size/Type Prompt			Display* Do not display	Controls whether the tray configuration message displays whenever a tray is closed. Two options are available:
						Display: Shows the tray configuration message when a tray is closed. The user is able to configure the tray settings directly from this message.
						Do not display: Prevents the tray configuration message from automatically appearing.
		Use Another Tray			Enabled* Disabled	Use to turn on or off the control panel prompt to select another tray when the specified tray is empty. Two options are available:
						Enabled: When this option is selected, the user is prompted either to add paper to the selected tray or to choose a different tray.
						Disabled: When this option is selected, the user is not given the option of selecting a different tray. The printer prompts the user to add paper to the tray that was initially selected.

Table 3-10 Settings menu (continued)									
First lovel	Second level	Third level							

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Copy/Print continued)	Manage Trays (continued)	Alternative Letterhead Mode			Disabled* Enabled	Use to load letterhead or preprinted paper into the tray the same way for all print jobs, whether you are printing to one side of the sheet or to both sides of the sheet. When this option is selected, load the paper as you would for printing on both sides. See the user documentation that came with the printer for instructions about loading letterhead for printing on both sides. When this option is selected, the printer speed slows to the speed required for printing on both sides.
		Duplex Blank Pages			Auto* Yes	Controls how the printer handles two- sided jobs (duplexing). Two options are available: Auto: Enables Smart Duplexing, which instructs the printer not to process blank pages. Yes: Disables Smart Duplexing and forces the duplexer to flip the sheet of paper even if it is printed on only one side. This might be preferable for certain jobs that use paper types such as letterhead or prepunched paper.

Table 3-10	Settings menu	(continued)
------------	---------------	-------------

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Copy/Print (continued)	Manage Trays (continued)	Override A4/Letter			Yes* No	Prints on letter-size paper when an A4 job is sent but no A4-size paper is loaded in the printer (or to print on A4 paper when a letter- size job is sent but no letter-size paper is loaded). This option will also override A3 with ledger-size paper and ledger with A3- size paper.
Scan/Digital Send	E-mail Settings Network Folder Settings SharePoint Settings Scan to USB Drive Settings NOTE: The same options are available for each of these features, except where noted.	E-mail Setup NOTE: Email Settings only				Use to configure settings that apply to sending documents through email or saving documents to a folder on the network or on a USE multi-drive. The E-mail Setup Wizard feature configures the printer to send scanned images as email attachments. To open the printer HP Embedded Web Server and set up the email notification server, enter the printer IP address into a Web browser.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Scan/Digital Send (continued)	Email Settings (continued)	Image Preview			Make optional*	Defines the default job options for each
(continued)	(continued)				Require preview	function. If you do not specify the job
					Disable preview	options when creating the job, the default options are used. For complete setup, go to the HP Embedded Web Server by typing the IP address of the printer into a Web browser.
						Use the Image Preview feature to scan a document and display a preview before completing the job. Select whether this feature is available on the printer.
						Make optional: The feature is optional, depending on the user who is signed in.
						Require preview Previews are required for all users.
						Disable preview: Previews are disabled for all users.
		Default File Name				The printer is shipped with a factory default file name of [Untitled] for any scanned files that are sent or saved. Use this feature to specify a different default file name. If you are saving a file to a network folder or USB storage printer and a file with the default file name already exists, a number is appended to the file name, for example,

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Scan/Digital Send continued)	Email settings(continued )	Document File Type(continued)			Select from a list of file types.	PDF provides the best overall image and text quality.
			JPEG is a good choice for most graphics. Most computers have a browser that can view .JPEG files. Th file type produces one file per page.			
						TIFF is a standard f format that many graphics programs support. This file type produces one file per page.
						MTIFF: stands for multi-page TIFF. Th file type saves multiple scanned pages in a single fi
			XPS (XML Paper Specification) creates an XML file that preserves the original formatting of the document a supports color graphics and embedded fonts.			
						NOTE: OCR file types are not supported on this printer unless attached to DSS.

Table 3-10	Settings	menu	(continued)
------------	----------	------	-------------

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Scan/Digital Send (continued)	Email Settings (continued)	Optimize Text/ Picture			Manually Adjust* Text Printed picture Photograph	Use to optimize the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy when text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed
		Output Quality			High (large file) Medium* Low (small file)	Use to select the quality for the output. Higher- quality images require a larger file size than lower- quality images. Larger files take more time to send, and some recipients might have trouble receiving larger files.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Scan/Digital Send Email settings (continued) (continued)	Original Sides			1-sided 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the <b>Orientation</b> setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.	
			Orientation		Automatically detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Scan/Digital Send (continued)	Email settings(continued )	Original sides(continued)	2-Sided Format		Book-style Flip-style	Book-style: The back side of the original is printed right-side- up, and the back side of the copy is printed the same way. Use this option for originals and copies that are bound along the left edge.
						Flip-style: The back side of the original is printed upside- down, and the back side of the copy is printed the same way. Use this option for originals and copies that are to be bound along the top edge.
		Resolution			400 dpi	Sets the resolution
					300 dpi	for sent documents. Higher resolution
					200 dpi	images have more dots per inch (dpi),
					150 dpi*	so they show more detail. Lower
					75 dpi	resolution images have fewer dots per inch and show less detail, but the file size is smaller. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might automatically change to a valid value.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Scan/Digital Send	Email	Content	Orientation		Auto Detect	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way
(continued)	settings(continued Orientation )	Orientation			Portrait*	
					Landscape	the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.
			2-Sided Format		Book-style*	Use to configure the
					Flip-style	default style for 2- sided print jobs. If the Book-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed the right way up. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the left edge. If the Flip-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed upside-down. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the top edge.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Scan/Digital Send (continued)	Email settings(continued	Color/Black			Automatically detect*	Use to enable or disable color
(continued) )	)				Color	scanning.
					Black/Gray	Automatically detect: Automatically scans
					Black	documents in color if at least one page has color.
						Color: Scans documents in color.
						Black/Gray: Scans documents in grayscale.
						Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size			Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
		Notification			Do not notify*	Configure to receive notification about
					Notify when job completes	the status of a sent document.
					Notify only if job fails	Do not notify: Turns off this feature.
					Print	Notify when job
					E-mail	completes: Select to receive notification for this job only.
						Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
						Print: Select to print the notification at this printer.
						E-mail: Select to receive the notification to an email account.
			Include Thumbna	ail		<b>NOTE:</b> When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.

Table 3-10	Settings	menu	(continued)
------------	----------	------	-------------

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description									
	Email settings(continued )	Notifications (continued)	Notification E-mail address			E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then type the email address for the notification.									
		Image Adjustment		Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy.									
						Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.									
				Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.									
														Background Cleanup	
				Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.									
	Email settings (continued)	Image Adjustment (continued)		Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.									
				Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.									

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Job Build			Job Build off*	Use to combine
					Job Build on	several original documents into one job. Also use to scan an original document that has more pages than the document feeder can accommodate a one time. The printe temporarily saves al the scanned images After you have scanned all the pages for the job, touch Finish to finish the job.
		Cropping Options			Do not crop*	Use this menu item to automatically crop
					Crop to content	the scan for digital sending. Use the
					Crop to paper	Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Erase Edges			Use inches	Use this menu item to remove
					Back side erase	blemishes, such as dark borders or
					Front side erase	staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
Scan/Digital Send (continued)	Email settings (continued)	Multi-feed Detection			Disabled	This setting stops the scanning process
(continued)	(כטוזנוושפע)	Delection			Enabled*	if it detects multiple- page feeds through the document feeder.
		Blank Page			Disabled*	Use to prevent blank
		Suppression			Enabled	pages in the original document from being included in the output document.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Create Multiple			Disabled*	Enable this item to
		Files			Enabled	scan pages into separate files based on a specified page limit.
						A page is one side of an original document.
						JPEG and TIFF have a limit of one page per file.
	Digital Sending Software Setup	Allow Use of a DSS Server			Disabled	Configure how the printer interacts with
Fax	Internal Fax	Allow Transfer to New DSS server			Enabled*	the HP Digital Sending Software (DSS) server. HP DSS handles digital sending tasks, such as faxing, emailing, and sending scanned documents to a network folder or USB storage device. Use the Allow Use of a DSS Server and Allow Transfer to New DSS server options to configure the printer to use HP DSS.
	Modem Setup					
	Fax Send Settings	Image Preview				
Fax (continued)	Fax send settings (continued)	Fax Dialing Settings	Fax Dial Volume		Off	These settings control how the fax
	(continued)	Settings			Low*	modem dials the
					High	outgoing fax number when faxes are sent.
			Dialing Mode		Tone*	
					Pulse	
			Redial Interval		1-5 Minutes	
					Default = 5 minutes	
			Fax Send Speed		Fast*	
					Medium	
					Slow	
			Dialing Prefix			
			Detect Dial Tone			

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Redial on Error		Range: 0-9	
					Default = 2	
			Redial on No		Range: 0-2	
			Answer		Default = 0	
			Redial on Busy		Range: 0-9	
					Default = 3	
		General Fax Send	Fax Number		Enabled	If this feature is
		Settings	Confirmation		Disabled*	enabled, you must enter the fax number twice.
			PC Fax Send		Enabled*	Enables users who have the correct
					Disabled	driver installed to send faxes through the printer from their computers.
		JBIG Compression		Enabled*	The JBIG	
	(continued) setti	(continued)			Disabled	compression reduces fax- transmission time, which can result in lower phone charges. However, using JBIG compression sometimes causes compatibility problems with older fax machines. If this occurs, turn off the JBIG compression.
			Error Correction Mode		Enabled*	When error- correction mode is
			Моде		Disabled	enabled and an error occurs during fax transmission, the printer sends or receives the error portion again.
			Fax Header		Prepend*	Use to prepend or
					Overlay	overlay the fax header page.
			Fax Number Speed	1	Enabled	Use this item to
			Dial Matching		Disabled*	match the fax number that you type to numbers that are saved as a speed dial.

Table 3-10	Settings	menu	(continued)
------------	----------	------	-------------

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Fax (continued)	Fax send settings (continued)	Billing Code Settings	Enable Billing Codes		Off* On	When billing codes are enabled, a prompt displays tha asks the user to enter the billing code for an outgoing fax. This prompt does not appear if the Allow users to edit billing codes check box is not checked.
						You can also use the billing codes report in the Reports menu to view the list of the billing codes that have been used for faxes that have beer sent from the printe The list is grouped by billing code and also shows fax details. This feature can be used for billing or usage tracking.
			Default Billing Code			Specify a default billing code for faxing. If you specify a default billing code this code displays in the Billing Code field when the user sends an outgoing fax. If this field is blank, no default billing code is provided for the use
			Minimum Length		Range: 1-16	Specify the required length of the billing
					Default = 1	code. Billing codes can be between 1 and 16 characters long.
			Allow users to edit		Off	
			billing codes		On*	
	Fax Receive Settings	Fax Receive Setup	Ringer Volume		Off	Use to configure settings for receiving
					Low*	faxes.
					High	
ax (continued)	Fax Receive (continued)	Fax receive setup (continued)	Rings To Answer		Range: 1-6	
					Default = 1	

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Fax Receive Speed		Fast*	
					Medium	
					Slow	
			Ring Interval		Range: 220-600 ms	
					Default = 600 ms	
			Ring Frequency		Range: 1-200	
					Default = 68hz	
		Fax Printing			Always store faxes	If you have concerns
		Schedule			Always print faxes*	about the security of private faxes, use this feature to store
					Use Fax Printing Schedule	faxes rather than having them automatically print. Open the Fax Printing Schedule sub-menu, and then you can choose to always store faxes, always print them, or you can set up a schedule for each day of the week.
			Schedule	+ (Add)	Print incoming faxes	If you are using a fax printing schedule,
			Touch this to set	Edit	Store incoming faxes	use this menu to
			up a fax printing schedule if you selected the Use Fax Printing	Delete (trash can)	Time Event Days	configure when to print faxes.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Fax (continued)       Fax receive settings (continued)	settings	Blocked Fax Numbers	Fax Number to Block			The blocked fax list can contain up to 30 numbers. When the printer receives a cal from one of the blocked fax numbers, it deletes the incoming fax. It also logs the blocked fax in the activity log along with job- accounting information.
						Add blocked numbers: Enter a fax number into the Fax Number to Block field, and then touch the arrow button to add a new number to the blocked fax list.
						To remove blocked numbers: Select a number and touch the Delete button to delete it from the blocked fax list.
						To clear all blocked numbers: Touch the Delete All button to clear all of the numbers from the blocked fax list.
						You also can use the Blocked Fax List report in the Information menu to view the list of the fax numbers that have been blocked on this printer.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Fax (continued)	Fax receive settings	Default Job Options	Notification		Do not notify*	Configure to receive notification about
	(continued)	options			Notify when job completes	the status of a sent document.
					Notify only if job fails	Do not notify: Turns off this feature.
						Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only.
						Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
					Print	E-mail: Select to
			E-mail*	E-mail*	receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then enter the email address for the notification.	
				Include Thumbnail		NOTE: When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
			Notification E- mail address		Touch this text field, provide the email address to which you want notifications sent, and then touch the OK button.	
			Stamp Received		Enabled	Use this option to
			Faxes		Disabled*	add the date, time, sender's phone number, and page number to each page of the faxes that this printer receives.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description	
-ax (continued)	Fax receive settings	Default job options	Fit to Page		Enabled*	Use to shrink faxes	
	(continued)	(continued)			Disabled	that are larger than Letter-size or A4- size so that they can fit onto a Letter-size or A4-size page. If this feature set to Disabled, faxes larger than Letter o A4 will flow across multiple pages.	
			Paper Tray		Automatic*		
					Select from a list of the trays.		
			Output Bin		Automatically select		
					Standard bin		
					Upper bin		
					Middle bin		
			Out Sides		1-sided*	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides.	
					2-sided		
	Fax Forwarding	Enable Fax			Disabled*	Use to forward received faxes to	
		Forwarding			Enabled	another fax machin	
			Type of Fax Job to		All faxes	Use to select the	
			Forward		Sent faxes	type of fax jobs that you want forwarded	
					Received faxes		
			Fax Forwarding Number			Provide the forwarding phone number, and then touch the OK buttor	
	Clear Fax Activity Log					Clears all events from the fax activity log.	
Manage Supplies	Low Warning			Black Cartridge	1-100%	Set the estimated	
	Thresholds			Cyan Cartridge	Default = 5%	percentage at which the printer notifies you when a toner	
				Magenta Cartridge		cartridge is very low.	
				Yellow Cartridge			

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Low Warning				On	Displays a message
	Threshold Message				Off	on the control panel when a cartridge is very low.
	Very Low Behavior	Black Cartridge			Stop	
		Color Cartridges			Continue	
		Transfer Kit			Prompt to continue	
		Fuser Kit				
		Document Feeder Kit				
		Staples			Stop	
					Prompt to continue	
	Restrict Color Use				Enable	Use this feature to
					Disable Color	enable, restrict, or disable color printing
					Color if allowed*	or copying.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Manage supplies	Color/Black Mix				Auto	Instructs the printer
(continued)					Mostly Color Pages	when to switch between color and
					Mostly Black Pages	monochrome printing modes for the best overall performance.
						Auto: Uses the mode that is appropriate for the first page of the job. If necessary the printer switches modes during the middle of a job and then stays in that mode until the job is finished.
						Mostly Color Pages: The printer uses color mode for all jobs, even if the job contains no color pages.
						Mostly Black Pages The printer uses monochrome mode until it detects a color page. The printer switches back to monochrome mode when it detects a sequence of severa monochrome pages
	Store Usage Data				On supplies	The Store Usage Data provides a way
					Not on supplies	to suppress the toner cartridges from storing most o the information gathered exclusively for the purpose of understanding the usage of the printer. Select the On supplies setting to store the data on th toner cartridge memory chip. Select the Not on supplies setting to suppress the information fror being stored on the memory chip.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Manage supplies	Cartridge				Off*	Select to
(continued)	Protection				Protect Cartridges	permanently protec cartridges so that they can be used only in this product or fleet of products.
	Cartridge Policy				Off*	Set Authorized HP to
					Authorized HP	allow only genuine HP cartridges to be used in this product.
Manage Stapler/	Operation Mode				Mailbox	
Stacker					Stacker	
					Function Separator	
	Job Offset				On	
					Off	
Networking	Ethernet Ir	Information	Print Security		Yes	Yes: Prints a page
			Report		No*	that contains the current security settings on the HP Jetdirect print server.
						No: A security settings page is not printed.
		TCP/IP	Host Name		Use the arrow buttons to edit the host name.	An alphanumeric string, up to 32
					NPIXXXXX*	characters, used to identify the printer. This name is listed on the HP Jetdirect configuration page. The default host name is NPIxxxxx, where xxxxx is the last six digits of the LAN hardware (MAC address.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Networking	Ethernet	TCP/IP (continued)	IPV4 Settings	Config Method	Bootp	Specifies the method
(continued)	(continued)	DHCP*	that TCP/IPv4 parameters will be			
					Auto IP	configured on the HP Jetdirect print
					Manual	server.
						Bootp (Bootstrap Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a BootP server.
					DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a DHCPv4 server. If selected and a DHCP lease exists, the DHCP Release menu and the DHCP Renew menu are available to set DHCP lease options.	
						Auto IP: Use for automatic link-local IPv4 addressing. An address in the form 169.254.x.x is assigned automatically.
						If you set this option to the Manual setting, use the Manual Settings menu to configure TCP/IPv4 parameters.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Ethernet (continued)	TCP/IP (continued)	IPV Settings (continued)	Default IP	Auto IP* Legacy	Specify the IP address to default to when the print server is unable to obtain an IP address from the network during a forced TCP/IP reconfiguration (for example, when manually configured to use BootP or DHCP).
						NOTE: This feature assigns a static IP address that might interfere with a managed network. Auto IP: A link-local IP address
						169.254.x.x is set. Legacy: The address 192.0.0.192 is set, consistent with older HP Jetdirect printers.
				Primary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = xxx.xxx.xx	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS)
				Secondary DNS	Range: 0-255	Server. Specify the IP
				Secondary Dive	Default = <b>0.0.0.0</b>	address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.
			IPV6 Settings	Enable	Off	Use this item to
					On*	enable or disable IPv6 operation on the print server.
						Off: IPv6 is disabled.
						On: IPv6 is enabled.
				Address	Manual Settings	Use this item to
					Enable	enable and manually configure a TCP/IPv6
					Address	address.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Networking	Ethernet	TCP/IP (continued)	IPV6 settings	DHCPV6 Policy	Router Specified	Router Specified:
(continued)	(continued)		(continued)		Router Unavailable*	The stateful auto- configuration
					Always	method to be used by the print server is determined by a router. The router specifies whether the print server obtains its address, its configuration information, or both from a DHCPv6 server. <b>Router Unavailable:</b> If a router is not available, the print server should attempt to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server. <b>Always:</b> Whether a router is available, the print server
						always attempts to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server.
				Primary DNS	Range: 0-255	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a
					Default = xxx.xxx.xx	Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
				Secondary DNS	Range: 0-255	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a
					Default = <b>0.0.0.0</b>	Secondary DNS Server.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Networking Ethernet (continued) (continued)		TCP/IP (continued)	Proxy Server		Select from a provided list.	Specifies the proxy server to be used by embedded applications in the printer. A proxy server is typically used by network clients for Internet access. It caches Web pages, and provides a degree of Internet security for those clients. To specify a proxy server, enter its IPv4 address or fully- qualified domain name. The name car be up to 255 octets.
						For some networks, you might need to contact your Internet Service Provider (ISP) for the proxy server address.
	Proxy Port Default = <b>000</b>	Default = <b>00080</b>	Enter the port number used by the proxy server for client support. The port number identifies the port reserved for proxy activity on your network, and can be a value from 0 to 65535.			
			Idle Timeout		Default = <b>0270</b>	The time period, in seconds, after which an idle TCP print data connection is closed (default is 270 seconds, 0 disables the timeout).

# Copy menu (MFP only)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Copy menu.

In the following table, asterisks (\*) indicate the factory default setting.

# Table 3-11 Copy menu (MFP only)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Sides	Original Sides		1-sided*	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed
			2-sided	on one or both sides.
	Output Sides		1-sided	Use to indicate whether the copies should be printed on
			2-sided	one or both sides.
Color/Black			Automatically detect*	Select how the copy should be printed.
			Color	
			Black/Gray	Automatically detect: Prints color documents in color, and black and white documents in black and white. For mixed documents, the printer will determine whether to print in color or black and white.
				Color: Prints documents in color.
				Black: Prints documents in black and white or grayscale.
Quick Sets and Defaults			Load	
			Save	
Options	Sides	Original Sides	1-sided	
			2-sided	
		Output Sides	1-sided	
			2-sided	
	Color/Black		Automatically detect*	Select how the copy should
			Color	be printed.
			Black/Gray	Automatically detect: Prints color documents in color, and black and white documents in black and white. For mixed documents, the printer will determine whether to print in color or black and white.
				Color: Prints documents in color.
				Black: Prints documents in black and white or grayscale.

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description	
Options (continued)	Staple		None	Sets the position of the	
			Top left angled	staple on the page.	
			Top right angled		
	Scan mode		Standard Document	Book Mode allows the user	
			Book Mode	to scan pages from a book.	
			2–sided ID	2-sided ID allows the user to scan both sides of an identification card onto one sheet.	
	Reduce/Enlarge		Automatic*	Use to scale the size of the	
			Manual	document up or down. Select one of the predefined percentages, or select the Scaling field and type a percentage between 25 and 400. The Auto option automatically scales the image to fit the paper size in the tray.	
				<b>NOTE:</b> To reduce the image, select a scaling percentage that is less than 100. To enlarge the image, select a scaling percentage that is greater than 100.	
	Original Size		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Describes the page size of the original document.	
	Paper Selection		Paper Size	For the best color and image	
			Paper Type	quality, select the appropriate paper type from	
			Paper Tray	the control panel menu or from the print driver.	
	Booklet	Booklet Format	(Checkbox)	Use to copy two or more pages onto one sheet of paper so you can fold the sheets in the center to form a booklet. The printer arranges the pages in the correct order. For example, i the original document has eight pages, the printer prints pages 1 and 8 on the same sheet.	

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Options (continued)	Content Orientation		Auto Detect	For some features to work
			Portrait*	correctly, you must specify the way the content of the
			Landscape	original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a
				portrait or landscape orientation.
	Pages per Sheet		One (1)	Copies multiple pages onto one sheet of paper.
			Two (2)	
			Four (4)	<b>NOTE:</b> Before using this screen, use the Content Orientation screen to describe the original document orientation.
	Image Adjustment	Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
		Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy.
				Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
		Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color or the page.
		Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Options (continued)	Optimize Text/Picture	Manually Adjust*	Optimize For:	Optimizes the output for a
			Text	particular type of content. You can optimize the outpu
			Mixed	for text, printed pictures, or a mixture.
			Printed picture	Manually Adjust: Use to
			Photograph	manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures.
				Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy where text and/or pictures are on the original.
				Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books.
				Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
	Erase Edges	Front Side	Use inches	Use this menu item to
			Apply same width to all edges	remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the
			Top edge	specified edges of the scanned image. In each of
			Bottom edge	the text boxes enter the measurements, in
			Left edge	millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge,
			Right edge	bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Back Side	Use inches	
			Mirror front side	
			Top edge	
			Bottom edge	
			Left edge	
			Right edge	

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Options (continued)	Collate	Collate		If you are making more than one copy, select the Collate on (Sets in page order) option to assemble the pages in the correct order in each set of copies. Select the Collate off (Pages grouped) option to group the same pages together. For example, if you are making five copies of an original document that has two pages, all five first pages would be grouped together and all five second pages would be grouped together.
	Multi-feed Detection		Enabled* Disabled	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
	Output Bin		Automatically select	
			Standard bin	
			Upper bin	
			Middle bin	

# Scan menu (MFP only)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Scan menu.

In the following table, asterisks (\*) indicate the factory default setting.

#### Table 3-12 Scan menu (MFP)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to Email					
Scan to Network	Folder Paths				
Folder	File Name				
	Quick Sets and Defaults				
	Options	File Type and Resolution			
		Original sides		1-sided	Use to describe the
				2-sided	layout for each side of the original document First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
		Color/Black		Automatically detect*	Use to enable or disable color scanning
				Color	Automatically detect:
				Black/Gray	Automatically scans documents in color if
				Black	at least one page has color.
					Color: Scans documents in color.
					Black/Gray: Scans documents in grayscale.
					Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to network folder	Options (continued)	Content Orientation	Orientation	Automatically Detect	For some features to
(continued)				Portrait*	work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.
				Landscape	
		Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors
			Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between th lightest and darkest color on the page.
			Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
			Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
			Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contras and Background Cleanup settings to th most appropriate for the scanned document.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to network folder (continued)	Options (continued)	Image adjustment (continued)	Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.
		Optimize Text/Picture	2		
		Erase Edges		Use inches	Use this menu item to remove blemishes,
				Back side erase	such as dark borders or staple marks, by
				Front side erase	cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Cropping Options		Do not crop	Use this menu item to
				Crop to content	automatically crop the scan for digital
				Crop to paper	sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Automatically Straighten			
		Blank Page		Disabled	Use to prevent blank
		Suppression		Enabled	pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
		Multi-feed Detection		Disabled	This setting stops the
				Enabled*	scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
		Create Multiple Files		Disabled	Enable this item to
				Enabled	scan pages into separate files based or a specified page limit.
					A page is one side of an original document.
					JPEG and TIFF have a limit of one page per file.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to network folder (continued)	Options (continued)	Notification		Do not notify	Configure to receive notification about the
				Notify when job completes	status of a sent document.
				Notify only if job fails	Do not notify: Turns off this feature.
				Print	
				E-mail	Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only.
					Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
					Print: Select to print the notification at this printer.
					E-mail: Select to receive the notification to an email account.
			Include Thumbnail		Select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the jot in your notification.
			Notification Email		E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then type the email address for the notification.
Scan to USB Drive	Destination				
	Job Name				
	Options	File Type and Resolution			

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
can to USB drive	Options (continued)	Original sides		1-sided	Use to describe the
(continued)				2-sided	layout for each side of the original document First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
		Color/Black		Automatically detect*	Use to enable or disable color scanning
				Color Black/Gray	Automatically detect: Automatically scans
				Black	documents in color if at least one page has color.
					Color: Scans documents in color.
					Black/Gray: Scans documents in grayscale.
					Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
		Content Orientation	I	Automatically detect	For some features to work correctly, you
				Portrait* Landscape	must specify the way the content of the
				Lunuscope	original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, sele whether the original document has a portrait or landscape

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to USB drive (continued)	Options (continued)	Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
			Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
			Background Cleanu	p	Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
			Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
			Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
			Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.

Table 3-12	Scan menu (MFP) (continued)
------------	-----------------------------

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to USB drive (continued)	Options (continued)	Optimize Text/Picture		Manually Adjust*	Use to optimize the output for a particular
				Text	type of content. You can optimize the
				Printed picture	output for text, printed
				Photograph	pictures, or a mixture.
					Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures.
					Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy when text and/or pictures are on the original.
					Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books.
					Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
		Erase Edges		Use inches	Use this menu item to remove blemishes,
				Back side erase	such as dark borders
				Front side erase	or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Cropping Options		Do not crop	Use this menu item to automatically crop the
				Crop to content	scan for digital
				Crop to paper	sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Automatically Straighten			
		Blank Page Suppression		Disabled	Use to prevent blank pages in the original
		Suppression		Enabled	document from being included in the output document.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to USB drive	Options (continued)	Multi-feed Detection		Disabled	This setting stops the
(continued)				Enabled*	scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
		Create Multiple Files		Disabled	Enable this item to
				Enabled	scan pages into separate files based or a specified page limit.
					A page is one side of an original document.
					JPEG and TIFF have a limit of one page per file.
		Notification		Do not notify	Configure to receive notification about the
				Notify when job completes	status of a sent document.
				Notify only if job fails	Do not notify: Turns of this feature.
				Print	Notify when job
				E-mail	completes: Select to receive notification for this job only.
					Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
					Print: Select to print the notification at this printer.
					E-mail: Select to receive the notificatior to an email account.
			Include Thumbnail		Select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the jo in your notification.
			Notification Email		E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then type the email address for the notification.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to Job Storage				Folder	
				Job Name	
Scan to SharePoint					

# Fax menu (fax models only)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Fax menu.

In the following table, asterisks (\*) indicate the factory default setting.

# Table 3-13 Fax menu (fax models only)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Dialing Prefix				
Fax Recipients				
Quick Sets and Defaults				
Options	Original Sides		1-sided*	Use to describe the layout
			2-sided	for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
	Resolution		Standard (100 x 200dpi)*	Select the resolution for
			Fine (200 x 200dpi)	outgoing faxes. If you increase the resolution,
			Superfine (300 x 300dpi)	faxes might be clearer but they could transmit more slowly. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might be automatically changed to a valid value.
	Original Size		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
	Content Orientation	Orientation	Portrait*	For some features to work
			Landscape	correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page.
				Portrait: This setting means the short edge of the page is along the top.
				Landscape: This setting means the long edge of the page is along the top.

Table 3-13	Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)
------------	--

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Options (continued)	Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy.
				Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
		Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
		Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
		Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
		Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
		Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description	
Options (continued)	Optimize Text/Picture	Manually Adjust*	Optimize For:	Optimizes the output for a	
			Text	particular type of content. You can optimize the output	
			Printed picture	for text, printed pictures, or a mixture.	
			Photograph	Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures.	
				Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy where text and/or pictures are on the original.	
			Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books.		
				Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.	
	Blank Page Suppression		Disabled*	Prevents blank pages in the	
			Enabled	original document from being included in the outpu document.	
	Multi-feed Detection		Disabled	Use this feature to prevent	
			Enabled*	multiple pages being fed through the document feeder during document scans.	
	Notification		Do not notify*	Use to receive notification about the status of a sent	
			Notify when job completes	document.	
			Notify only if job fails	Do not notify: Turns off this feature.	
				Notify when job completes: Select to receive notificatior for this job only.	
				Notify only if job fails: Selec to receive notification only i the job is not sent successfully.	
			Print	Print: Select to print the	
			E-mail	notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then enter the email address for the notification.	

# Table 3-13 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Options (continued)	Notification (continued)	Include Thumbnail		When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
		Notification E-mail add	ess	Provide the email address that will receive notifications.
		2-Sided Format	Book-style*	Use to configure the default style for 2-sided print jobs.
			Flip-style	If the Book-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed the right way up. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the left edge. If the Flip-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed upside-down. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the top edge.

# Print menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Print menu.

In the following table, asterisks (\*) indicate the factory default setting.

# Table 3-14 Print Options menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Print from Job Storage	Stored Job to Print	Untitled	Print a job stored on the printer.
		Stored Faxes	
Print from USB Drive	Stored Job to Print	Choose file to print on USB drive.	Print a job stored on a USB drive.
Fax Polling	Fax Polling Number		

# Supplies menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Supplies menu.

In the following table, asterisks (\*) indicate the factory default setting.

### Table 3-15 Supplies menu

First level	Values	Description
Supplies Summary		
Black Cartridge	Status	
Cyan Cartridge	Order HP Part	
Magenta Cartridge	Pages Printed	
Yellow Cartridge	Approximate Pages Remaining	
Toner Collection Unit	Status	
Transfer Kit	Order HP Part	
Fuser Kit		
Document Feeder Kit		
Stapler 1		

# Trays menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Trays menu.

In the following table, asterisks (\*) indicate the factory default setting.

# Table 3-16 Trays menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Tray 1	Size	Select paper size from a list of supported sizes.	Choose the paper size for the tray
Tray 2-x		supported sizes.	
	Туре	Select paper type from a list of supported types.	Choose the paper type for the tray.

# Troubleshooting menu

**To display**: At the product control panel, select the Support Tools menu, and then select the Troubleshooting menu.

In the following table, asterisks (\*) indicate the factory default setting.

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages	<ul> <li>Settings Menu Map</li> </ul>	J			Select the configuration/Status reports to review,
	Current     Settings Page	2			and then touch the Print or View button
	<ul> <li>Configuration</li> <li>Page</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>How to</li> <li>Connect Page</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>Supplies</li> <li>Status Page</li> </ul>				
	• sage Page				
	• File Directory Page				
	• Web Services Status Page				
	• Color Usage Job Log				
Reports					
Other Pages	• Demonstratio Page	n			
	RGB Samples				
	CMYK Sample	S			
	PCL Font List				
	• PS Font List				
Event Log				Print	Prints the 50 most recent events in the Event Log. For each event, the printed log shows the error number, page count error code, and description or personality.
Paper Path Page				View	Shows how many
				Print	pages were printe from each tray.

Table 3-17 Troubleshooting

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Fax (Fax is optional)	Fax T.30 Trace	Print T.30 Report		Print	Use to print or configure the fax T. 30 trace report. T.30 is the standard that specifies handshaking, protocols, and error correction between fax machines.
		When to Print Report		Never automatically print* Print after every fax	Configure the T.30 report to print after certain events. You can choose to print the report after
				Print only after fax send jobs	every fax job, every fax job sent, every fax job received,
				Print after any fax error	every send error, or every receive error.
				Print only after fax send errors	
				Print only after fax receive errors	
	Fax V.34			Normal* Off	Use to disable V.34 modulations if several fax failures have occurred or if phone line conditions require i
	Fax Speaker Mode			Normal*	Used by a technicia to evaluate and
				Diagnostic	diagnose fax issues by listening to the sounds of fax modulations
	Fax Log Entries			On	The standard fax lo
				Off*	includes basic information such as the time and whether the fax wa successful. The detailed fax log shows the intermediate result: of the redial proces not shown in the standard fax log.
Print Quality Pages	Print Fuser Test Page			Print	Use to print pages that help you resolve problems with print quality.
Diagnostic Tests					
	Continuous Scan			2-sided	

Table 3-17 Troubleshooting (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Diagnostic Tests (continued)	Run Fax Test			Start	Use this menu to perform a test on specific components within the product to determine whether the components are functioning correctly.
Retrieve Diagnostic Data				Insert a US drive into the USB port. The exported data might contain personally identifiable information.	Create files that contain information about the product that can help identify the cause of problems.
Generate Debug Data				Start	

Table 3-17 Troubleshooting (continued)

#### Maintenance menu

#### Backup/Restore menu

**To display**: At the product control panel, select Support Tools and then Maintenance, and then select the Backup/ Restore menu.

In the following table, asterisks (\*) indicate the factory default setting.

#### Table 3-18 Backup/Restore menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Backup Data	Enable Scheduled Backups	Backup Time	Enter a time	
		Days Between Backups	Enter the number of days	
	Backup Now			
	Export Last Backup			
Restore Data			Insert a USB drive that contains the backup file.	

#### Calibration/Cleaning menu

To display: At the product control panel, select the Maintenance menu, and then select the Calibrate/Cleaning menu.

In the following table, asterisks (\*) indicate the factory default setting.

#### Table 3-19 Calibrate/Cleaning menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Calibration/Cleaning Page		Print	Use to process the cleaning page that was created by using the Create Cleaning Page menu. The process takes up to 1.5 minutes.
Color Calibrations (color models)		Start	The product automatically calibrates itself at various times. However, you can calibrate the product immediately if you see problems with print quality. Use this feature to perform a partial calibration. Use this calibration if color density or tone seems incorrect.
			Before calibrating the product, make sure that the <b>Ready</b> indicator displays on the control-panel display. If a job is in progress, the calibration occurs when that job is complete.

### Table 3-19 Calibrate/Cleaning menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Calibration		Start	The product automatically calibrates itself at various times. However, you can calibrate the product immediately if you see problems with print quality. Use this feature to perform a full calibration, which can take up to three minutes. Use this calibration if the color layers seem to be shifted on the page.
			Before calibrating the product, make sure that the <b>Ready</b> indicator displays on the control-panel display. If a job is in progress, the calibration occurs when that job is complete.
Delay Calibration at Wake	/Power On	No Delay	Controls the timing of power-on
		Delay 15 minutes	calibration when the product wakes up or is turned on.
			Wake: Select if you are not using th feature and want to print jobs immediately when the product wakes up or is turned on, before calibration begins.
			No: The product will calibrate immediately when it wakes up or is turned on. The product will not prin any jobs until it finishes calibrating.
			Yes: Enables the product that is asleep to accept print jobs before it calibrates. It might start calibrating before it has printed all the jobs it has received. This option allows quicker printing when coming out o sleep mode or when you turn the product on, but print quality might be reduced.
			<b>NOTE:</b> For the best results, allow the product to calibrate before printing. Print jobs performed before calibration might not be of the highest quality.

### USB Firmware Upgrade menu

To display: At the product control panel, select the Maintenance menu, and then select the USB Firmware Upgrade menu.

Insert a USB storage device with a firmware upgrade bundle into the USB port, and follow the on-screen instructions.

# Clear paper jams

## Paper jam locations

1	Tray 1
2	Tray 2
3	Tray 3

## 13.A1 tray 1 paper jam

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the Tray 1. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.A1.XX Jam in tray 1
- 1. Gently remove the jammed paper.



2. Open and then close the front door to resume printing.

## 13.A2, 13.A3 tray 2, tray 3 paper jam

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to Tray 2 or Tray 3. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.A2.XX Jam in tray 2
- 13.A3.XX Jam in tray 3

**CAUTION:** The fuser can be hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before handling it.

**NOTE:** The procedure to clear a paper jam in Tray 3 is the same as for Tray 2. Only Tray 2 is shown here.

1. Open the right door.

'SSS



2. Gently remove any jammed paper.



**3.** Close the right door.



**4.** Open the tray.



5. Gently remove any jammed paper.



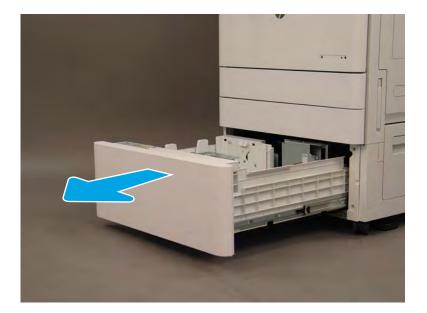
6. Close the tray. Printing automatically resumes.



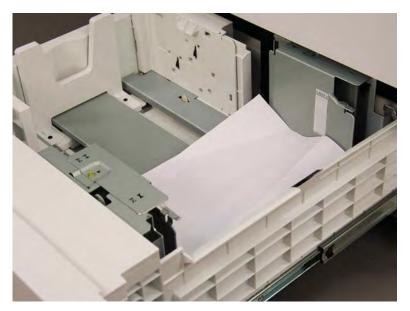
## Clear paper jams in the Bottom HCI

## Clear paper jams in the Bottom HCI

1. Open the HCI.



2. Remove any jammed paper.



**3.** Close the HCI.

# Service mode (tech mode)

- Entering service mode
- <u>Service mode menu tree</u>
- Information tab
- <u>Maintenance Counts tab</u>
- <u>Diagnostics tab</u>
- <u>Service Functions tab</u>

## Entering service mode

- 1. From the control panel, select Support Tools, and then select Service.
- 2. Enter the Service PIN ID.
  - 04077817
- **3.** Select Service Tools.

## Service mode menu tree

The tables below provide descriptions of the menus within the printer service mode.

Information       Maintenance Counts       Diagnostics       Service Function         General       Supply Status       Software Version         Print Reports       Service Function	Service T				
General Supply Status Software Version		Informat	ion		
Supply Status Software Version	Informa	ation	Maintenance Counts	Diagnostics	Service Function
Software Version	General				
	Supply Sta	itus			
Print Reports	Software \	/ersion			
	Print Repo	rts			

#### Table 3-20 Service mode Information tab

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Information	General	Engine Board Serial Number	
	Supply Status	Customer Replacement Unit	Toner CMYK
		Field Replacement Unit	Imaging Unit (Drum) CMYK
			Development Unit

Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
		Toner Collection Unit
		Image Transfer Belt (ITB)
		Fuser
		Tray X Rollers
		ADF Pickup Roller
		ADF Separation Roller
Software Version	System FW Version	
	Main FW Version	
	Engine FW Version	
	Boot ROM Version	
	File System Version	
	ADF FW Version	
	Scanner Version	
	Finisher Version	
	Scanner Version	
	Scan Control Version	
	Tray 2–5 Version	
	Fuser Version	
	Transfer Version	
	Toner Version	
	Print CMS Version	
	Copy CMS Version	
	Scan CMS Version	
Print Reports	Print Supplies Information Report	
	Usage Counter	
	Error Information	
	Fax Protocol Dump (Line 1)	
	Fax Protocol Dump (Line 2)	
	Fax Diagnostics (Line 1)	
	Fax Diagnostics (Line 2)	
	Auto Color Registration	
		Main FW Version Engine FW Version Boot ROM Version File System Version ADF FW Version Scanner Version Scanner Version Scanner Version Scan Control Version Tray 2–5 Version Fuser Version Fuser Version Fuser Version Forer Versio

Table 3-20 Service mode Information tab (continued)

Table 3-20	Service mode Information tab (continu	ued)
------------	---------------------------------------	------

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
		Auto Toning History	
		Full Auto Color Registration	
		ID Calibration History	
		Maintenance	
		Toner Event	
	Export Reports	RTF Format	
		XML Format	
		PDF Format	



Table 3-21 Service mode Maintenance Counts tab

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Maintenance Counts	Part Replacement Count	Toner Cartridge CMYK	
		Imaging Unit (Drum) CMYK	
		Development Unit (Developer) CMYK	
		Image Transfer Belt (ITB)	
		ITB Cleaner	
		Transfer Roller/T2 Roller	
		Fuser	
		Tray X Rollers	
		Filter	

## Table 3-21 Service mode Maintenance Counts tab (continued)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	
		ADF Pickup Roller		
		ADF Separation Rolle	ADF Separation Roller	
		ADF Separation Rolle	r	

🔂 🕅 Diagno	ostics		
Information	Maintenance Counts	Diagnostics	Service Functions
Engine Diagnosti	25		
Scanner Diagnos	tics		
Adjustment			
ACS			
Image Manageme	ent		
Print Test Pattern	s		
MSOK Test			



Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Diagnostics	Information	General Engine Board Serial Number	
	Engine Diagnostics	Engine NVM Initialization	
		Engine NVM Read/Write	
		Engine Test Routines	
	Fax Diagnostics	Fax NVM Read/Write	
		Fax Test Routines	
	Scanner Diagnostics	Shading Test	Shade and Print Report
			Print Last Shade Report
			Shade and Print Report (ADF)
			Print Last Shade Report (ADF)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
		Scanner/ADF NVM Read/ Write	ADF Pickup Roller Count
		White	ADF Separation Roller Count
			Simplex Registration Value (Registration 1)
			Duplex Registration Value (Registration 2)
			Width Guide Max Value
			Width Guide Min Value
			USM 0 Ref Value
			USM 1 Ref Value

Table 3-22 Service mode Diagnostics tab (continued)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
		Scanner/ADF Test Routines	Scanner Original Size Detecting Sensor 1
			Scanner Original Size Detecting Sensor 2
			Scanner Cover Open/Close Sensor 1
			Scanner Cover Open/Close Sensor 2
			Scanner Platen Motor Forward
			Scanner Platen Motor Backward
			Scanner Platen Home Position Sensor
			Document Length 1 Sensor
			Document Length 2 Sensor
			Document Cover Open Sensor
			Document Detect Sensor
			Document Feed Sensor
			Document Simplex Registration Sensor
			Document Duplex Registration Sensor
			Document Scan Read Sensor 1
			Document Scan Read Sensor 2
			Document Exit Sensor
			Document Motor Forward
			Document Motor Backward
			Document Width 1 MOS Sensor
			Document Width 2 MOS Sensor
			Document Width 3 MOS Sensor
			Document Pickup Motor Forward
			Document Pickup Motor Backward
			Document Pickup Roller Detect Sensor
			Service mode (tech mode) 7 Document Stacker Lift Lower Sensor

#### Table 3-22 Service mode Diagnostics tab (continued)

Document Stacker Lift

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
	Adjustment	Print Adjustment	Image Position
			Print Margin Test
		Copy Adjustment	Image Position
		Scan Area Adjustment	Automatic Adjustment
			Manual Adjustment
		ADF Adjustment	Automatic Adjustment
			Manual Adjustment
	ACS	ACS Page Adjustment	[1–5]: 5*
	Image Management	ACR Reference Adjustment	Full
		Cancel ACR Reference Adjustment	
		Auto Color Registration	
		Full Auto Color Registration	
		Customer Color	
		Auto Tone Adjustment Activation	
		Auto Tone Adjustment	
		Setting Standard Tone	
		Cancel Setting Standard Tone	
		Auto Color Balance	
		Cancel Auto Color Balance	
		Manual Tone Adjustment	

## Table 3-22 Service mode Diagnostics tab (continued)

_evel 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
	Print Test Patterns	EP Calibration Pattern 1 Contone	
		EP Calibration Pattern 2 Halftone	
		Tone Curve Int Calibration YM Pattern	
		Tone Curve Int Calibration CK Pattern	
		Tone Curve Ext Measurement Page	
		Black Mechanical Banding Page	
		Cyan Mechanical Banding Page	
		Magenta Mechanical Banding Page	
		Color Registration Check for Motion	
	MSOK Test	EEPROM Test	

Table 3-22 Service mode Diagnostics tab (continued)

🔂 🕅 Service	Functions			
Information	Maintenance Counts	Diagnostics	Service Functions	
Main Memory Clea	ar			
Debug Log				
TR Control Mode				
Vertical Streak Correction				
Envelope Rotate				
Drain				
Low-temperature	dling Mode			

Table 3-23 Service mode Service Functions tab

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Service Functions	Main Memory Clear		
	Debug Log	Info	
		Job Status	

## Table 3-23 Service mode Service Functions tab (continued)

1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
	TR Control Mode	T2 Control Mode	Paper Group/Paper Side/Paper Direction/T2 PWM
	Vertical Streak Correction		
	Drain	On	
		Off	
	Low Temperature Idling Mode	2	
	Capture Log		
	IP Setting	IP address (manual entry)	
		Subnet Mask (manual entry)	
		Default Gateway (manual en	ntry)
	Footer		
	FW Upgrade		
	File Dump Mode	Enable Dump	Generate RGBa
			Generate Raw File
			Generate CMYK
			No Print Mode
			Debugging Mode
			Max Output file No 10
			Enable
		Retrieve Dump Image	Safely Remove USB
			Retrieve Dump Image
		Delete Dump Image	Delete Dump Image
		Disable Dump	Disable
	Copy Original Thickness	Thin (42-60 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	
		Normal*	
		Thick (163-220 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	
	Scan Original Thickness	Thin (42-60 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	
		Normal*	
		Thick (163-220 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	
	Altitude Adjustment	Normal (~1,000 m/3,280 ft)	*
		High 1 (~2,000 m/6562 ft)	
		High 2 (~3000 m/9842 ft)	
		High 3 (~4000 m/13123 ft)	
		High 4 (~5000 m/16404 ft)	

#### Table 3-23 Service mode Service Functions tab (continued)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
	Humidity	Normal*	
		High 1	
		High 2	
		High 3	
	Vapor Mode		
	Booklet Sub Tray		
	Event Logging		

## Information tab

This section provides detailed information about the service mode **Information** tab.

## General

#### Information > General

This menu displays the following information:

• Machine serial number

### **Supply Status**

#### Customer Replacement Unit (CRU)

#### Information > Supply Status > Customer Replacement Unit

• This menu displays the printer's customer replacement unit status. Users can select one item in the list to check the information of the selected unit. This menu allows users to reset the counter if new supply has been replaced and a reset is required.

#### Field Replacement Unit (FRU))

#### Information > Supply Status > Field Replacement Unit

• This menu displays the printer's field replacement unit status. Users can select one item in the list to check the information of the selected unit. This menu allows users to reset a counter if a supply has been replaced, if a reset is required.

In this menu, there are five columns: Item, Threshold, Status, and Count. Some items have the Maximum Life option.

• Status: This column shows the current status of the selected item.

- OK: The current count is smaller than the default warning value.
- Check: The current count is bigger than the default warning value.
- OFF: The current count exceeds the maximum life.
- Count: This column shows the current count of the selected item.
- Maximum Life: This column shows the maximum capacity of the selected item.

The technician can edit the default warning value within the given threshold.

Selecting some items will enable the reset button to reset the current count to zero after replacing the unit.

## Software Version

#### Information > Software Version

• This menu allow the user to see firmware and software versions across the entire printer.

### Fault Log

#### Information > Fault Log

This menu displays faults that have occurred while the system was operating.
 Pressing the **Clear** button will clear all the saved fault logs.

### **Print Reports**

#### Information > Print Reports

This menu displays reports that can be printed from the system. The following reports are available to print:

- Supplies Information
- Auto Color Registration
- Full Auto Color Registration
- Auto Toning History

#### Auto Color Registration

#### Information > Print Reports > Auto Color Registration

• This report lists the last ten Color Plane Registration (CPR) results.

If there is a color registration problem, and execution of Auto Color Registration does not solve the problem, service engineers can print out this report and check the "Succeeded or Failed for CPR" field.

Result	Meaning
0	Success
256	Pattern sensing sensor LED calibration failure
1152	Machine is unable to read the pattern and cannot execute the calibration.

#### Auto Toning History

#### Information > Print Reports > Auto Toning History

• 🖉 NOTE: TRC means Tone Reproduction Curve.

This report shows a history of execution of the TRC control. The TRC control preserves color consistency against changes in supplies resulting from long-time use and environmental change. The purpose of the history report is to check if the TRC control is working normally.

- If the TRC control performs normally, "Pass" count must be a non-zero value and "Fail" count must be zero.
- If "Fail" count is not zero, check the image density sensor.

## Maintenance Counts tab

This section provides detailed information about the service mode Maintenance Counts tab.

## Fault Count

#### Maintenance Counts > Fault Count

• This menu displays fault counts. The technician can select one fault group and press OK to see detailed fault descriptions. The detailed fault description window displays engine diagnostic codes, descriptions of the fault, and the number of occurrences.

The following table shows the fault groups defined for the system:	he following ta	able shows the t	fault groups (	defined for the system:
--	-----------------	------------------	----------------	-------------------------

A1 Motor	H2 Output (Bins) System	S3 Scan System
A2 Fan	M1 Input (Trays) System	S5 UI System
A3 Sensor	M2 Media Path System	S6 Network System
C1 Toner Cartridge Unit	M3 Output (Bins) System	S7 HDD System
C3 Imaging Unit	M4 ADF System	U1 Fusing Unit
C7 Fusing Unit	S1 Video System	U2 Laser Scanner Assembly Unit
H1 Input (Trays) System	S2 Engine System	

#### Part Replacement Count

#### Maintenance Counts > Part Replacement Count

• This menu displays the replacement counts for the system parts. Users can select one group and press "OK" to see the exact name of the part and the occurrence of the replacement.

The following table shows replaceable parts groups of the system:

Unit	ltem	Sensing Method
Toner Cartridge	Toner (Black)	Auto Sensing
Imaging Unit	Imaging Unit (Black)	Auto Sensing
Fuser	Fuser	Auto Sensing

Unit	ltem	Sensing Method
ITB	ITB	
(HP Color LaserJet MFP E77822, E77825, E77830)		
ITB Cleaner	ITB cleaner	
(HP Color LaserJet MFP E77822, E77825, E77830)		
Transfer Roller	Transfer roller	Count Clear
Roller	Tray 2 Roller	Count Clear
	Tray 3 Roller	Count Clear
	Tray 4 Roller	Count Clear
	Tray 5 Roller	Count Clear
ADF Roller	ADF Pickup Roller	Count Clear
	ADF Separation Roller	
Filter	Ozone filter	

## **Diagnostics tab**

This section provides detailed information about the service mode **Diagnostics** tab.

## **Engine Diagnostics**

#### Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine NVM Initialization

• This menu initializes all engine NVM values to the default.

#### Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine NVM Read/Write

•	Purpose	To change a configuration value for the engine firmware
	Operation Procedure	When the main "NVM Read/Write" window displays, users can navigate through the list of codes with descriptions and saved values.
		Users can also input a code through the text box to find a configuration value directly.

After selecting one value, press the Edit button to open an interface for user input.

Code	Display	Meaning	Default	Max/Min
109-0200	StandBy Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0201	StandBy Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0205	Warmup Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0206	Warmup Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0255	Thin Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0256	Thin Side	Temperature offset	10	10

Code	Display	Meaning	Default	Max/Min
109-0265	Plain Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0266	Plain Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0275	Heavy Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0276	Heavy Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0280	Extra Heavy Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0281	Extra Heavy Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-290	Cardstock Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0291	Cardstock Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0300	Envelopes Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0301	Envelopes Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0305	Labels Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0306	Labels Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0310	Thick Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0311	Thick Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0315	Recycle Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0316	Recycle Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0320	Special Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0321	Special Side	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0325	1200 dpi_thin Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0326	1200 dpi_thin	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0330	1200 dpi_Plain Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0331	1200 dpi_Plain	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0335	1200 dpi_Thick Center	Temperature offset	10	10
109-0336	1200 dpi_Thick	Temperature offset	10	10
112-0120	Manual Color Registration X-Offset Yellow	Distant from hsync to lsync (multi-hsync) for yellow	100	200/0
112–0130	Manual Color Registration X-Offset Magenta	Distant from hsync to lsync (multi-hsync) for magenta	100	200/0
112-0140	Manual Color Registration X-Offset Cyan	Distant from hysnc to lysync (multi- hysync) for cyan	100	200/0
112–0150	Manual Color Registration X-Offset Black	Distant from hysnc to lysync (multi- hysync) for black	100	200/0
112–0160	Manual Color Registration Y-Offset Yellow	Distant from psync to image area for yellow	100	200/0
112-0170	Manual Color Registration Y-Offset Magenta	Distant from psync to image area for magenta	100	200/0

Code	Display	Meaning	Default	Max/Min
112–0180	Manual Color Registration Y-Offset Cyan	Distant from psync to image area for cyan	100	200/0
112-0190	Manual Color Registration Y-Offset Black	Distant from psync to image area for black	100	200/0
112–0240	Manual Color Registration Left Width Yellow	Image area left width for yellow	500	1000/0
112–0250	Manual Color Registration Right Width Yellow	Image area right width for yellow	500	1000/0
112-0260	Manual Color Registration Left Width Magenta	Image area left width for magenta	500	1000/0
112–0270	Manual Color Registration Right Width Magenta	Image area right width for magenta	500	1000/0
112–0280	Manual Color Registration Left Width Cyan	Image area left width for cyan	500	1000/0
112-0290	Manual Color Registration Right Width Cyan	Image area right width for cyan	500	1000/0
112–0300	Manual Color Registration Left Width Black	Image area left width for black	500	1000/0
112–0310	Manual Color Registration Right Width Black	Image area right width for black	500	1000/0
112–0320	Color Registration Laser Scanner Assembly Skew Yellow	Laser Scanner Assembly skew for yellow	100	200/0
112–0330	Color Registration Laser Scanner Assembly Skew Magenta	Laser Scanner Assembly skew for magenta	100	200/0
112–0340	Color Registration Laser Scanner Assembly Skew Cyan	Laser Scanner Assembly skew for cyan	100	200/0

## • Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine Test Routines

Purpose	To perform test routines for the engine
Operation Procedure	When the main Engine Test Routines window displays, users can navigate through the list of routines and descriptions that display. Users can directly input an EDC code through the text box to search for a routine. A maximum of three routines can be selected at the same time.
	After selecting one or more routines, press the "OK" button to open the test window. The selected routines will display and users can start/start the selected test routine.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	N/A

Code	Display	Meaning
100-0000	Main BLDC Motor	Main BLDC Motor is On/Off

Code	Display	Meaning
100-0001	Main BLDC Motor Slow	
100-0041	Yellow Drum Motor	
100-0042	Magenta Drum Motor	
100-0043	Cyan Drum Motor	
100-0044	Black Drum Motor	
100-0046	Yellow Drum Motor Ready	
100-0047	Magenta Drum Motor Ready	
100-0048	Cyan Drum Motor Ready	
100-0049	Black Drum Motor Ready	
100-0080	ITB Engage Motor	
100-0090	ITB Engage Sensor	
100-0010	Main BLDC Motor Ready	Detects if Main BLDC Motor is running at normal speed
100-0120	Exit Motor Forward Fast	Exit Motor Forward Fast On/Off
100-0130	Exit Motor Forward Slow	Exit Motor Forward Slow On/Off
100-0131	Exit Motor Backward	
100-0132	Exit Motor Backward Slow	
100-0140	Duplex Motor Forward	Duplex Motor Forward On/Off
100-0141	Duplex Motor Forward Slow	
100-0160	Duplex Fan1 Run	Start/Stop Duplex Fan1 run
100-0180	Duplex Fan1 Run Ready	
100-0200	Tray 2 Elevating Motor	Elevate Motor On/Off
100-0210	Tray 3 Elevating Motor	Elevate Motor On/Off (Optional)
100-0220	Tray 4 Elevating Motor	Elevate Motor On/Off (Optional)
100-0230	Tray 5 Elevating Motor	Elevate Motor On/Off (Optional)
100-0240	Waste Toner Motor	
100-0241	Waste Toner Led	
100-0250	Waste Toner Full Sensor	
100-0260	SMPS Fan Run	Start/Stop LVPS Fan run
100-0270	SMPS Fan Run Ready	
100-0340	Feed Motor	
100-0341	Feed Motor Slow	
100-0370	Tray 2 Pickup Motor	
100-0371	Tray 2 Pickup Motor Slow	
100-0380	Tray 3 Pickup Motor	

Code	Display	Meaning
100-0381	Tray 3 Pickup Motor Slow	
100-0390	Tray 4 Pickup Motor	
100-0391	Tray 4 Pickup Motor Slow	
100-0400	Tray 5 Pickup Motor	
100-0401	Tray 5 Pickup Motor Slow	
100-0411	Registration Motor Slow	
100-0412	Registration Motor Slowest	
100-0430	Exit 2 Motor Forward	
100-0431	Exit 2 Motor Forward Slow	
100-0440	Exit 2 Motor Backward	
100-0441	Exit 2 Motor Backward Slow	
100-0450	ITB Motor	
100-0460	Ready ITB	
100-0470	DCF Feed Motor	
100-0471	DCF Feed Motor Slow	
101-0050	Registration Clutch	Engages drive to registration roller
101-0121	Tray 2 Feed Motor Slow	
101-0130	T2 Feed Motor	T2 Feed Motor On/Off
101-0131	Tray 3 Feed Motor Slow	
101-0141	Tray 4 Feed Motor Slow	
101-0151	Tray 5 Feed Motor Slow	
101-0190	Out bin Full Sensor	Detects when paper is at Out bin Full Sensor
101-0191	Out-Bin 2 Full Sensor	
101-0270	Tray 1 Clutch	
101-0271	Tray 1 Solenoid	
101-0280	Return Gate Solenoid	
102-0000	Tray 2 Home Position	Detects when Tray 2 is closed
102-0010	Tray 2 Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 2
102-0041	Tray 2 Paper Size Read	
102-0050	Tray 2 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 2 is elevated to the sensor
102-0070	Tray 3 Home Position	Detects when Tray 3 is closed
102-0080	Tray 3 Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 3
102-0111	Tray 3 Paper Size Read	
102-0120	Tray 3 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 3 is elevated to the sensor

Code	Display	Meaning
102-0140	Tray 4 Home Position	Detects when Tray 4 is closed
102-0150	Tray 4 Paper Empty Sensor	Detect when paper is in Tray 4
102–0181	Tray 4 Paper Size Read	
102-0190	Tray 4 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 4 is elevated to the sensor
102-0210	Tray 5 Home Position	Detect when Tray 5 is closed.
102-0220	Tray 5 Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 5
102-0251	Tray 5 Paper Size Read	
102-0260	Tray 5 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 5 is elevated to the sensor
102-0280	Tray 1 Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 1
102-0281	Tray 1 Paper Size Read	
102-0290	Feed 1 Sensor	Detects when paper is at the Feed sensor
102-0300	Tray 3 Feed Sensor (or Door Open)	Detects when paper is at Tray 3 Feed sensor (Optional)
102-0320	Tray 4 Feed Sensor (Or Door Open)	Detects when paper is at Tray 4 Feed sensor (Optional)
102-0340	Tray 5 Feed Sensor) or Door Open)	Detects when paper is at Tray 5 Feed sensor (Optional)
102-0352	DCF Feed Cover Open	
102-0360	Registration Sensor	Detects when paper is at the Registration sensor
102-0361	Fuser Out Sensor	
102-0371	Exit 2 Sensor	
102-0380	Duplex Jam 1 Sensor	Detects when paper is at Duplex Jam 1 sensor.
102-0435	Front Cover Sensor	
102-0436	Side Cover Sensor	
104-0000	Waste Install Sensor	
106-0200	HVPS Installed	
107-0162	Yellow Eraser On	
107-0163 Magenta Eraser On	Magenta Eraser On	
107-0164	Cyan Eraser On	
107-0165	Black Eraser On	
107-0166	Yellow Eraser Detect	
107-0167	Magenta Eraser Detect	
107-0168	Cyan Eraser Detect	
107-0169	Black Eraser Detect	
109-0020	Fuser Fan Run Ready	

Code	Display	Meaning
109-0030	Fuser Motor Forward	Fuser Motor Forward On/Off
109-0031	Fuser Motor Backward	
109-0034	Fuser Motor Ready	Detects if fuser motor runs at each speed
109-0040	Fuser Fan Run	Fuser Fan Motor On/Off
109-0140	Fuser Gap Home Sensor	
109-0200	Detect Fuser Relay	
109-0210	Detect Zero Cross Period	
109-0300	Fuser Installed	
110-0000	LSU Motor 1 Run Ready	Detects if Laser Scanner Assembly motor 1 runs a normal speed
110-0060	LSU Motor 1 Run	Laser Scanner Assembly Motor 1 On/Off
110-0140	110-0140 LSU HSync1	
110-0170	LSU HSync4	Detect Laser Scanner Assembly HSync 4 (black)
110-0200	LSU Installed	
110-0320	LSU Shutter Open	
110-0330	LSU Shutter Close	
111-0000	Toner Dispense Motor Yellow	
111-0010	Toner Dispense Motor Magenta	
111-0020	Toner Dispense Motor Cyan	
111-0030	Toner Dispense Motor Black	Toner Dispense (Supply) Motor On/Off
111-0040	Toner Sensor Yellow	
111-0050	Toner Sensor Magenta	
111-0060	Toner Sensor Cyan	
111-0070	Toner Sensor Black	TC sensor in developer tank
111-0110	Toner Control Voltage Yellow	
111-0120	Toner Control Voltage Magenta	
111-0130	Toner Control Voltage Cyan	
111-0140	Toner Control Voltage Black	

## **Scanner Diagnostics**

## Shading Test

• Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Shading Test

Purpose	<ul> <li>To check the quality of s such as the lens, mirror,</li> </ul>	5	ly if there might be defects in c	ptical devices
	<ul> <li>Check the quality proble</li> </ul>	em as shown below:		
	<text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text>	<text></text>	<text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text>	

**Operation Procedure** 

#### For Image Scanner Unit

Press "Shade and Print report" to see if the current shading value is correct. Mono, red, green, and blue gray shading values will be shown on the printed report. When the previous shading value is needed, press "Print Last Shade Report".

#### For Flow ADF/ADF unit

- 1. Load the shading sheet on the ADF tray.
- 2. Enter SCV mode. Select the following menu items:

Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Shading Test > Shade and Print Report (ADF)

Information	Maintenance Counts	Diagnostics	Service Functions
Επιμην-Συσφινότου		Shade and Print Report	
		Print Last Shade	Report
Scanner Diagnost	ics <	Shade and Print Report (ADF)	
Adjustment		Print Last Shade	Report (ADF)

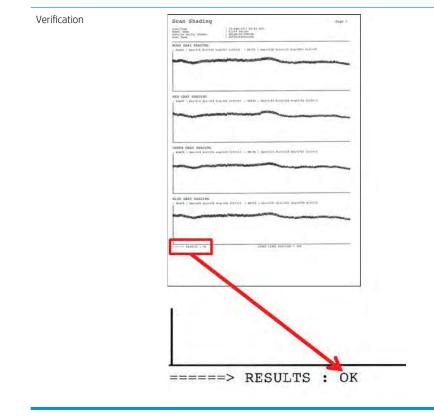
Press "Print Last Shade Report (ADF)" for the previous shading value report.

3. Check if the printed results are correct.

#### NOTE:

\_

- When executing ADF shading, use only the shading sheet (JC63–05055A). \_
  - A Shading Test for the ADF Unit must be completed after replacing the ADF unit or main board.



### Scanner/ADF NVM Read/Write

• Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Scanner/ADF NVM Read/Write

Purpose	To read and/or write values in the scanner and ADF memory.
Operation Procedure	When the main "NVM Read/Write" window displays, users can navigate through the list of codes with descriptions and saved values. Users can also directly input a code through the text box to search for an NVM.
	After selecting a code, the "Edit" button will be enabled only if the code is writable.
	If the selected code is writable and the "Edit" button is enabled, press the button to configure the desired value for the code.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	N/A

Code	NVM Description	Default	Flow ADF	ADF
05-0000	Pick Up Count	0	0	0
05-0001	Separation Roller Count	0	0	0
05-0030	Simplex Registration Value (Regi 1)	0	0	0
05-0040	Duplex Registration Value (Regi 2)	0	Х	0
05-0050	Width Guide Max Value	Depends on ADF	0	0
05-0060	Width Guide Min Value	Depends on ADF	0	0

#### Scanner/ADF Test Routines

• Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Scanner/ADF Test Routines

Purpose	To perform test routines for the scanner and ADF.
Operation Procedure	When the main Scanner/ADF Test Routines window displays, users can navigation through the list of routines and descriptions that display. Users can input a code through the text box to search for a routine.
	After selecting a routine, press "OK" to open the test window that lists the selected routine. Users can start/stop the selected test routine.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	Table below

Code	Name	Value	Flow ADF	ADF
06-0000	Scanner Original Size Detecting Sensor 1	High/Low	0	0

Code	Name	Value	Flow ADF	ADF
06-0001	Scanner Original Size Detecting Sensor 2	High/Low	0	0
06-0010	Scanner Cover Open/ Close Sensor 1	High/Low	0	0
06-0011	Scanner Cover Open/ Close Sensor 2	High/Low	0	0
06-0020	Scanner Platen Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0	0
06-0030	Scanner Platen Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0	0
06-0040	Scanner Platen Home Position Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0000	Document Length .1 Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0001	Document Length .2 Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0020	Document Cover Open Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0040	Document Detect Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0050	Document Feed Sensor			
05-0060	Document Simplex Registration Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0061	Document Duplex Registration Sensor	High/Low	Х	0
05-0070	Document Scan Read Sensor1	High/Low	0	0
05-0071	Document Scan Read Sensor2	High/Low	0	Х
05-0080	Document Exit Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0110	Document Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0	0
05-0111	Document Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0	0
05-0123	Document Width1 MSO Sensor			
05-0124	Document Width2 MSO Sensor			
05-0125	Document Width3 MSO Sensor			
05-0130	Document Pickup Motor Forward			
05-0131	Document Pickup Motor Backward			

Code	Name	Value	Flow ADF	ADF
05-0140	Document Pickup Roller Detect Sensor	High/Low	0	0
05-0151	Document Stacker Lift Lower Sensor			
05-0152	Document Stacker Lift Home Position Sensor			
05-0153	Document Scanln Release Sensor			
05-0154	Document Separation up down Sensor			
05-0160	Document Registration 1 Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0	Х
05-0162	Document Registration 1 Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0	Х
05-0170	Document Regi2 Motor Forward			
05-0171	Document Regi2 Motor Backward			
05-0180	Document Stacker Lift Motor Forward			
05-0181	Document Stacker Lift Motor Backward			
05-0182	Document Exit Motor Forward			
05-0183	Document Exit Motor Backward			
05-0184	Document Pickup Release Motor Forward			
05-0185	Document Pickup Release Motor Backward			
05-0186	Document Scanln Release Motor Forward			
05-0187	Document Scanln Release Motor Backward			
05-0190	Document Width Guide ADC Sensor	10Bit (0~1023)	0	0
05-0191	Document USM ADC Sensor			
05-0192	Document USM Calibration Test			

Code	Name	Value	Flow ADF	ADF
05-0210	Document Jig Test Low Speed Simplex	Start/Stop	0	0
05-0230	Document Jig Test High Speed Simplex	Start/Stop	0	0

## Adjustment

#### Print Adjustment

• Diagnostics > Adjustment > Print Adjustment > Image Position

Purpose	Mar	nually adjust the position of the printed image on the paper in the print engine.	
Operation Procedure	1.	Select a tray to adjust.	
	2.	Change the adjustment value using the "+" or "-" buttons, then press the "OK" button to save the changes.	
		• Simplex Leading Edge	
		• Simplex Side Edge	
		• Duplex Leading Edge	
		• Duplex Side Edge	
		NOTE:	
		• Adjustment must be done for each tray (Tray 2, 2, 3, 4, and MP).	
		• Do not choose "ALL" for the tray selection.	
		• Adjust for the tray with each new tray selection.	
	3.	Print out the test pattern and check if the image is adjusted. If not, repeat step 2.	

• Diagnostics > Adjustment > Print Adjustment > Print Margin Test

This menu is used to print out the test pattern manually.

## Copy Adjustment

• Diagnostics > Adjustment > Copy Adjustment > Image Position

Purpose	Manually adjust the position of the copied image on the paper in the copy engine.
Operation Procedure	NOTE: Before copy adjustment:
	<ul> <li>Make sure that the initial values of margin adjustment are the same as the values of the print adjustment.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Perform an adjustment for each tray. Do not choose "All" for tray selection, as this can confuse the adjustment.</li> </ul>
	NOTE:
	<ul> <li>Complete adjustment for each tray (Tray 2, 3, 4, and MP).</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Do not choose "All" for tray selection.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Adjust for the tray with each new tray selection.</li> </ul>
	1. Locate the Scanner A/S Chart at the scanner glass.
	2. Change the adjustment value using the "+" or "-" button, and then press "OK" to save the changes.
	<ul> <li>Simplex Leading Edge</li> </ul>
	o Simplex Side Edge
	• Duplex Leading Edge
	o Duplex Side Edge
	<b>3.</b> Print out the test pattern and check if the image has moved. It not, repeat step 2.

## Scan Area Adjustment

• Diagnostics > Adjustment > Scan Area Adjustment > Automatic Adjustment

Purpose	To correct the image position and magnification of scanned ima	iges automaticall
Operation Procedure	1. Locate the Scanner A/S chart at the scanner glass.	
		+ -
		-
	20mm Lost Edge Lost Edge	joja
	C C	-
	®	
	interest Starting in right	
	A	
		juộn
		x

A4 Scanner A/S Chart

	Note that the "Lead Edge" arrows point to the left side of the scanner glass and are placed face down. The Scanner A/S Chart comes in two sizes, A4 and Letter.
2.	Press "OK". A scan begins and the system will automatically calculate the proper value based on the scanning result of the chart.
3.	The new value saves to the system.
4.	Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the scanner glass.
5.	To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image.
6.	To check the magnification, compare the length of line "c" from the chart to the scanned image.
	NOTE: Specifications:
	• a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm
	• c: 190, ± 1.5 mm

• Diagnostics > Adjustment > Scan Area Adjustment > Manual Adjustment

Purpose	To correct the position and magnification of scanned images manually.
Operation Procedure	1. Choose one item from the table. There are three items to choose from:
	• Image Position — Leading Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: —6/+6)
	<ul> <li>Image Position — Side Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: —6/+6)</li> </ul>
	• Magnification — Vertical Direction (Unit: %, Min/Max: 98.5/101.5)
	2. Select one item and press the "Edit" button.
	<b>3.</b> Change the adjustment value using the arrow button.
	<ol> <li>Image position (a, b): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press "+", otherwise press "-".</li> </ol>
	<ol> <li>Magnification (c): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press "-" otherwise, press "+".</li> </ol>
	6. Press the "OK" button to apply the new value to the system.
	<ol> <li>Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned fro the scanner glass.</li> </ol>
	<b>8.</b> To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) fro the chart to the scanned image.
	<b>9.</b> To check the magnification, compare the length of line "c" from the chart to the scanned image.
	NOTE: Specifications:
	• a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm
	• c: 190, ± 1.5 mm

## ADF Adjustment

• Diagnostics > Adjustment > ADF Adjustment > Automatic Adjustment

Purpose	To correct the image position and magnification of images scanned with the Flow ADF/ADF automatically.		
Operation Procedure	1. Locate the Scanner A/S chart on the ADF tray.		
	Devented Scherpful 1 wirds <sup>2</sup>		
	At Scanner A/S Chart  Press "OK". A scan begins and the system will automatically calculate the property of the system will automatically calculate th		
	value based on the scanning result of the chart.		
	<b>3.</b> The new value saves to the system.		
	<ol> <li>Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the Flow ADF/ADF.</li> </ol>		
	<ol> <li>To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image.</li> </ol>		
	<b>6.</b> To check the magnification, compare the length of line "c" from the chart to the scanned image.		
	NOTE: Specifications:		
	• a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm		
	• c: 190, ± 1.5 mm		
	NOTE: After executing the ADF adjustment, perform a shading test. Refer to		

• Diagnostics > Adjustment > ADF Adjustment > Manual Adjustment

Purpose	To correct the position and magnification of scanned images manually.
Operation Procedure	<b>1.</b> Choose one item from the table. There are three items to choose from:

- Image Position Leading Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: —6/+6)
- Image Position Side Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: —6/+6)
- Magnification Vertical Direction (Unit: %, Min/Max: 98.5/101.5)
- 2. Select one item and press the "Edit" button.
- 3. Change the adjustment value using the arrow button.
- **4.** Image position (a, b): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press "+", otherwise press "-".
- 5. Magnification (c): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press "-", otherwise, press "+".
- **6.** Press the "OK" button to apply the new value to the system.
- 7. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the Flow ADF/ADF.
- **8.** To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image.
- **9.** To check the magnification, compare the length of line "c" from the chart to the scanned image.

**NOTE:** Specifications:

- a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm
- c: 190, ± 1.5 mm

**NOTE:** After executing the ADF adjustment, perform a shading test. Refer to "Scanner Diagnostics".

#### Auto Color Sensing (ACS)

• Diagnostics > ACS

Purpose	To set the color coverage ratio of auto color mode in the copy function.
	<ul> <li>Color Coverage Ratio: The ratio of color contents in the original document.</li> </ul>
Operation Procedure	Change the level from 1 to 5.
	<ul> <li>Classifies a document as color, if color coverage of the document is higher than a predefined level.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Level 1 has a higher probability of classifying documents to color, while level 5 has lower probability.</li> </ul>

Verification	Copy the "mono copied" original with auto color mode and check if the print out is monochrome.
Specification	Color coverage
	– Level 1: 0.01%
	– Level 2: 0.05%.
	– Level 3: 0.1%
	– Level 4: 0.25%
	– Level 5: 0.5%

## Image Management

## Auto Tone Adjustment Activation

• Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment Activation > Normal

Purpose	To correct image quality when density of the image is poor. Normal TRC Control is recommended after changing a unit, such as a toner cartridge, imaging unit, and ITB, or after restarting the printer.
Operation Procedure	<ol> <li>Select "On" or "Off" for Normal TRC Control execution.</li> <li>Off: Normal TRC Control will not execute.</li> </ol>
	<ul><li>On: Normal TRC Control will execute during the determined conditions,</li><li>Change the execution condition(s) of Normal TRC Control.</li></ul>
	• Page Count: The system executes Normal TRC Control based on the count of printed pages since the last execution.
	<ul> <li>Time Left Alone: The system executes Normal TRC Control when the system returns from a power save mode and the rest time exceeds the configured value.</li> </ul>
Verification	Print out a test job and make sure the image quality has recovered.

• Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment Activation > Full

Purpose	To correct image quality when any OPC drum is replaced, the life of the OPC drum is changed, the density of the image is poor, or the temperature and/or humidity in the room changes suddenly.
Operation Procedure	1. Select "On" or "Off" for Full TRC Control execution.
	• Off: Full TRC Control will not execute.
	• On: Full TRC Control will execute during the determined conditions,
	2. Change the execution condition(s) of Full TRC Control.

	0	Page Count: The system executes Full TRC Control based on the count of printed pages since the last execution.
	0	Time Left Alone: The system executes Full TRC Control when the system returns from a power save mode and the rest time exceeds the configured value.
Verification	Print out	a test job and make sure the image quality has recovered.

#### Auto Tone Adjustment

• Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment > Normal

Purpose	To correct image quality when image density is poor. Normal TRC Control is recommended after changing a unit, such as toner cartridge, imaging unit, and ITB, or after restarting the printer.
Operation Procedure	Select "OK" to execute Normal TRC.
Verification	Print out a test job and make sure the image quality has recovered.

• Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment > Full

Purpose	To correct image quality when any OPC drum is changed, the life of the OPC drum is changed, the image density is poor, or the temperature and/or humidity in the room changes suddenly.
Operation Procedure	Select "OK" to execute Full TRC.
Verification	Print out a test job and make sure the image quality has recovered.

#### Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment > CTD Sensor Cleaning

Purpose	To solve the "CTD Sensor Failure" error.
Operation Procedure	After cleaning the CTD/CPR sensor, execute this menu.

### **Print Test Patterns**

#### Diagnostics > Print Test Patterns > Skew Pattern

• The skew pattern stored in the machine will be printed out as the selected size.

## Service Functions tab

This section provides detailed information about the service mode **Service Functions** tab.

## Main Memory Clear

#### Service Functions > Main Memory Clear

• This function resets the main memory of the system to the factory default setting. This function can be used to reset the system to the initial value when the product is functioning abnormally. User configured values return to the default values.

To clear the main memory, select the country/region where the system is located, and restart the printer.

# Debug Log

#### Service Functions > Debug Log

- This function sets the system log message level. Users can select three options:
  - Off: This option disables the logging option.
  - Job Status: This option only enables the logging of user created jobs.
  - Details: This option enables all the logging options of the running tasks of the system. This option
    might effect the performance of certain system operations. Use this option when the system
    performs abnormally and engineers need to investigate the problem.

### Capture Log

#### Service Functions > Capture Log

- This function copies all the saved logs in the system to a USB flash drive as a .zip file. The size of the system log could reach up to 1GB. If the system log size becomes very large, it will take a longer time to copy to the USB flash drive.
  - 1. Connect the USB flash drive to the printer.
  - **2.** Tap the Service Mode app.
  - 3. Go to Service Functions > Debug Log and change the debug log level to "INFO."
  - 4. Go to Service Functions > Capture Log.
  - 5. Select "All" or "Period". If selecting "Period", enter the start and end date.
  - **6.** Press the Capture Log button.
  - **7.** Once the log is completed, a completion message will display. Restore the debug log level to "JOB STATUS".
    - **NOTE:** If the system log size becomes very large, it will take longer to copy to the USB flash drive.
  - 8. Check that the Log File has been saved to the USB flash drive.

### TR Control Mode

#### Service Functions > TR Control Mode

•	Purpose To correct transfer related problems. This function can value to optimize image quality to a certain type of p		t transfer related problems. This function can be used to change the transfer optimize image quality to a certain type of paper.
	Operation Procedure	– T1 Control Problems	
		0	Choose the process speed (Full, Half, Lower) based on the type of paper being used.
		0	Adjust T1 PWM value based on the problem type.

	Blur: Increase T1 PWM value	
	Poor Transfer: Increase T1 PWM value	
	<ul> <li>Re-transfer: Decrease T1 PWM value</li> <li>White Spot: Decrease T1 PWM value</li> </ul>	
Verification	Print a test job and make sure the transfer problem has been resolved.	
Specification	N/A	
Reference	N/A	

### Part Replacement Alert

#### Service Functions > Part Replacement Alert

- This function enables/disables the alert message of the consumable's life time.
  - ON: Alert message on (Level: Low, Empty, Exhaust, Worn)
  - OFF: Alert message off

### Envelope Rotate

#### Service Functions > Envelope Rotate

• This menu enables rotation when printing on an envelope. The machine usually guides loaded envelopes with SEF direction. If this function is enabled, the user can load an envelope with LEF direction and the machine will rotate the image for printing on the envelope.

This function provides the following setting options:

- Off (default): Load envelope SEF direction
- 90 degrees: Load envelope LEF direction.

- 180 degrees: Load envelope SEF direction with flap on bottom side.



NOTE: If the paper source is "Auto", the device will feed from Tray 1 because the LEF envelope can only be loaded in Tray 1 according to paper specification.

If the length of envelope is over the maximum size of the customer width, the device will not rotate the image and determine that the direction of the envelope is SEF. For example, the A4 model supports custom sizes like W 98–216 ~ L148–356. This model does not support C5 Env (162x229) DL Env (110x220), No 9 Env (98x225), No 10 Env (105x241) rotation.

### Drain

#### Service Functions > Drain

• This menu recovers toner density. The printer prints grayed images after operating over 500 low coverage images. This menu supports 10 level.

This function provides the following setting options:

- Off (default)
- On
- Yellow [1~10]
- Cyan [1~10]
- Magenta [1~10]
- Black [1~10]

# Print quality troubleshooting guide

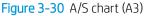
# Image quality problems and solutions (HP Color LaserJet MFP E77822, E77825, E77830)

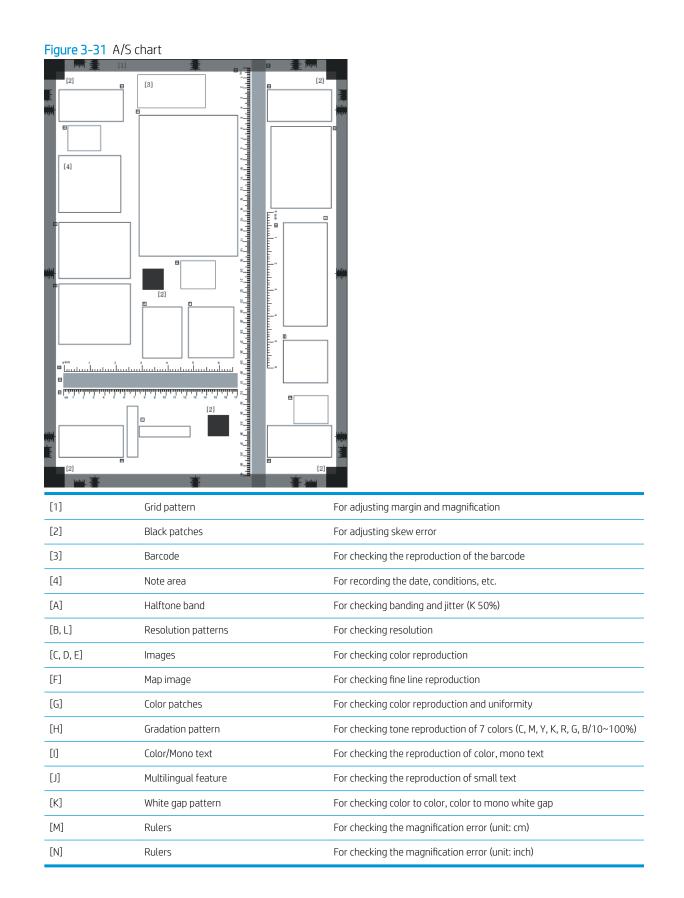
Print quality defects can be caused by printer components, consumables, media, internal software, external software applications, and environmental conditions.

To successfully troubleshoot print quality problems, eliminate as many variables as possible.

First, generate prints using printable pages using laser paper. Use paper from an unopened ream that has been acclimated to room temperature. Make sure that genuine HP toner is installed in the printer.







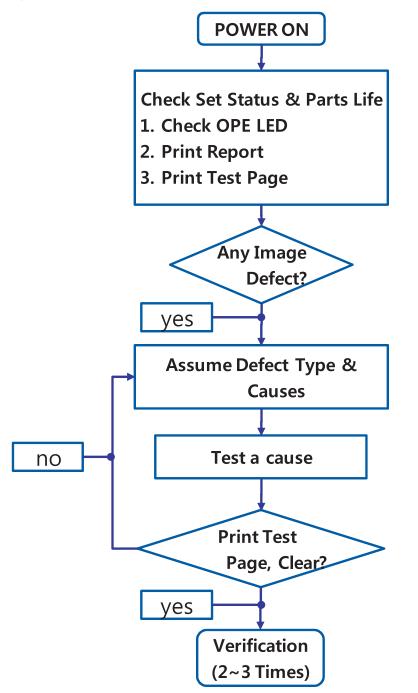
#### How to analyze image defects

See the following flowchart.

☆ TIP: Depending on the remaining life of the part, the cause of the defect can vary. Check the remaining life of the part.

Check for defects even if the defect is not repeated.

Figure 3–32 Defect analysis flowchart



# Vertical black band

## Figure 3-33 Typical faulty images



### Table 3-24 Troubleshooting procedure: vertical black band

Step	Cause	Action
1	Charge roller (CR) is contaminated.	Check if the CR is contaminated.
	CR	Replace the Drum unit if there are additional problems.
2	ITB belt is contaminated.	Check if the ITB belt is contaminated.
	<ul><li>ITB cleaning is poor.</li><li>ITB Clean-Blade is partially broken.</li></ul>	Replace the ITB Cleaner if there are additional problems.
3	<ul><li>The Scanner unit is contaminated.</li><li>Scan glass contamination</li><li>Mirror contamination</li></ul>	Wipe the contaminated part of the surface with a soft cloth. CAUTION: The Scanner unit contains fragile parts. Use caution while cleaning.
	CCD sensor contamination	

# Vertical white band, light band

Figure 3-34	Туріса	l faulty in	nages		
1			-	-	
ALL DA		R			15
E	1	III.	3		1
ad-	-		-		
Table 3-25 Troubleshooting procedure: vertical white band, light band					

Step Cause	Action
1       A foreign substance is between the Developing Roller (and blade.         •       The toner on the Magnetic roller is partially empt         Image: Comparison of the tone of tone of the tone of tone of the tone of the tone of the tone of	<ul><li>DR) Remove the foreign substance.</li><li>Make a hook shape using a sheet (transparency</li></ul>

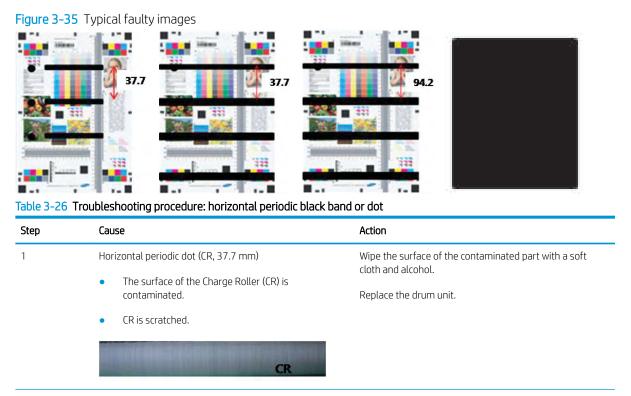
Replace the Drum unit if there are additional problems.

Step	Cause	Action
2	The Developer unit carrier is insufficient.	Replace the Developer Unit.
		• Check the remaining toner.
		• Make sure the toner layer is uniform on the magnet roller in the Developer unit.
		and the second second second
		Normal
		Contraction of the local division of the loc
		Abnormal

Table 3-25 Troubleshooting procedure: vertical white band, light band (continued)

Step	Cause	Action
3	The laser beam path is blocked.	Clean the laser scanner assembly window.
	A foreign substance is on the laser scanner assembly window.	
4	OPC is scratched.	Replace the Drum unit.

### Horizontal Periodic Black Band or Dot



Step	Cause	Action
2	Horizontal periodic black band (CR, 37.7 mm)	Replace the Drum unit.
	• CR in poor condition.	
3	OPC is damaged.	Replace the Drum unit.

Table 3-26 Troubleshooting procedure: horizontal periodic black band or dot (continued)

# Horizontal periodic light/dark band or dot





Step	Cause	Action
1	Horizontal periodic band (CR, 94.2 mm)	This problem will resolve itself over time.
	• OPC was left exposed for too long.	If the problem is not resolved, replace the Drum unit
	<ul> <li>OPC is damaged by a high voltage in a short amount of time.</li> </ul>	
2	Horizontal periodic light/dark band (Magnetic Roller, 31.4 mm)	Replace the Developer unit.
	• The Magnetic Roller is in poor condition.	
	<ul> <li>V-groove of the Magnetic Roller surface is not uniform.</li> </ul>	

#### Table 3-27 Troubleshooting procedure: horizontal periodic light/dark band or dot

V-groove in Roller-Magnetic

# Foggy image



Table 3-28 Troubleshooting procedure: foggy image

Step	Cause	Action
1	Voltage of OPC is abnormally low.	Replace the Drum unit.
2	HVPS operates abnormally.	Replace the HVPS board.
	• HVPS is damaged or broken.	

Table 3-28	Troubleshooting procedure: foggy ima	age (continued)
------------	--------------------------------------	-----------------

Step	Cause	Action
3	Toner is over supplied.	Replace the toner cartridge.
	• TC sensor operates abnormally.	
4	Voltage of OPC is abnormally low.	Check the T1 connection in the HVPS.
	• T1 voltage is abnormally high.	Check if the T1 roller spring in the ITB is connected correctly.
		Replace the HVPS board.

# Light image

## Figure 3-38 Typical faulty images



## Table 3-29 Troubleshooting procedure: light image

Step	Cause	Action
1	TRC operates abnormally.	Perform TRC three to four times.
2	Poor transfer has occurred.	Force a jam during the print job. Check the image on the image transfer belt (ITB). If the image on the ITB is normal, refer to the "Blurred image" section.

Step	Cause	Action
3	Toner is empty.	Check if the toner level is sufficient. If not, replace the toner cartridge.
	Toner is abnormally supplied.	Check if the toner supply shutter is opened.
4	Output voltage of the HVPS is abnormally low.	Replace the HVPS board.
	• Color density decreases.	
5	TC down and toner spills.	Replace the Developer unit.
6	Toner spills by eraser.	Check if the eraser is contaminated.
		Replace the Drum unit or Developer unit.

#### Table 3-29 Troubleshooting procedure: light image (continued)

# Blurred image



#### Table 3-30 Troubleshooting procedure: blurred image

Step	Cause	Action
1	High humidity and/or the quality of the paper.	Use new, higher quality paper.
2	T2 transfer voltage is low.	Turn up the T2 transfer voltage.

Step	Cause	Action
3	Connection between HVPS and THV is incorrect.	Check if the connection between T2 high voltage terminal and HVPS THV terminal is correct.
		Check if the connection between the HVPS and ITB is correct.
4	HVPS operates abnormally.	Replace the HVPS.

...

# Incorrect color registration



Table 3-31 Troubleshooting procedure: incorrect color registration

Step	Cause	Action
1	CPR execution is needed.	Execute CPR manually.
2	CPR sensor is contaminated.	Clean the CPR sensor.

Step	Cause	Action
3	Environmental circumstances — such as temperature or humidity — have changed.	To recognize the environment change, execute CPR after a enough time has passed for the printer to become acclimated.
4	Check if the skew occurs at the trays or feeding rollers.	Adjust the skew manually.
5	Belt surface is contaminated.	Remove the ITB. If the surface of the belt is contaminated, clean with a soft cloth.

#### Table 3-31 Troubleshooting procedure: incorrect color registration (continued)

# Uneven pitch and jitter image

Figure 3-41 Typical faulty images

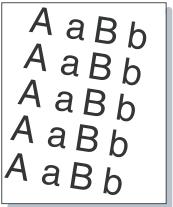
Paper feeding direction		
-------------------------	--	--

Table 3-32 Troubleshooting procedure: uneven pitch and jitter image

Step	Cause	Action
1	Under 3 mm periodic jitters or horizontal bands have occurred.	Check for foreign substance in the drive gears.
		Grease the drive gears.
		Developer unit gears
		Drum unit gears
		Main drive unit gears
		If the problem persists, replace the abnormal units.
		Developer unit
		• Drum unit
		Main drive unit
2	Under 1 mm periodic jitters or horizontal bands have occurred.	Check if the laser scanner assembly is assembled correctly. If not, remove and tighten the screws.
		If the problem persists, replace the laser scanner assembly.

# Skewed image

Figure 3-42 Typical faulty images



#### Table 3-33 Troubleshooting procedure: skewed image

Step	Cause	Action
1	• Tray is not installed properly.	Reinstall the tray properly.
	<ul> <li>Too much paper is loaded in the tray.</li> </ul>	
	• The tray guide is not set properly.	
2	The surface of the pickup/reverse/ feed roller is contaminated or worn out.	Clean or replace the contaminated roller.
3	If the skewed image occurs during a copy job, check the ADF installation.	Reinstall the ADF (flow ADF or ADF) unit.

Adjust the ADF skew.





# Blank copy

Figure 3-43 Typical faulty images

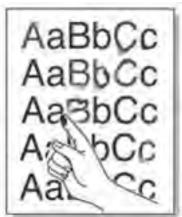
	Typical ladity intages
24 - C	

Table 3-34 Troubleshooting procedure: blank copy

Step	Cause	Action
1	Laser scanner assembly operation error	Check laser scanner assembly connections
2	All connections on the HVPS board are connected correctly	Reconnect all connections
3	Check if the related parts are damaged or broken	Replace the HVPS board, Main board, or laser scanner assembly
4	Check the connection between the scan joint board and	Reconnect the harness
the Main board		If the connection is correct, replace the Main board

# Poor fusing performance

Figure 3-44 Typical faulty images



#### Table 3-35 Troubleshooting procedure: poor fusing performance

Step	Cause	Action Check that the paper type displayed on the control panel is the same type of paper being used for the print job.	
1	Check the paper type.		
	Depending on what type of paper is used, print speed varies.		
	• Plain (71~90g/), Thick (91~105g/): Full Speed		
	• Heavy weight (106~175g/): Half Speed		
	• Envelope (75~90 g/), Label (120~150 g/): Half Speed		
2	The fuser unit is worn out.	Replace the fuser unit.	
3	Check the surface of the fuser belt and pressure roller for scratches.	Replace the fuser unit.	
4	Check the temperature control system for problems.	Check the non-contact thermistor sensor	
	<ul><li>Thermistor is broken or operates abnormally</li><li>Halogen lamp is broken or operates abnormally</li></ul>		
		Check the halogen lamp.	
		If parts are broken, replace the broken parts or the Fuser unit.	
5	Check if the pressure control system operates properly.	Check the pressure control system.	
		If the problem persists, replace the Fuser unit.	
6	Paper is wrapped on the Heating roller.	Remove the wrapped paper and print a test page.	
		If the problem persists, replace the Fuser unit.	

# Stain on back of paper

Figure 3-45 Typical faulty images



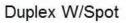
Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Transfer Roller Assembly	Is the transfer roller dirty or worn out?	Yes	Clean or replace the Transfer Roller Assembly.
2	ITB Unit	Is there any stain caused by poor cleaning on the	Yes	Clean the ITB.
		ITB?		If the problem persists, replace the ITB unit.
3		Is the ITB cleaning blade in proper contact with the ITB?	Yes	Take off the ITB and check that the ITB cleaning blade pressure spring and the pressure hook are installed correctly.
4	Fuser	Are the fuser belt and pressure roller dirty?	Yes	Clean the fuser belt and pressure roller.
5		Check the pressure roller surface for damage or scratches.	Yes	Replace the fuser.

### Duplex blur, white spot blur on color print-out



Figure 3-46 Typical faulty images

Duplex Blur



#### Troubleshooting procedure

- 1. Enter SVC Mode  $\rightarrow$  Service Functions  $\rightarrow$  TR Control Mode.
- 2. Select [T2 Control Mode].
- 3. Select the paper setting based on the site. (Paper Group, Paper Side, Paper Direction)
- 4. Increase value for T2 PWM and check if the blur problem is resolved.
- 5. When the problem persists after changing the [T2 Control Mode] values, change the [T1 Control Mode] values.
- 6. Decrease the value for each color and see whether the symptom disappears.

In this case, [-4] was applied and solved the blur.

7. As there can be variation for each device, change T1, T2 and observe the results.

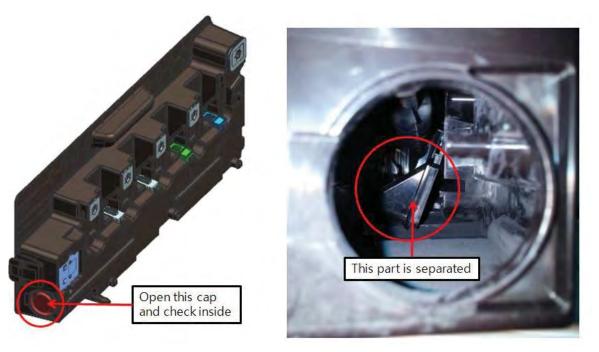
# **Other Errors**

# Image system problem (HP Color LaserJet MFP E77822, E77825, E77830)

No	Problem Description
1	TCU noise problem
2	The cleaning blade is overturned
3	Toner supply error and toner leakage problem
4	Toner cartridge detection error
5	94 mm periodic jitter occurs in printed document
6	Image registration problem occurs after Color Plane Registration (CPR)
7	How to handle TRC error and CPR
8	Removing debris from the Developer unit

### TCU noise problem

- **Symptom:** When printing, a blunt noise occurs at the front of the printer.
- **Cause:** Defect of toner collection unit (TCU).



• **Troubleshooting:** Replace the toner collection unit (TCU).

#### The cleaning blade is overturned

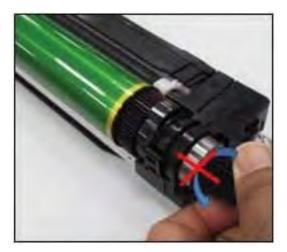
#### Symptom

• A toner leakage has occurred (for example, on the surface of the drum or on printed paper).

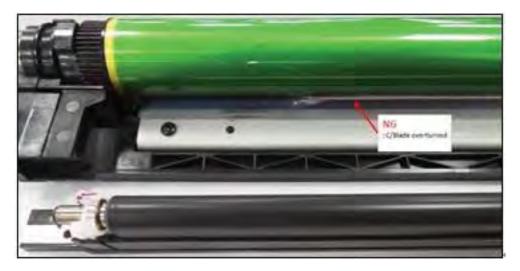


• The printed page is blank.

• The coupler (OPC unit) is difficult to rotate (coupler locking).



• The blade is overturned.



#### Cause

- CR electrification part transformation happens due to overturned blade.
- OPC rotation torque increases due to overturned blade.

#### Troubleshooting

• Replace the OPC unit.

#### Toner supply error and toner leakage problem

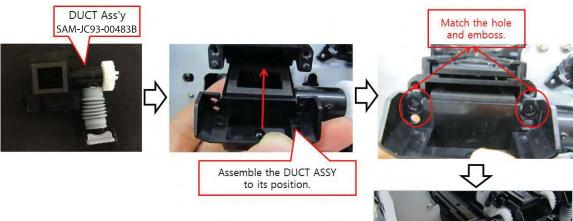
• **Symptom**: Toner supply error and toner leakage has occurred.



• **Cause**: FRAME MAIN-DUCT Toner assembly does not reach the designated position.



• **Troubleshooting**: Reassemble or replace the toner duct assembly.





Tighten the screw.

#### Toner cartridge detection error

#### Symptom

• Toner cartridge is installed, but "Not Installed" message displays.

#### Cause

- Toner cartridge is not properly installed.
- Toner cartridge CRUM harness is defective.
- CRUM PCA or CRUM Chip is defective.
- CRUM connection (modular connector) is defective.
- CRUM Joint PCA is defective.
- Bad connection between the main board and the CRUM Joint PCA.

#### Troubleshooting

- Toner cartridge installation problem:
  - Check if the toner cartridge is properly installed.
  - If the cartridge comes out automatically, check the cartridge fixing hook.
  - If the cartridge fixing hook is damaged, replace the cartridge cap or cartridge.
- CRUM harness problem:
  - Make sure the CRUM harness is correctly connected.

Check the modular jack for damage or abnormal assembly.

If the modular jack harness is defective, replace it with a new one.

If the modular jack has moved into the toner cartridge, remove it.

- CRUM PCA problem or CRUM data problem:
  - Replace the toner cartridge.
- CRUM connection (modular connector) installation problem:
  - Open the front cover. Remove the toner cartridge.
  - Make sure that the CRUM connection (modular connector) is correctly installed.
  - If the modular connector is not installed correctly, open the rear cover and reinstall.
- CRUM Joint PCA problem:
  - If the CRUM Joint PCA, modular jack pin, or main board interface connector are damaged, replace the PCA (see the previous step).
- Bad connection between the main board and the CRUM Joint PCA:
  - Check the connection between the main board and the CRUM Joint PCA. If the connection is bad, replace the harness, the CRUM Joint PCA, or the main board.

#### 94 mm periodic jitter occurs in printed document

#### Symptom

• 94 mm periodic jitter occurs in a printed document.

#### Troubleshooting

- 1. Perform a printout for each color with the "Check Drum Prn" file.
- 2. Check the period of the jitter with a ruler to determine the type of fault.
- **3.** Switch the organic photo conductor drum (OPC) with another OPC drum of a different color. If this resolves the problem, replace only the OPC drum.
- 4. Check the gear of the main drive for damage or a foreign substance. If the gear is damaged, replace the main drive. Remove any foreign substance found.
- 5. Replace the imaging unit.

#### Image registration problem occurs after Color Plane Registration (CPR)

#### Symptom

Image registration problem occurs after CPR.

#### Cause

• Laser Scanner Assembly

#### Troubleshooting

1. Perform CPR

Home > Machine Setup > General Settings > Image Management > Color Plane Registration

2. Print CPR Report

Service Mode > Information > Print Reports > Color Plane Registration

Succeed or Failed for CPR:  $[1152] \rightarrow \text{Registration cannot be adjusted by CPR.}$ 

- Check if the skew data from the CPR Report is changed.
- Check if OPC surface of Y/M/C is damaged, scratched, or torn.
- Print and check separated Y/M/C color for damage.
- Find "Succeeded or Failed for CPR" from the CPR report.
  - If the value is 1152 like the above report, CPR cannot be performed. Replace laser scanner assembly.
  - Succeeded or Failed for CPR:  $[0] \rightarrow$  CPR was performed OK [OK]
  - Succeeded or Failed for CPR: [1]  $\rightarrow$  CPR was not performed OK [Fail]

#### How to handle TRC error and CPR

#### Symptom

• Abnormal color density (thick, thin) and/or color registration is wrong.

#### Troubleshooting

- If the color density is wrong, perform TRC and print a TRC report.
- Check for a TRC error from the TRC report.
  - Mode column format:
    - F = Full TRC
    - S = Normal TRC
  - Error column format: 1X0 where the last digit indicates the color that is out of range.
    - 1X0: Sensed value from Y is abnormal.
    - 1X1: Sensed value from M is abnormal.
    - 1X2: Sensed value from C is abnormal.
    - 1X3: Sensed value from K is abnormal.
- Check the following for the corresponding color:
  - Make sure that the toner motor is working normally.
    - Enter Tech Mode (press 1, 2, 3 simultaneously, and then type in "1934".)
      - Diagnostics > Engine > Diagnostics > Engine Test Routines > Toner Dispense Motor On/Off

111-0000 (Y), 111-0010 (M), 111-0020 (C), 111-0030 (K)

- Check if the toner supply is blocked.
- Check if the toner seal has been removed.
- Check if the transfer roller is correctly installed.
- Print the CPR report. Check if the CPR was successful.

Succeeded or Failed for CPR	CP	CPR Result	
	0	0 = Success	
	0	256 = LED calibration failed. LED calibration is performed before the CPR for pattern sensing.	
		CPR sensor is contaminated or CPR sensor is defective.	

PWM of sensor LED	LED calibration result (LED value, maximum 255, minimum 0).
	If the CPR result is 256 and PWM value is 179, there is a sensor fault or a control
	board fault.
Skew	Number of clicks to adjust for laser scanner assembly skew:
	Default: 200. Does not need to be adjusted.
	7 clicks = 1 dot
	Too low — 190: needs to be adjusted counter-clockwise by 10 clicks.
	Too high — 210: needs to be adjusted clockwise by 10 clicks.
	If the value is between 193–217, then it does not need to be adjusted.

#### Removing debris from the Developer unit

#### Symptom

• Line occurs on the paper in the direction the paper moves.

#### Cause

• Debris on developer unit causes a line on the printed page.

#### Troubleshooting

- 1. Remove the developer unit.
- 2. Disassemble the developer unit cover (make sure not to damage or destroy the lock). Empty developer out onto clean paper.
- 3. Remove lumps with the jig from the magnetic roller.
- 4. Carefully clean the circled area where oil can cause build-up in the fuser.

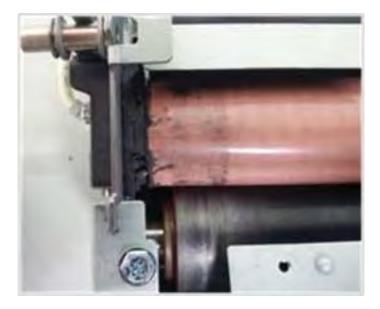
### Fuser problem (HP Color LaserJet MFP E77822, E77825, E77830)

No	Problem Description
1	Acoustic noise in Fuser unit

#### Acoustic noise in Fuser unit

• **Symptom:** Acoustic noise from the fuser assembly in the early stages of printing.

• **Cause:** Fuser sleeve edges are damaged.



# Troubleshooting

▲ Replace the fuser unit.

# Scanner and ADF problems (HP Color LaserJet MFP E77822, E77825, E77830)

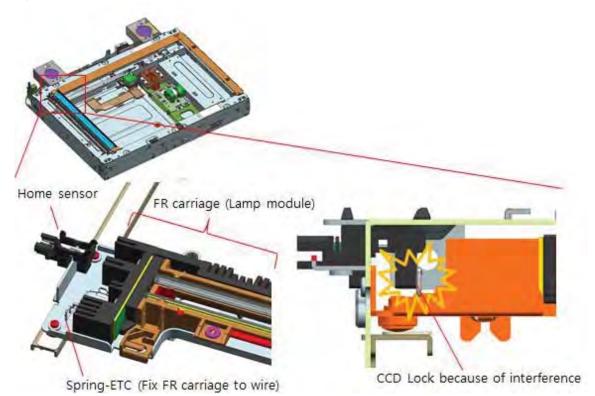
No	Problem Description
1	How to resolve CCD lock due to spring-wire
2	Noise of ADF hinge/Crack of ADF hinge/ADF will not stay open
3	ADF paper jam (multi-feed)
4	Scanner Locked/#U1-2115 error
5	How to adjust image distortion
6	Line skew occurs due to scanner internal module
7	Paper jam occurs due to registration ROLLER-IDLE of ADF
8	ADF is not recognized. An S3-3211 error occurs or copying must be performed from the scanner glass.
9	During copy or scan job, the original paper JAM and U3-3213 error occur.

## How to resolve CCD lock because of spring wire

#### Symptom

• The control panel displays a CCD Lock message when turning on the printer. The FR Carriage cannot move on the rail.

Figure 3-47 FR Carriage lock



#### Cause

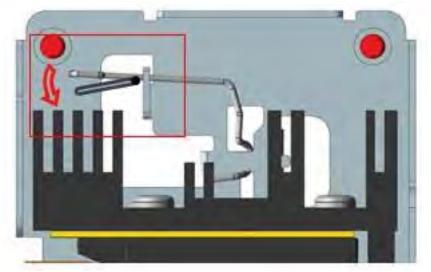
- The printer is tilted more than 20 degrees.
- When completing a scan with the FR pushed.

#### Troubleshooting

• Open the top cover, showing the scanner glass.

• Bend the spring as shown in the following image:

#### Figure 3-48 Bend spring



Noise of ADF hinge/Crack of ADF/ADF does not stay open

#### Symptom

- A noise comes from the ADF hinges when it is opened or closed.
- The ADF hinge is cracked.
- When the ADF is opened to access the scanner glass, the unit should remain at a 50° angle (±10°). The ADF does not remain open as expected.

### Troubleshooting

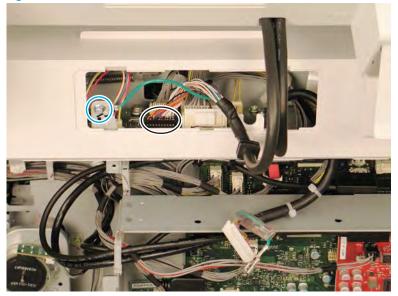
1. Remove the ADF connector cover.

Figure 3-49 Remove ADF connector cover



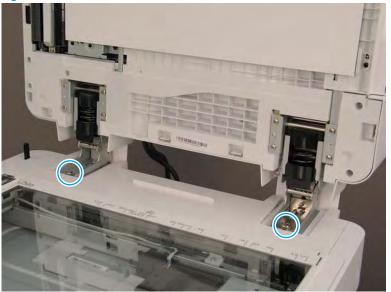
2. Remove the connector and one screw.

Figure 3–50 Remove connector and screw



3. Remove two screws. Slide the assembly back, and then lift the ADF to remove it.

Figure 3-51 Remove ADF unit



4. Reassemble the ADF.

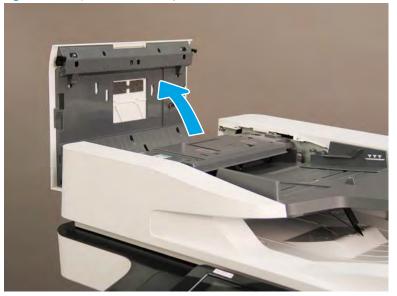
ADF paper jam (multi-feed)

- **Symptom**: Paper stops between the ADF roller and the registration roller causing a paper jam.
- **Troubleshooting**: When a registration out jam occurs during multi-feeding, the guide pickup must be replaced. This also stabilizes the paper path.
- 🖹 NOTE: The friction pad must be replaced at the time that the guide pickup is replaced.

Replacement procedure

1. Open the ADF assembly cover.

Figure 3-52 Open ADF assembly cover

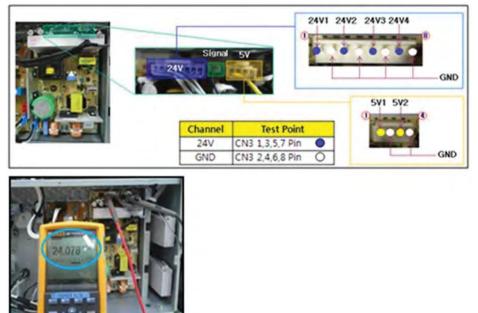


- 2. Remove the ADF separation pad. Replace with a new separation pad.
- **3.** Update the firmware to the latest version.

#### Scanner locked/#U1-2115 error

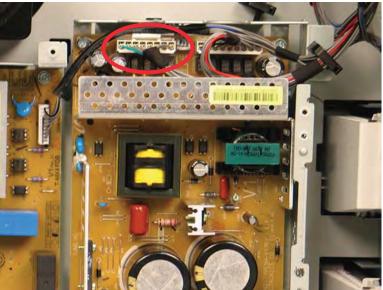
- **Symptom**: Paper stops between the ADF roller and the registration roller causing a paper jam.
- **Cause**: All 24V channels output voltage is off (24V output voltage is nearly 0V) and 5V channels output is normal.
- Troubleshooting
  - 1. Check all 24V output channels (24VS1, 24VS2, 24VS3, 24VS4) whether or not 24V voltage occurs.

Figure 3-53 24V output channels



2. If 24V voltage does not occur, check the "24V on/off signal pin" on the main board.

Figure 3-54 24V on/off signal pin



The voltage at "24V on/off signal pin" is OV: Main board and signal is normal.

The voltage at signal pin 4~5.3V: Main board and signal is abnormal.

- **3.** If the main board and signal is normal, and all 24V output channels are nearly 0V, check out parts (such as the Fuser motor, scanner harness, etc.) driven by 24V voltage before replacing the LVPS.
- **4.** If the main board and signal is normal, and only 1-3 24V output channels are nearly 0V, inspect the harness from the abnormal 24V output channel(s) before replacing the LVPS.
- 5. If the main board and signal is abnormal and all 24V output channels are nearly 0V, inspect the harness, connector, and main board.

#### How to adjust image distortion

#### Symptom

• Image distortion occurs when paper is fed from the ADF.

#### Troubleshooting

- 1. Loosen the four screws on the left hinge, and then loosen the four screws on the right hinge. Adjust the ADF.
- 2. Perform a copy job from the ADF and check if image distortion occurs. Repeat steps 1 and 2 if there is distortion.
- **3.** If the problem is resolved, tighten the screws on the hinges.

#### Line Skew occurs due to internal module of scanner

#### Symptom

• Line skew occurs when a copy is performed from the scanner glass.

#### Troubleshooting

- 1. Open the ADF. Remove the scanner glass.
- 2. Use vernier calipers to check and record the difference between the front and rear of the FR Module from scan left exterior.
- **3.** Use vernier calipers to check and record the difference between the front and rear of the HR Module from scan left exterior.
- 4. Results:
  - If the difference of the FR Module is +4 mm and HR is +2 mm, (or -4/-2):
    - Remove the pulley screw slightly with a size 2 mm Allen wrench.
    - Measure the length from the left-right exterior of the FR module with vernier calipers. Adjust the FR module so that the distance is equal and then lock it.
    - Adjust the distance of the left-right exterior so that it is smaller than 0.5 mm.

It is OK if the difference is less than 1 mm after locking the screw. (Check the HR module).

▲ CAUTION: Four screws (two front pulleys and two rear pulleys) need to be tightly locked with 7 kgf\*cm torque. If the torque is too strong the pulley can break. If the torque is too weak the pulley can be unlocked.

- If the difference of the FR Module is +4 mm and HR is -1 mm to +1 mm:
  - The front screw is located where it can be seen from the front of the printer/the rear screw is located where it can be seen from the rear of the printer.
  - The distance between the head of the screw and the heat sink is usually about 1 mm. Loosen the screw and align the FR module. Tighten screw and verify alignment with vernier calipers.

#### Paper jam occurs due to Registration ROLLER-IDLE of ADF

#### Symptom

• Paper jam occurs due to Registration ROLLER-IDLE of ADF.

When a paper jam occurs during original document scanning, the registration sensor and spring tension need to be checked. Otherwise, the Registration ROLLER-IDLE needs to be checked.

#### Cause

• A screw was tightened too much during ADF cover assembly. The cover presses the Registration ROLLER-IDLE and it cannot rotate smoothly, causing a paper jam.

#### Troubleshooting

- 1. Open the ADF cover.
- 2. Rotate the Registration ROLLER-IDLE by hand. If the Registration ROLLER-IDLE is too close to a screw, it will not rotate smoothly.
- 3. If the roller does not rotate smoothly, loosen the screw until the roller does rotate smoothly.
- 4. If loosening the screw does not resolve the problem, remove the ADF cover and scrape the contact point with a knife or sharp edge until the roller rotates smoothly. Install the ADF and adjust the screw.
  - Remove the ADF cover.
  - Remove the ADF pickup assembly.
  - Use a razor knife to shave the cover area which is in contact with the Registration ROLLER-IDLE.

#### ADF is not recognized. An S3-3211 error occurs or copying must be performed from the scanner glass

#### Symptom

- The ADF installation is not recognized.
- S3-3211 error occurs and a copy job must be performed using the scanner glass.

#### Cause

• The ADF power cable fails.

#### Troubleshooting

- 1. Reassemble the ADF power cable. If the problem is not resolved, replace the power cable.
- 2. Adjust the harness and fix it with a cable tie.

#### During copy or scan job, the original paper JAM and U3-3213 error occur

#### Symptom

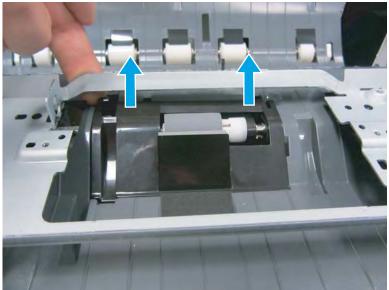
• During a copy or scan job, the original paper JAM and U3-3213 error occur.

#### Troubleshooting

Make sure the separation roller is installed properly.

1. Rotate the separation roller cover up to release it, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-55 Remove the separation roller cover



**NOTE:** The figure below shows the roller cover and the roller assembly when removed.



Figure 3-56 Document feeder separation roller cover and roller assembly

- 2. Release two claws, and then remove the separation roller assembly.
  - **WOTE:** The separation roller assembly spring under the roller is not captive.



Figure 3-57 Remove the separation roller assembly

3. When the assembly is reinstalled, make sure that the spring is correctly seated in the holder.





If the "Sponge-Damper Separation" is not in the correct position, do the following:

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 3-59 Remove screws



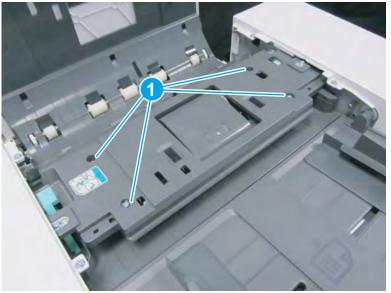
2. Remove the linker that has the upper side pressed to the inner direction. Remove the front cover.

Figure 3-60 Remove front cover



- 3. Remove four screws in the document feeder pickup roller assembly cover.
  - **NOTE:** Remove one spring (callout 2; not shown).

Figure 3-61 Remove the document feeder cover screws



4. Rotate the document feeder pickup cover up, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 3-62 Turn the cover over and disconnect connector



**NOTE:** The figure below shows the roller cover and the roller assembly when removed.

Figure 3-63 Document feeder pickup roller cover and roller assembly



- 5. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sensor flag bracket (callout 2).
  - ☆ TIP: When the roller assembly is reinstalled, make sure that the sensor flags (on both sides of the assembly) are correctly installed and move freely.

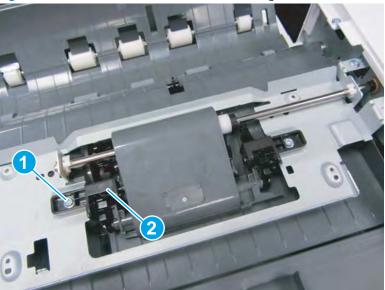


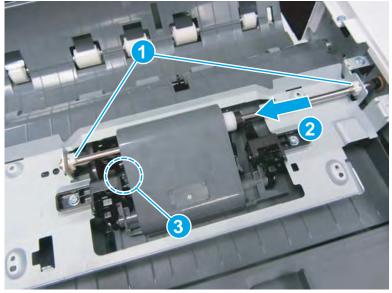
Figure 3-64 Remove one screw and the sensor flag bracket

6. Release two plastic clips (callout 1), slide bushing toward roller assembly (callout 2), and then slide the shaft towards front of printer to release it (callout 3). Remove the roller assembly.

**CAUTION:** Do not damage the sensor flags when handling the roller assembly.

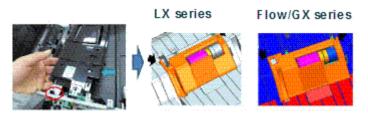
**NOTE:** The bushing is not captive. Do not lose it when handling the roller assembly.

Figure 3-65 Remove the document feeder pickup roller assembly clips



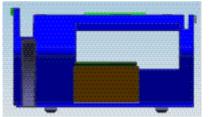
7. Remove the Pickup Assembly (LX series).

Figure 3-66 Remove pickup assembly

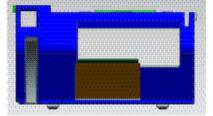


8. Replace the ADF-HOUSING SEPARATION (LX series).

Figure 3-67 Replace ADF housing separation







Flow/GX series

### Drive unit problem

No	Problem Description	
1	Machine makes noise during print job	

### Machine makes noise during print job

### Symptom

• Machine makes noise during a print job.

### Cause

- The gear train needs to be greased.
- An old type gear is assembled.

### Troubleshooting

- 1. Enter service mode.
- **2.** Execute a fuser motor test.

Service Mode > Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine Test Routines > Fuser Motor Forward

- 3. Remove the fuser unit and execute the fuser motor test again.
- 4. If the printer still makes a noise during a print job, replace the DRIVE-FUSER EXIT assembly.
- 5. If the problem is not resolved, replace the Fuser unit.

### Feeding system problem (HP Color LaserJet MFP E77822, E77825, E77830)

No	Problem Description	
1	How to resolve tray locking	
2	Tray 1, Tray 2, and Tray 3 cannot pick up paper	
3	Printer cannot feed paper	
4	706 Error (paper jam) occurs	
5	Envelope wrinkle	

### How to resolve tray locking

### Symptom

• Tray does not open or does not open easily.

# Figure 3-68 Tray locking

Cause

• Tray operation is not smooth because toner powder is attached to the tray locker.

### Troubleshooting

1. Wipe the toner powder that is attached to the tray locker.

### Figure 3-69 Wipe toner powder



- 2. Apply a small amount of grease to the tray locker.
- 3. HANARL grease:
  - Product name: HANARL SN-250
  - Manufacturer: KANTO KASEI, Inc.
  - Appearance: Orange
  - Directions: Soak the object in HANARL, or apply HANARL to the object using a brush.
  - After the object has dried for 30 minutes, apply HANARL to the assembly.

### Tray 1, Tray 2, and Tray 3 cannot pick up paper

### Symptom

• Tray 1, Tray 2, and Tray 3 cannot pick up paper.

### Cause

- Bad harness connection on the main board.
- Connector defect of the main board.

### Troubleshooting

- 1. Check the harness connection. Reconnect the harness if it is not connected correctly.
- 2. Check the pickup connector on the main board.

If the connector has a problem with the soldering, replace the main board.

### Printer cannot feed paper

### Symptom

• The printer cannot feed paper from Tray 2 or Tray 3.

### Cause

- Feed motor problem
- Feed motor connection problem
- Main board defect

### Troubleshooting

- Check the feed motor operation.
  - Open the right door and push the cover switch forcibly.

### Figure 3-70 Push cover switch

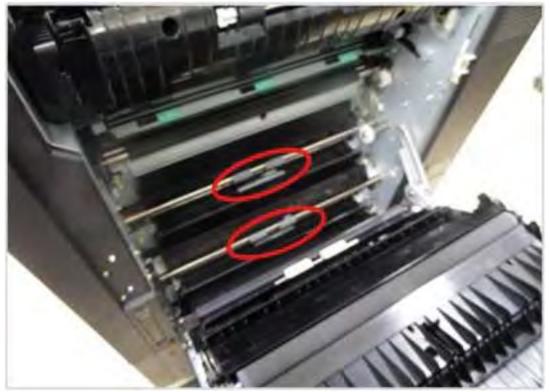


– Enter service mode.

- Select the following menu items:

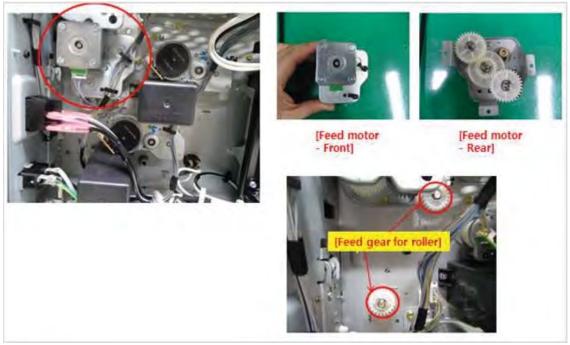
EDC Mode > Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine Test Routine > Feed motor > On/Off Check the operating status of the two feed rollers.

Figure 3-71 Feed roller operating status



If the feed rollers cannot rotate, open the rear cover and check the motor and gears.

Figure 3-72 Feed roller motor and gears



Check the connection between the main board (CN27) and the feed motor.

Figure 3-73 Connection between main board and feed motor



• If the problem persists, replace the main board.

### Envelope wrinkle

### Symptom

• Envelope is wrinkled when printed from Tray 1.

### Troubleshooting

- 1. Enter service mode.
- 2. Select "Envelope Rotate" (Service Functions > Envelope Rotate)
- 3. Select a menu item: Off, 90 degrees, or 180 degrees.

### Laser scanner assembly problem (HP Color LaserJet MFP E77822, E77825, E77830)

No	Problem Description	
1	CPR failure	
2	Laser scanner assembly motor makes a loud noise	

### CPR failure

### Symptom

• The control panel indicates an CPR failure message.

### Cause

• The reflection mirror in the laser scanner assembly is broken or damaged.

### Troubleshooting

Replace the laser scanner assembly.

### Laser scanner assembly motor makes a loud noise

### Symptom

• The laser scanner assembly motor makes a loud noise while in printing mode.

### Cause

• The laser scanner assembly motor is defective.

### Troubleshooting

- 1. Enter service mode and execute the laser scanner assembly motor test.
- 2. If the laser scanner assembly motor running sound is loud, replace the laser scanner assembly.

### Electrical circuit problem

No	Problem Description	
1	Right door recognition error	
2	LVPS output voltage drop error	
3	HDD makes a loud noise	
4	Networking not functioning	

No	Problem Description	
5	Control panel malfunction	
6	Different language displays on control panel when installing printer	
7	Home screen icon not visible or control panel is broken	
8	No power problem	
9	Active NFC does not detect NFC tag	

### Right door recognition error

### Symptom

• The right door is closed but the right door open message displays on the control panel.

### Cause

• The right door open sensor spring plate is damaged by the right door stopper.

Figure 3-74 Right door open sensor spring plate damage



<The stopper of the side cover>



< the spring plate of the side cover sensor>

### Troubleshooting

• Replace the right door open sensor assembly, or manually reshape the spring plate.

Figure 3-75 Replace right door open sensor assembly



< Normal Part>



< Defective Part>

### LVPS output voltage drop error

### Symptom

• A error message occurs on the OPE (C3–1312, S3–3121, M1–4111, M1–4211).

### Cause

• 24V channel output voltage drops to under 21.6V and 5V channel output is normal.

### Troubleshooting

1. Check all 24V output channels (24VS1, 24VS2, 24VS3, 24VS4) for 24V voltage.

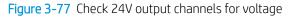
Figure 3-76 24V output channels

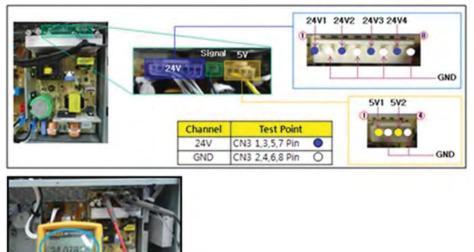
Signal 24V	<b>S</b>	24V2 24V3 24V4
-111.0-		5V1 5V2
Channel	Test Point	



### 2. Troubleshooting

1. Check all 24V output channels (24VS1, 24VS2, 24VS3, 24VS4) whether or not 24V voltage occurs.







The voltage at "24V on/off signal pin" is 0V: Main board and signal is normal.

The voltage at signal pin 4~5.3V: Main board and signal is abnormal.

- **3.** If the main board and signal is normal, and all 24V output channels are nearly 0V, check out parts (such as the Fuser motor, scanner harness, etc.) driven by 24V voltage before replacing the LVPS.
- **4.** If the main board and signal is normal, and only 1–3 24V output channels are nearly 0V, inspect the harness from the abnormal 24V output channel(s) before replacing the LVPS.
- 5. If the main board and signal is abnormal and all 24V output channels are nearly 0V, inspect the harness, connector, and main board.

### Hard Disk Drive (HDD) makes a loud noise

### Symptom

• The Hard Disk Drive (HDD) makes a loud noise.

### Cause

• The HDD has defects.

### Troubleshooting

• Replace the HDD.

### Networking not working

### Symptom

• Network is not functioning.

### Cause

- Network line itself is not working properly.
- Network configuration is wrong.
- Some related electronic components in the main board have defects.

### Troubleshooting

- 1. Connect a network line to the PC and complete a ping test.
- 2. Complete a ping test after connecting the network line. If the connection is working, check the network configuration, which might have been set incorrectly.
- 3. If the ping test does not have a result, open the rear cover and check the main board for visible defects on the network related components such as the connector (CN16), capacitor (C192), and other close components. Surge voltage from the outside can cause defects.
- 4. If any of the components have visible defects, then replace the main board.

# Adjusting the laser scanner assembly skew error

- 1. Check the skew error.
  - a. Execute the CPR.

Machine Setup > General Settings > Image Management > Auto Color Registration

**b.** Print the CPR report.

SVC (Tech) Mode > Information > Print Reports > Auto Color Registration

- c. Check [Y] [M] [C] Skew Data in CPR report.
- 2. Adjust the skew error.
  - **a.** Open the front cover. Remove the toner collection unit.
  - **b.** There are three skew holes for YMC color. Insert the Phillips screw driver and adjust CW, CCW referred to adjustment amount.



Figure 3-78 YMC skew holes

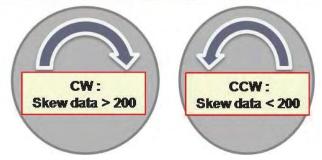
- i. The standard skew value is 200. If the skew data in the CPR report is 200, skew adjustment is unnecessary.
- ii. Adjustment method:

- Skew Data < 200: Rotate the driver in a counterclockwise direction. Example: Skew Data is 192: 200 — 192 = 8. Click CCW rotation.
- Skew Data = 200: No adjustment needed.
- Skew Data > 200: Rotate the driver in a clockwise direction. Example: Skew Data is 213: 213 - 200 = 13. Click CW rotation.
- **NOTE:** One click is equal to 1/7 dot.

Figure 3-79 Skew adjustment







- **3.** Check the skew error again.
  - **a.** Execute the CPR after the skew adjustment.
  - **b.** Print the CPR report.
  - **c.** Check the [Y] [M] [C] skew error.
  - **d.** If the value for YMC is 200±7, complete the skew adjustment.

 $\mathbb{B}^{\ast}$  NOTE: If the value does not meet the target, repeat steps 1–3.

# Adjusting the flow ADF/ADF skew

1. Open the ADF. Loosen the two screws securing both hinges.

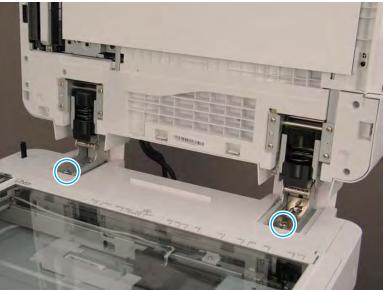


Figure 3-80 Open ADF and loosen screws

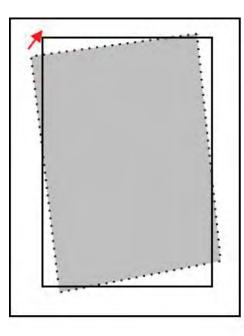
2. Adjust the position of the ADF hinge according to the skew status.

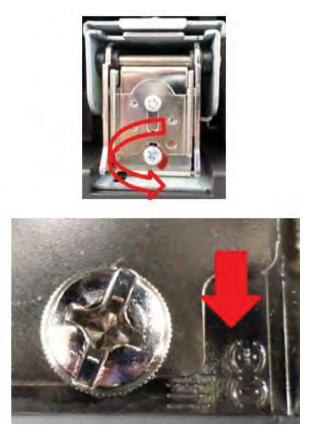


Figure 3-81 Adjust ADF hinge

**a.** If the skew image is similar to the following example, adjust the hinge unit in the direction of the arrow. (1 scale = >1.0 mm skew adjustment)

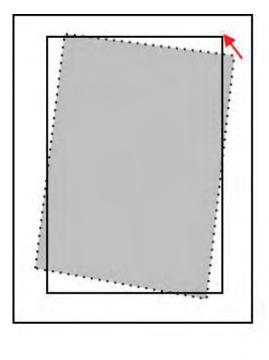
Figure 3-82 Adjust hinge





**b.** If the skew image is like the following example, adjust the hinge unit in the direction of the arrow. (1 scale = >1.0 mm skew adjustment)

Figure 3-83 Adjust hinge







**3.** Detach the ADF sponge after adjusting the skew. Place the ADF sponge on the scanner glass. Close the ADF unit to attach the sponge.

# 4 3,250-sheet Stapling Finisher/2,250-sheet Booklet Finisher

- For additional service and support
- Product specification and description
- <u>Service approach</u>
- Part diagrams, removal and replacement procedures (stapler/stacker and booklet finishers)
- <u>Problem solving</u>
- Finisher system diagram

# For additional service and support

HP service personnel, go to the Service Access Workbench (SAW) at <u>http://h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do</u>.

Channel partners, go to HP Channel Services Network (CSN) at <u>https://h30125.www3.hp.com/hpcsn</u>.

At these locations, find information on the following topics:

- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty and regulatory information

Channel partners, access training materials in the HP University and Partner Learning Center at <u>https://content.ext.hp.com/sites/LMS/HPU.page</u>.

To access HP PartSurfer information from any mobile device, go to <u>http://partsurfermobile.hp.com/</u> or scan the Quick Response (QR) code below.



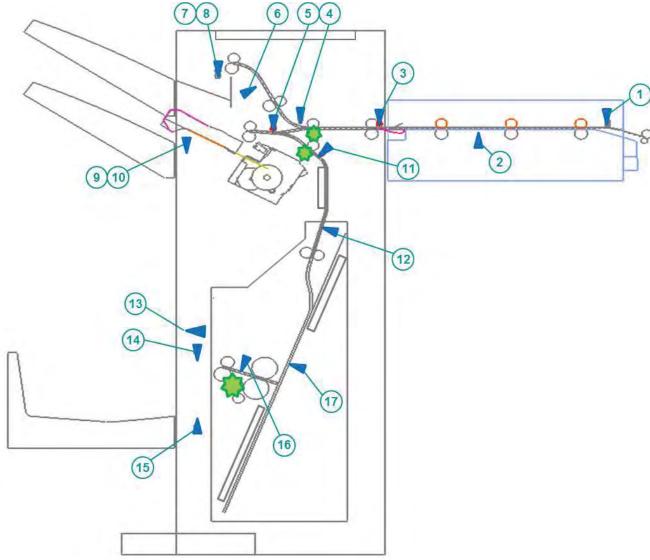
# Product specification and description

## Finisher system

Finisher sectional view (Booklet finisher)

### Sensor location (Booklet finisher)

Figure 4-1 Sensor locations (Booklet finisher)



### Table 4-1 Sensor locations

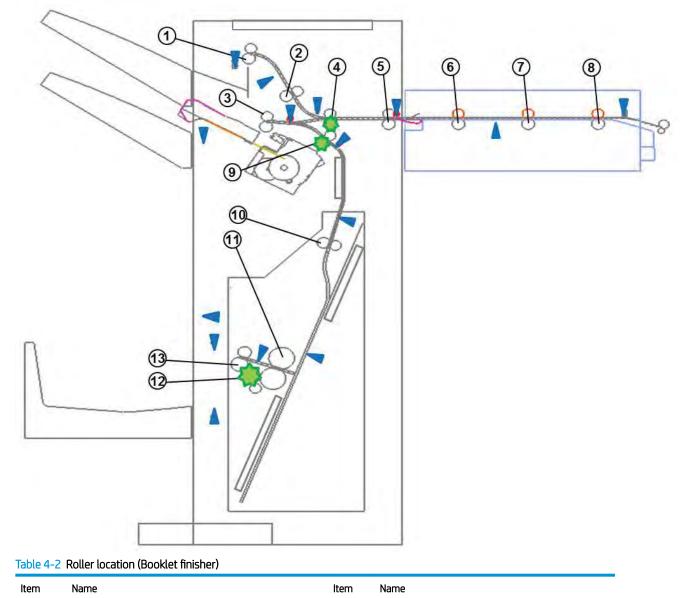
ltem	Name	ltem	Name
1	Bridge Entrance Sensor	10	Main Tray Upper Level Sensor (Emitter)
2	Bridge Output Sensor	11	Feed Buffer Output Sensor
3	Feed Entrance Paper Sensor	12	Feed Booklet Entrance Sensor
4	Diverter Home Sensor	13	Stacker Full Sensor

Table 4-1 Sensor locations (continued)

ltem	Name	ltem	Name
5	Feed Main Output Sensor	14	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor (Detector)
6	Feed Top Output Sensor	15	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor (Emitter)
7	Sub Tray Full Sensor (Detector)	16	Fold Output Paper Sensor
8	Sub Tray Full Sensor (Emitter)	17	Booklet Compile Paper Sensor
9	Main Tray Upper Level Sensor (Detector)		

### Roller location (Booklet finisher)





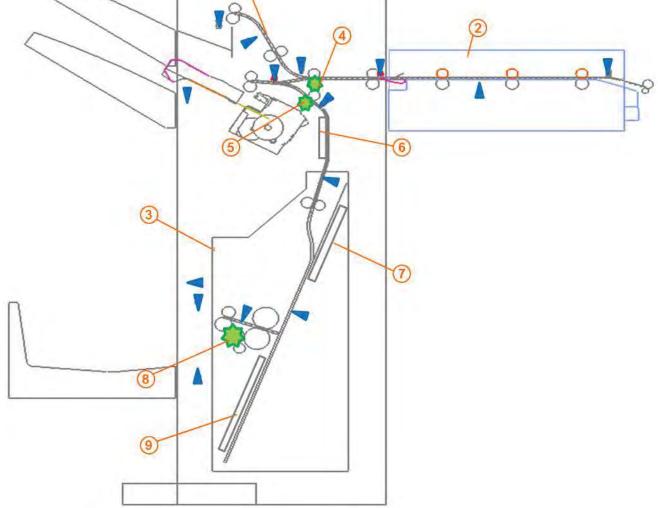
1	Top Output Roller	8	TB Entrance Roller

Table 4-2	Roller location	(Booklet finisher)	(continued)
-----------	-----------------	--------------------	-------------

ltem	Name	ltem	Name
2	Top Middle Roller	9	Feed Buffer Output Roller
3	Finisher Compile Output Roller	10	BM Compile Output Roller
4	Middle Roller	11	BM Folding Roller
5	Entrance Roller	12	BM C-Folding Roller
6	TB Output Roller	13	BM Folding Output Roller
7	TB Middle Roller		

### Jam removal guide





### Table 4-3 Jam removal guide

ltem	Name	ltem	Name
1	Top Door Guide	6	SD Jam Clear Cover
2	IPTU Door	7	Booklet Feed Jam Clear Cover
3	Booklet Module	8	BM C-Folding Roller Knob
4	Middle Roller Knob	9	Booklet Lower Feed Jam Clear Cover
5	Feed Buffer Output Roller Knob		

# Paper path

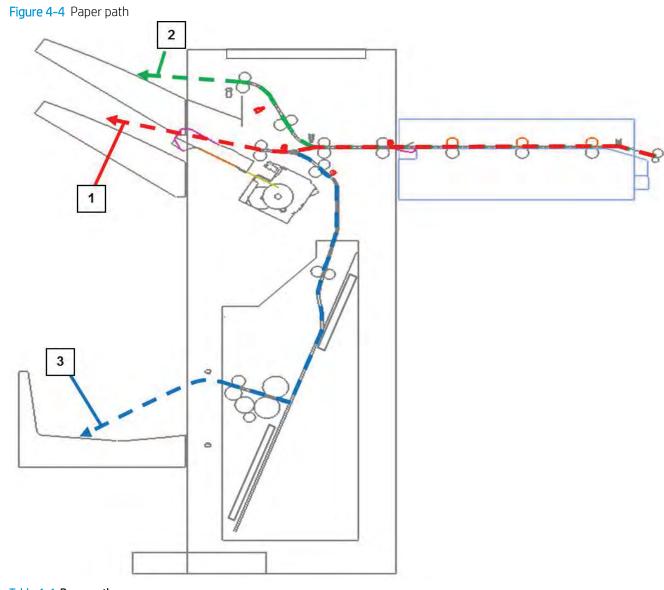


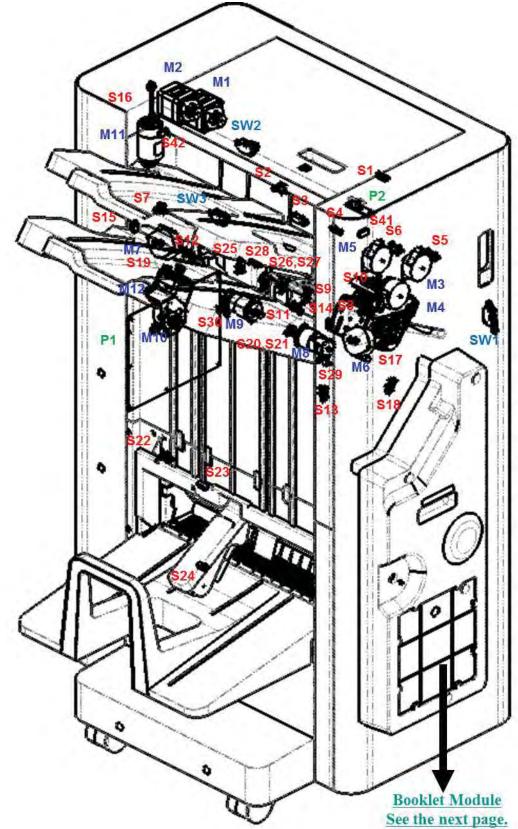
Table 4-4	Paper path	

ltem	Name
1	Finisher Main Tray - Staple & Punch (Optional)
2	Finisher Top Tray - Punch (Optional)
3	Booklet Tray – Folding & Staple

### Electrical parts layout

### Finisher and booklet module

Figure 4-5 Electrical parts layout (1 of 2)





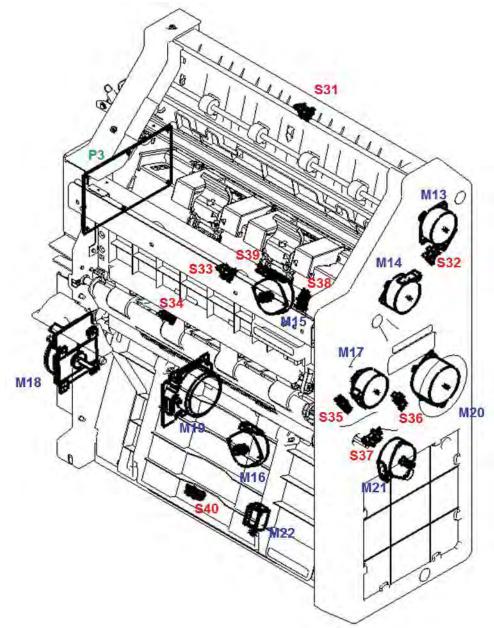


Table 4-5	Electrical parts layout
-----------	-------------------------

Item Part code	Description	Function
S1	Sensor-RP A	Feed Entrance Paper Sensor
S2	Photo Sensor	Feed Top Output Sensor
53	Sensor-RP A	Feed Main Output Sensor
S4	Sensor-RP A	Feed Buffer Output Sensor
S5	Photo Sensor	Diverter Home Sensor
S6	Photo Sensor	Buffer Home Sensor
57	Photo Sensor	Rear Tamper Home Sensor

Item Part code	Description	Function	
58	Photo Sensor	Front Tamper Home Sensor	
59	AS-Sensor	EF Home Sensor	
S10	Photo Sensor	Main Paddle Home Sensor	
S11	Photo Sensor	Main Tray Front Level Sensor	
S12	Photo Sensor	Main Tray Rear Level Sensor	
S13	Photo Sensor	SCU Home Sensor	
S14	AS-Sensor	Main Tray Upper Level Sensor (Detector)	
S15	AS-Sensor	Main Tray Upper Level Sensor (Emitter)	
S16	Photo Sensor	Main Tray Encoder Sensor	
S17	Photo Sensor	Offline Staple Position Sensor	
S18	Photo Sensor	Stapler Move Offline Sensor	
S19	Photo Sensor	Stapler Move Home Sensor	
520	Photo Sensor	Stapler Move Mid-Rear Sensor	
S21	Photo Sensor	Stapler Move Mid-Front Sensor	
522	Photo Sensor	Stacker Full Sensor	
S23	AS-Sensor	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor (Detector)	
S24	AS-Sensor	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor (Emitter)	
S25	Photo Sensor	Grip Home Sensor	
S26	Photo Sensor	PE EJT Home Sensor	
S27	Photo Sensor	PE EJT Away Sensor	
528	Sensor-RP A	Compile Paper Sensor	
529	Photo Sensor	GE Encoder Sensor	
530	Photo Sensor	PE Encoder Sensor	
531	Photo Sensor	Feed Booklet Entrance Sensor	
532	Photo Sensor	TE Presser Home Sensor	
533	Photo Sensor	Blade Home Sensor	
S34	Sensor-RP A	Fold Output Paper Sensor	
S35	Photo Sensor	Separate Pawl Home Sensor	
536	Photo Sensor	Guide Home Sensor	
\$37	Photo Sensor	Booklet Paddle Home Sensor	
538	Photo Sensor	Booklet Tamper Home Sensor	
\$39	Sensor-RP A	Booklet Compile Paper Sensor	
S40	Photo Sensor	Stopper Home Sensor	

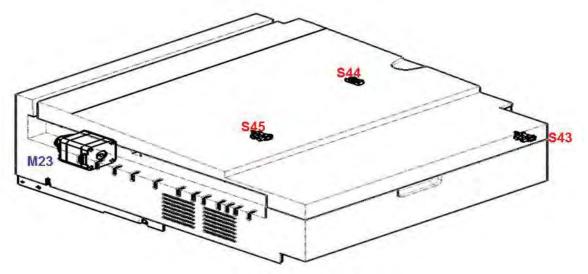
### Table 4-5 Electrical parts layout (continued)

ltem	Part code	Description	Function
S41		AS-Sensor	Sub Tray Full Sensor (Detector)
S42		AS-Sensor	Sub Tray Full Sensor (Emitter)
SW1		Micro Switch	Front Door I/L Switch
SW2		Micro Switch	Top Door I/L Switch
SW3		Micro Switch	Stacker Upper Limit Switch
P1		3K Main PCA	Finisher Main PCA
P2		Switch PCA	Offline Staple OP PCA
P3		Booklet PCA	Booklet Main PCA
M1		Assembly, HB Motor	Feed Entrance Motor
M2		Assembly, HB Motor	Feed Output Motor
M3		Assembly, PM Motor	Buffer Motor
M4		Assembly, PM Motor	End Fence Motor
M5		Assembly, PM Motor	Main Paddle Motor
M6		Assembly, PM Motor	Front Tamper Motor
M7		Assembly, PM Motor	Rear Tamper Motor
M8		AS-Motor DC Ejector	Grip-Eject Motor
M9		AS-Motor DC Ejector	Pre-Eject Motor
M10		Assembly, PM Motor	SCU Motor
M11		Assembly, 3657 DC Motor	Main Tray Moving Motor
M12		Assembly, HB Motor	Stapler Move Motor
M13		Assembly, PM Motor	Booklet Feed Entrance Motor
M14		Assembly, PM Motor	TE Presser Motor
M15		Assembly, PM Motor	Booklet Tamper Motor
M16		Assembly, PM Motor	Stopper Moving Motor
M17		Assembly, PM Motor	Separate Pawl Motor
M18		Motor BLDC-Main	Folding Roller Motor
M19		Motor BLDC-Main	Blade Motor
M20		Assembly, PM Motor	C Fold Motor
M21		Assembly, PM Motor	Booklet Paddle Motor
M22		Solenoid	Stopper Solenoid

Table 4-5	Electrical	parts lay	out (conti	inued)
-----------	------------	-----------	------------	--------

### Bridge Unit

Figure 4-7 Bridge Unit



### Table 4-6 Bridge Unit

ltem	Part code	Description	Function
M23		Assembly, HB Motor	Bridge Feed Motor
S43		Photo Sensor	Bridge Door Sensor
S44		Sensor-RP A	Bridge Entrance Sensor
S45		Photo Sensor	Bridge Output Sensor

### Punch unit

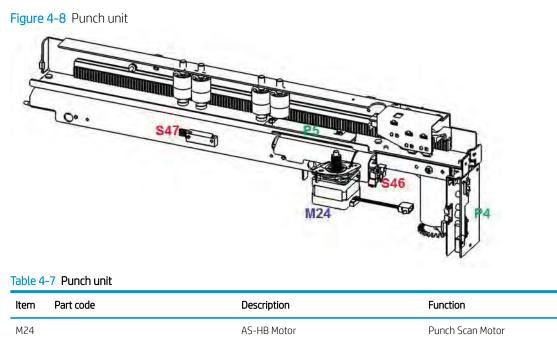
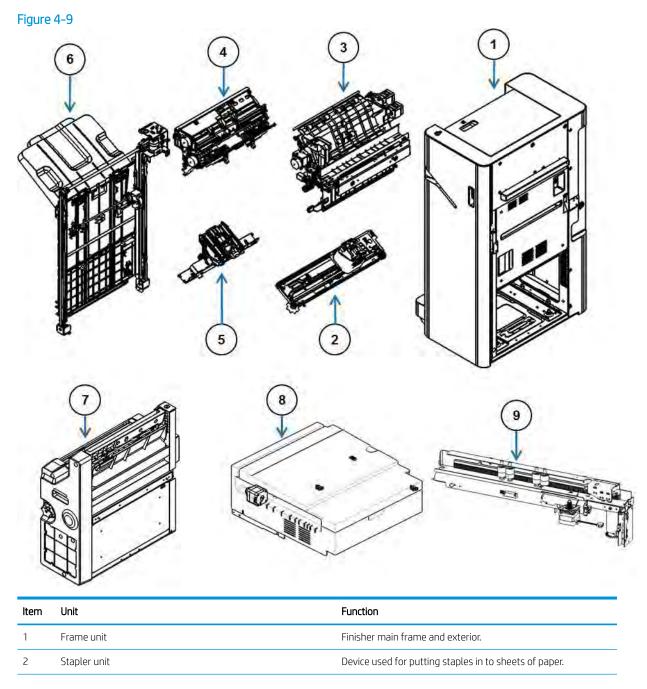


Table 4-7	Punch unit	(continued)
-----------	------------	-------------

ltem	Part code	Description	Function
S46		AS-Sensor	Punch Scan Home Motor
S47		AS-Sensor	Hole Punch Hopper Sensor
P4		AS-PCB Punch	Punch PCA
P5		AS-PCB Punch Sensor	Punch Scan Sensor PCA

### Each unit functions



### (continued)

ltem	Unit	Function
3	Feed unit	Transports the paper to the compile and eject unit.
4	Compile unit	Compiles the paper.
5	Eject unit	Transports the stacked paper to the tray.
6	Stacker unit	Stacks the stapled papers on the tray.
7	Booklet unit	Folds paper, completes stapling jobs, and transports paper to the tray.
8	Bridge Unit	Transports the paper from the main machine to the finisher entrance.
9	Punch unit	Device used for punching on the paper.

### PCA connection information

### **Finisher PCA**

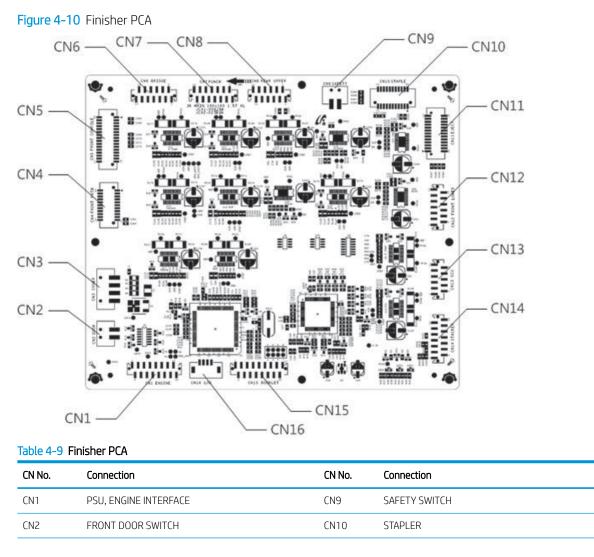
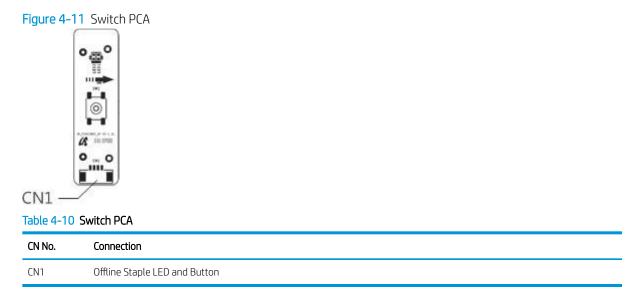


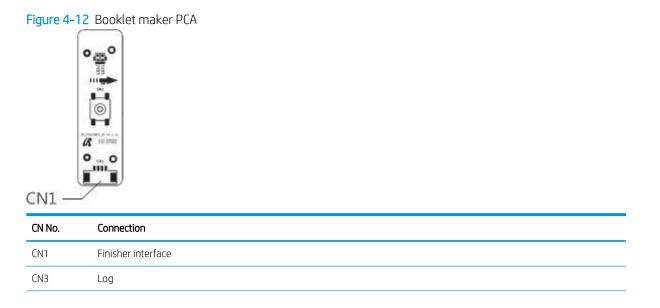
Table 4-9	<b>Finisher PCA</b>	(continued)
-----------	---------------------	-------------

CN No.	Connection	CN No.	Connection
CN3	TOP DOOR SWITCH	CN11	EJECTOR
CN4	FRONT PATH	CN12	FRONT LOWER
CN5	FRONT COMPILE	CN13	SCU
CN6	BRIDGE UNIT	CN14	STACKER
CN7	PUNCH	CN15	BOOKLET
CN8	REAR UPPER	CN16	LOG

#### Switch PCA



#### Booklet maker PCA



CN No.	Connection
CN4	Stapler/Feed Booklet Entrance Sensor
CN5	Booklet Feed Entrance Motor/TE Presser Motor
CN6	Blade Home Sensor/Booklet Tamper Home Sensor/ Booklet Compile Paper Sensor
CN7	Booklet Paddle Motor/Separate Pawl Motor
CN8	Fold Output Paper Sensor/Guide Home Sensor/C Fold Motor
CN9	Stopper Solenoid/Stopper Moving Motor
CN10	Folding Roller Motor/Blade Motor

# Service approach

CAUTION: When working on the product, do not pick up the unit by the output tray, which will detach under the weight of the product.

## Precautions when replacing parts

#### Precautions when assembling and disassembling

- Use only HP approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, product name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct. Failure to do so might result in damage to the printer, circuit overload, fire, or electric shock.
- Do not make unauthorized changes or additions to the printer. Unauthorized changes might cause the printer to malfunction and create electric shock or fire hazards.
- Use caution when dismantling the unit. Take note of the location of each screw or other part. This printer contains 19 different screws. Using the wrong screw might lead to system failure, short circuit or electric shock.
- Do not disassemble the laser scanner assembly. Once the laser scanner assembly is disassembled, dust might enter the mirror chamber and will seriously degrade print quality. There are no serviceable parts inside the laser scanner assembly.
- Regularly check the condition of the power cable, plug and socket. Bad contacts might lead to overheating and fire. Damaged cables might lead to electric shock or unit malfunction.

#### Precautions when handling PCA

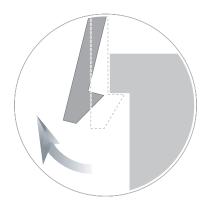
Static electric might damage a PCA. Use approved, anti-static precautions when handling or storing a PCA. Service personnel should use grounded ESD straps and/or mats when handling PCAs.

- Precautions when moving and storing a PCA
  - Keep PCA in a conductive case, anti-static bag, or wrapped in aluminum foil.
  - Do not store a PCA where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Precautions when replacing a PCA

- Disconnect power cables before disconnecting other cables.
- Do not touch any soldered connections, connector terminals, or other electronic parts when handling insulated parts.
- Precautions when checking a PCA
  - Touch a grounded area of the printer chassis to discharge static electric charge before touching a PCA.
  - Do not touch a PCA with bare hands or metal objects. Doing so might create a short circuit or cause electric shock. Use caution when handling a PCA with moving parts such as sensors, motors, or lamps, as they might become very hot.
  - Use caution when fitting and removing screws. Watch for hidden screens. Make sure that the correct screw is used and make sure that when toothed washers are removed, they are refitted in their original positions.
  - Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

#### **Releasing plastic latches**

Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches can break easily; release them carefully. To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.



## Before performing service

- Remove all paper from the product.
- Turn off the power using the power button.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridges.
- Remove the Tray 2 cassette.

## ESD precautions

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when

removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

## After performing service

- Plug in the power cable.
- Verify the functions of the printer that might have been impacted by service procedures. Make sure the printer is in complete working order.
- Replace any accessories removed for service.

## Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

#### Print-quality test

- 1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
- 2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
- 3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
- 4. Print a configuration page.
- 5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
- 6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

## Order parts, accessories, and supplies

#### Ordering

Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order genuine HP parts or accessories	www.hp.com/buy/parts
	or
	partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported Web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply Web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

## Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the diagrams in this chapter can be ordered. Refer to the table following the diagram or the parts lists at the end of this chapter to determine if a part is orderable.

# Part diagrams, removal and replacement procedures (stapler/stacker and booklet finishers)

- ESD precautions
- Finishers (Booklet finisher and stapler/stacker finisher)
- <u>Top output bin</u>
- <u>Right top cover</u>
- <u>Top cover</u>
- <u>Front door</u>
- <u>Rear cover</u>
- Front cover
- <u>Front lower cover</u>
- <u>Booklet tray</u>
- <u>Caster cover</u>
- <u>Lower shield assembly</u>
- <u>Upper shield assembly</u>
- <u>Controller PCA</u>
- <u>Stapler unit</u>
- <u>Dummy feed guide</u>
- <u>Top jam access cover</u>
- <u>Top lower feed assembly</u>
- Ejector unit
- <u>Front tamper unit</u>
- <u>Rear tamper unit</u>
- Feed entrance motor (M1)
- Feed exit motor (M2)
- Buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3)
- Front tamper motor (M6)
- <u>Rear tamper motor (M7)</u>
- <u>SCU motor (M10)</u>
- <u>Main tray moving motor (M11)</u>
- <u>Booklet finisher front cover</u>

- <u>Booklet finisher</u>
- Booklet finisher PCA
- <u>Booklet finisher fold stopper unit</u>
- Booklet feed entrance motor (M13)
- <u>TE presser motor (M14)</u>
- <u>Stopper moving motor (M16)</u>
- <u>Separate pawl motor (M17)</u>
- Folding roller motor (M18)
- Blade motor (M19)
- <u>C fold motor (M20)</u>

## ESD precautions

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when

removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

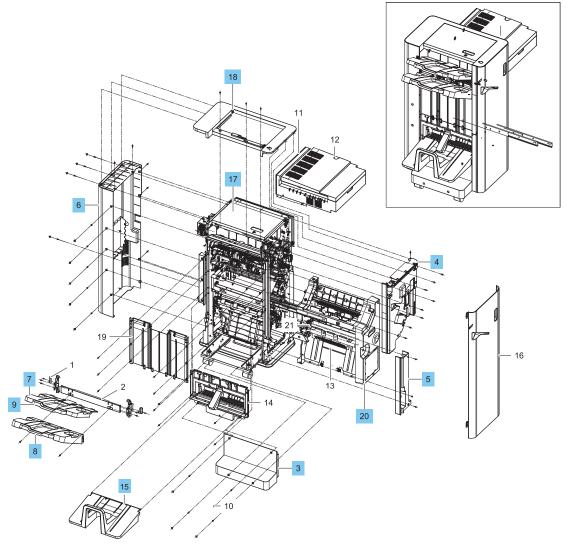
Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

## Finishers (Booklet finisher and stapler/stacker finisher)

- Booklet finisher 1
- <u>Booklet finisher 2</u>
- <u>Booklet finisher 3</u>
- <u>Booklet finisher 4</u>
- Booklet finisher 5
- Booklet finisher 6
- Booklet finisher 7
- Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold exit
- Low exit, hb motor, and top guide
- <u>SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide</u>
- Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor
- Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam
- FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade
- Fold roller, main blade, and top frame

- <u>Three fold blade</u>
- Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide
- Entrance guide, mid jam, and main exit
- Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor
- <u>Front alignment (tamper)</u>
- <u>Rear alignment (tamper)</u>
- <u>Shield</u>
- PCA bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle
- Finisher sub booklet
- Bridge Unit

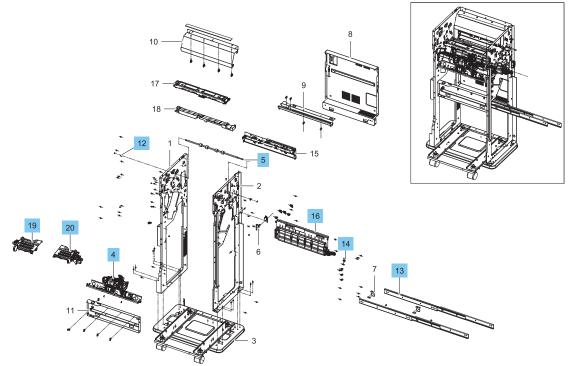
Figure 4-13 Booklet finisher 1



## Table 4-11 Booklet finisher 1

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
3	Caster cover	JC63-04985B	1
4	Cover, front	JC63-04986B	1
5	Cover-f, lower	JC63-04987B	1
6	Cover, rear	JC63-04988B	1
7	Cover-t, tray 2	JC63-04996B	1
8	Cover-m, tray	JC63-05002B	1
9	Cover-s, tray	JC63-05003B	2
15 (1)	Tray - guide booklet finisher	JC61-07253B	1
15 (2)	Cover - tray booklet finisher	JC63-04978B	1
17	Finisher sub-top door	JC90-01445B	1
18	Finisher sub-top cover	JC90-01446B	1
20	Finisher sub-cover f bm	JC90-01417B	1
Not shown	Harness, finisher to copier PWR	JC39-02308A	1

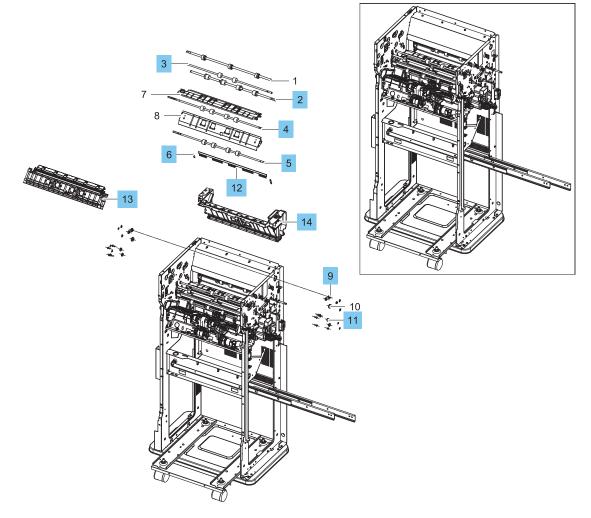
Figure 4-14 Booklet finisher 2



#### Table 4-12 Booklet finisher 2

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
4	Finisher sub-ejector unit	JC90-01409A	1
5	Roller, main-feed entrance	JC66-04722A	1
12	Bearing ball	6601-001478	6
13	Rail	6102-003369	2
14	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
16	Finisher sub-right jam	JC90-01457A	1
19	Finisher sub-tamper rear	JC82-00898A	1
20	Finisher sub-tamper front	JC82-00901A	1
Not shown	Finisher sub-exit main	JC90-01451A	1
Not shown	Harness, top cover	JC39-02310A	1
Not shown	Finisher sub-booklet unit	JC909-01416A	1

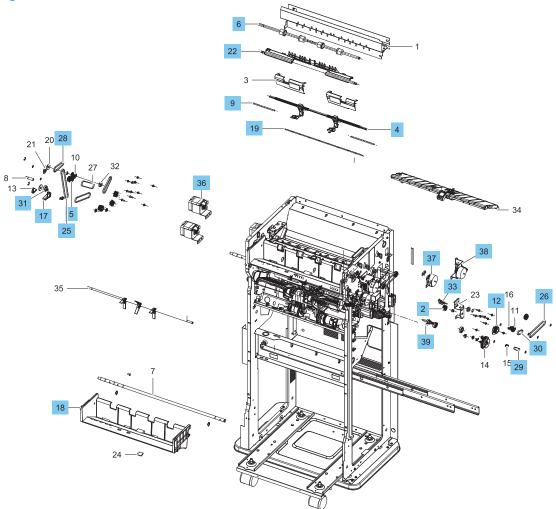
Figure 4-15 Booklet finisher 3



#### Table 4-13 Booklet finisher 3

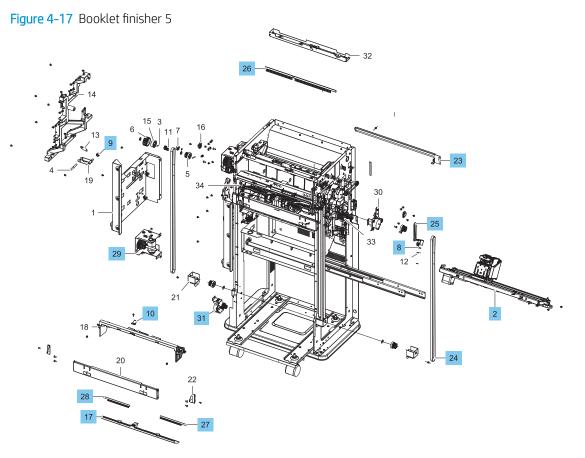
Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Feed roller main exit	JC66-04726A	1
3	Feed roller top-mid exit	JC66-04725A	1
4	Feed roller mid-exit	JC66-04724A	1
5	Finisher sub feed	JC90-01672A	1
6	Spring	JC61-07414A	2
9	Bushing	JC61-00426A	2
11	Bearing ball	6601-001478	6
12	Main-brush, exit	JC67-00817A	1
13	Finisher sub exit	JC90-01674A	1
14	Finisher sub-top jam	JC90-01455A	1

Figure 4-16 Booklet finisher 4



#### Table 4-14 Booklet finisher 4

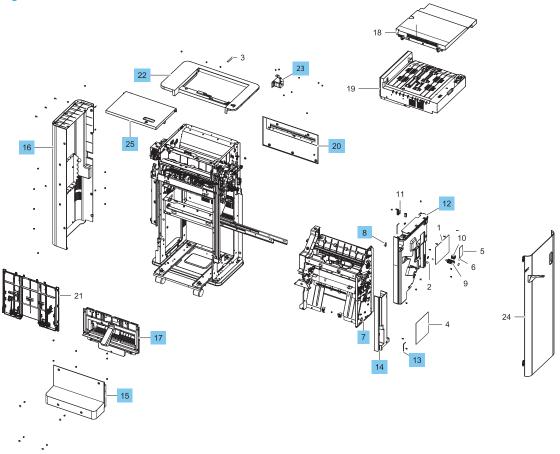
Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Finisher sub-clutch div	JC90-01474A	1
4	Finisher sub-end fence	JC90-01466A	1
5	Clutch drive	JC90-01404A	1
6	Roller, top-feed exit	JC66-04727A	1
9	Roller, feed	JC66-04523A	1
12	Gear	JC66-04602A	1
17	Actuator	JC66-04526A	1
18	Cover-t, tray	JC63-04995B	1
19	Seal	JC62-01328A	1
22	Guide	JC61-07206A	1
25	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003649	1
26	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003647	2
28	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003645	2
29	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003640	1
30	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003639	1
31	Bearing ball	6601-003062	2
33	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
36	Finisher sub-hb mtr	JC90-01459A	2
37	Finisher sub-ef mtr	JC90-01467A	1
38	Finisher sub-drv buff	JC90-01453A	1
39	Finisher sub-div cam	JC90-01458A	1
43	Solenoid	JC90-01675A	1
44	Motor - BM exit cam	JC90-01673A	1



#### Table 4-15 Booklet finisher 5

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Finisher sub-staple unit	JC90-01412A	1
8	Actuator	JC66-04528A	1
9	Roller, feed	JC66-04523A	1
10	Ground	JC63-04984A	1
17	Guide	JC61-07192A	1
18	Guide	JC61-07189A	1
23	Frame mount	JC61-06663A	1
24	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003652	2
25	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003270	1
26	Top-brush exit	JC67-00818A	1
27	Compiler-brush, ceiling front	JC67-00820A	1
28	Compiler-brush, ceiling rear	JC67-00819A	1
29	Tray motor	JC90-01415B	1
31	Motor	JC90-01414A	1
Not shown	PCA - 3K main	JC92-02791A	1
Not shown	E ring	6044-000125	1
Not shown	Cable clamp	6502-001131	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher rear upper	JC39-02312A	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher front upper	JC39-02313A	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher punch relay	JC39-02314A	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher staple relay	JC39-02315A	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher staple safety	JC39-02316A	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher eject relay	JC39-02317A	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher front lower	JC39-02318A	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher stack relay	JC39-02319A	1
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher to copier PWR	JC39-02308A	1

Figure 4-18 Booklet finisher 6



#### Table 4-16 Booklet finisher 6

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
8	Magnet	JC81-08263A	1
7	Finisher sub-booklet unit	JC90-01416A	1
12	Front cover	JC63-04986B	1
13	Hinge	JC66-04767A	2
14	Cover-f, lower	JC63-04987B	1
15	Caster	JC63-04985B	1
16	Rear cover	JC63-04988B	1
17	Finisher sub-tray bm unit	JC90-01417B	1
20	Finisher sub-inlet guide	JC90-01448B	1
22	Finisher sub-top cover	JC90-01446B	1
23	Finisher sub-HB mtr	JC90-01402B	1
25	Finisher sub-top door	JC90-01445B	1
Not shown	Stack full harness	JC39-02331A	1
Not shown	Csp acuator duplex	JC81-07930A	1
Not shown	CS spring acuator stack	JC81-09396A	1

Figure 4-19 Booklet finisher 7

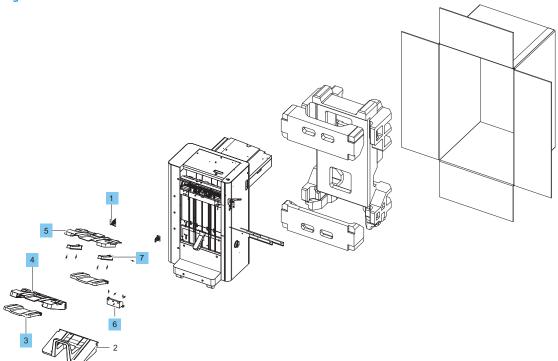


Table 4-17 Booklet finisher 7

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher – engine side bracket	JC90-01442A	2
3	Cover-s, tray	JC63-05003B	2
4	Cover-m, tray	JC63-05002B	1
5	Cover-t, tray 2	JC63-04996B	1
6	Shipping lock for booklet	JC61-007149A	1
7	Tray support	JC61-06668A	2

## Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold exit

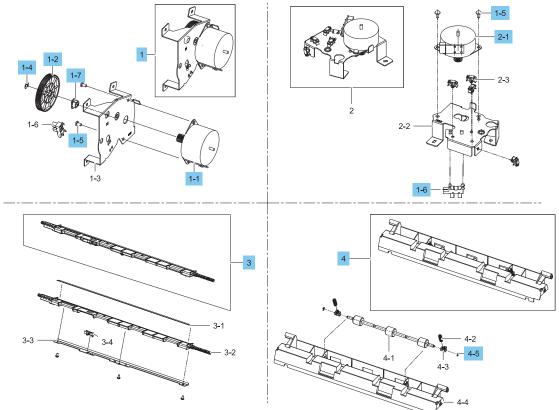


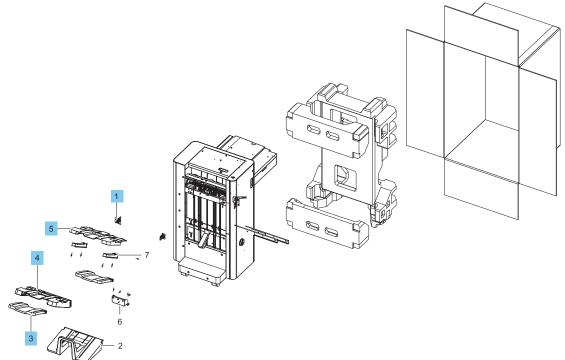
Figure 4-20 Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold exit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-3 fold motor	JC90-01396A	1
1-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-01154A	1
1-2	Gear	JC66-04579A	1
1-4	E-ring	6044-000125	2
1-5	Screw, machine M3	6001-000130	4
1-6	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
1-7	Bushing	JC61-00423A	1
2-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-01153A	1
3	Finisher sub-curl pawl	JC90-01398A	1
4	Finisher sub - 3 fold exit	JC90-01399A	1
4-5	C-ring	6044-000159	1

Table 4-18 Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold exit

## Low exit, hb motor, and top guide

Figure 4-21 Low exit, hb motor, and top guide, floor standing finisher



Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-low exit	JC90-01400A	1
1-2	Roller, exit, fold	JC66-04744A	1
1-3	Roller, feed-fold exit	JC66-04721A	1
1-7	Bushing	JC61-00426A	4
1-8	E-ring	6044-000129	2
2-2	Motor, step	JC31-00163B	2
2-3	Cable clamp	6502-001131	1
3	Finisher sub-guide top	JC90-01406A	1
3-3	Spring, es	JC61-07431A	2
3-4	Spring, es	JC61-07430A	4

Table 4-19 Low exit, hb motor, and top guide, floor standing finisher

## SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide

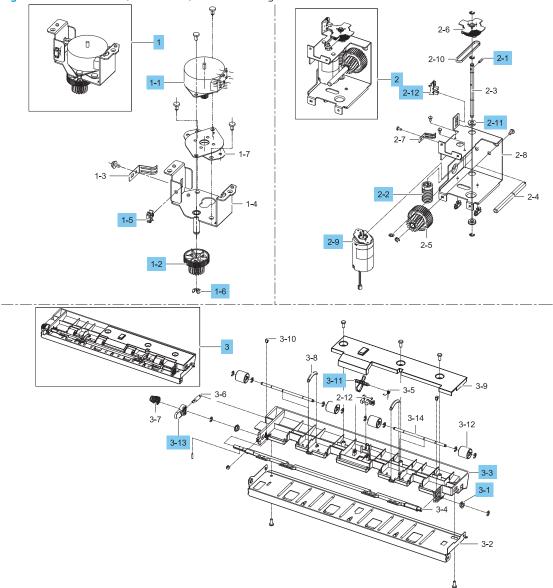


Figure 4-22 SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Motor, lift assembly	JC90-01414A	1
1-1	Motor, step	JC93-01156A	1
1-2	Gear	JC66-04604A	1
1-5	Cable clamp	6502-001131	1
1-6	E-ring	6044-000125	2
2	Motor, tray	JC90-01415B	1
2-1	Cartridge, ICT-PIN	JC70-40542A	1
2-2	Stacker, CSP-worm	JC81-07637A	1
2-9	Motor, lift	JC31-00178B	1
2-11	Bearing ball	6601-001478	3
2-12	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
3	Finisher sub-entrance guide	JC90-01424A	1
3-1	Bushing	JC61-02372A	2
3-3	Harness, 3K finisher top cover	JC39-02310A	2
3-11	Actuator	JC66-04520A	1
3-13	Actuator	JC66-04644A	1

#### Table 4-20 SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide

## Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor

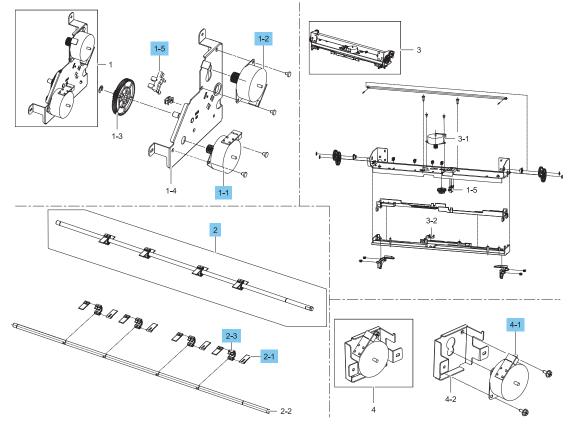


Figure 4-23 Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor

Table 4-21	Entrance motor, lo	ow paddle, alignment,	and paddle motor
------------	--------------------	-----------------------	------------------

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-01155A	1
1-2	Driver motor, step	JC93-01152A	1
1-5	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
2	Finisher sub-low paddle	JC90-01429A	1
2-1	Roller, feed	JC66-04719A	8
2-3	Paddle holder	JC61-07225A	4
4-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-01001A	1

## Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam

Figure 4-24 Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam 2-7 1-3 2-3 2**-**5 1-2 2-6 3-1 3-3 7 3-9 0 3-6 7~ 0 3-14 -2 3 3-13 · Que

3-2

( De . Del le De

3-5

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-01155A	1
1-2	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
2	Finisher sub-top lower	JC90-01454A	1
2-1	Actuator, top exit	JC66-04525A	1
2-3	Spring, TS	JC61-07411A	1
2-6	Harness, 3k finisher exit path	JC39-02322A	1
2-7	Sensor	JC32-00020A	1
3	Finisher sub-top jam	JC90-01455A	2
3-6	Seal	JC62-01328A	1
3-7	Spring, ts	JC61-07417A	1
3-8	Spring, es	JC61-07415A	4
3-9	Spring, ts	JC61-07410A	1
3-10	Spring, es	JC61-07409A	2
3-11	Guide, diverter	JC61-07205A	1
3-12	Guide, top jam	JC61-07196A	1

## FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade

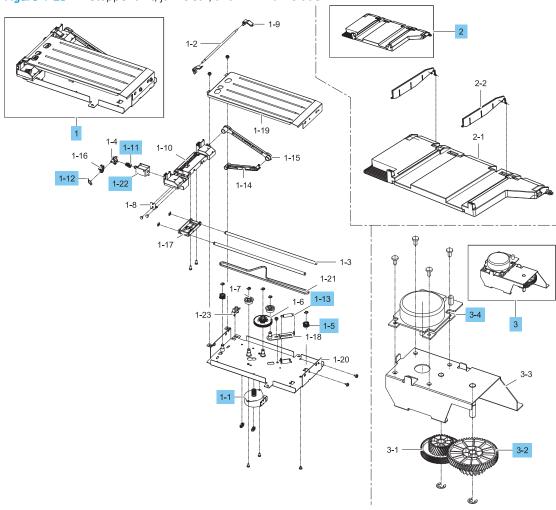


Figure 4-25 FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-fd stopper unit	JC90-01432A	1
1-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-01155A	1
1-5	Timing pulley	JC66-04583A	2
1-11	Spring, cs	JC61-07403A	1
1-12	Spring, ts	JC61-07401A	1
1-13	Spring, es	JC61-07400A	1
1-22	Solenoid	JC33-00038A	1
2	Finisher sub-jam clear	JC90-01433A	1
3	Finisher sub-bkt main blade	JC90-01435A	1
3-1	Gear, helical 4	JC66-04595A	1
3-2	Gear, helical 3	JC66-04594A	1
3-4	Motor BLDC, Type 2	JC31-00144A	1

Table 4-23 FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade

# Fold roller, main blade, and top frame

Figure 4-26 Fold roller, main blade, and top frame

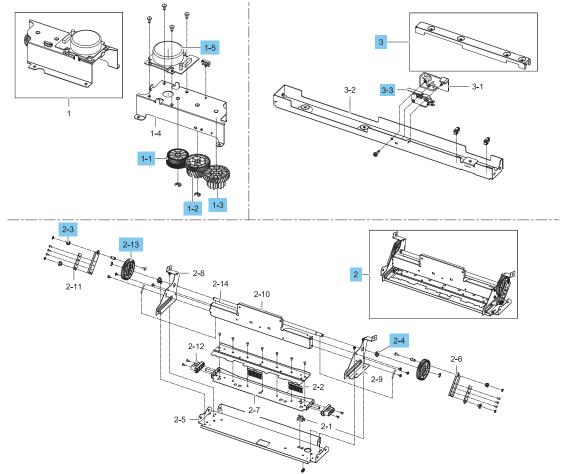


Table 4-24 Fold roller, main blade, and top frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Gear, helical 2	JC66-04593A	1
1-2	Gear, helical 1	JC66-04592A	1
1-3	Gear, double	JC66-04573A	1
1-5	Motor BLDC, Type 2	JC31-00144A	1
2	Finisher sub-main blade	JC90-01437A	1
2-3	Bushing	JC61-00423A	1
2-4	Bushing	JC61-00426A	2
2-13	Gear, helical	JC66-04591A	2
3	Finisher sub-top frame	JC90-01440A	1
3-3	Harness, 3k finisher top cover	JC39-02310A	1

## Three fold blade

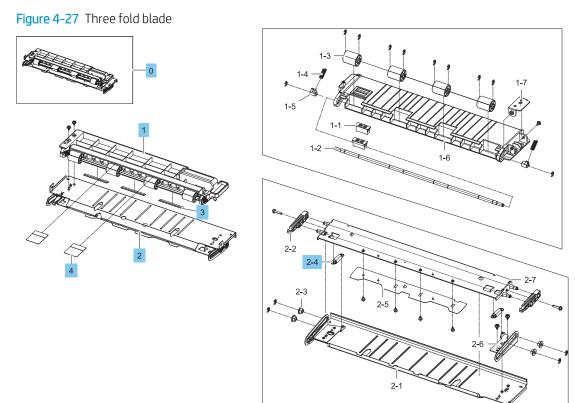


Table 4-25 Three fold blade

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Finisher sub-3 fold blade	JC90-01438A	1
1	Finisher sub-exit roller	JC90-01395A	1
2	Finisher sub-guide three fold	JC90-01394A	1
2-4	Spring, es	JC61-07391A	2
3	Sheet-jam guide	JC63-05044A	3
4	Sheet-fold exit	JC63-05041A	2

## Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide

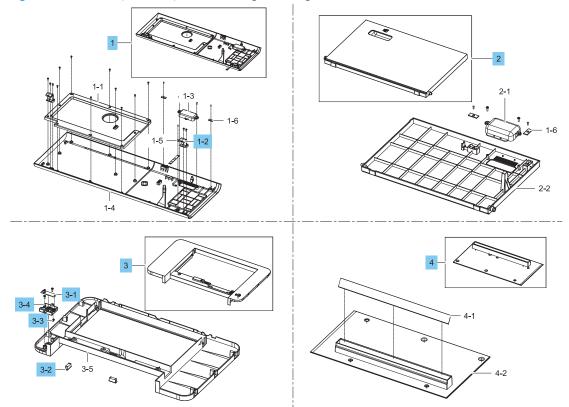


Figure 4-28 Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide

Table 4-26	Door, top door, top	o cover, and re	egistration guide
------------	---------------------	-----------------	-------------------

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-door	JC90-01444A	1
1-2	Cover, link	JC63-05004A	2
2	Finisher sub-top door	JC90-01445B	1
3	Finisher sub-top cover	JC90-01446B	1
3-1	PCA, 3k switch	JC92-02789A	1
3-2	Magnet, as	JC81-08263A	1
3-3	Button lens	JC64-00996A	1
3-4	Button, staple	JC64-00995A	1
4	Finisher Sub - Inlet Guide	JC90-01448B	1

## Entrance guide, mid jam, and main exit

Figure 4-29 Entrance guide, mid jam, and main exit

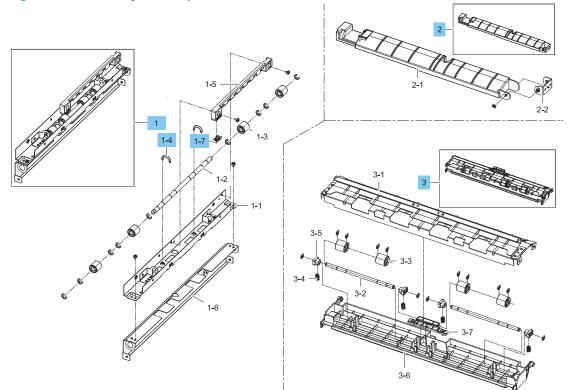


Table 4-27 Entrance guide, mid jam, and main exit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-ent guide	JC90-01449A	2
1-4	Spring, ES	JC61-07408A	2
1-7	Sensor, rp	JC32-00020A	1
2	Finisher sub-mid jam	JC90-01450A	1
3	Finisher sub-exit main	JC90-01451A	1

## Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor

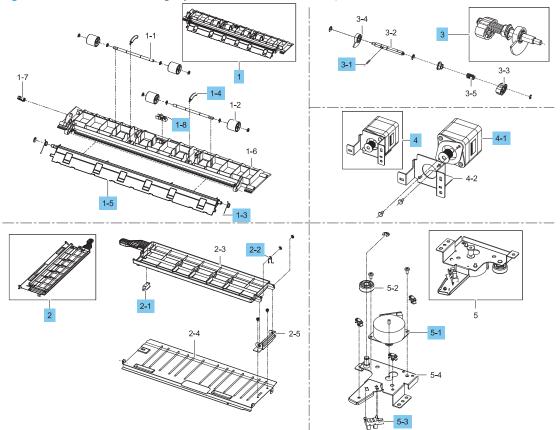
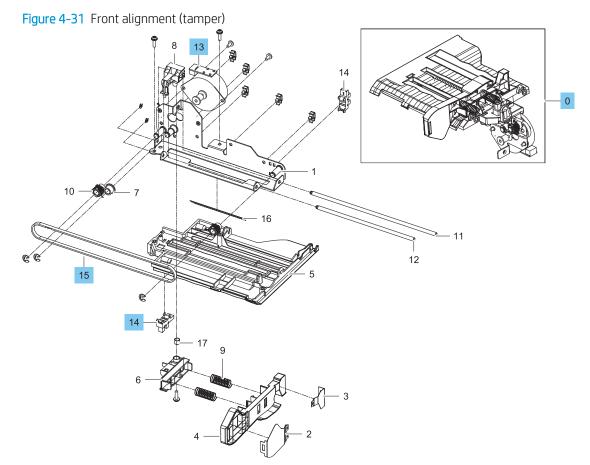


Figure 4-30 Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub exit	JC90-01674A	1
1-3	Spring, TS	JC61-07413A	2
1-4	Spring, ES	JC61-07409A	2
1-5	Guide, buff div	JC61-07204A	1
1-8	Sensor, rp	JC32-00020A	1
2	Finisher sub-right jam	JC90-01457A	1
2-1	Magnet	JC81-08263A	1
2-2	Spring, TS	JC61-07418A	1
3	Finisher sub-div cam	JC90-01458A	1
3-1	Ict-pin, paralled, p/u	JC70-40360A	1
4	Finisher sub-hb motor	JC90-01459A	2
4-1	Motor step, ip	JC31-00163B	2
5-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-01001A	1
5-3	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1

Table 4-28 Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor

# Front alignment (tamper)

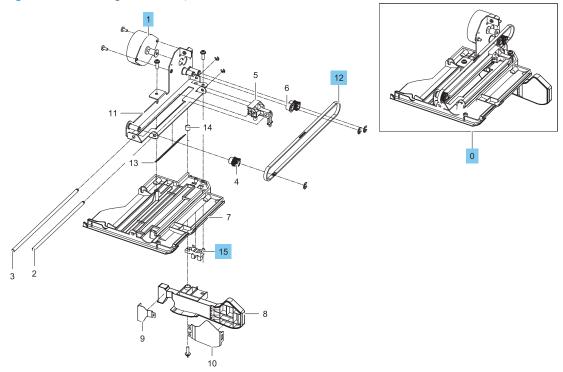


### Table 4-29 Front alignment (tamper)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Finisher sub-tamper, front	JC90-01464A	1
13	Driver motor, step	JC93-01001A	1
14	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
15	Timing belt, gear	6602-003644	1

# Rear alignment (tamper)

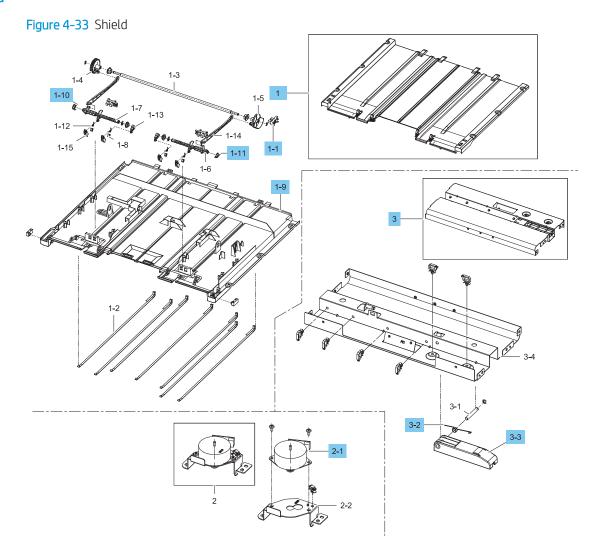




### Table 4-30 Rear alignment (tamper)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Finisher sub-tamper, rear	JC90-01465A	1
1	Driver motor, step	JC93-01001A	1
12	Timing belt, gear	6602-003644	1
15	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1

# Shield



## Table 4-31 Shield

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-shield	JC90-01475A	1
1-1	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
1-9	Cover, stacker	JC63-04999B	1
1-10	Spring, ts	JC61-07428A	1
1-11	Spring, ts	JC61-07427A	1
2-1	Drive motor, step	JC93-01001A	1
3	Finisher sub-base low	JC90-01476A	1
3-2	Spring, ts	JC61-07392A	1
3-3	Leg bracket	JC61-07279A	1

## PCA bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle

Figure 4-34 PCA bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle

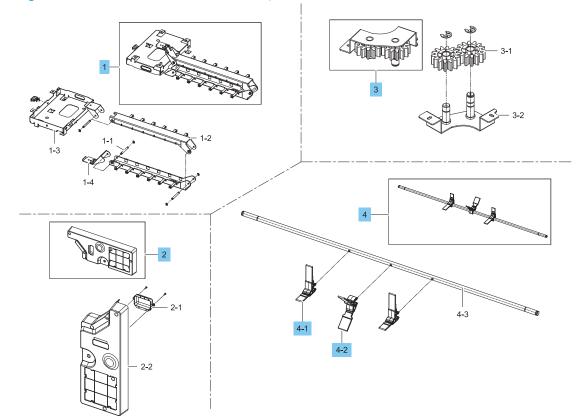


Table 4-32 PCA bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	BM PCA wiring loom assy	JC90-01477A	1
2	Finisher sub-cover f bm	JC90-01478B	1
3	Finisher sub-idle fold	JC90-01479A	1
4	Finisher sub-paddle	JC90-01480A	1
4-1	Finisher sub-paddle, wing	JC90-01463A	2
4-2	Finisher sub-paddle, mid	JC90-01462A	1

# Finisher sub booklet

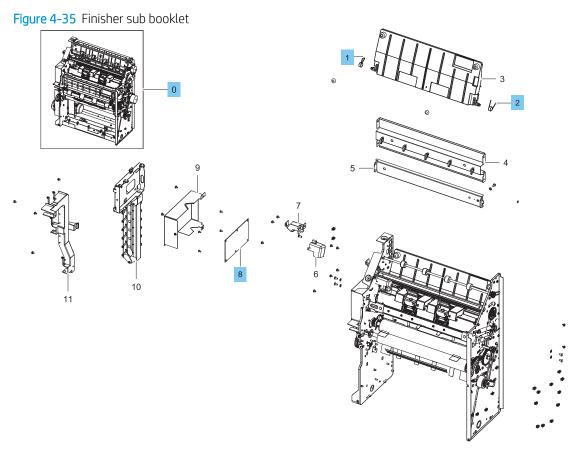


Table 4-33 Finisher sub booklet

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Finisher sub-booklet 4	JC90-01502A	1
1	Spring TS	JC61-07398A	1
2	Spring TS	JC61-07397A	1
8	PCA, bookletmaker	JC92-02790B	1
Not shown	Saddle staple unit	JC81-09881B	1
Not shown	Corner staple unit	JC81-09882B	1

# Bridge Unit

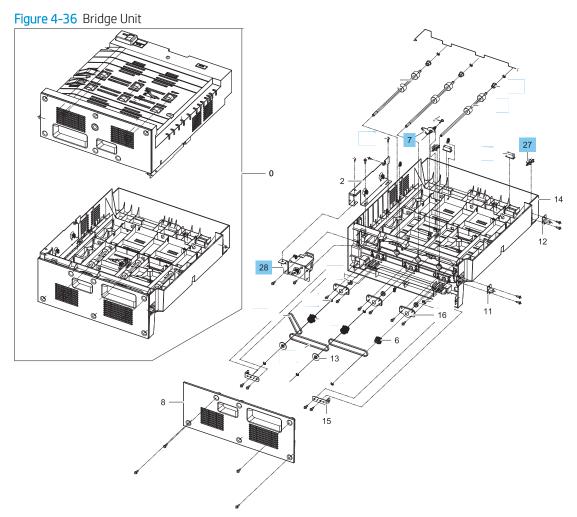


Table 4-34 Bridge Unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
3	Magnet	JC81-08263A	1
4	Roller, brg-feed entrance	JC66-04733A	1
5	Roller, brg-feed	JC66-04732A	2
7	Actuator, sensor	JC66-04569A	1
10	Spring, ts	JC61-07432A	1
17	Bush-6, d(l)	JC61-00884A	3
18	Harness, 3K Finisher Bridge Pa	JC39-02328A	1
19	Harness, 3K Finisher Bridge Sub	JC39-02327A	1
20	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003648	2
21	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003645	1
22	Bearing ball	6601-001478	2
23	Cable clamp	6502-001131	1
24	E-ring	6044-000125	2
25	Screw, tap type m4	6003-001256	4
26	Screw, machine m3	6001-000130	4
27	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	1
28	Finisher sub-hb mtr	JC90-01402A	1
Not shown	Clutch drive	JC90-01404A	1

# Top output bin

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the top output bin</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top output bin on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC63-05002B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Cover, M Tray

#### **Required tools**

• No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the top output bin

A Raise the end of the top output bin (callout 1), and then lift it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-37 Remove the top output bin

### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Right top cover

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the right top cover of the finisher.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC90-01448B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Finisher sub - Inlet guide

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

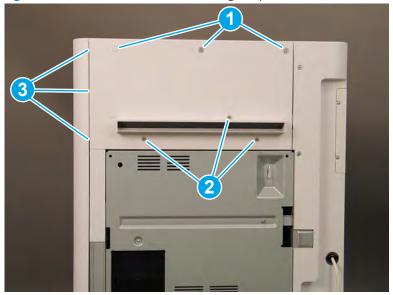
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the right top cover

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- $\Re$  Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-38 Remove six screws and the right top cover



## Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Top cover

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top cover of the finisher.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC90-01446B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

Cover, top

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

### Post service test

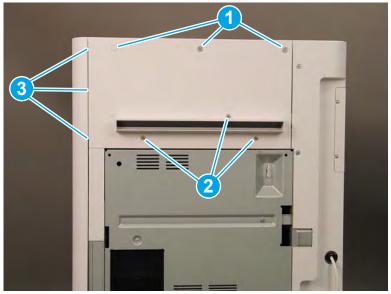
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

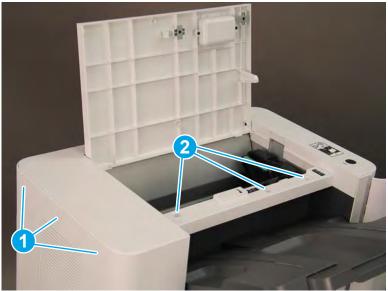
Figure 4-39 Remove six screws and the right top cover



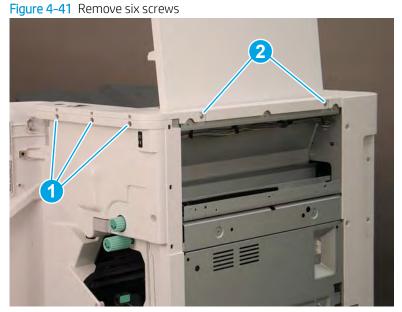
## Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-40 Remove six screws

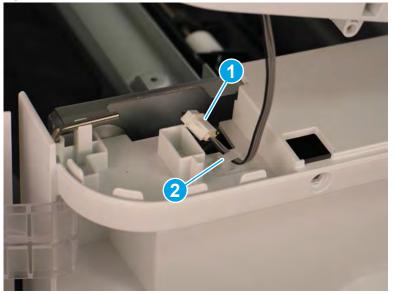


2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.



- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-42 Disconnect one connector and release retainer



🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

### **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Front door

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front door for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC90-01444A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Finisher sub - door

#### **Required tools**

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🛠 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

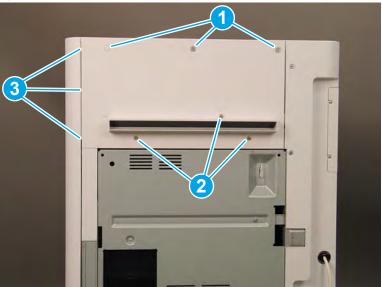
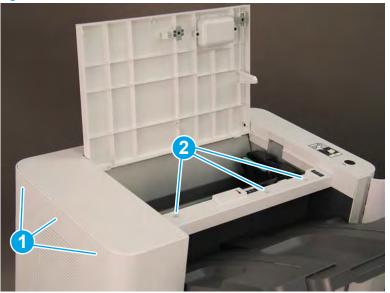


Figure 4-43 Remove six screws and the right top cover

## Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-44 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

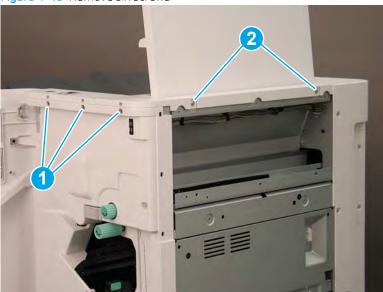
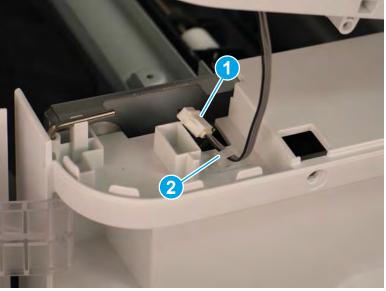


Figure 4-45 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-46 Disconnect one connector and release retainer



☆ Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

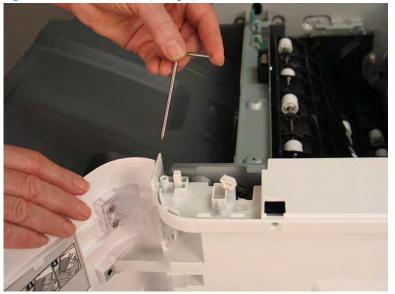
## Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

1.



2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4–48 Remove the top hinge pin



**3.** Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.



Figure 4-49 Release the lower hinge pin

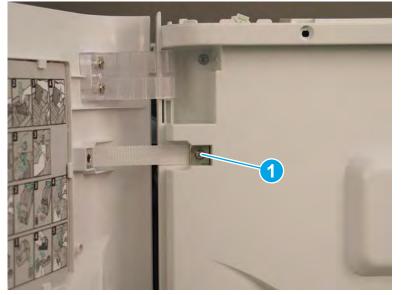
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 4-50 Remove the lower hinge pin



- 5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-51 Remove one screw and the front door



## Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Rear cover

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC63-04988B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Cover, rear

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

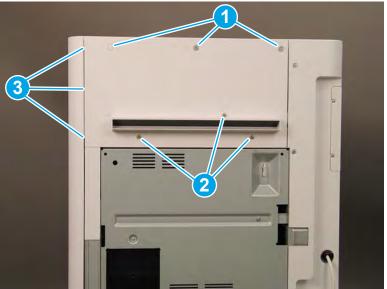
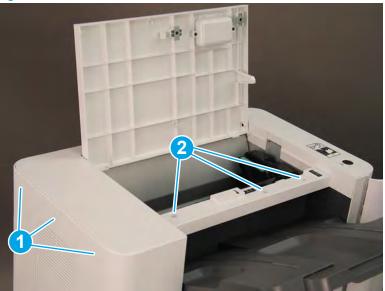


Figure 4–52 Remove six screws and the right top cover

# Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-53 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

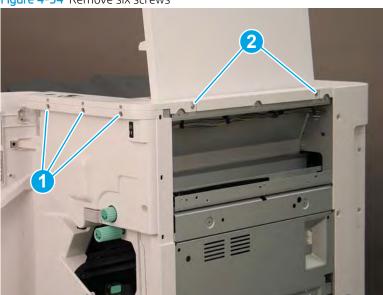


Figure 4-54 Remove six screws

- **3.** Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

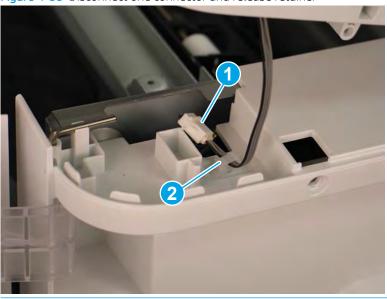


Figure 4-55 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

### Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

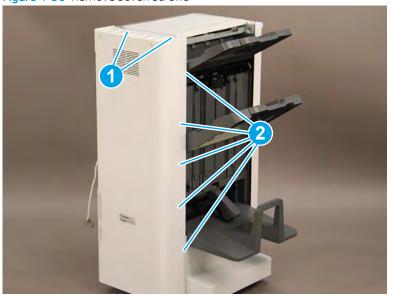


Figure 4-56 Remove seven screws

- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
  - **WOTE:** Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
  - 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-57 Remove four screws and the rear cover

# Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

**IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Front cover

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC63-04986B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Cover, front

#### **Required tools**

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

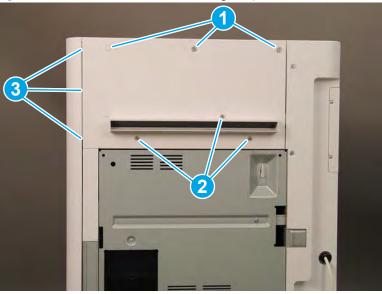
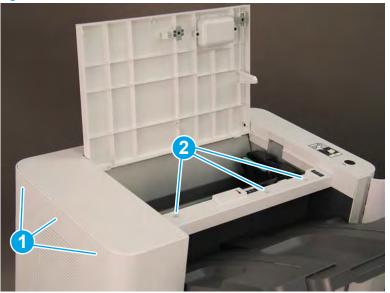


Figure 4-58 Remove six screws and the right top cover

# Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-59 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

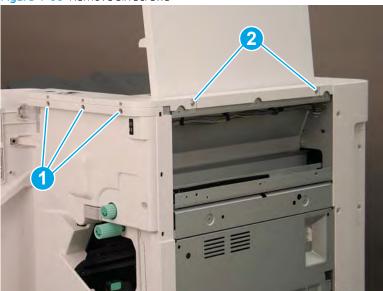


Figure 4-60 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-61 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

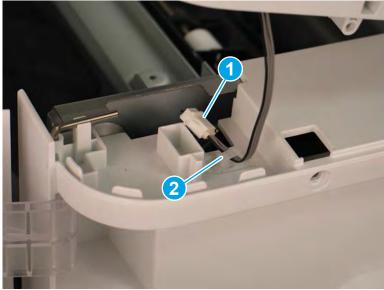
☆ Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

# Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

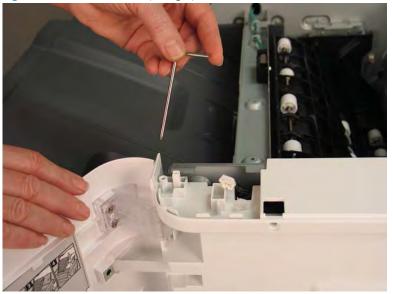
Figure 4-62 Lift the top hinge pin





2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4–63 Remove the top hinge pin



**3.** Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.



Figure 4-64 Release the lower hinge pin

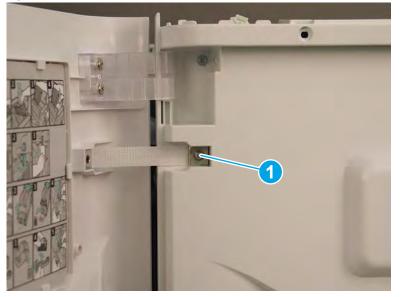
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 4-65 Remove the lower hinge pin



- 5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

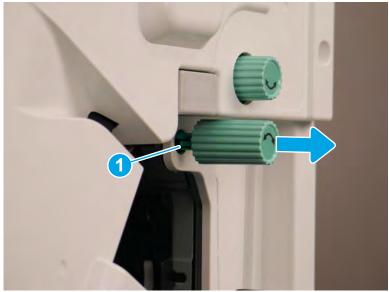
Figure 4-66 Remove one screw and the front door



# Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-67 Remove the jam-access knob



- 2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
- 3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 4-68 Remove one screw

- 4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.
  - 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

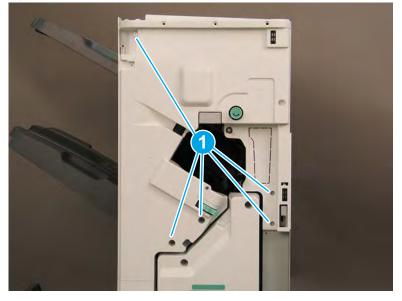


Figure 4-69 Remove five screws and the front cover

# Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Front lower cover

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the front lower cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front lower cover for the finisher.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

### JC63-04987B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Cover - tray booklet finisher

#### **Required tools**

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

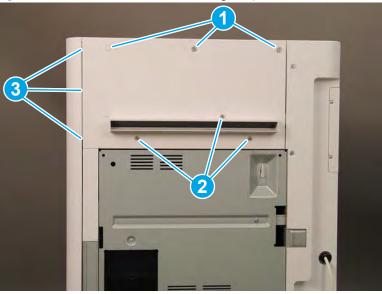
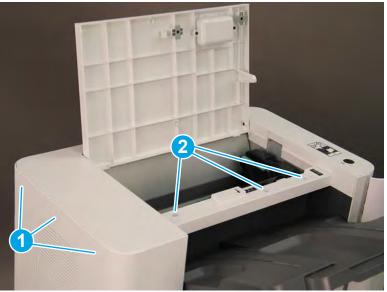


Figure 4-70 Remove six screws and the right top cover

# Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.





2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

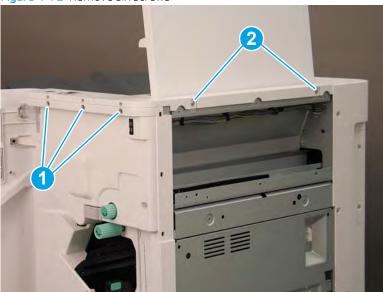


Figure 4-72 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

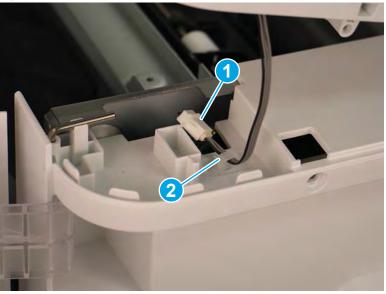
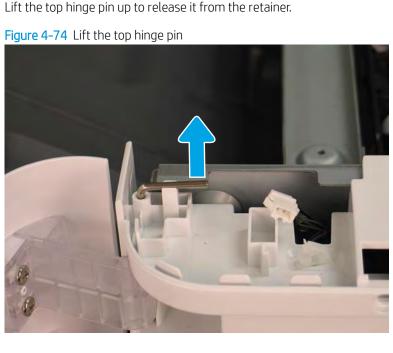


Figure 4-73 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

☆ Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

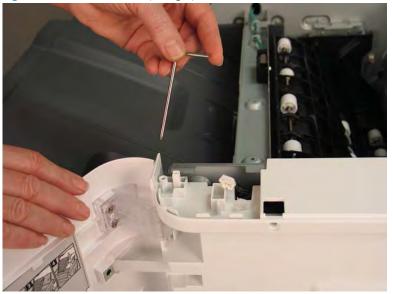
# Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.



2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-75 Remove the top hinge pin



**3.** Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.



Figure 4-76 Release the lower hinge pin

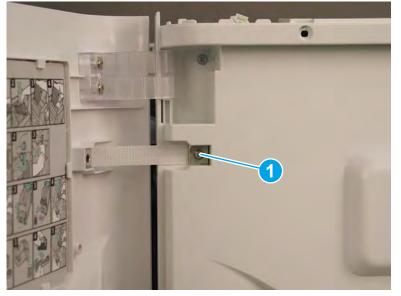
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 4-77 Remove the lower hinge pin



- 5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

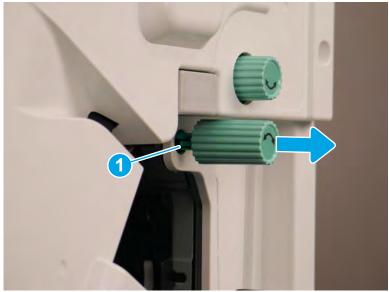
Figure 4-78 Remove one screw and the front door



# Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-79 Remove the jam-access knob



- 2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
- 3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 4-80 Remove one screw



- 4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

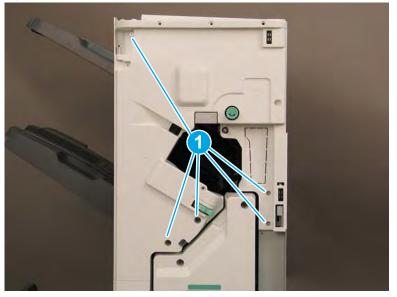
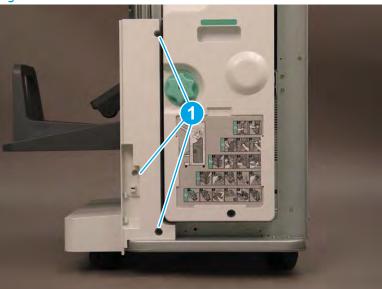


Figure 4-81 Remove five screws and the front cover

# Step 5: Remove the front lower cover (finisher)

- Remove three machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front lower cover.
- 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-82 Remove three screws and the front lower cover



# Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# **Booklet tray**

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the booklet tray</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet tray on the finisher.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC61-07253B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Tray - guide booklet finisher

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the booklet tray

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

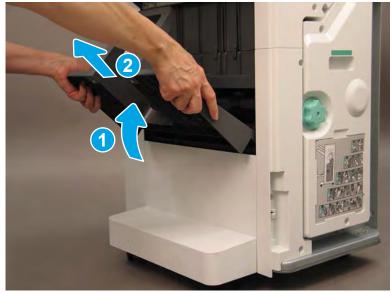


Figure 4-83 Remove the booklet tray

2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

🖹 NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

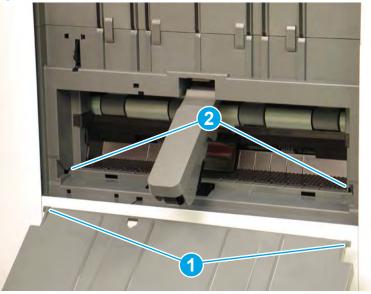


Figure 4-84 Install the booklet tray

# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

### **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Caster cover

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the booklet tray (booklet finishers only)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the caster cover</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the caster cover on the finisher.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC63-04985B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

Caster cover

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the booklet tray (booklet finishers only)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

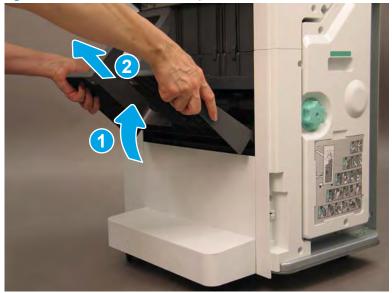


Figure 4-85 Remove the booklet tray

2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

🖹 NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

#### Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

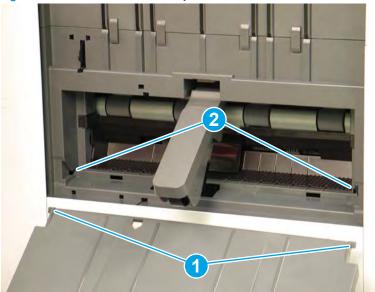


Figure 4-86 Install the booklet tray

### Step 2: Remove the caster cover

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

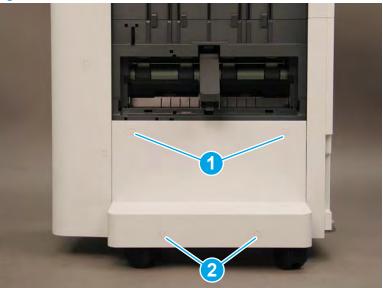


Figure 4-87 Remove four screws

- 2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.
  - Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.



Figure 4-88 Remove the caster cover

# Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Lower shield assembly

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 6: Remove the booklet tray</u>
- <u>Step 7: Remove the caster cover</u>
- <u>Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the lower shield assembly on the finisher.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

### JC90-01417B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Lower shield assembly (finisher)

#### **Required tools**

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

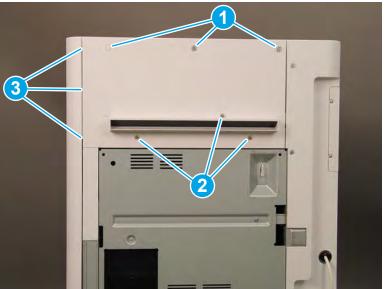
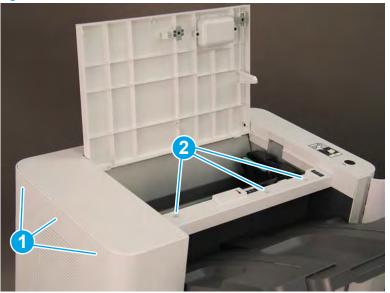


Figure 4-89 Remove six screws and the right top cover

# Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-90 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

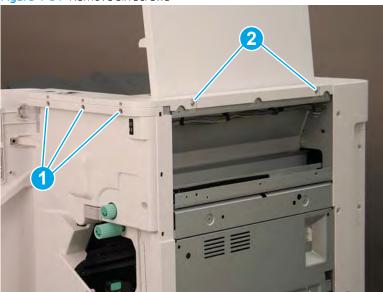


Figure 4-91 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

 Principal Princ

Figure 4-92 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

# Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

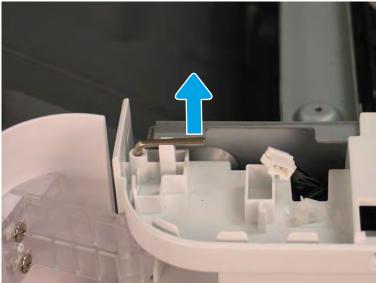
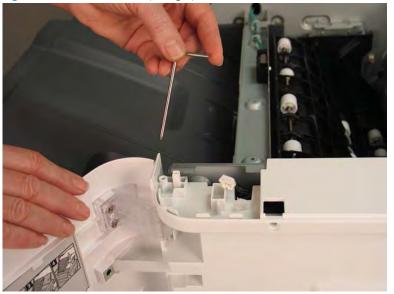


Figure 4-93 Lift the top hinge pin

2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-94 Remove the top hinge pin



**3.** Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.



Figure 4-95 Release the lower hinge pin

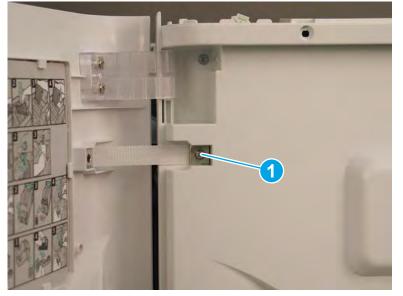
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 4-96 Remove the lower hinge pin



- 5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

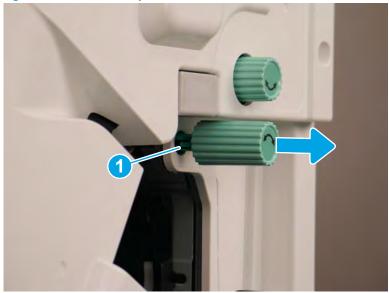
Figure 4-97 Remove one screw and the front door



# Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-98 Remove the jam-access knob



- 2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
- 3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 4-99 Remove one screw



- 4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

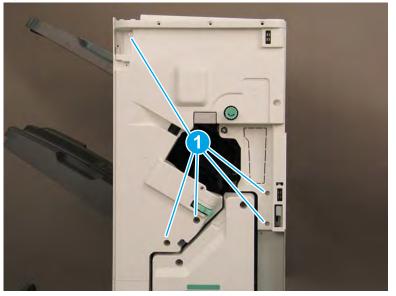


Figure 4-100 Remove five screws and the front cover

# Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

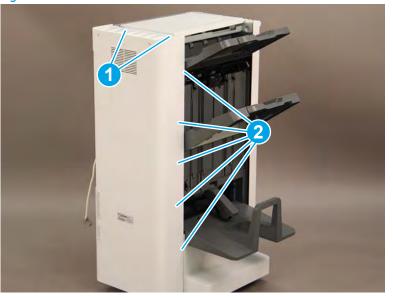


Figure 4–101 Remove seven screws

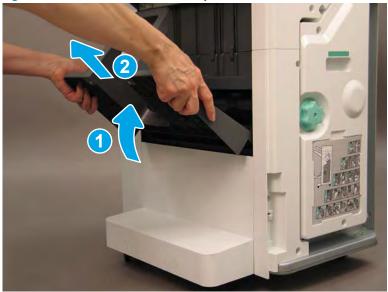
- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- ☆ **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-102 Remove four screws and the rear cover

## Step 6: Remove the booklet tray

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.





2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

**NOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

### Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

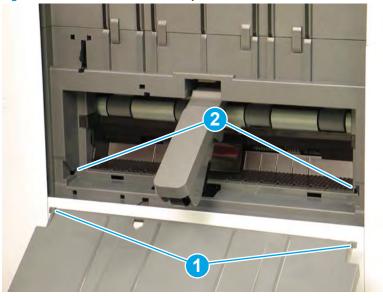
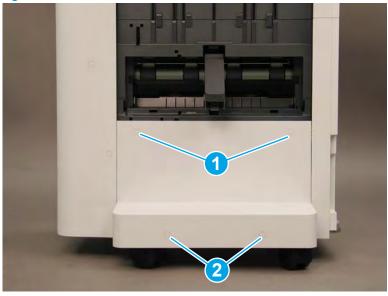


Figure 4–104 Install the booklet tray

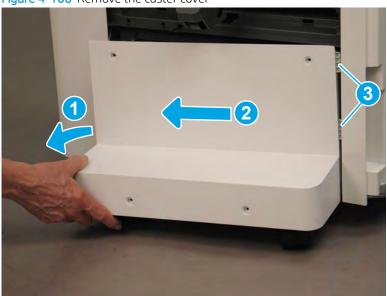
# Step 7: Remove the caster cover

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-105 Remove four screws



- 2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.
- Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.



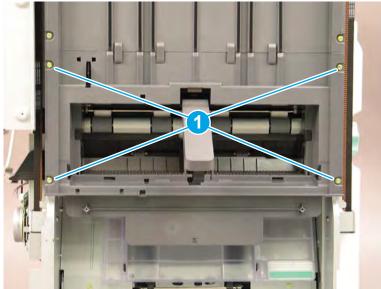
**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-106 Remove the caster cover

### Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

- 1. Remove four screws (callout 1).
- **NOTE:** Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

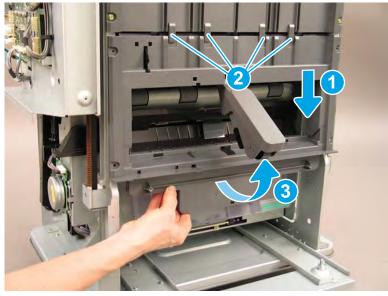
Figure 4-107 Remove four screws



2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

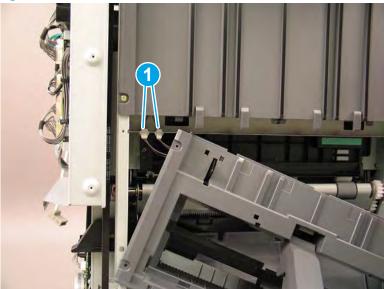
**CAUTION:** The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.
  - Figure 4-108 Release the lower shield



- 3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.
- **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-109 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

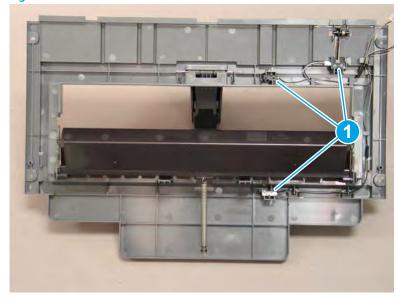


Figure 4-110 Locate sensors

### Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Upper shield assembly

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 6: Remove the booklet tray</u>
- <u>Step 7: Remove the caster cover</u>
- <u>Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the upper shield assembly on the finisher.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
  - **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC90-01475A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Finisher sub - shield

#### **Required tools**

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

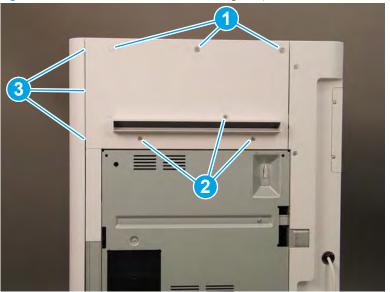
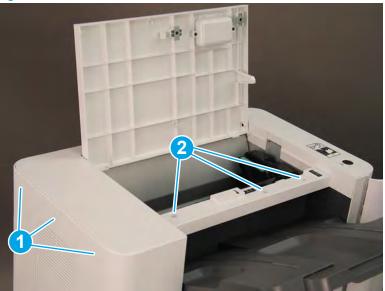


Figure 4–111 Remove six screws and the right top cover

### Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-112 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

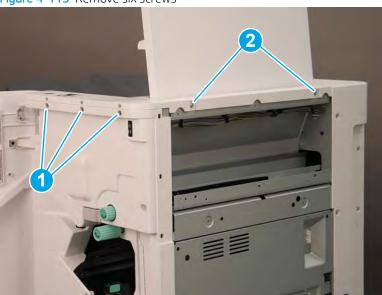


Figure 4-113 Remove six screws

- **3.** Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

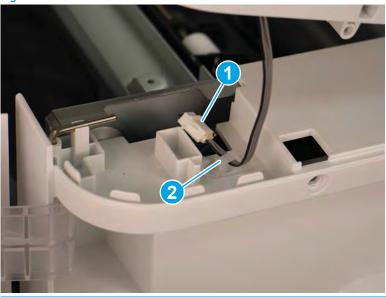


Figure 4-114 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

### Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

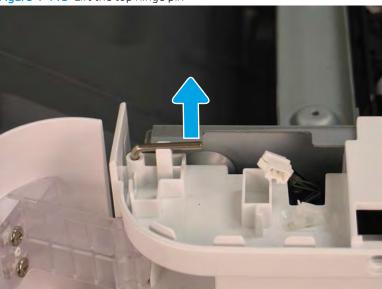
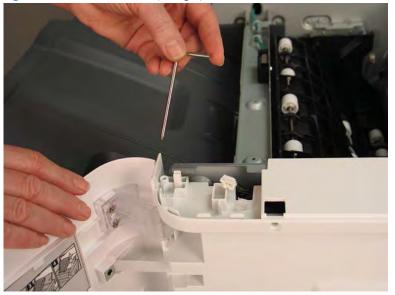


Figure 4-115 Lift the top hinge pin

2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-116 Remove the top hinge pin



**3.** Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

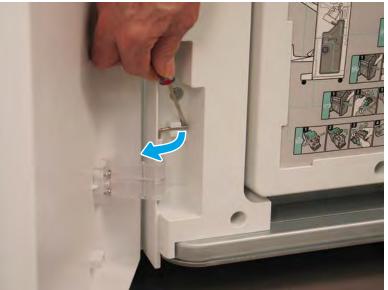


Figure 4-117 Release the lower hinge pin

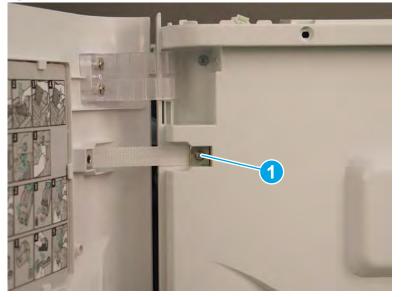
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.



Figure 4-118 Remove the lower hinge pin

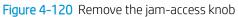
- 5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door
- **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

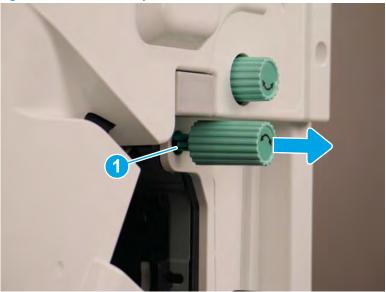
Figure 4–119 Remove one screw and the front door



### Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.





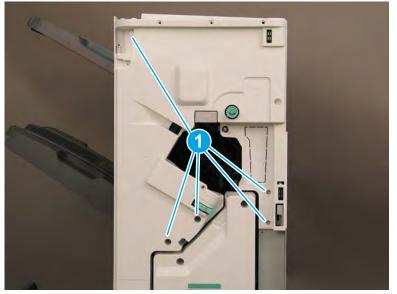
- 2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
- 3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 4-121 Remove one screw



- 4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-122 Remove five screws and the front cover



# Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

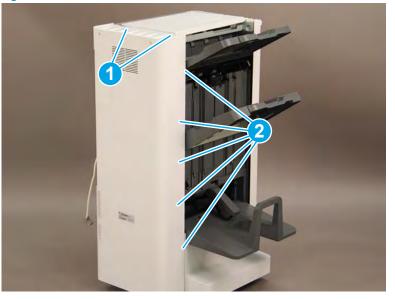


Figure 4-123 Remove seven screws

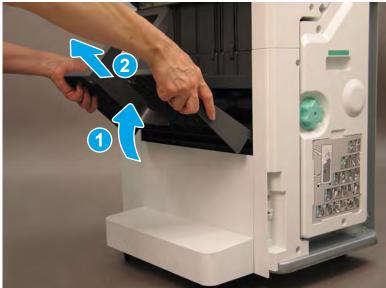
- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- WOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-124 Remove four screws and the rear cover

### Step 6: Remove the booklet tray

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-125 Remove the booklet tray



2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

**WOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

### Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

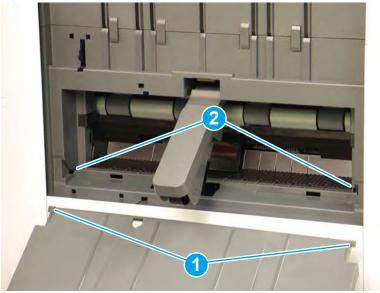


Figure 4-126 Install the booklet tray

### Step 7: Remove the caster cover

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

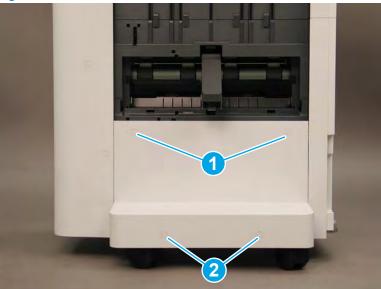


Figure 4-127 Remove four screws

- 2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.
- Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.



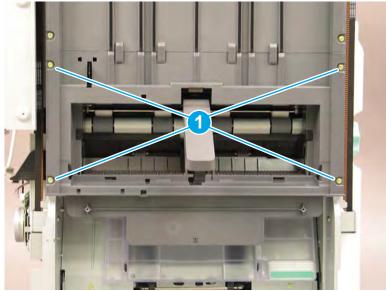
**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-128 Remove the caster cover

# Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

- 1. Remove four screws (callout 1).
  - **NOTE:** Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 4–129 Remove four screws



2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

**CAUTION:** The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.
- 3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.
  - 🛠 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.



Figure 4-131 Disconnect two connectors

Figure 4-130 Release the lower shield

4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

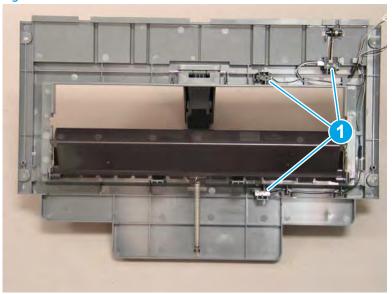
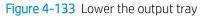
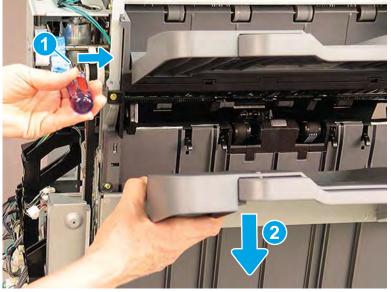


Figure 4-132 Locate sensors

## Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.





2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

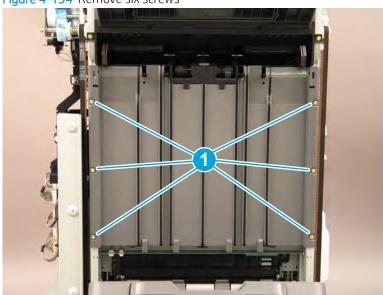


Figure 4-134 Remove six screws

- **3.** Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).
  - **CAUTION:** The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.
  - ☆: Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

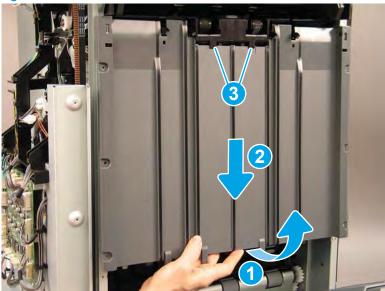


Figure 4-135 Release the shield

- 4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.
- Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

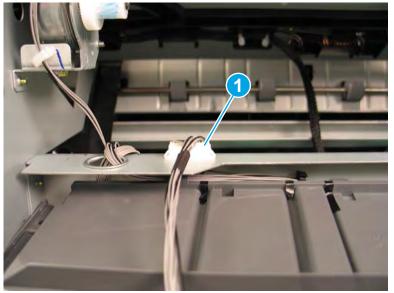


Figure 4-136 Disconnect one connector

5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

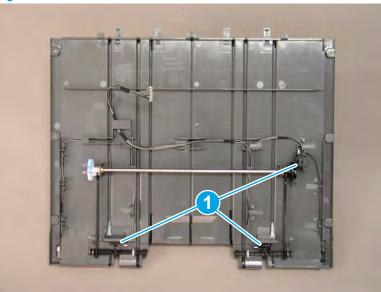


Figure 4-137 Locate sensors

# Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🛕 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Controller PCA

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the controller PCA</u>
- <u>Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the controller PCA on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC92-02790B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Controller PCA (finisher)

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

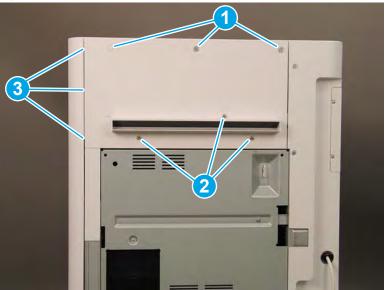
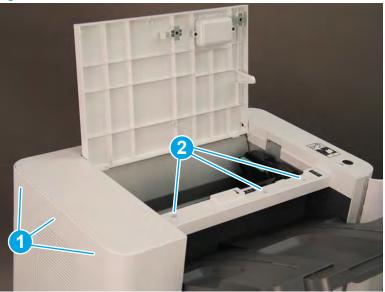


Figure 4–138 Remove six screws and the right top cover

### Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

### Figure 4-139 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

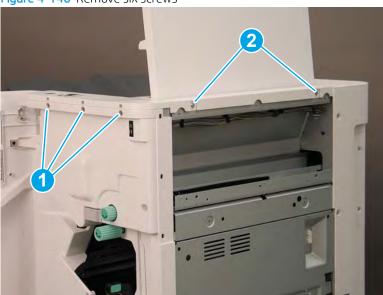


Figure 4-140 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

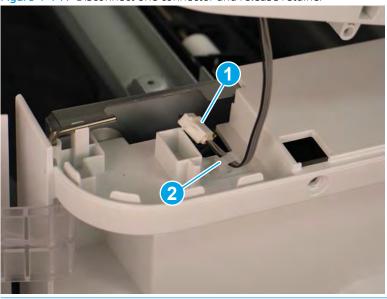


Figure 4-141 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

### Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

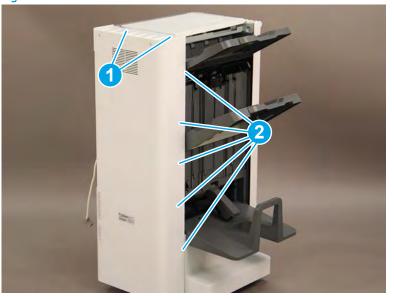


Figure 4-142 Remove seven screws

- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- **NOTE:** Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

# Figure 4-143 Remove four screws and the rear cover

### Step 4: Remove the controller PCA

Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the controller PCA.

🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Refer to the figure below for correct positioning and connection of the cables.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

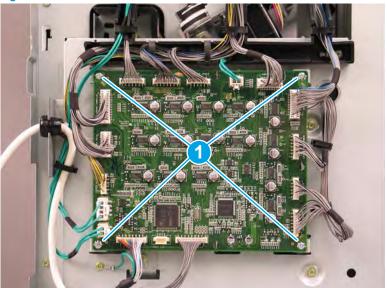


Figure 4-144 Remove the controller PCA

### Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Stapler unit

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 6: Remove the staple unit</u>
- <u>Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the staple unit on the finisher.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

### JC90-01412A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Finisher Sub - Staple Unit

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Staple a document and verify that the stapler functions correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

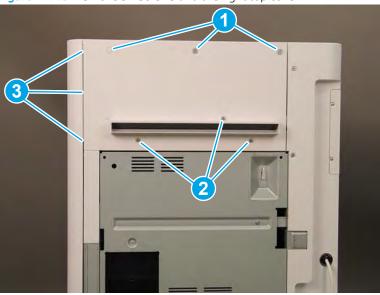
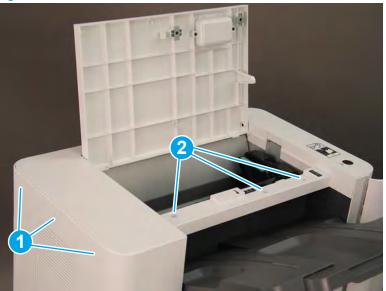


Figure 4-145 Remove six screws and the right top cover

## Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-146 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

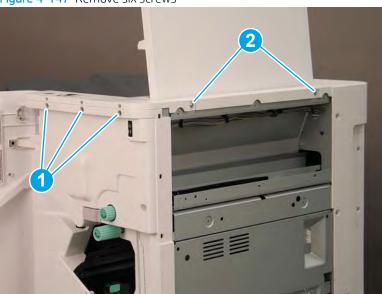


Figure 4-147 Remove six screws

- **3.** Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

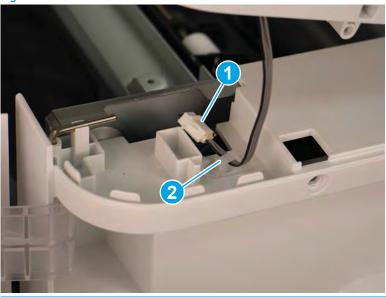


Figure 4-148 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

### Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

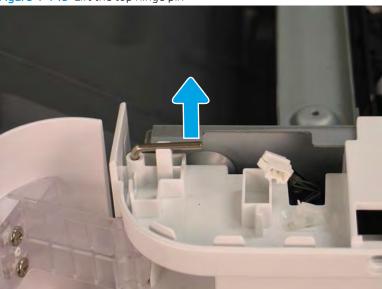
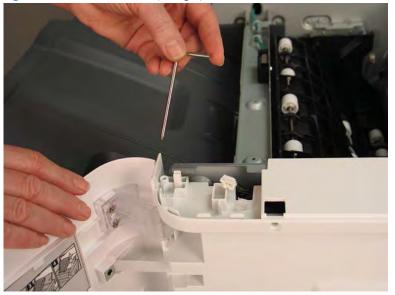


Figure 4-149 Lift the top hinge pin

2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-150 Remove the top hinge pin



**3.** Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

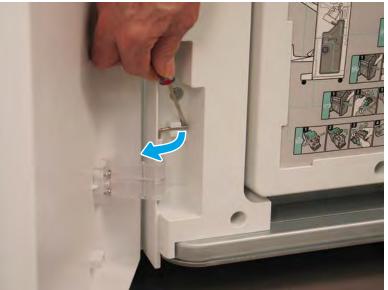


Figure 4-151 Release the lower hinge pin

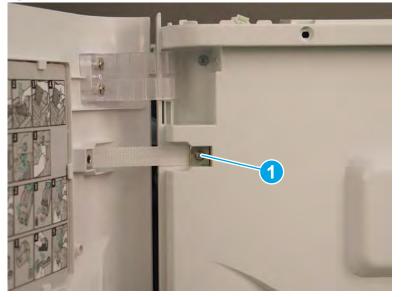
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.



Figure 4-152 Remove the lower hinge pin

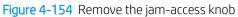
- 5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door
- **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

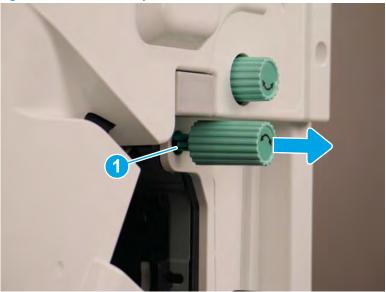
Figure 4-153 Remove one screw and the front door



### Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.





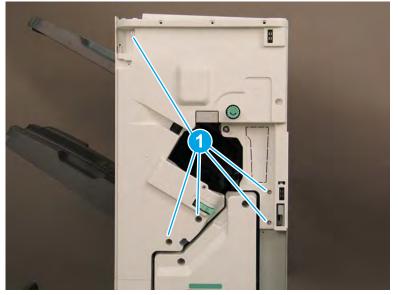
- 2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
- 3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 4-155 Remove one screw



- 4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-156 Remove five screws and the front cover



# Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

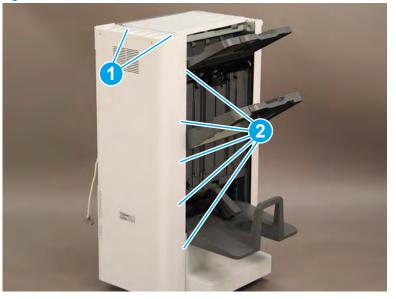


Figure 4-157 Remove seven screws

- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-158 Remove four screws and the rear cover

### Step 6: Remove the staple unit

1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the front until it stops.

Figure 4-159 Move the staple unit to the front



2. Lower the green latch (callout 1), and then slide the staple cartridge away from the finisher to remove it (callout 2).

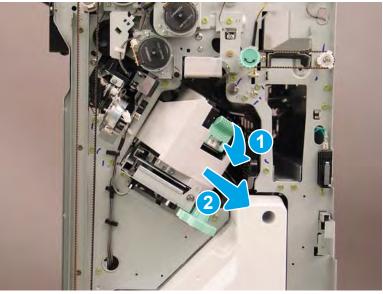


Figure 4-160 Remove the staple cartridge

3. At the back of the finisher, release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

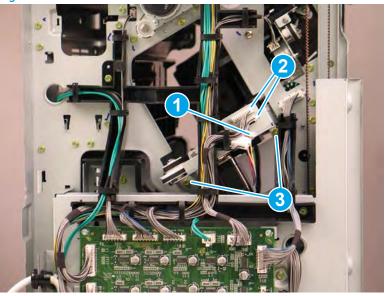


Figure 4-161 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws

4. At the front of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

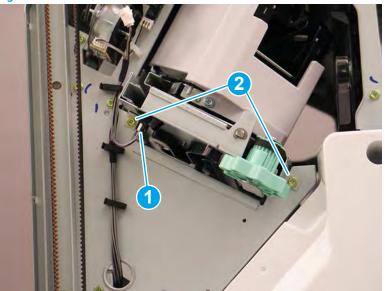


Figure 4-162 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws

- 5. Lift up, and then slide the staple unit to the front of the finisher to remove it.
  - **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

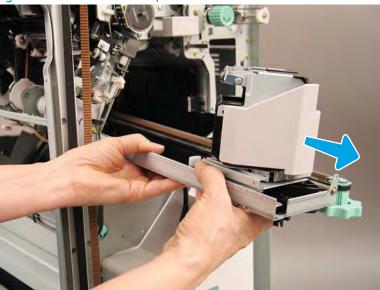


Figure 4-163 Remove the staple unit

### Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🛕 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Dummy feed guide

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the dummy feed guide (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the dummy feed guide on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC93-01161A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Assy-Guide Dummy-Feed

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

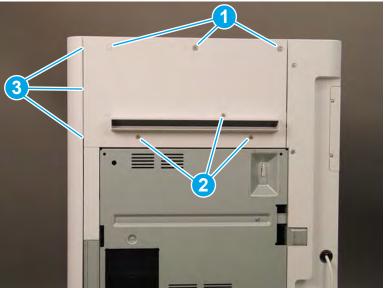
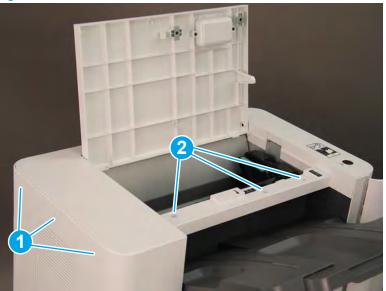


Figure 4-164 Remove six screws and the right top cover

### Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-165 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

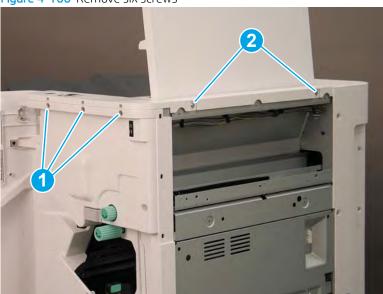


Figure 4-166 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

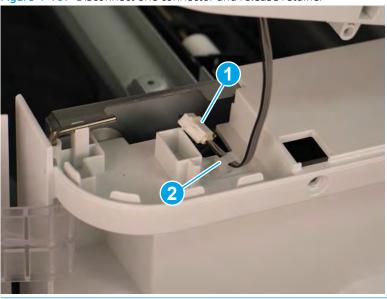


Figure 4-167 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

### Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

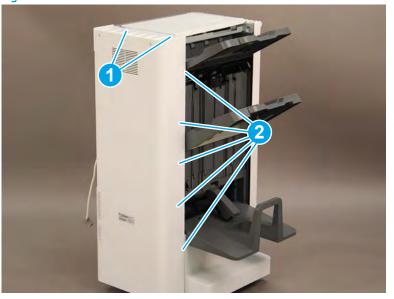
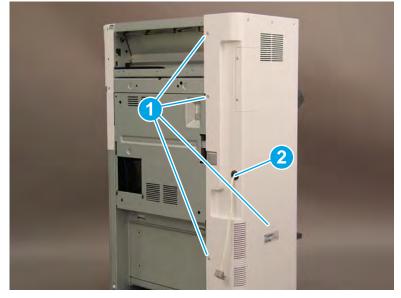


Figure 4-168 Remove seven screws

- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- **NOTE:** Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

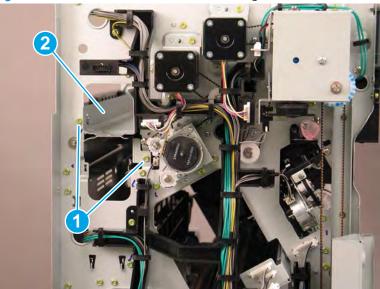
Figure 4-169 Remove four screws and the rear cover



### Step 4: Remove the dummy feed guide (finisher)

- At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the dummy feed guide (callout 2).
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4–170 Remove two screws and the feed guide



### Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Top jam access cover

- Introduction
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor</u>
- <u>Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover</u>
- <u>Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top jam access cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC90-01455A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Finisher Sub - Top Jam

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.

- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

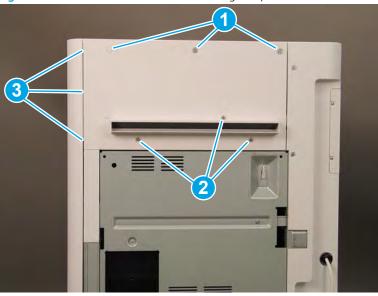
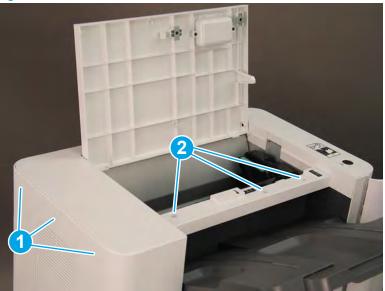


Figure 4-171 Remove six screws and the right top cover

### Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-172 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

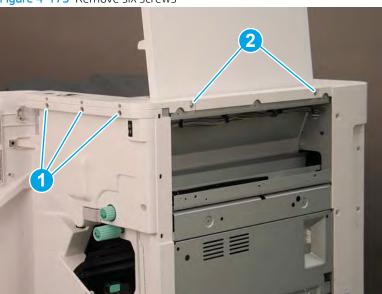


Figure 4-173 Remove six screws

- **3.** Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

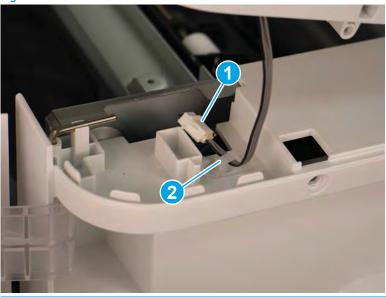


Figure 4-174 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

### Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

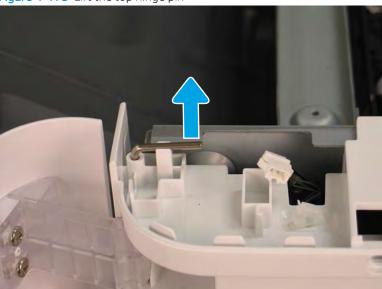
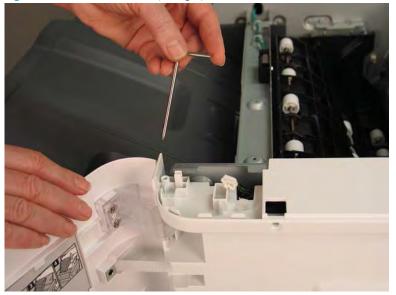


Figure 4-175 Lift the top hinge pin

2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-176 Remove the top hinge pin



**3.** Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.



Figure 4-177 Release the lower hinge pin

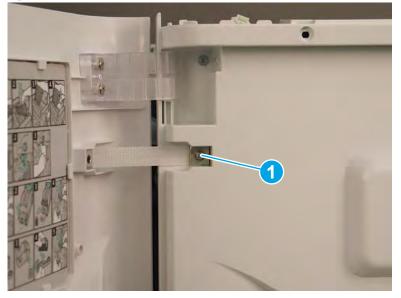
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.



Figure 4-178 Remove the lower hinge pin

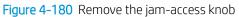
- 5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door
- **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

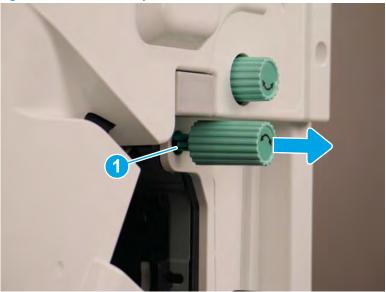
Figure 4–179 Remove one screw and the front door



### Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.





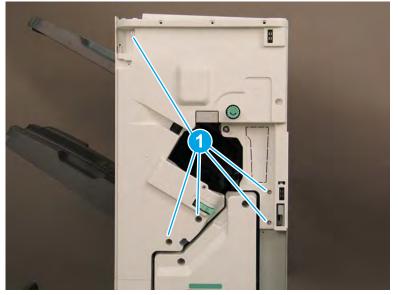
- 2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
- 3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 4-181 Remove one screw



- 4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-182 Remove five screws and the front cover



### Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

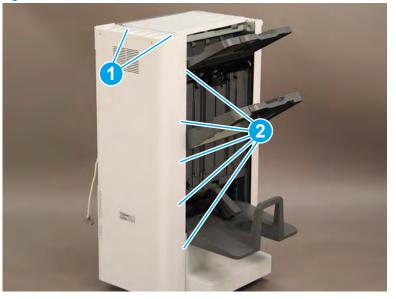


Figure 4-183 Remove seven screws

- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- **NOTE:** Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

# Figure 4-184 Remove four screws and the rear cover

### Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor

- Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed exit motor.
- ♀ Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

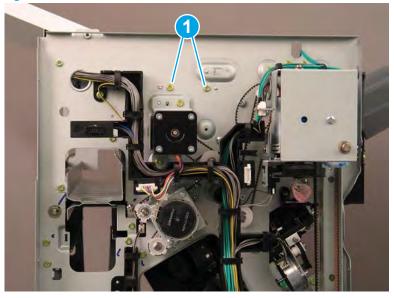
**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-185 Remove the feed exit motor

### Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover

1. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-186 Remove two screws



- 2. Remove the top jam access cover.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-187 Remove the top jam access cover



### Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

#### **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Top lower feed assembly

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover</u>
- <u>Step 8: Remove the top lower feed assembly (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top lower feed assembly for the finisher.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC90-01454A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Finisher Sub-Top Lower

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

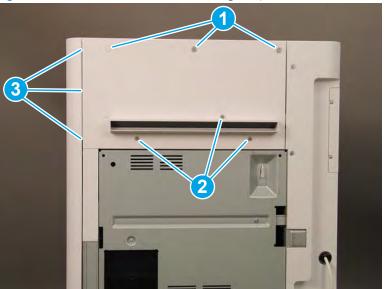
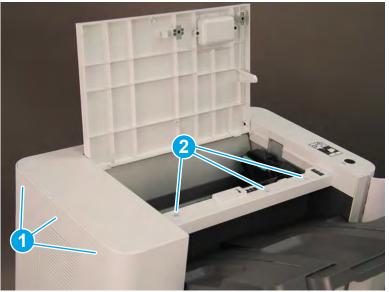


Figure 4–188 Remove six screws and the right top cover

### Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

### Figure 4-189 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

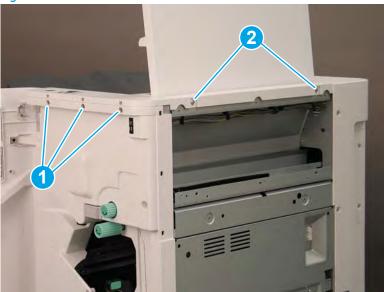
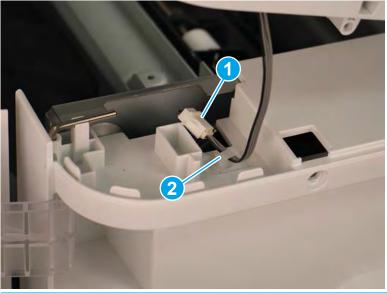


Figure 4-190 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.



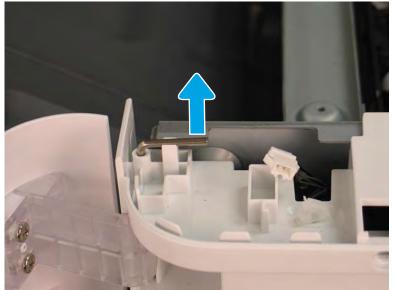


☆ Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

### Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

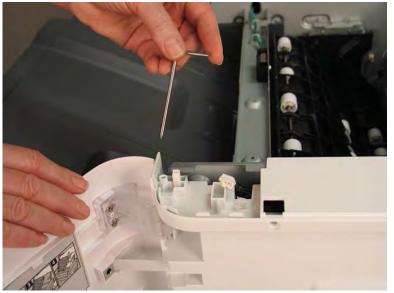
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4–192 Lift the top hinge pin



2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-193 Remove the top hinge pin



**3.** Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.



Figure 4-194 Release the lower hinge pin

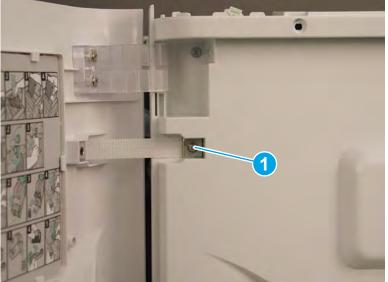
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 4-195 Remove the lower hinge pin



- 5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

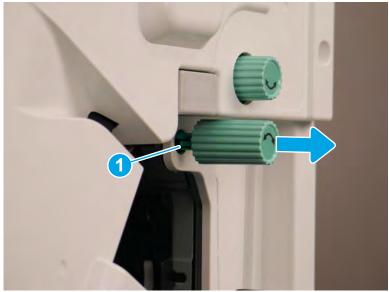
Figure 4–196 Remove one screw and the front door



### Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-197 Remove the jam-access knob



- 2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
- 3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 4-198 Remove one screw



- 4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

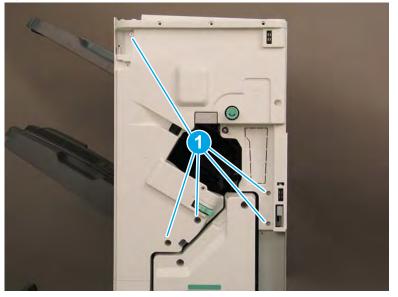


Figure 4-199 Remove five screws and the front cover

### Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

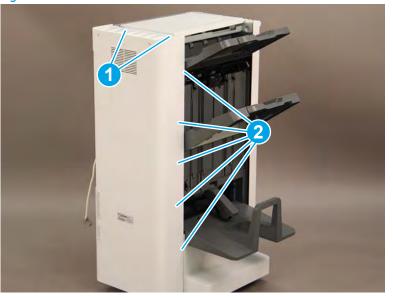
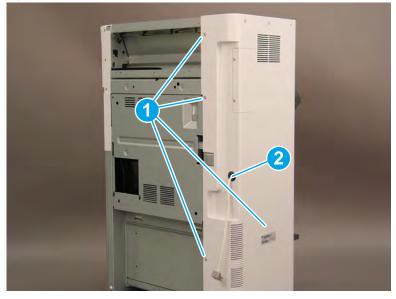


Figure 4-200 Remove seven screws

- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
  - **NOTE:** Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
  - ☆ **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

#### Figure 4-201 Remove four screws and the rear cover



### Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor (finisher)

- Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed exit motor.
- ♀ Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

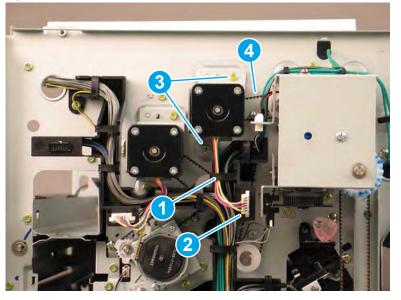
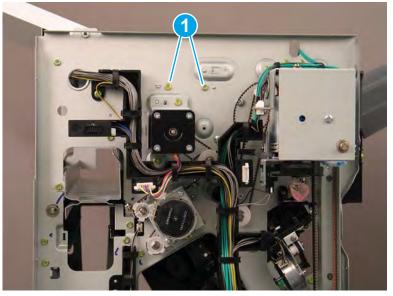


Figure 4-202 Remove the feed exit motor

### Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover

1. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-203 Remove two screws



- 2. Remove the top jam access cover.
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

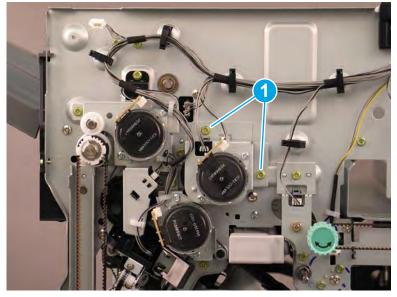
Figure 4-204 Remove the top jam access cover



### Step 8: Remove the top lower feed assembly (finisher)

1. At the front of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1) on the buffer motor housing, and then tilt the motor aside to access the screws under it.

### Figure 4-205 Remove two screws



2. At the front of the finisher, remove three self-tapping screws (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

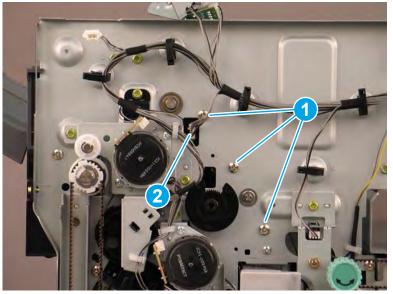
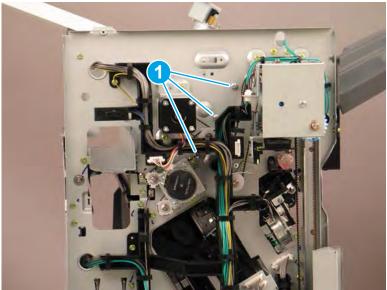


Figure 4-206 Remove three screws and disconnect one connector

3. At the rear of the finisher, remove three machine screws (callout 1).

#### Figure 4-207 Remove three screws



4. At the top of the finisher, lift the feed assembly straight up to disengage two tabs on the bottom and remove the assembly.



Figure 4-208 Remove the feed assembly

- 5. If you are replacing the top lower feed assembly, locate two sensors (callout 1) and one connector (callout 2) on the back of the assembly. Remove these items and transfer them to the replacement part.
  - 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

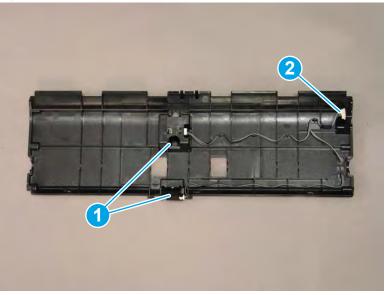


Figure 4-209 Locate sensors and connector

### Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

- 2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.
  - ▲ CAUTION:

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Ejector unit

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the ejector unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC90-01409A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Finisher Sub - Ejector Unit

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

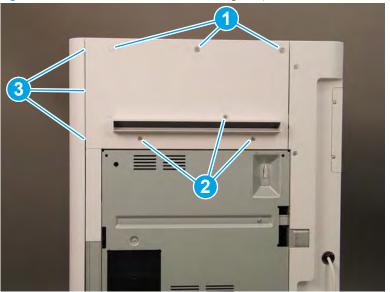
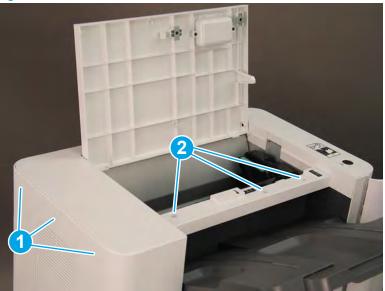


Figure 4–210 Remove six screws and the right top cover

### Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-211 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

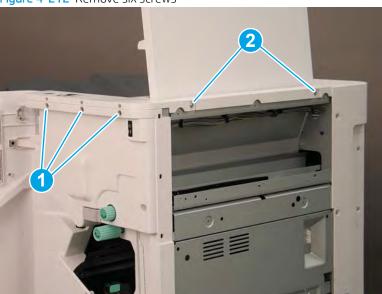


Figure 4-212 Remove six screws

- **3.** Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

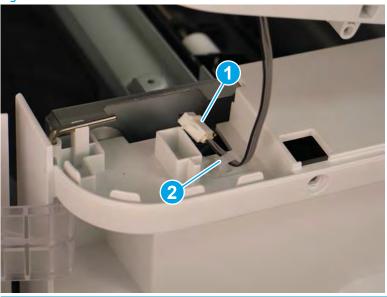


Figure 4-213 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

### Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

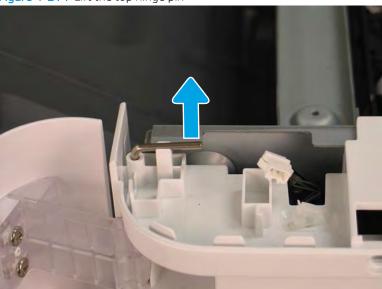
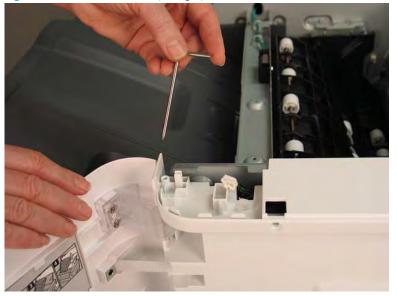


Figure 4-214 Lift the top hinge pin

2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-215 Remove the top hinge pin



**3.** Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.



Figure 4-216 Release the lower hinge pin

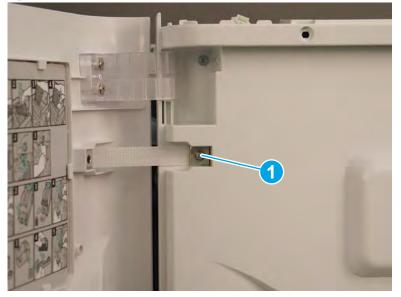
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.



Figure 4-217 Remove the lower hinge pin

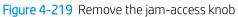
- 5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door
- **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

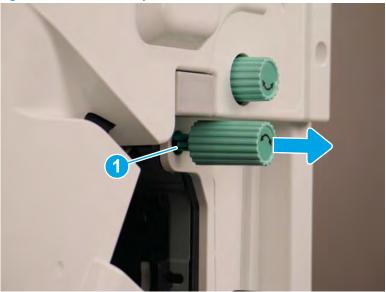
Figure 4–218 Remove one screw and the front door



### Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.





- 2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
- 3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 4-220 Remove one screw



- 4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-221 Remove five screws and the front cover

## Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

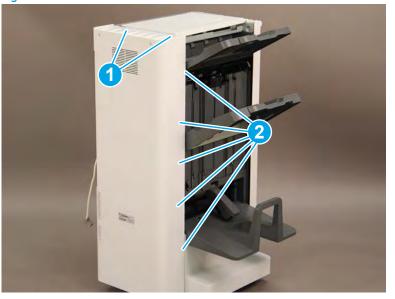


Figure 4-222 Remove seven screws

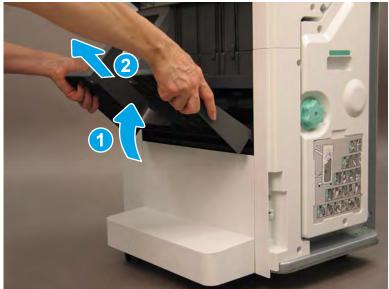
- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- **NOTE:** Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-223 Remove four screws and the rear cover

## Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-224 Remove the booklet tray



2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

**WOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

#### Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

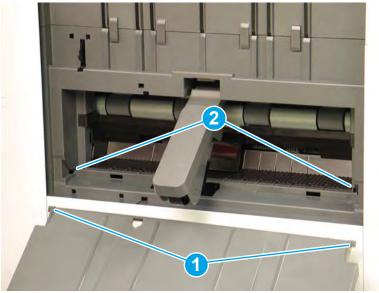


Figure 4-225 Install the booklet tray

## Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

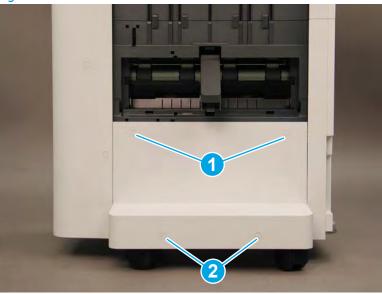
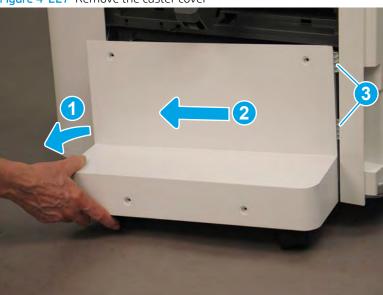


Figure 4-226 Remove four screws

- 2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.
- Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.



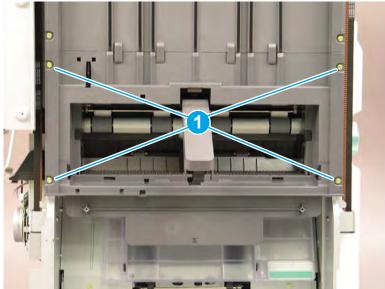
**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-227 Remove the caster cover

# Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

- 1. Remove four screws (callout 1).
  - **NOTE:** Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 4-228 Remove four screws



2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

**CAUTION:** The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.
- 3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.
  - 🛠 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

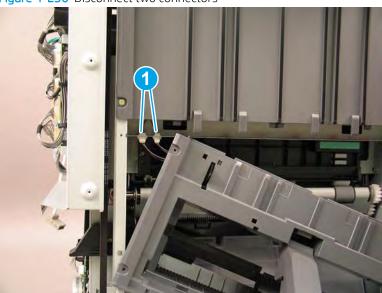


Figure 4-230 Disconnect two connectors

Figure 4-229 Release the lower shield

ENWW

4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

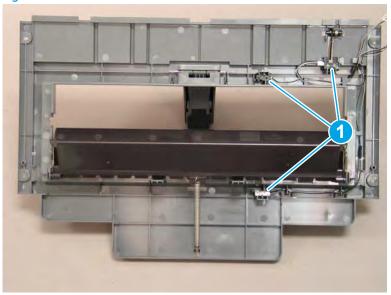
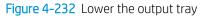
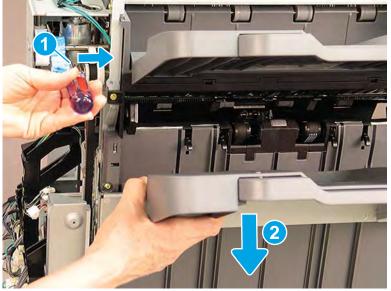


Figure 4-231 Locate sensors

## Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.





2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

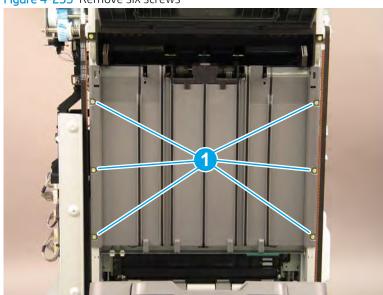


Figure 4-233 Remove six screws

- **3.** Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).
  - **CAUTION:** The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.
  - ☆: Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

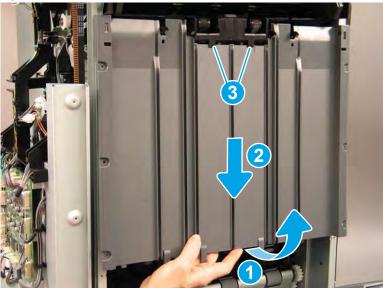


Figure 4-234 Release the shield

- 4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.
- Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

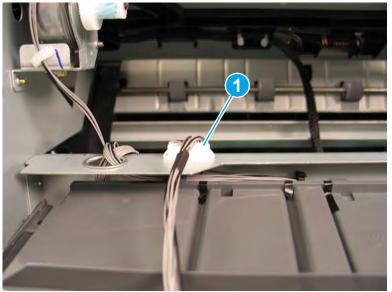
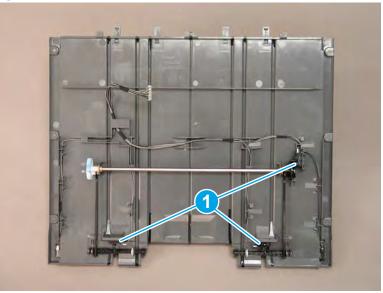


Figure 4-235 Disconnect one connector

5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

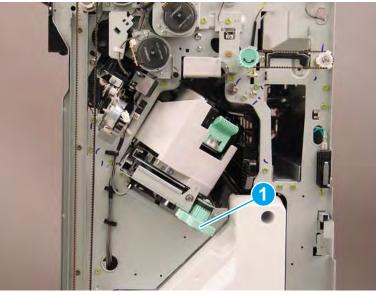




# Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

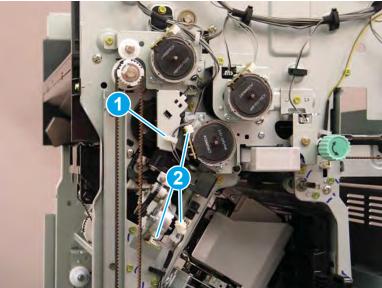
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 4-237 Move the staple unit to the center



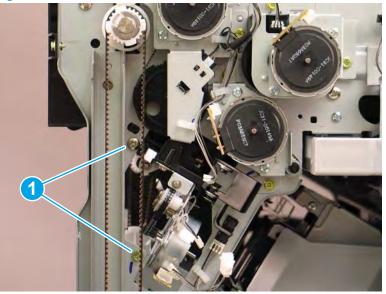
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 4-238 Disconnect three connectors



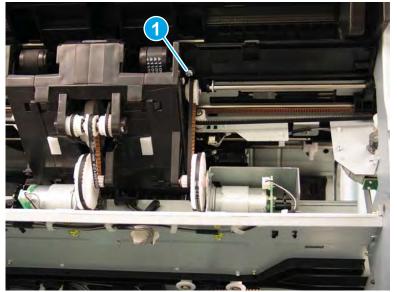
**3.** Remove two screws (callout 1).

### Figure 4-239 Remove two screws



4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-240 Remove one screw



5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

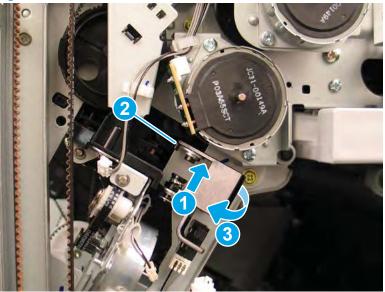
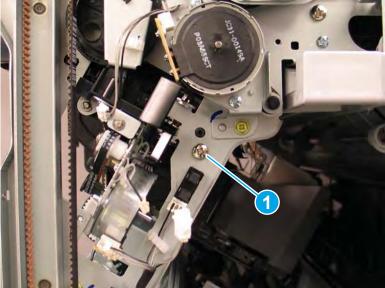


Figure 4-241 Rotate the sensor

6. Remove one screw (callout 1).





7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

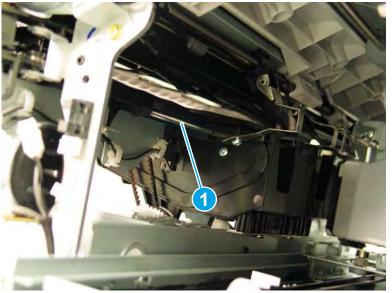


Figure 4-243 Remove the front tamper shaft

8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

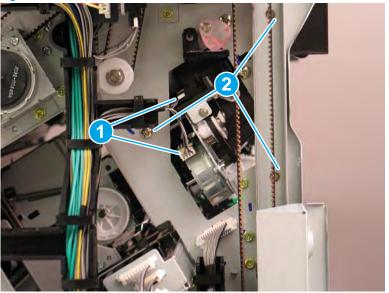
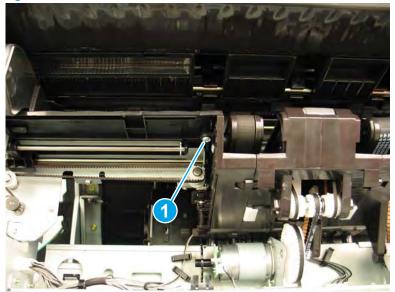


Figure 4-244 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws

9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-245 Remove one screw



**10.** Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

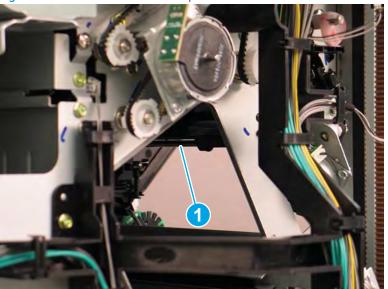
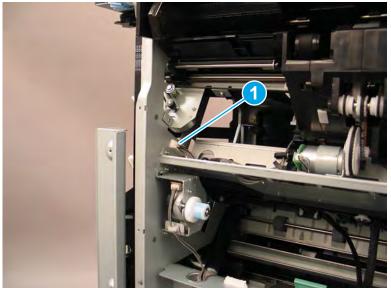


Figure 4-246 Remove the rear tamper shaft

**11.** At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-247 Disconnect one connector



**12.** At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).



Figure 4-248 Disconnect one connector

**13.** At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

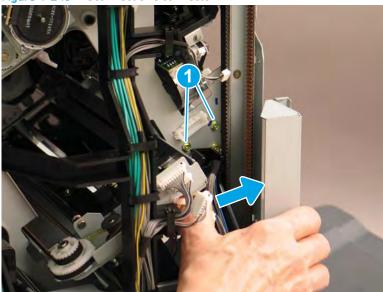


Figure 4-249 Disconnect one connector

**14.** At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-250 Remove two screws



**15.** Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

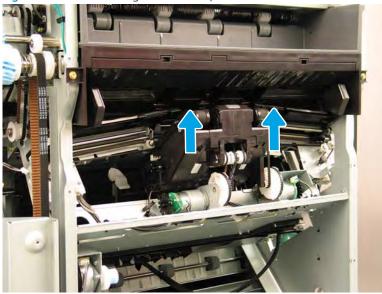
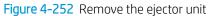
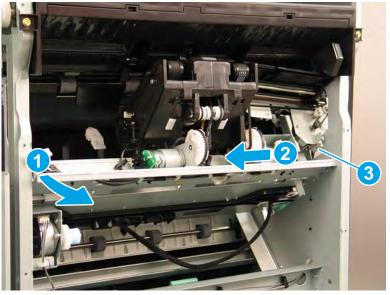


Figure 4–251 Lift the edges of the tampers

**16.** Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.





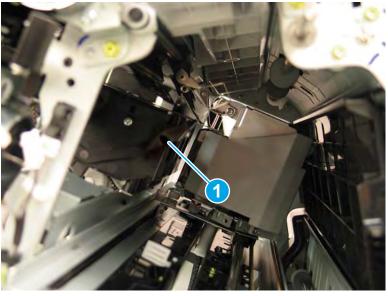
**17.** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

**WOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

#### Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

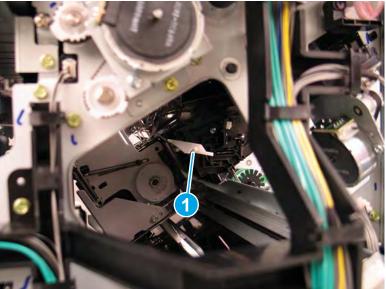
**a.** When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-253 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



**b.** When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-254 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft



# Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

### **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Front tamper unit

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 11: Remove the front tamper unit</u>
- <u>Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front tamper unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC82-00901A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Finisher Sub - Tamper Front

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🔅 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

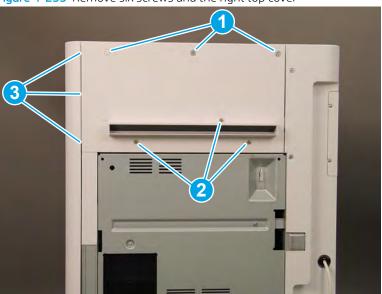
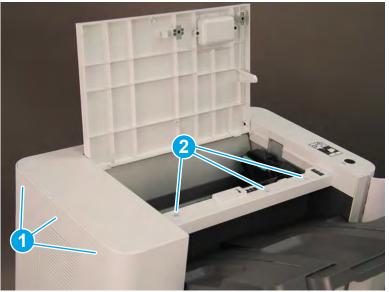


Figure 4-255 Remove six screws and the right top cover

### Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

# Figure 4-256 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

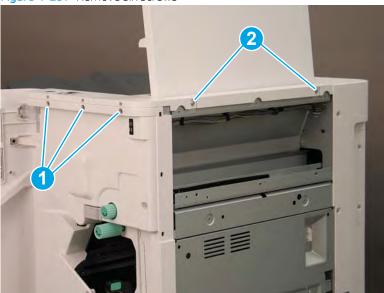


Figure 4-257 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-258 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

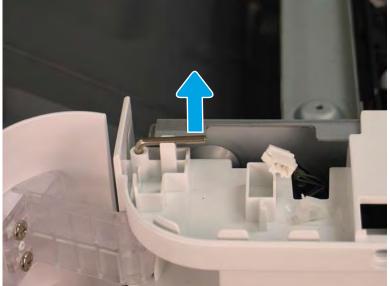


☆ Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

### Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

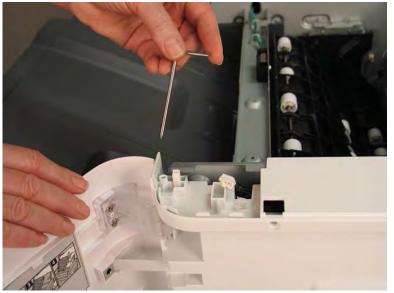
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-259 Lift the top hinge pin



2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-260 Remove the top hinge pin



**3.** Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.



Figure 4-261 Release the lower hinge pin

Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it. 4.

Figure 4-262 Remove the lower hinge pin



- 5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door
- ☆ Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

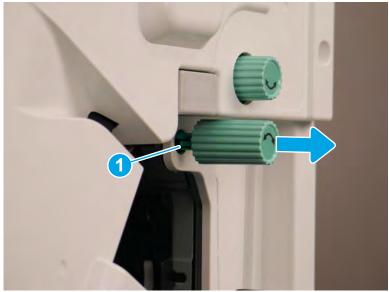


Figure 4-263 Remove one screw and the front door

### Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-264 Remove the jam-access knob

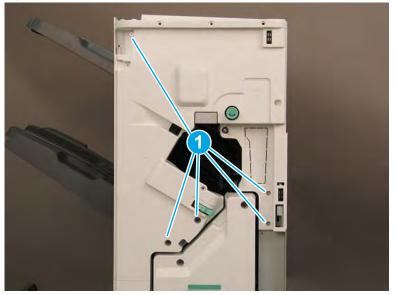


- 2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
- 3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 4-265 Remove one screw



- 4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.



#### Figure 4-266 Remove five screws and the front cover

### Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

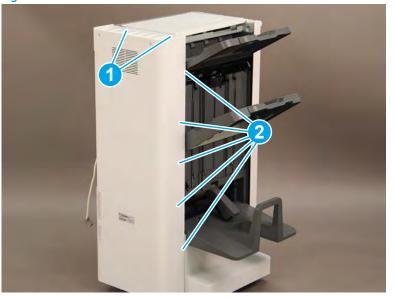


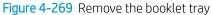
Figure 4-267 Remove seven screws

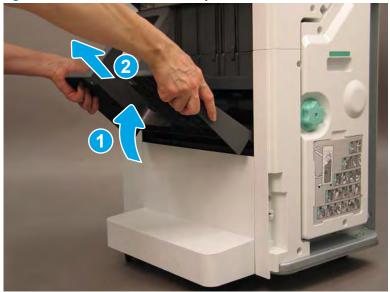
- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- ☆ **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-268 Remove four screws and the rear cover

### Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.





2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

**NOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

#### Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

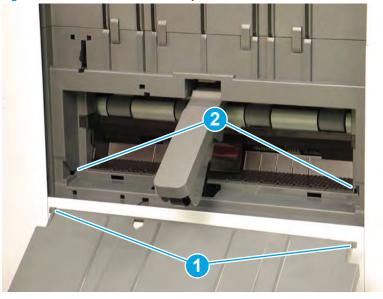
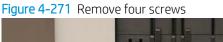
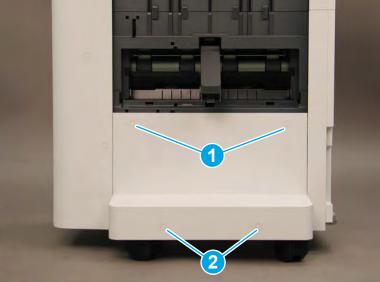


Figure 4-270 Install the booklet tray

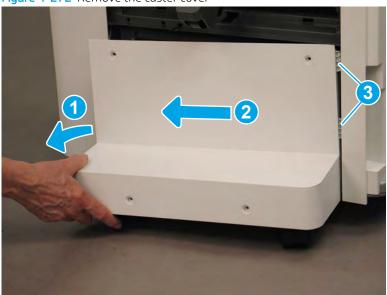
## Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).





- 2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.
- Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.



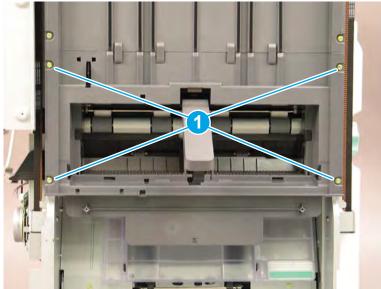
**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-272 Remove the caster cover

### Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

- 1. Remove four screws (callout 1).
- **NOTE:** Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

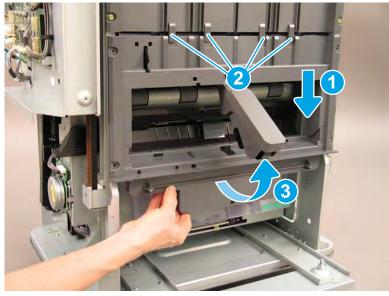
Figure 4-273 Remove four screws



2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

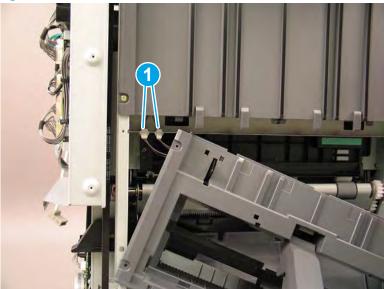
**<u>A</u> CAUTION**: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.
  - Figure 4-274 Release the lower shield



- 3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.
- **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-275 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

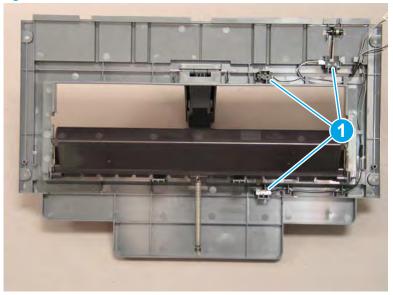
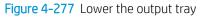
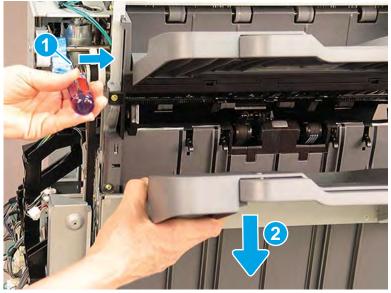


Figure 4-276 Locate sensors

# Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

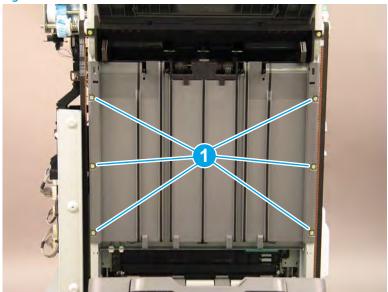
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.





2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

### Figure 4-278 Remove six screws



3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

**<u>A</u> CAUTION:** The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

☆: Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

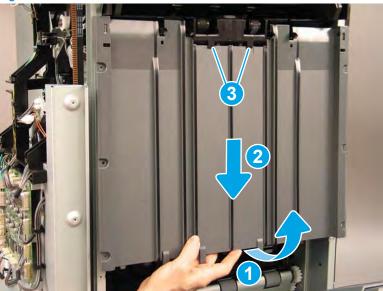


Figure 4-279 Release the shield

- 4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

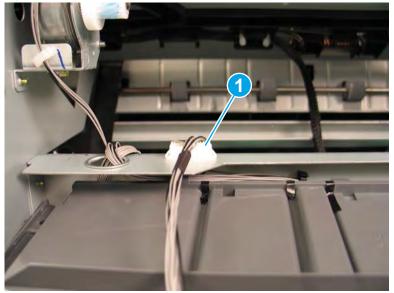


Figure 4-280 Disconnect one connector

5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

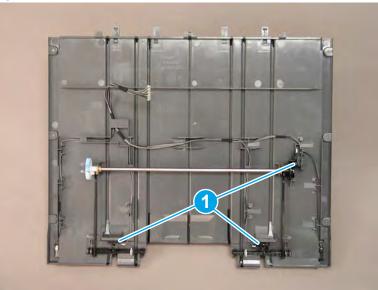
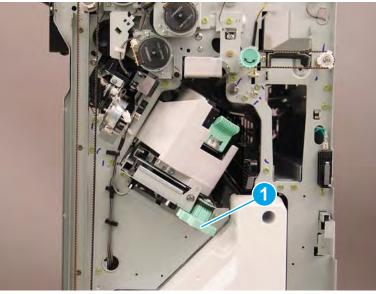


Figure 4-281 Locate sensors

# Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

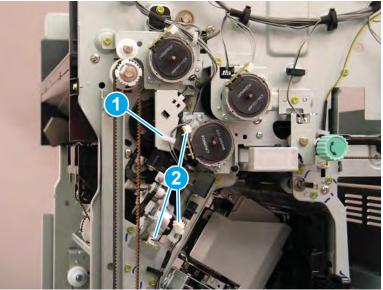
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 4-282 Move the staple unit to the center



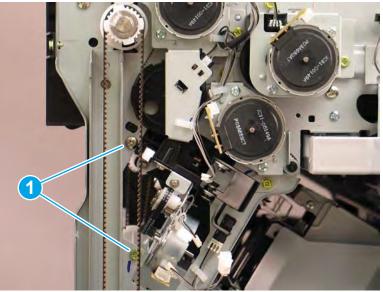
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 4-283 Disconnect three connectors



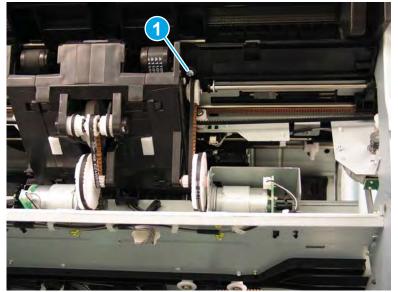
**3.** Remove two screws (callout 1).

## Figure 4-284 Remove two screws



4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-285 Remove one screw



5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

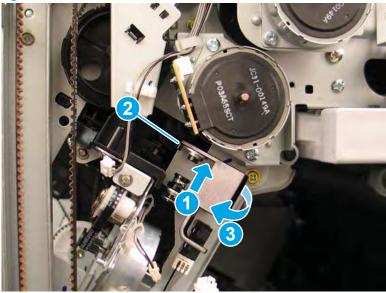
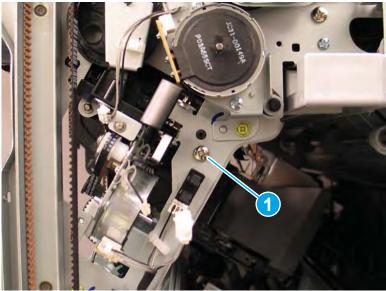


Figure 4-286 Rotate the sensor

6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-287 Remove one screw



7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

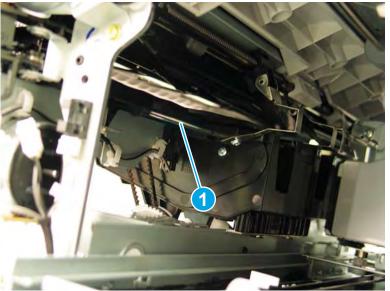


Figure 4-288 Remove the front tamper shaft

8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

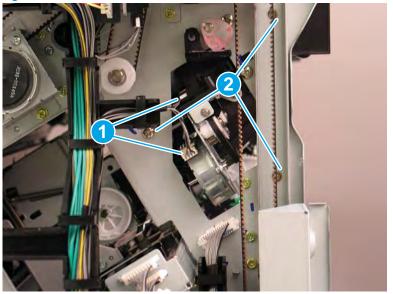
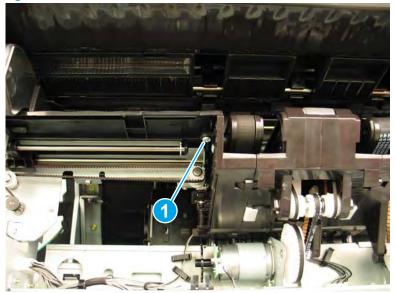


Figure 4-289 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws

9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-290 Remove one screw



**10.** Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

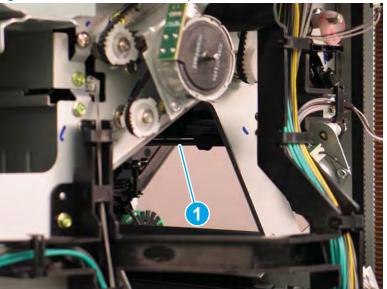
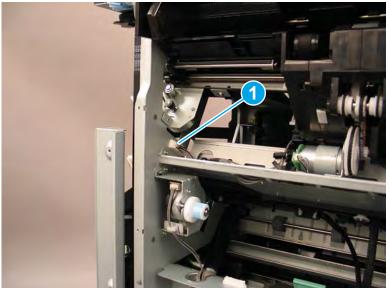


Figure 4-291 Remove the rear tamper shaft

**11.** At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-292 Disconnect one connector



**12.** At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

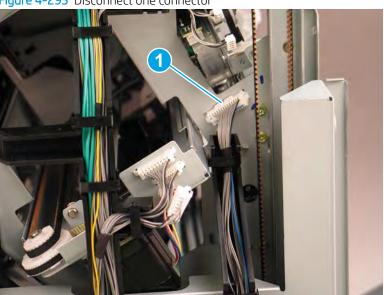


Figure 4-293 Disconnect one connector

**13.** At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

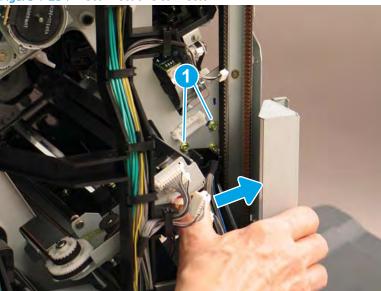
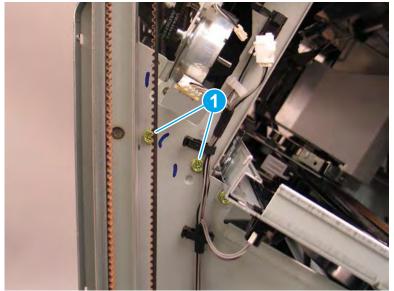


Figure 4-294 Disconnect one connector

14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

#### Figure 4-295 Remove two screws



**15.** Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

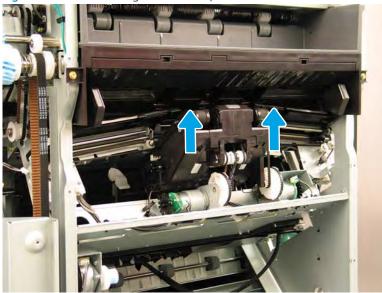
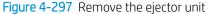
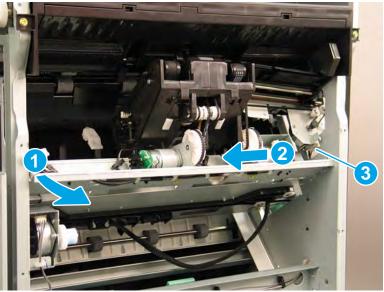


Figure 4-296 Lift the edges of the tampers

**16.** Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.



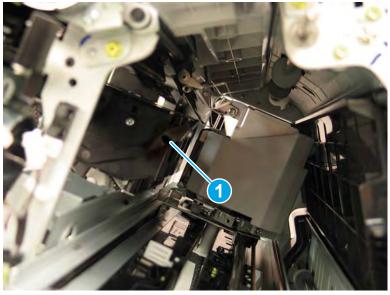


- 17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.
  - **NOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

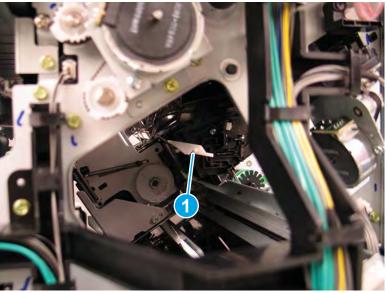
**a.** When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-298 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



**b.** When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-299 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft



# Step 11: Remove the front tamper unit

- Lift the front tamper away from the finisher to remove it
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4–300 Remove the front tamper



### Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Rear tamper unit

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 11: Remove the rear tamper unit</u>
- <u>Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear tamper unit on the finisher.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
  - **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC82-00898A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Finisher Sub - Tamper Rear

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🛠 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

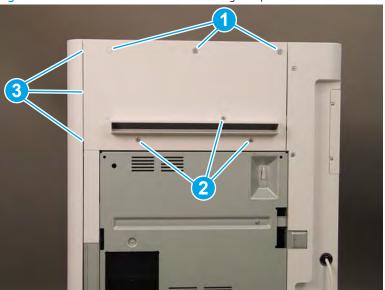
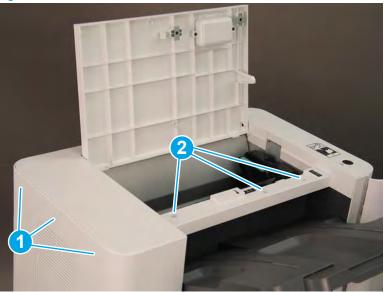


Figure 4-301 Remove six screws and the right top cover

### Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-302 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

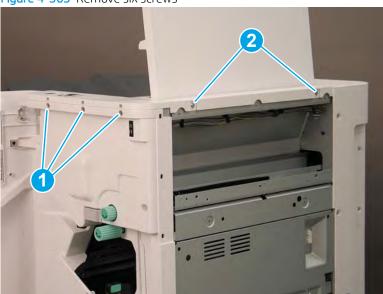


Figure 4-303 Remove six screws

- **3.** Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

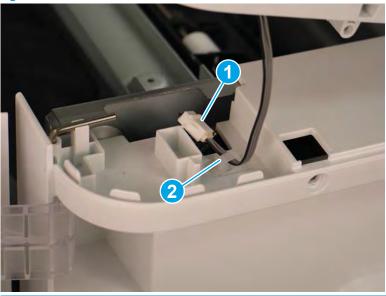


Figure 4-304 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

## Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

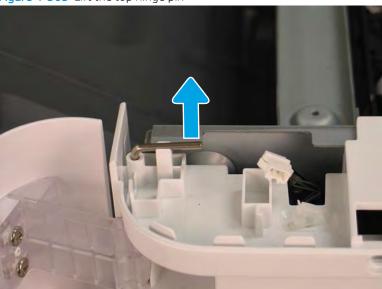
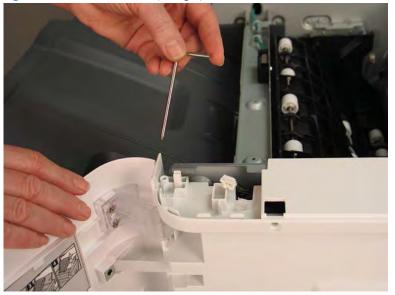


Figure 4-305 Lift the top hinge pin

2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-306 Remove the top hinge pin



**3.** Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.



Figure 4-307 Release the lower hinge pin

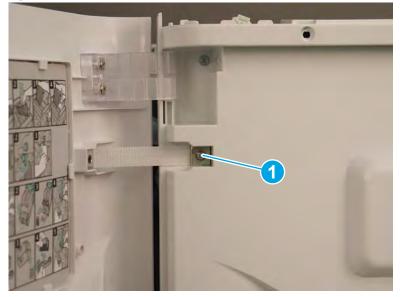
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.



Figure 4-308 Remove the lower hinge pin

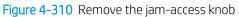
- 5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door
- **A Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

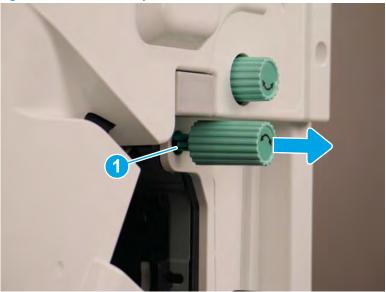
Figure 4-309 Remove one screw and the front door



## Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.





- 2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
- 3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 4-311 Remove one screw



- 4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

## Figure 4-312 Remove five screws and the front cover

# Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

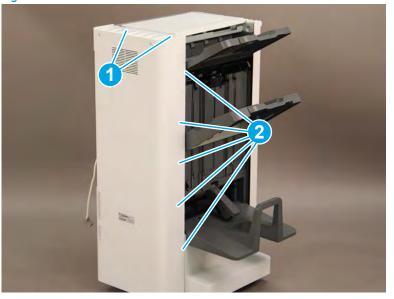


Figure 4-313 Remove seven screws

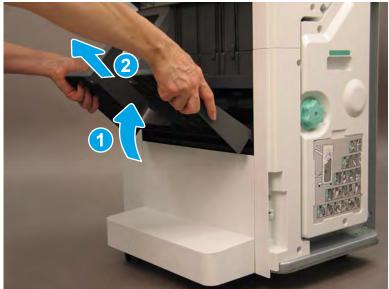
- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- **NOTE:** Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-314 Remove four screws and the rear cover

# Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-315 Remove the booklet tray



2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

**WOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

#### Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

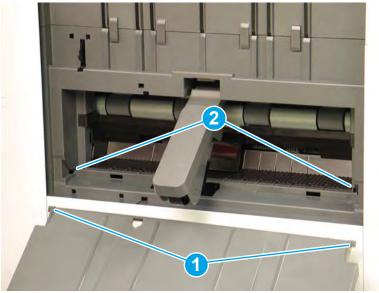
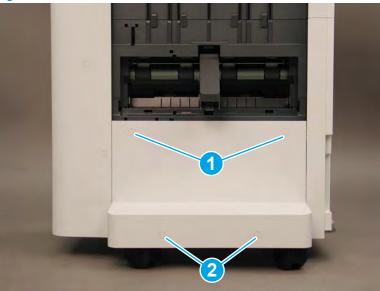


Figure 4-316 Install the booklet tray

## Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).





- 2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.
- Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.



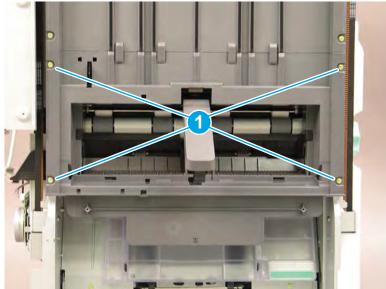
**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-318 Remove the caster cover

# Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

- 1. Remove four screws (callout 1).
  - **NOTE:** Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 4-319 Remove four screws



2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

**CAUTION:** The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.
- 3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.
  - 🛠 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.



Figure 4-321 Disconnect two connectors

Figure 4-320 Release the lower shield

4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

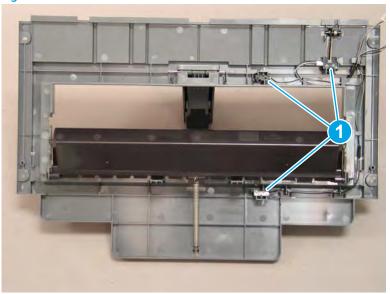
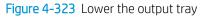
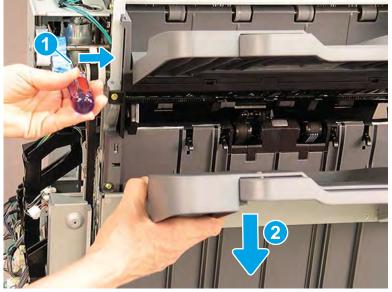


Figure 4-322 Locate sensors

## Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.





2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

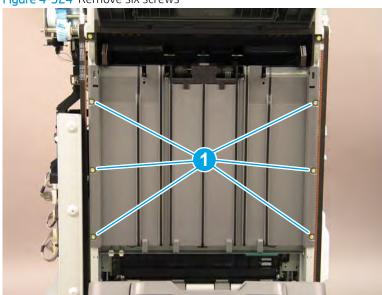


Figure 4-324 Remove six screws

- **3.** Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).
  - **CAUTION:** The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.
  - ☆: Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

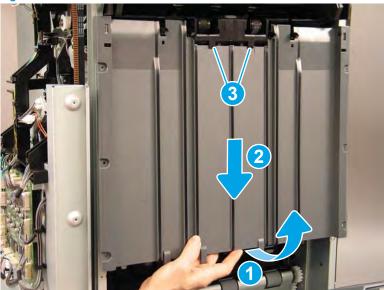


Figure 4-325 Release the shield

- 4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.
- Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

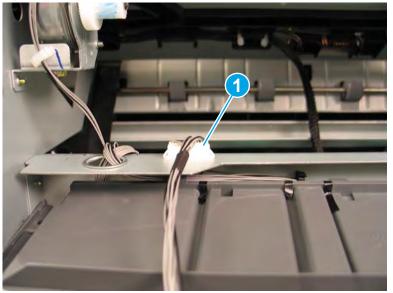
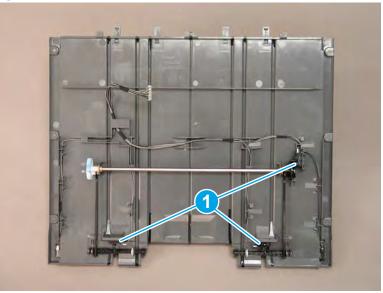


Figure 4-326 Disconnect one connector

5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

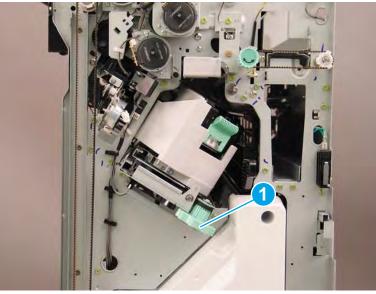




# Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

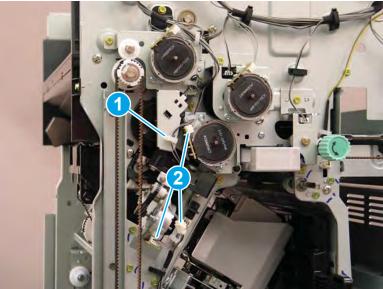
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 4-328 Move the staple unit to the center



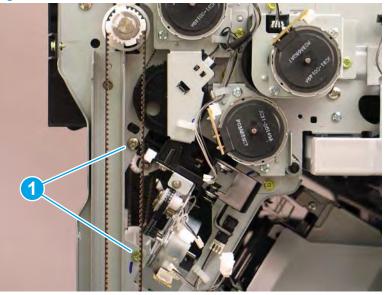
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 4-329 Disconnect three connectors



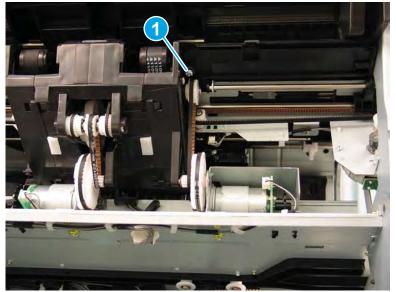
**3.** Remove two screws (callout 1).

## Figure 4-330 Remove two screws



4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-331 Remove one screw



5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

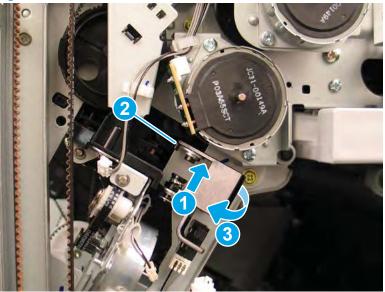
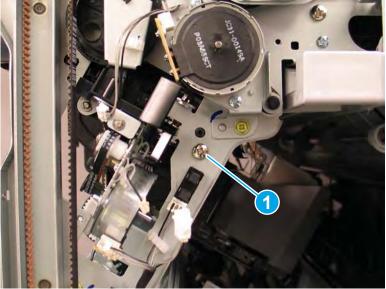


Figure 4-332 Rotate the sensor

6. Remove one screw (callout 1).





7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

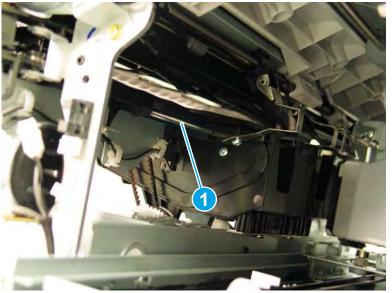


Figure 4-334 Remove the front tamper shaft

8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

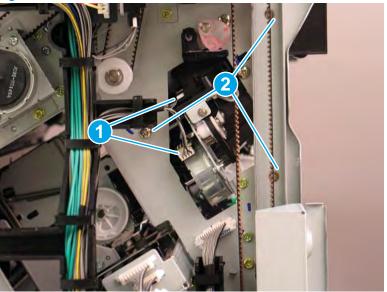
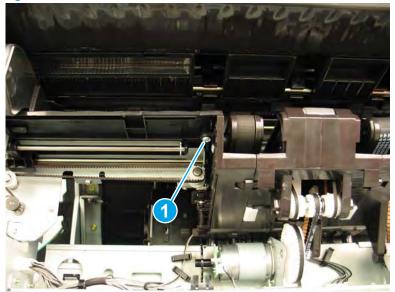


Figure 4-335 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws

9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-336 Remove one screw



**10.** Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

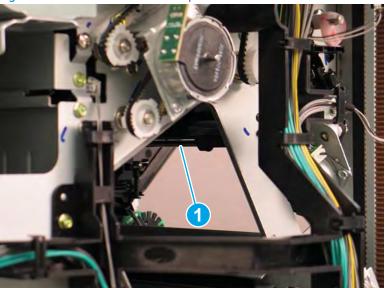
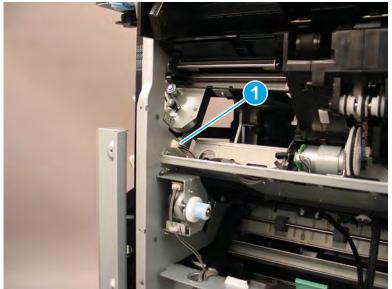


Figure 4-337 Remove the rear tamper shaft

**11.** At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-338 Disconnect one connector



**12.** At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

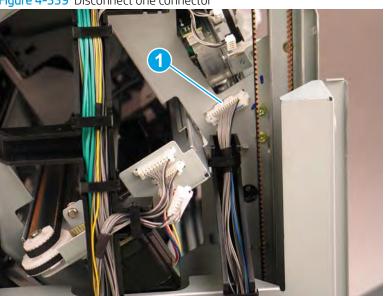


Figure 4-339 Disconnect one connector

**13.** At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

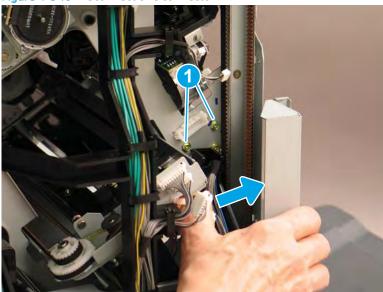


Figure 4-340 Disconnect one connector

**14.** At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-341 Remove two screws



**15.** Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

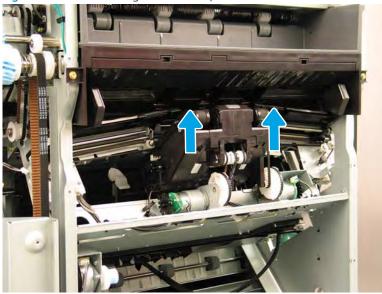
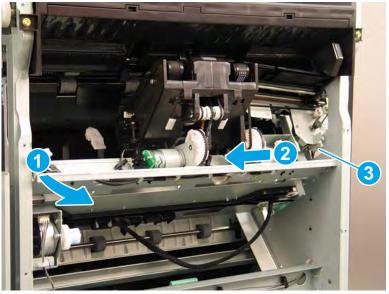


Figure 4-342 Lift the edges of the tampers

**16.** Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.





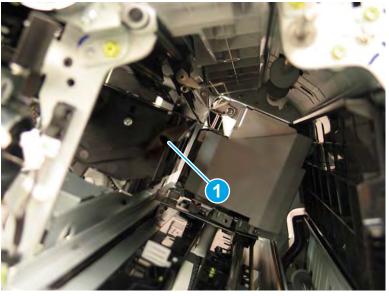
**17.** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

**NOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

#### Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

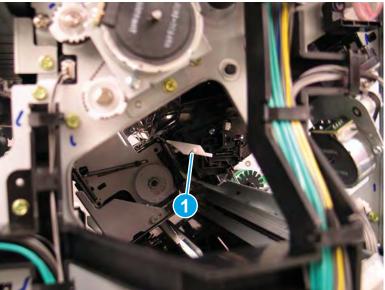
**a.** When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-344 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



**b.** When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-345 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft



### Step 11: Remove the rear tamper unit

- Lift the rear tamper away from the finisher to remove it
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-346 Remove the rear tamper



## Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

**CAUTION:** Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Feed entrance motor (M1)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the feed entrance motor (M1)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the feed entrance motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC31-00163B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

Motor, Step

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🛠 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

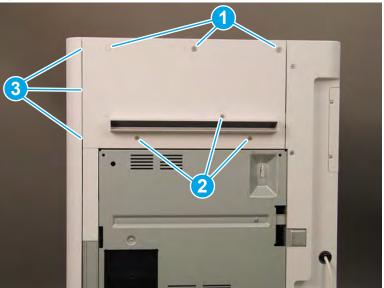
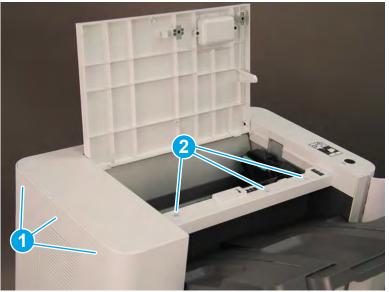


Figure 4-347 Remove six screws and the right top cover

### Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

#### Figure 4-348 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

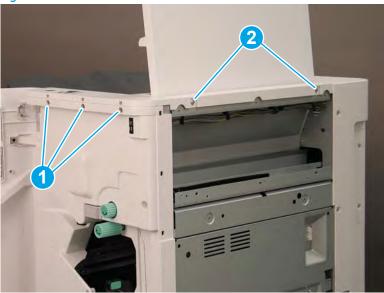
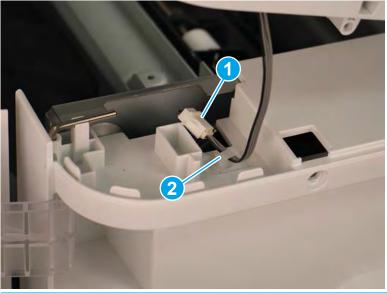


Figure 4-349 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.





**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

## Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

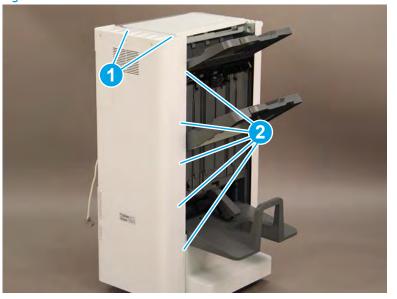
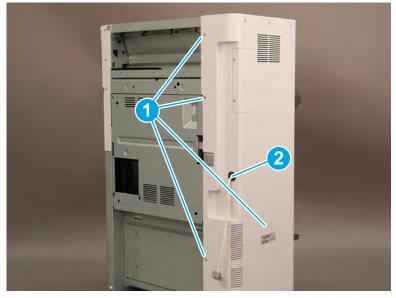


Figure 4-351 Remove seven screws

- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
  - **NOTE:** Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
  - ☆ **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

#### Figure 4-352 Remove four screws and the rear cover



### Step 4: Remove the feed entrance motor (M1)

- Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed entrance motor.
- **Reinstallation tip:** Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

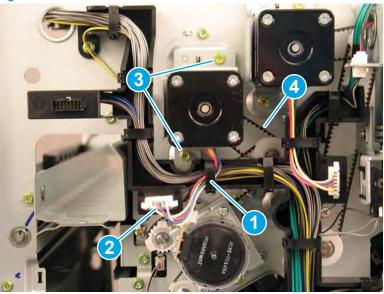


Figure 4-353 Remove the feed entrance motor

## Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Feed exit motor (M2)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the feed exit motor (M2)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the feed exit motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC31-00163B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

Motor, Step

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🛠 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

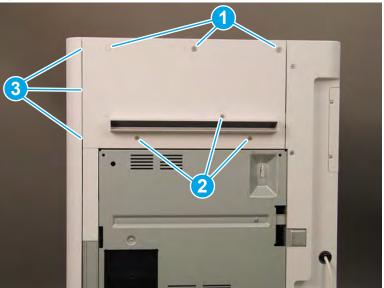
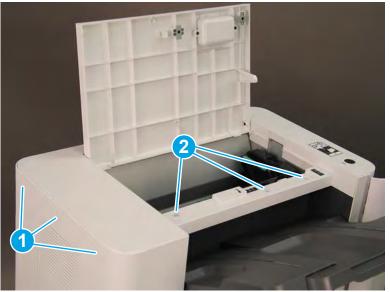


Figure 4–354 Remove six screws and the right top cover

### Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

### Figure 4-355 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

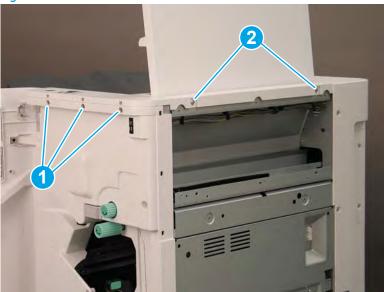


Figure 4-356 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

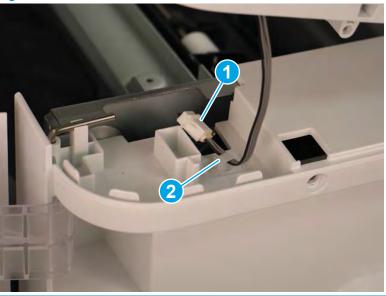


Figure 4-357 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

## Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

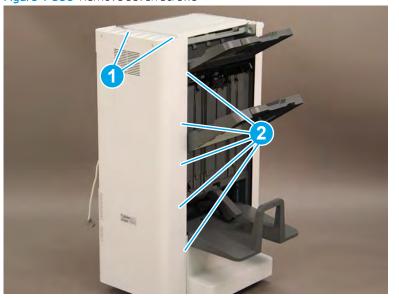
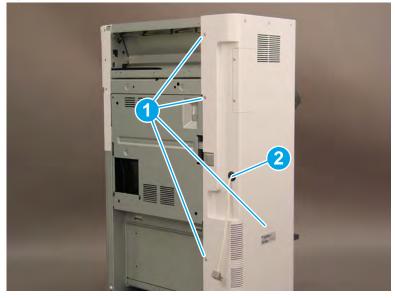


Figure 4-358 Remove seven screws

- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
  - **NOTE:** Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
  - 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

#### Figure 4-359 Remove four screws and the rear cover



### Step 4: Remove the feed exit motor (M2)

- Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed exit motor.
- ♀ Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

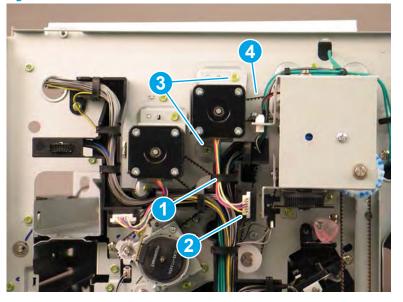


Figure 4-360 Remove the feed exit motor

## Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the front cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the buffer motor, gear, and sensor</u>
- <u>Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the buffer motor, gear, and sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC90-01453A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Finisher sub - drive buffer

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 2 Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

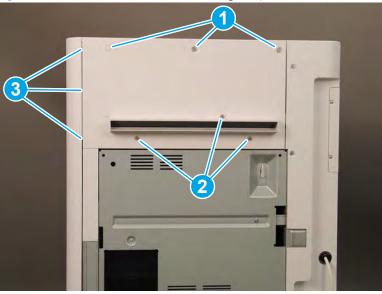
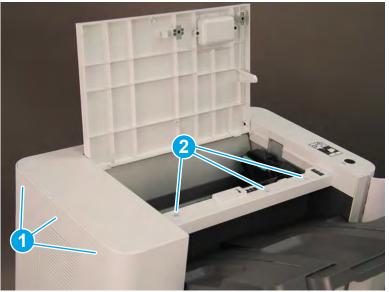


Figure 4-361 Remove six screws and the right top cover

### Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

# Figure 4-362 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

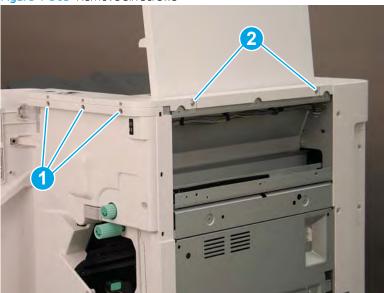
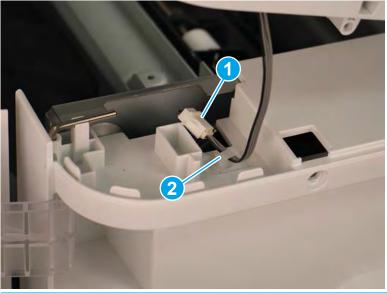


Figure 4-363 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-364 Disconnect one connector and release retainer



**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

### Step 3: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

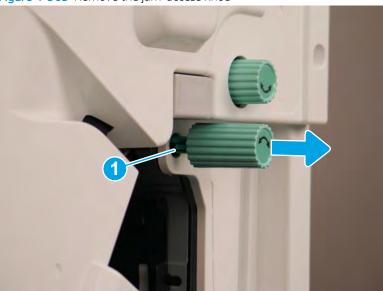


Figure 4-365 Remove the jam-access knob

2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

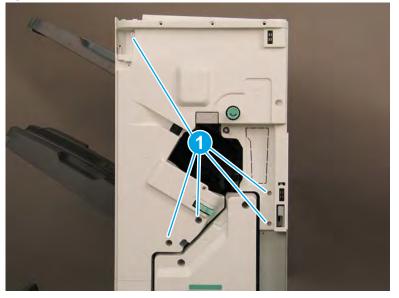
**3.** Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 4-366 Remove one screw



- 4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.
  - 2 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

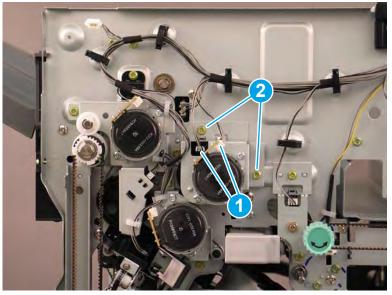
Figure 4-367 Remove five screws and the front cover



# Step 4: Remove the buffer motor, gear, and sensor

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-368 Disconnect two connectors and remove two screws



2. If you are replacing the gear, slide it off of the shaft.

Figure 4-369 Slide the gear off of the shaft

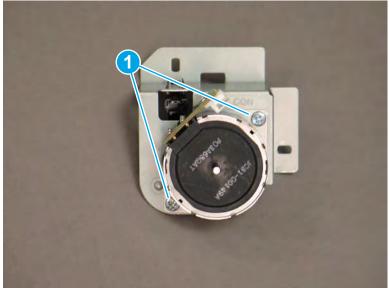


3. If you are replacing the sensor (callout 1), remove it from the motor housing.

Figure 4-370 Remove the sensor

- 4. If you are replacing the motor, do the following:).
  - 2 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.
    - **a.** Remove two screws (callout 1)

Figure 4-371 Remove two screws



**b.** Lower the motor (callout 1) and then pull it away from the housing (callout 2) to remove it.

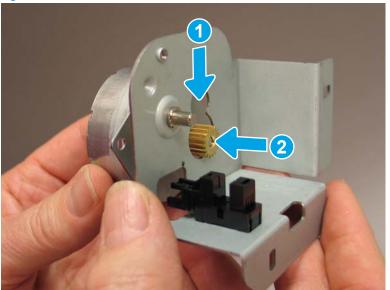


Figure 4-372 Remove the buffer motor

### Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Front tamper motor (M6)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 11: Remove the front tamper (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 12: Remove the front tamper motor (M7)</u>
- <u>Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front tamper motor on the finisher.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

### JC93-01001A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Drive Motor, Step

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🔅 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

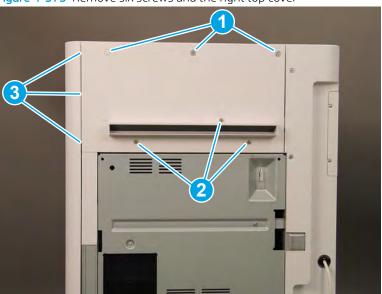
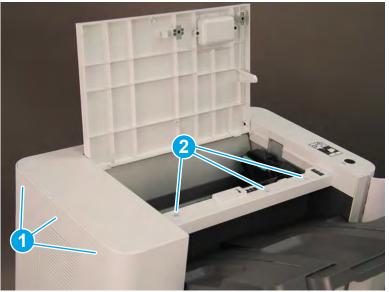


Figure 4-373 Remove six screws and the right top cover

# Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

# Figure 4-374 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

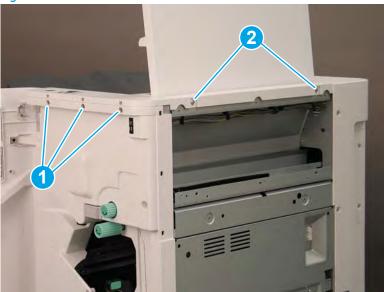
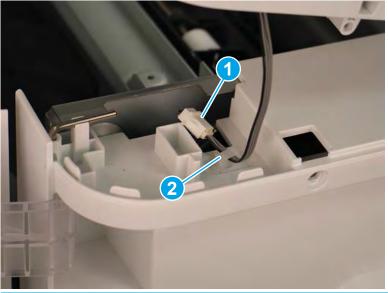


Figure 4-375 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-376 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

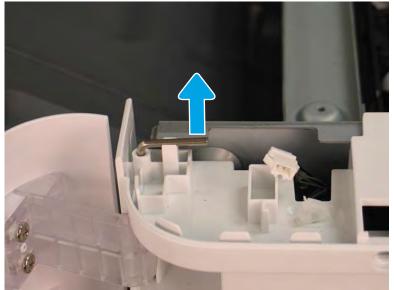


☆ Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

# Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

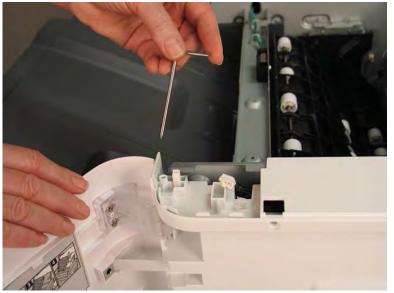
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-377 Lift the top hinge pin



2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-378 Remove the top hinge pin



**3.** Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.



Figure 4-379 Release the lower hinge pin

Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it. 4.

Figure 4-380 Remove the lower hinge pin



- 5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door
- ☆ Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

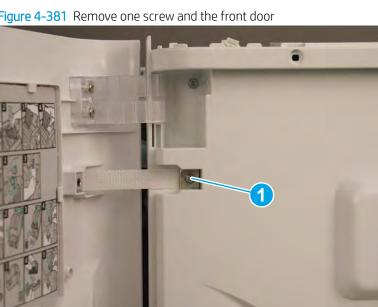
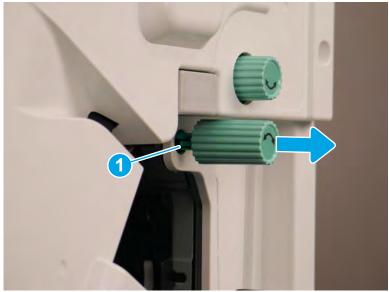


Figure 4-381 Remove one screw and the front door

# Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-382 Remove the jam-access knob



- 2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
- 3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 4-383 Remove one screw



- 4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

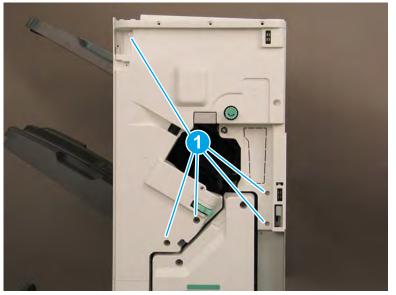


Figure 4-384 Remove five screws and the front cover

# Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

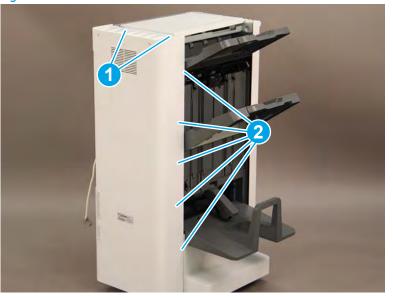
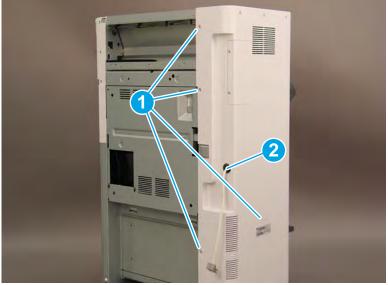


Figure 4-385 Remove seven screws

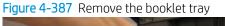
- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- ☆ **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

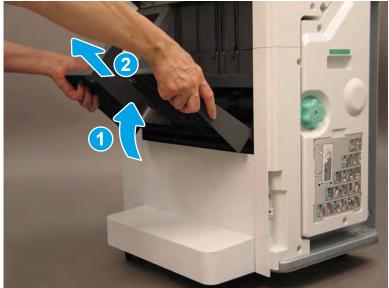
Figure 4–386 Remove four screws and the rear cover



## Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.





2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

**NOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

#### Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

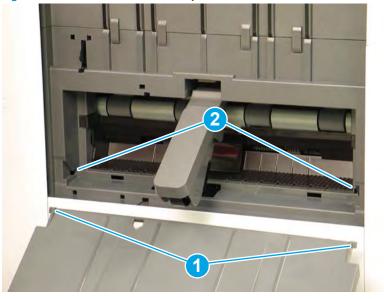


Figure 4-388 Install the booklet tray

# Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

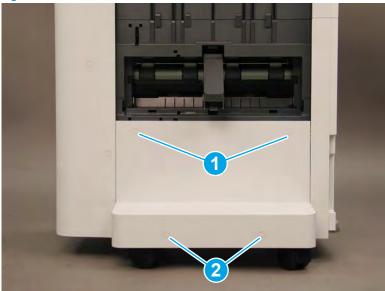
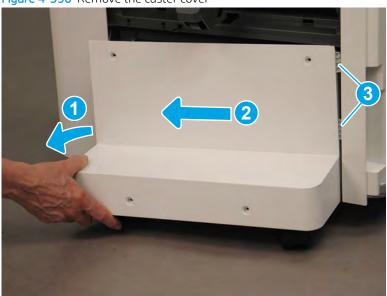


Figure 4-389 Remove four screws

- 2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.
- Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.



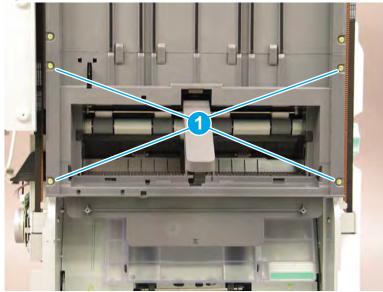
**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-390 Remove the caster cover

# Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

- 1. Remove four screws (callout 1).
- **NOTE:** Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

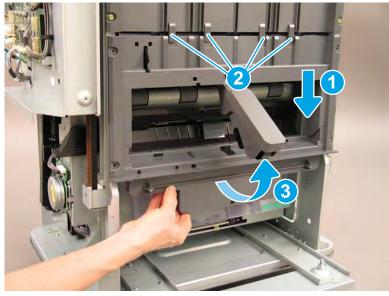
Figure 4-391 Remove four screws



2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

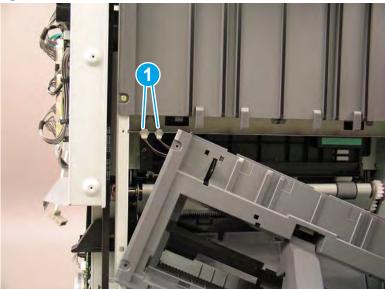
**CAUTION:** The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.
  - Figure 4-392 Release the lower shield



- 3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.
  - **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-393 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

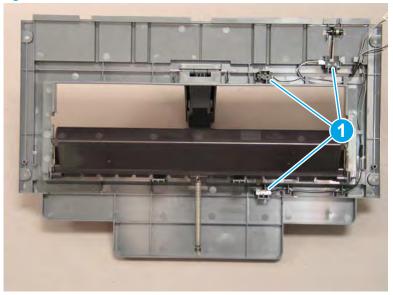
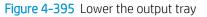
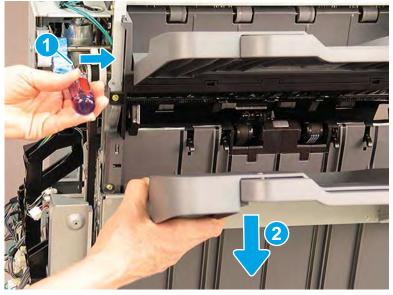


Figure 4-394 Locate sensors

# Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

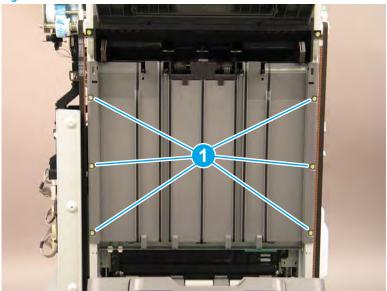
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.





2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

### Figure 4-396 Remove six screws



3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

**<u>A</u>** CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

☆: Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

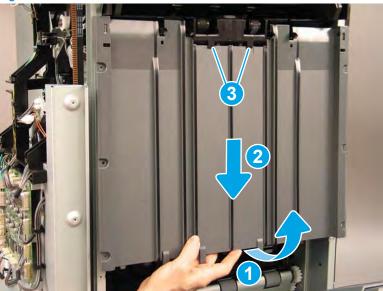


Figure 4-397 Release the shield

- 4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

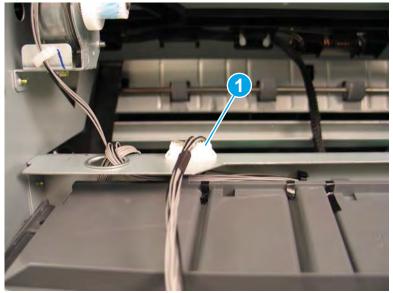


Figure 4-398 Disconnect one connector

5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

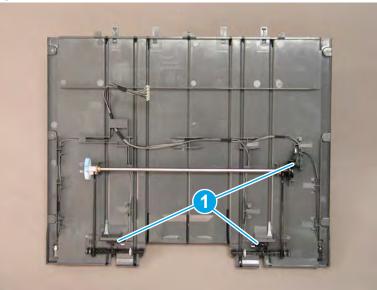
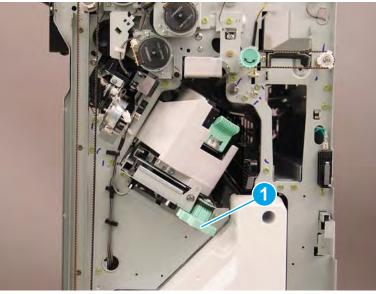


Figure 4-399 Locate sensors

# Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

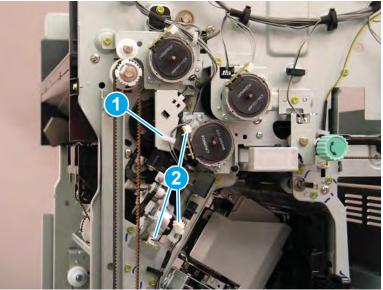
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 4-400 Move the staple unit to the center



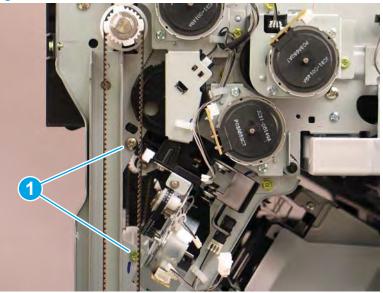
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 4-401 Disconnect three connectors



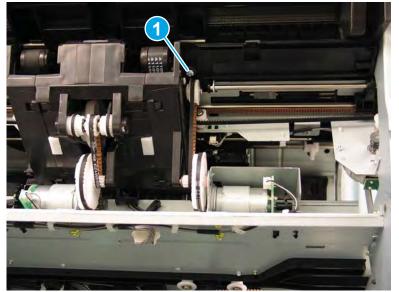
**3.** Remove two screws (callout 1).

### Figure 4-402 Remove two screws



4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-403 Remove one screw



5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

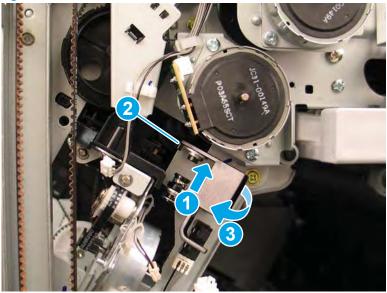
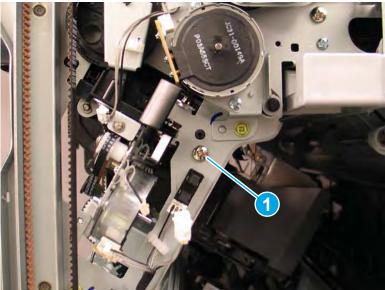


Figure 4-404 Rotate the sensor

6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

# Figure 4-405 Remove one screw



7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

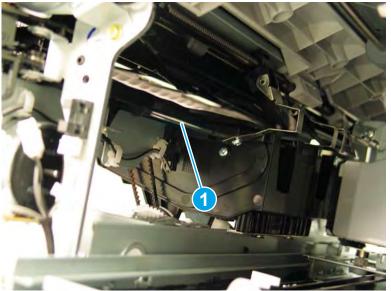


Figure 4-406 Remove the front tamper shaft

8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

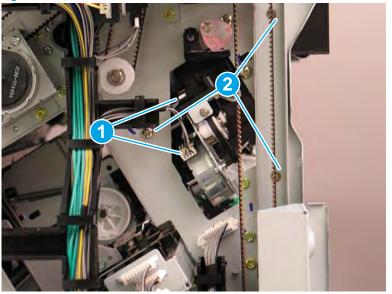
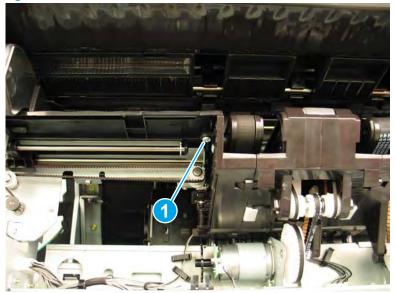


Figure 4-407 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws

9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-408 Remove one screw



**10.** Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

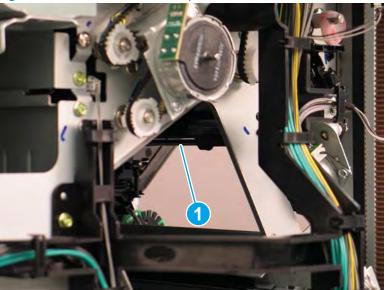
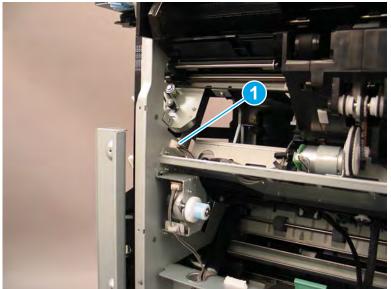


Figure 4-409 Remove the rear tamper shaft

**11.** At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-410 Disconnect one connector



**12.** At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

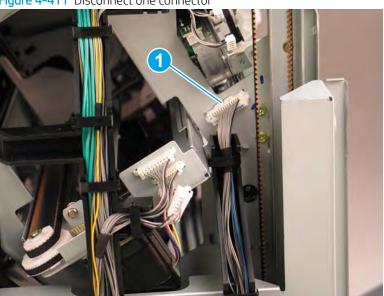


Figure 4-411 Disconnect one connector

**13.** At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

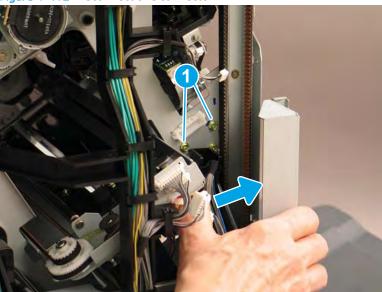


Figure 4-412 Disconnect one connector

14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

#### Figure 4-413 Remove two screws



**15.** Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

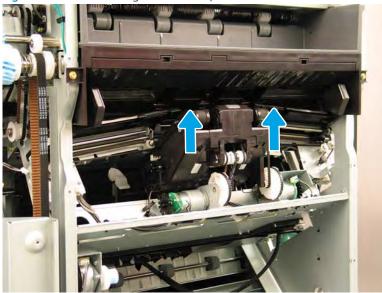
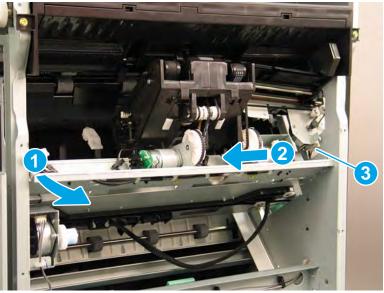


Figure 4–414 Lift the edges of the tampers

**16.** Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.



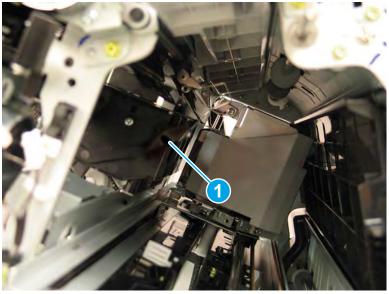


- 17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.
  - **NOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

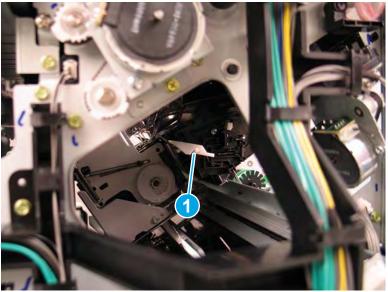
**a.** When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-416 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



**b.** When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-417 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft



# Step 11: Remove the front tamper (finisher)

- Lift the front tamper away from the finisher to remove it
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

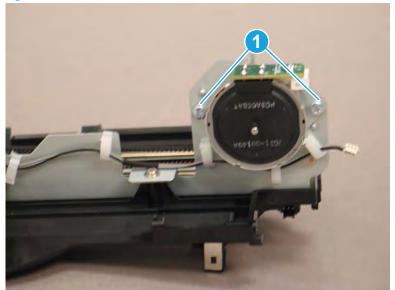
Figure 4-418 Remove the front tamper



# Step 12: Remove the front tamper motor (M7)

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-419 Remove two screws



- 2. Release the belt (callout 1), and then remove the front tamper motor.
  - 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Make sure that the belt is routed correctly when reinstalling the motor.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-420 Release the belt and remove the motor



### Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly

⚠

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

Caution:	ESC	Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at
----------	-----	---

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

**IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Rear tamper motor (M7)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 11: Remove the rear tamper (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 12: Remove the rear tamper motor (M7)</u>
- <u>Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear tamper motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

### JC93-01001A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Drive Motor, Step

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🔅 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

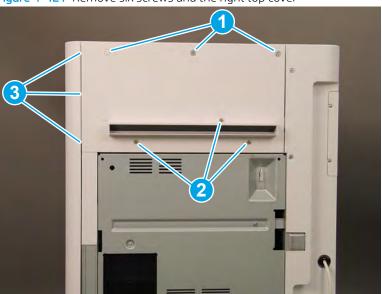
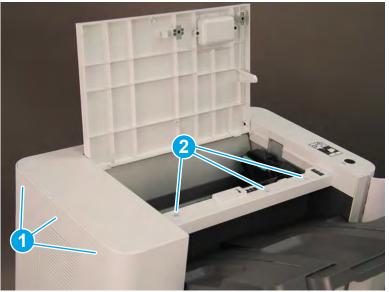


Figure 4-421 Remove six screws and the right top cover

# Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

# Figure 4-422 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

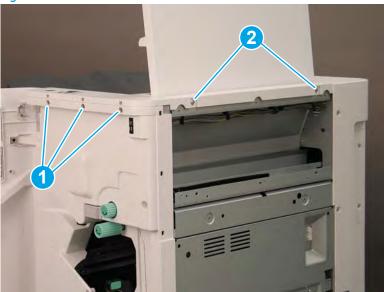
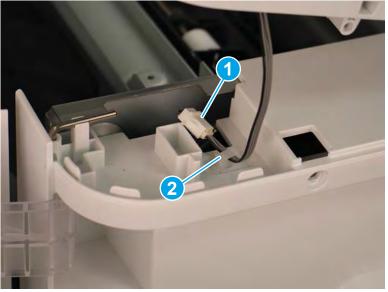


Figure 4-423 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-424 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

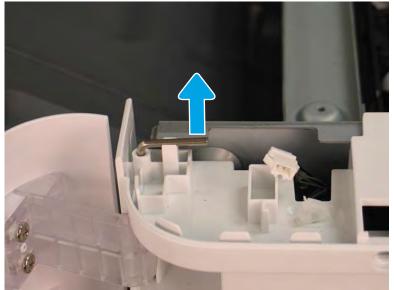


☆ Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

## Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

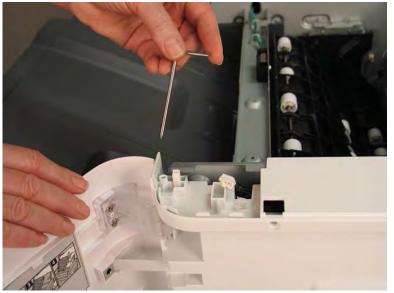
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-425 Lift the top hinge pin



2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-426 Remove the top hinge pin



**3.** Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.



Figure 4-427 Release the lower hinge pin

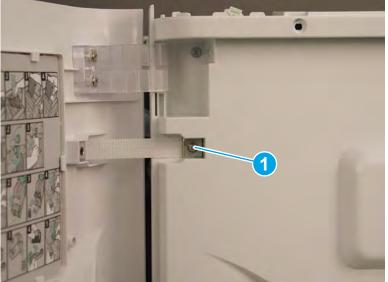
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 4-428 Remove the lower hinge pin



- 5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

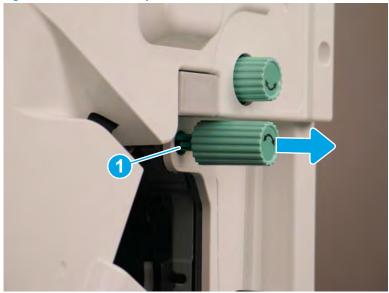
Figure 4–429 Remove one screw and the front door



# Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-430 Remove the jam-access knob

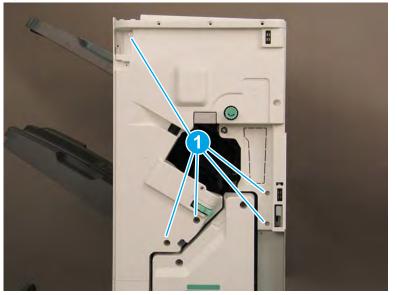


- 2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
- 3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 4-431 Remove one screw



- 4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.



#### Figure 4-432 Remove five screws and the front cover

# Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

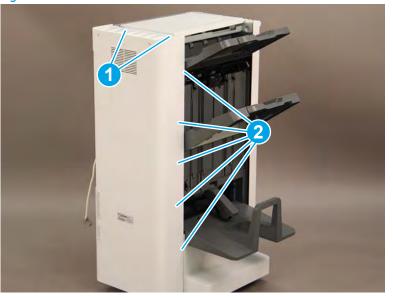
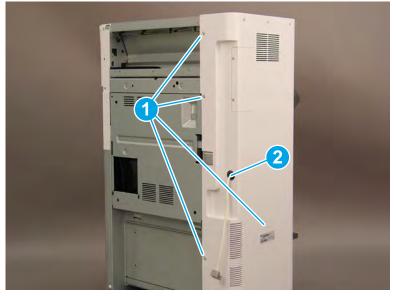


Figure 4-433 Remove seven screws

- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- ☆ **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

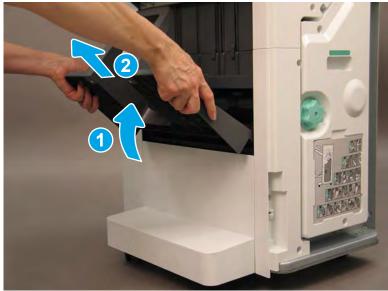
Figure 4-434 Remove four screws and the rear cover



### Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.





2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

**NOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

#### Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

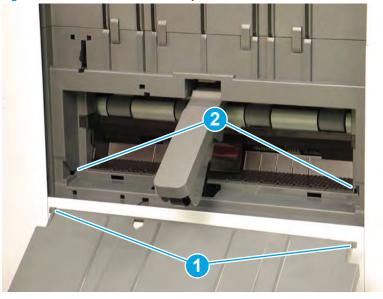
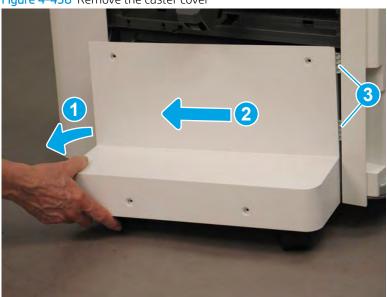


Figure 4-436 Install the booklet tray

# Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

- 1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).
  - <image>

- 2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.
- Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.



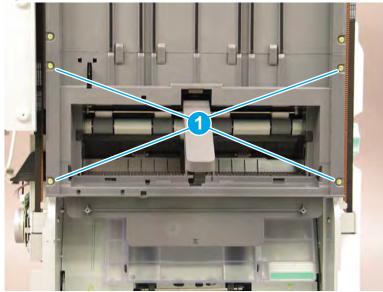
**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-438 Remove the caster cover

### Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

- 1. Remove four screws (callout 1).
- **NOTE:** Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

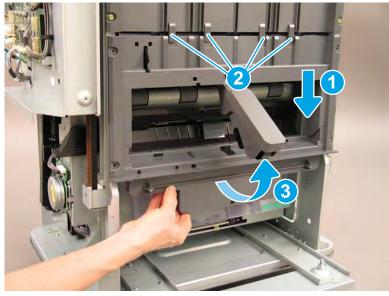
Figure 4-439 Remove four screws



2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

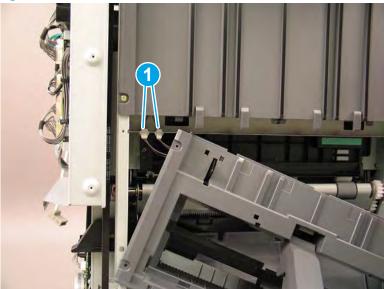
**CAUTION:** The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.
  - Figure 4-440 Release the lower shield



- 3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.
  - 🛠 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-441 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

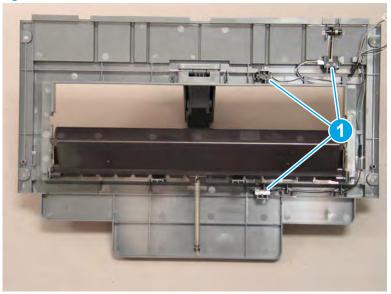
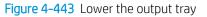
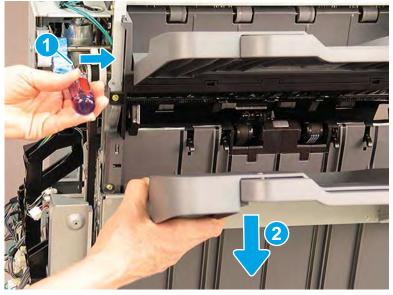


Figure 4-442 Locate sensors

# Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

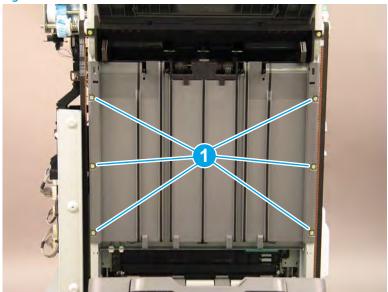
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.





2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

#### Figure 4–444 Remove six screws



3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

**<u>A</u> CAUTION:** The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

☆: Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

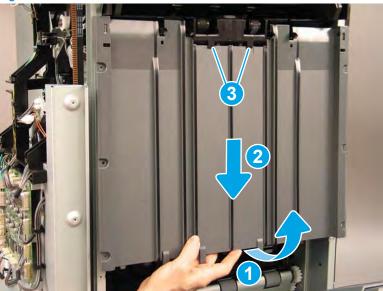


Figure 4-445 Release the shield

- 4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

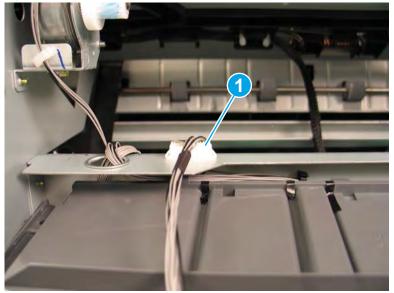


Figure 4-446 Disconnect one connector

5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

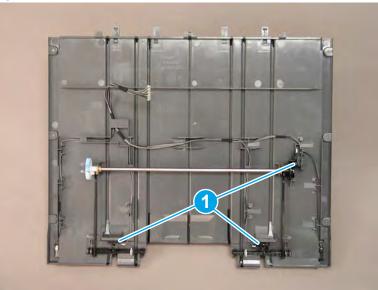
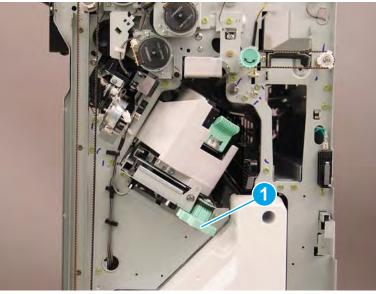


Figure 4-447 Locate sensors

# Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

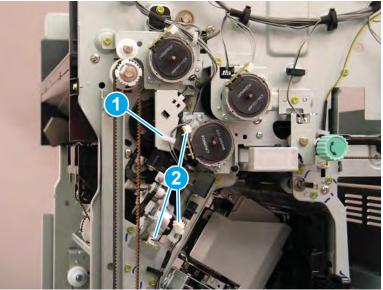
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 4-448 Move the staple unit to the center



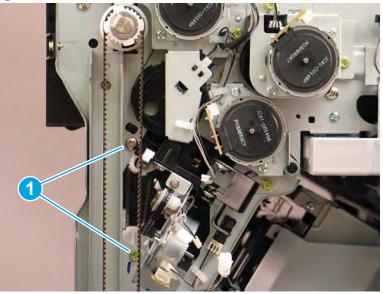
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 4-449 Disconnect three connectors



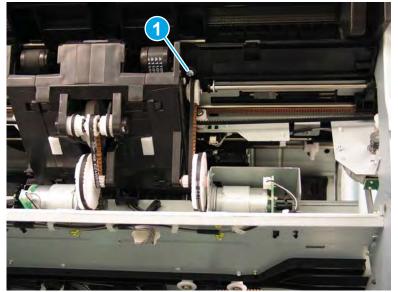
**3.** Remove two screws (callout 1).

### Figure 4-450 Remove two screws

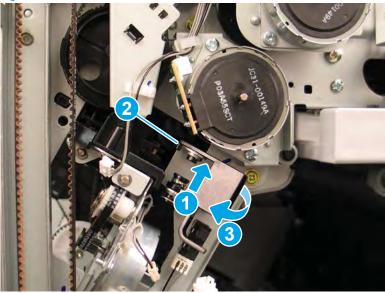


4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-451 Remove one screw



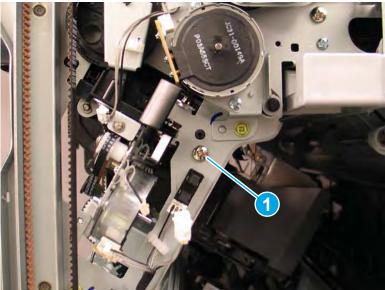
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).





6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

### Figure 4-453 Remove one screw



7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

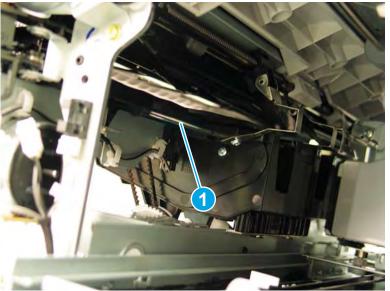


Figure 4-454 Remove the front tamper shaft

8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

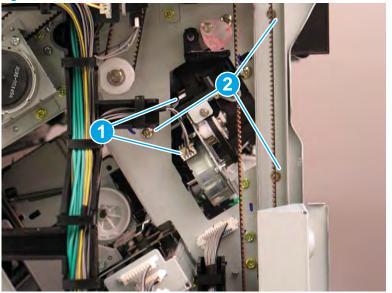
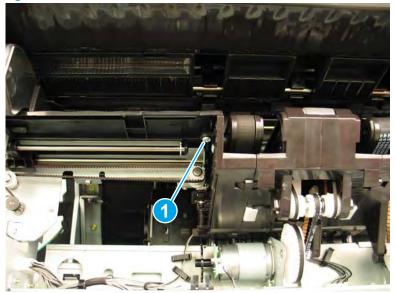


Figure 4-455 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws

9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-456 Remove one screw



**10.** Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

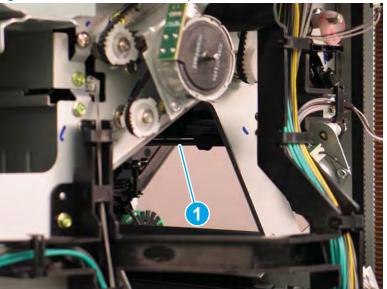
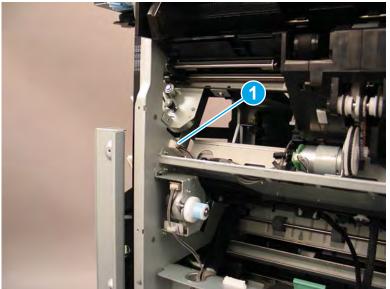


Figure 4-457 Remove the rear tamper shaft

**11.** At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-458 Disconnect one connector



**12.** At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

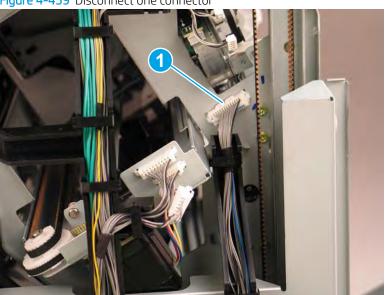


Figure 4-459 Disconnect one connector

**13.** At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

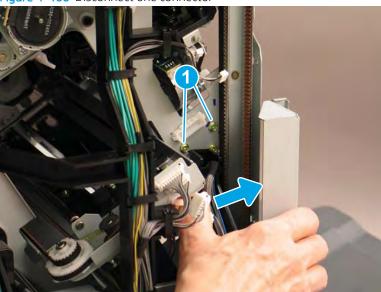


Figure 4-460 Disconnect one connector

14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

#### Figure 4-461 Remove two screws



**15.** Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

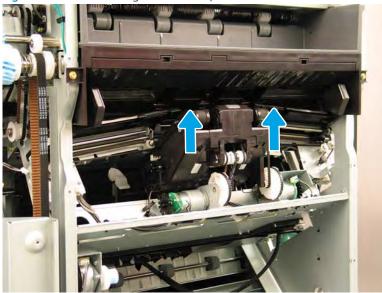


Figure 4-462 Lift the edges of the tampers

**16.** Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

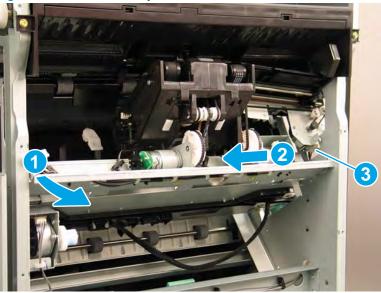


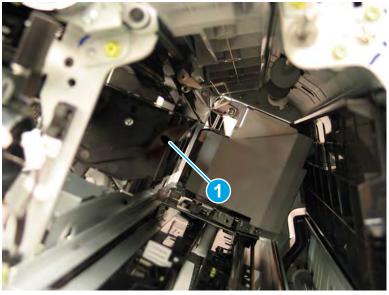
Figure 4-463 Remove the ejector unit

- 17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.
  - **WOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

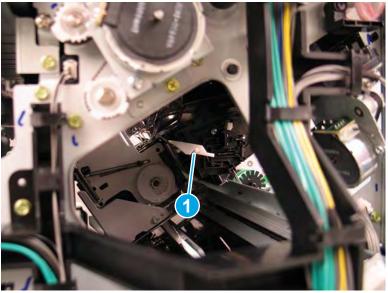
**a.** When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-464 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



**b.** When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 4-465 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft



## Step 11: Remove the rear tamper (finisher)

- Lift the rear tamper away from the finisher to remove it
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

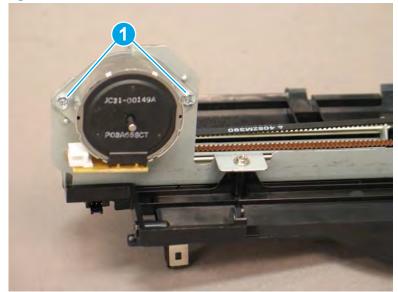
Figure 4-466 Remove the rear tamper



# Step 12: Remove the rear tamper motor (M7)

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

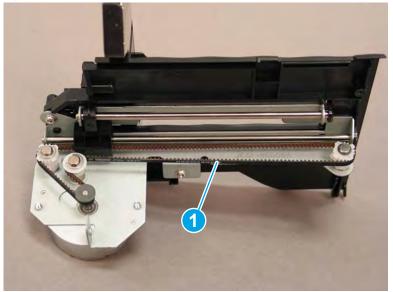
Figure 4-467 Remove two screws



- 2. Release the belt (callout 1), and then remove the rear tamper motor.
  - 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt is routed correctly when reinstalling the motor.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4–468 Release the belt and remove the motor



### Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

- 2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.
  - CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

**IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# SCU motor (M10)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the rear cover</u>
- <u>Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 10: Remove the SCU motor (M10)</u>
- <u>Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the SCU motor on the finisher.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

### JC93-01156A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Motor, Step

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

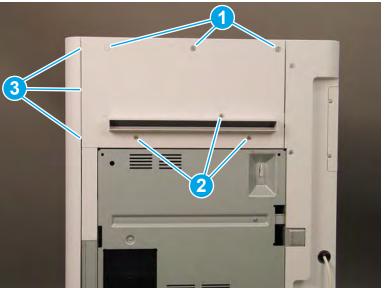
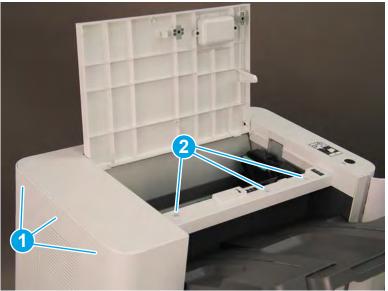


Figure 4-469 Remove six screws and the right top cover

## Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

## Figure 4-470 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

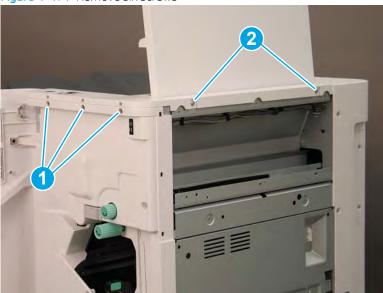
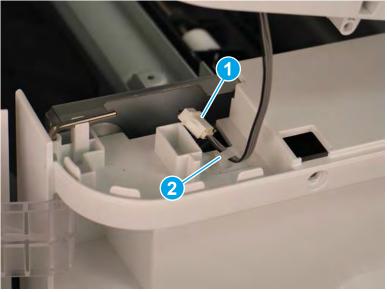


Figure 4-471 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.



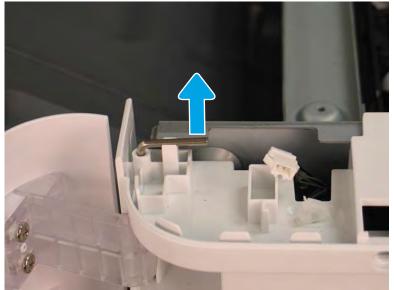


☆ Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

## Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

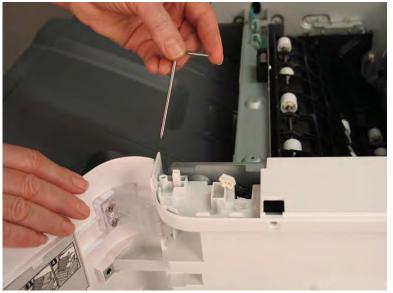
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 4-473 Lift the top hinge pin



2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 4-474 Remove the top hinge pin



**3.** Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.



Figure 4-475 Release the lower hinge pin

4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 4-476 Remove the lower hinge pin



- 5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

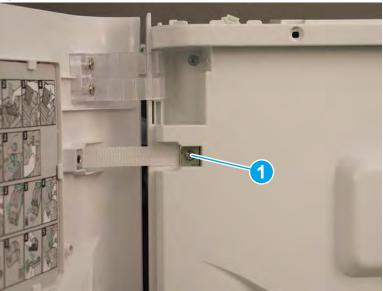
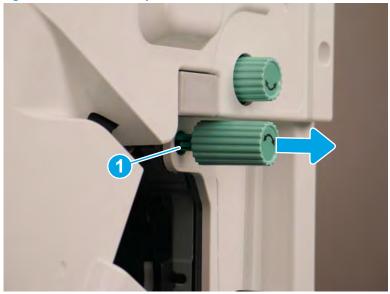


Figure 4-477 Remove one screw and the front door

## Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 4-478 Remove the jam-access knob



- 2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
- 3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 4-479 Remove one screw



- 4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

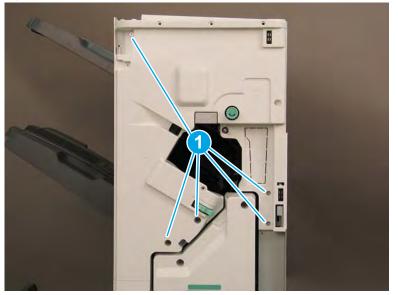


Figure 4-480 Remove five screws and the front cover

## Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

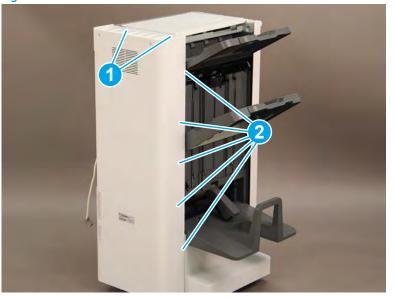
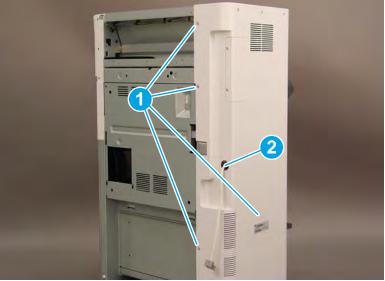


Figure 4-481 Remove seven screws

- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- ☆ **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

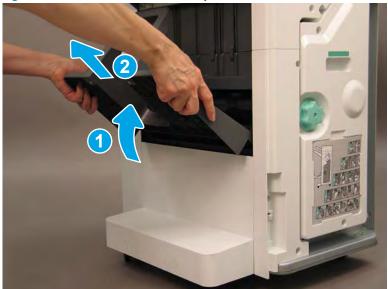
Figure 4-482 Remove four screws and the rear cover



## Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-483 Remove the booklet tray



2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

**NOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

### Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

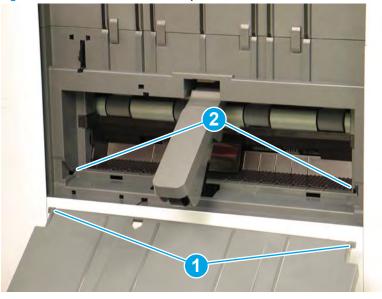


Figure 4-484 Install the booklet tray

## Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

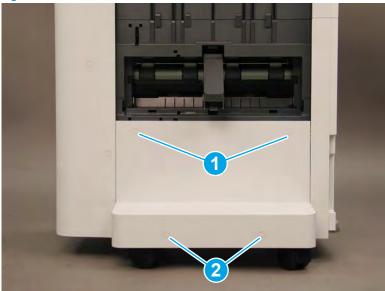
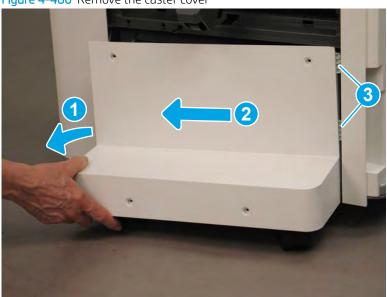


Figure 4-485 Remove four screws

- 2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.
- Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.



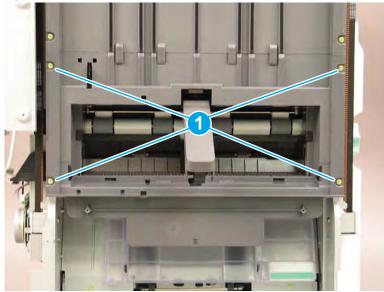
**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-486 Remove the caster cover

## Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

- 1. Remove four screws (callout 1).
- **NOTE:** Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

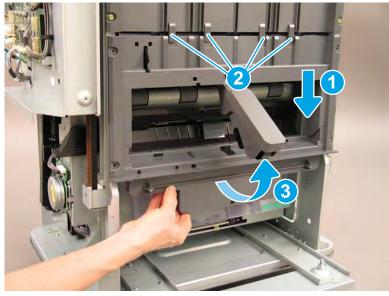
Figure 4-487 Remove four screws



2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

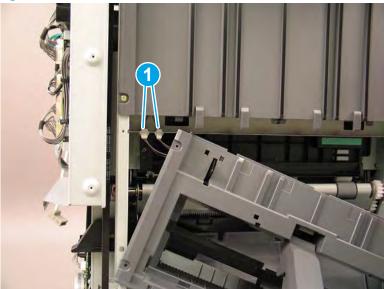
**CAUTION:** The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.
  - Figure 4-488 Release the lower shield



- 3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.
- **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-489 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

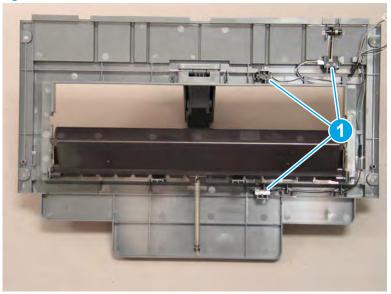
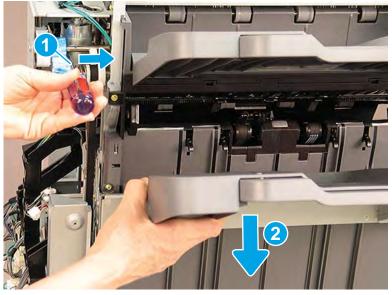


Figure 4-490 Locate sensors

## Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

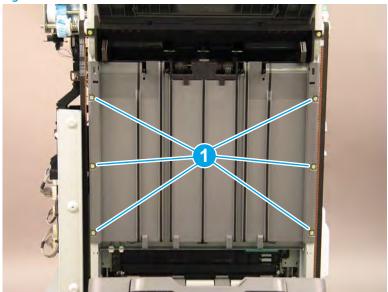
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.





2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

### Figure 4-492 Remove six screws



3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

**<u>A</u> CAUTION:** The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

☆: Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

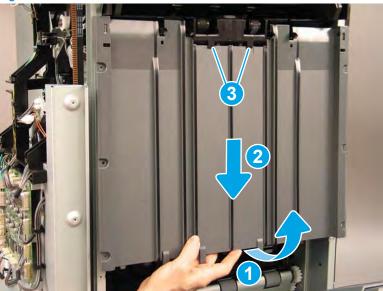


Figure 4-493 Release the shield

- 4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.
  - 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

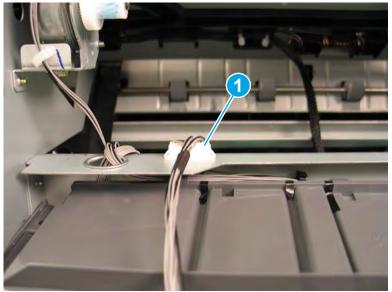


Figure 4-494 Disconnect one connector

5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

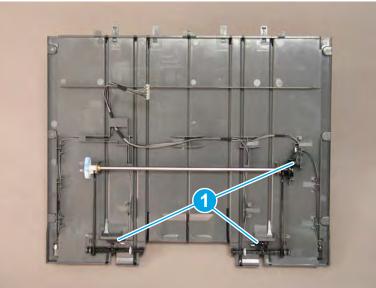
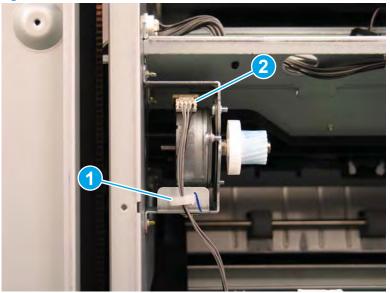


Figure 4-495 Locate sensors

## Step 10: Remove the SCU motor (M10)

1. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 4-496 Disconnect one connector



Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the motor and bracket. 2.

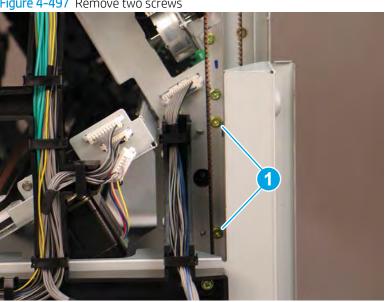
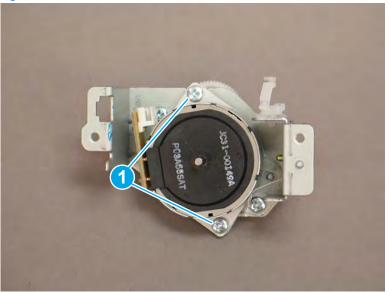


Figure 4-497 Remove two screws

3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the motor.

Figure 4-498 Remove two screws and the motor



4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

**WOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

### Special installation instructions: SCU motor (M10)

▲ When installing the motor and bracket, align the tab and slot on the motor bracket with the tab and slot in the printer.

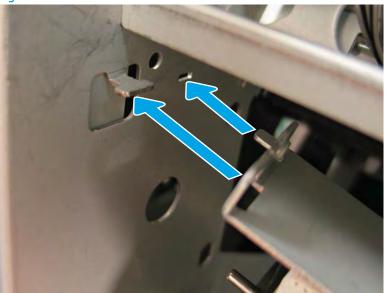


Figure 4-499 Install the motor and bracket

## Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

### **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Main tray moving motor (M11)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the main tray moving motor (M11)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the main tray moving motor (M11) on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

### JC90-01415B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

Motor

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 2 Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

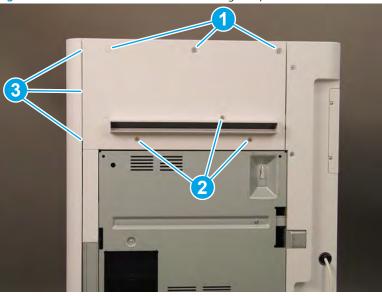
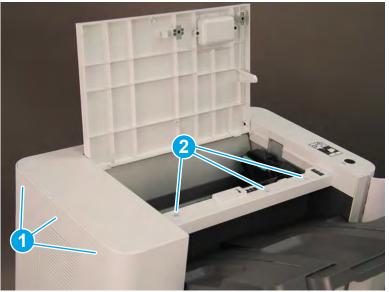


Figure 4-500 Remove six screws and the right top cover

## Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

## Figure 4-501 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

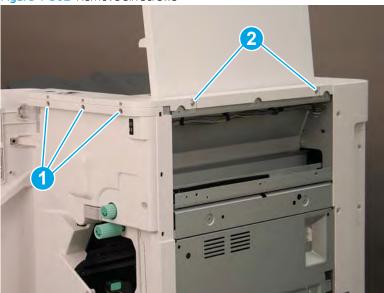
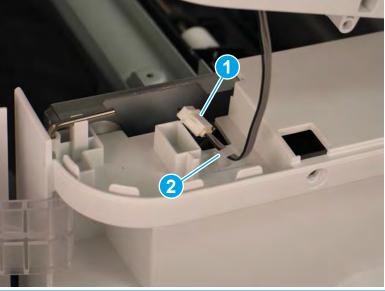


Figure 4-502 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.





**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

## Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

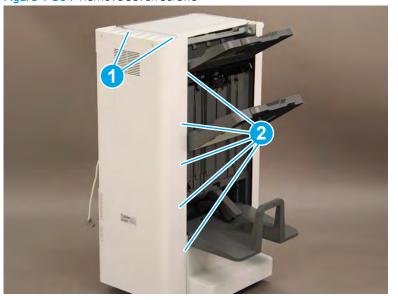
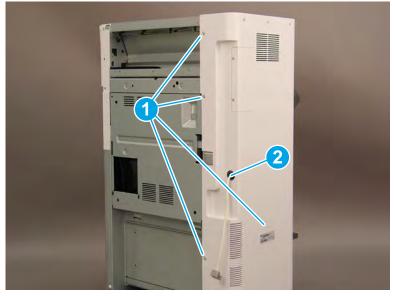


Figure 4–504 Remove seven screws

- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- ☆ **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

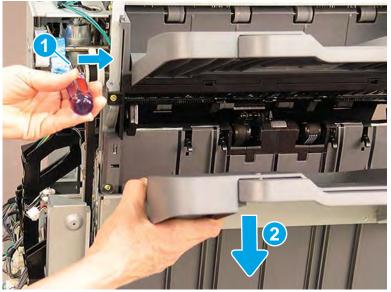
Figure 4-505 Remove four screws and the rear cover



## Step 4: Remove the main tray moving motor (M11)

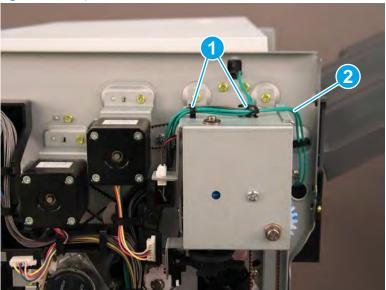
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 4-506 Lower the output tray



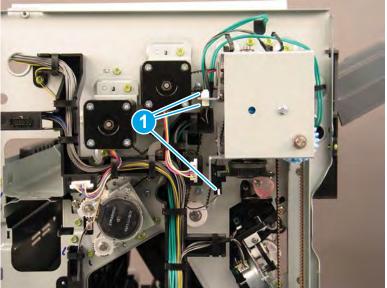
2. Open two retainers (callout 1), and then release the green wires (callout 2).

Figure 4-507 Open two retainers



**3**. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

Figure 4-508 Disconnect three connectors



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then thread the cable up through the opening in the top of the bracket.

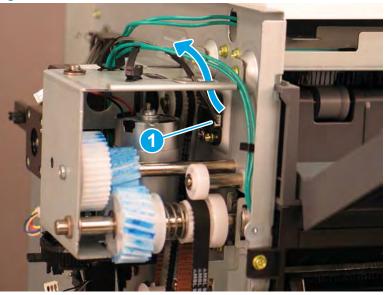
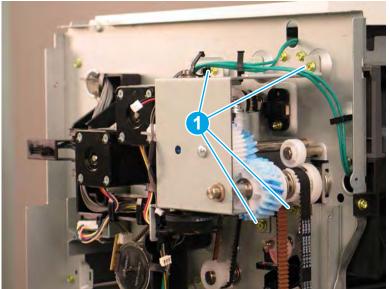


Figure 4-509 Disconnect one connector

5. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the motor assembly.

Figure 4-510 Remove four screws and the motor assembly



6. Carefully pull the motor assembly away from the printer to remove it.

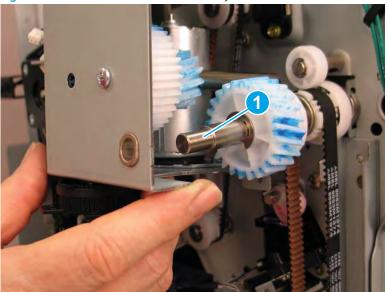


Figure 4-511 Remove the motor assembly

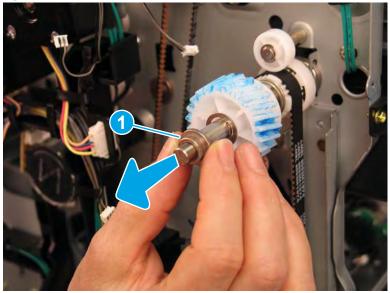
7. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

😰 NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Main tray moving motor (M11)

**a.** Before installing the motor assembly, slide the bushing (callout 1) off of the shaft.

Figure 4-512 Remove the bushing



**b.** Align the flat edges on the bushing with the flat edges on the opening in the motor assembly bracket, and then install the bushing.

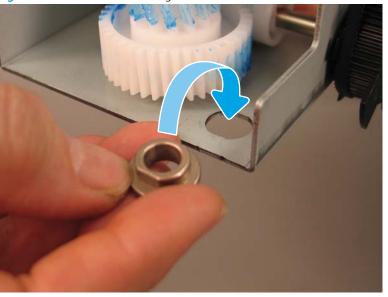


Figure 4-513 Install the bushing

c. Position the bushing over the shaft, and then install the motor assembly.

### Figure 4-514 Install the motor assembly

## Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

**1.** Dispose of the defective part.

### **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Booklet finisher front cover

- Introduction
- <u>Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet finisher front cover.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC90-01478B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Finisher Sub - Cover F Bm

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

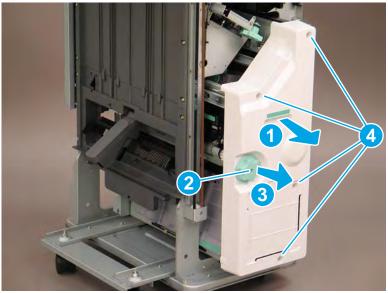
### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4–515 Remove five screws and the cover



### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## **Booklet finisher**

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher</u>
- <u>Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

### JC90-01416A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Finisher Sub - Booklet Unit

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🛠 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

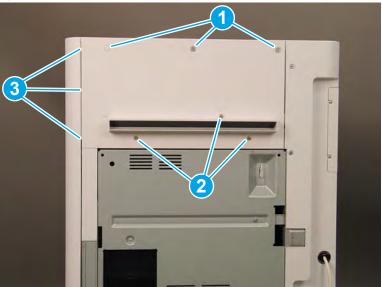
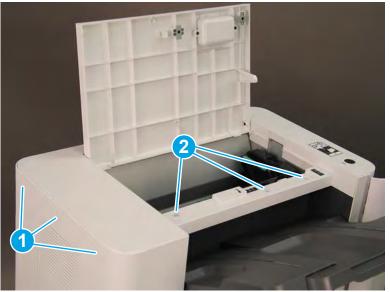


Figure 4–516 Remove six screws and the right top cover

## Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-517 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

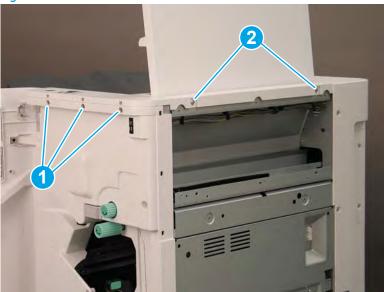


Figure 4-518 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

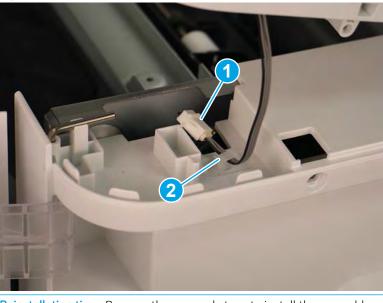


Figure 4-519 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

## Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

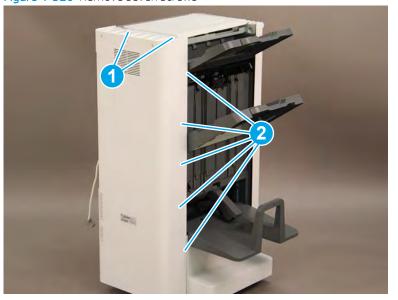


Figure 4-520 Remove seven screws

- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

# Figure 4-521 Remove four screws and the rear cover

## Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher

1. Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher.

Figure 4-522 Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher



2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

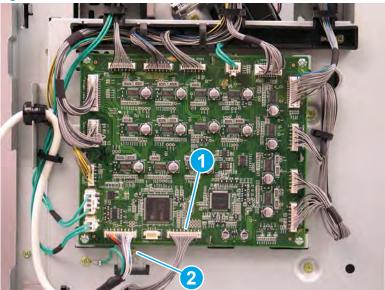


Figure 4-523 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw

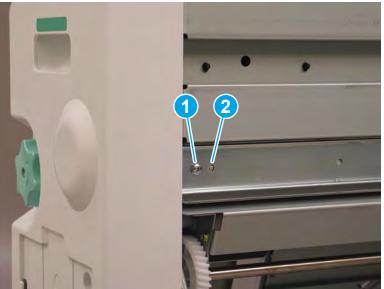
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 4-524 Release the metal bracket



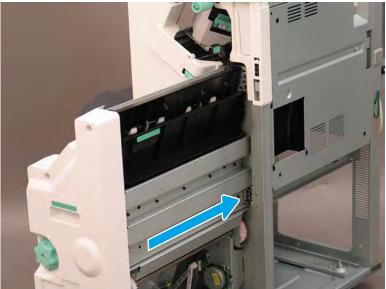
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet finisher.





5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 4-526 Slide the right rail



6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet finisher.

Figure 4-527 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet finisher up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet finisher.

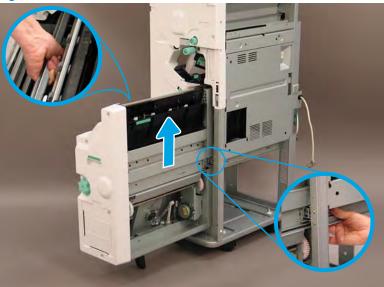


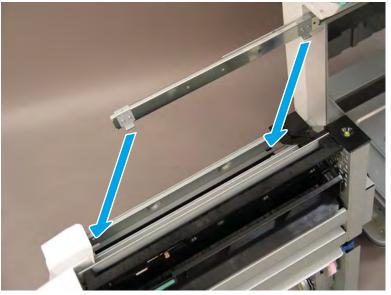
Figure 4-528 Remove the booklet finisher

- 8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.
  - ${\ensuremath{\overline{\mathbb{B}}}}$  NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet finisher

▲ When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet finisher.

Figure 4-529 Position the hooks



When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet finisher aligns with the arrow on the finisher 9. rail.





**10.** When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet finisher aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.



**11.** Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet finisher slot.

## Figure 4-532 Extend the right rail

## Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🛕 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Booklet finisher PCA

- Introduction
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher PCA</u>
- <u>Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet finisher PCA.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC92-02790B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

Booklet finisher PCA

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🛠 Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

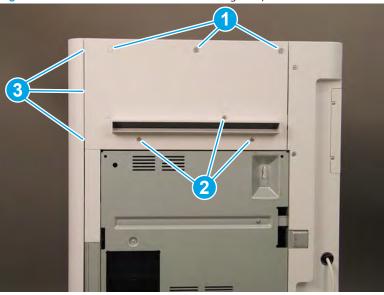
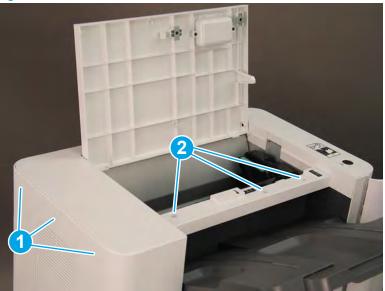


Figure 4-533 Remove six screws and the right top cover

## Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-534 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

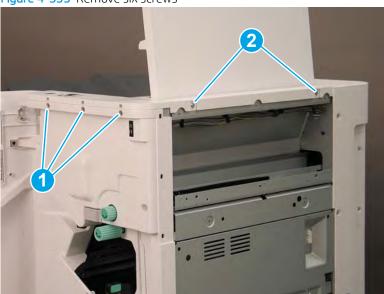


Figure 4-535 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

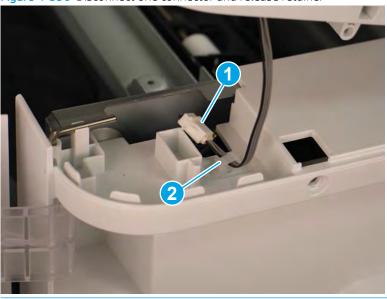


Figure 4-536 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

## Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

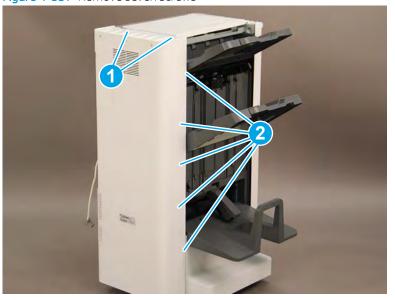


Figure 4-537 Remove seven screws

- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- **NOTE:** Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-538 Remove four screws and the rear cover

## Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher

1. Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher.

Figure 4-539 Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher



2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

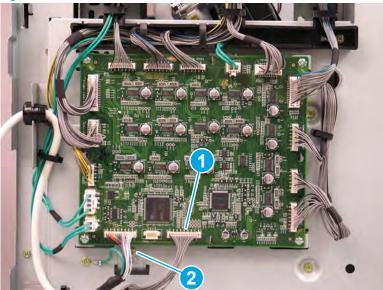


Figure 4-540 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw

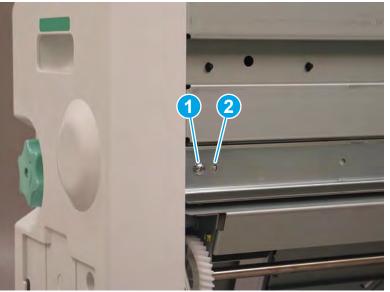
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 4-541 Release the metal bracket



4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet finisher.





5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

## Figure 4-543 Slide the right rail



6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet finisher.

Figure 4-544 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet finisher up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet finisher.

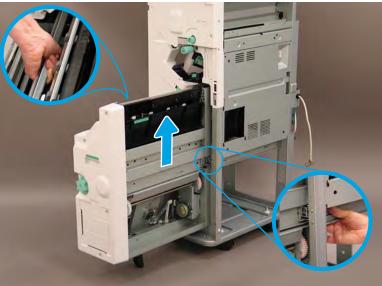


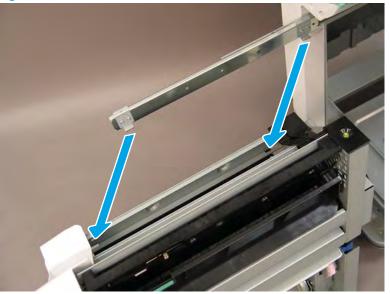
Figure 4-545 Remove the booklet finisher

- 8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.
  - **NOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet finisher

▲ When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet finisher.

Figure 4-546 Position the hooks



9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet finisher aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.





**10.** When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet finisher aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet finisher slot.

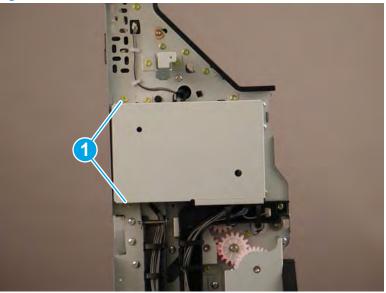


#### Figure 4-549 Extend the right rail

## Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher PCA

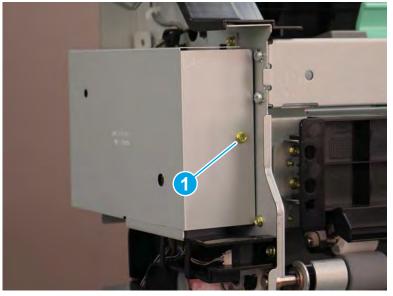
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

## Figure 4-550 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the metal cover.

Figure 4-551 Remove one screw and the metal cover



- 3. Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the booklet finisher PCA.
  - 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

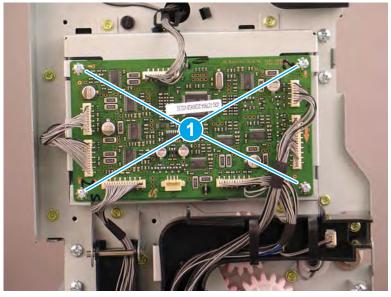


Figure 4-552 Remove four screws and the PCA

## Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

🕅 NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Booklet finisher fold stopper unit

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher front cover</u>
- <u>Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield</u>
- <u>Step 6: Remove the fold stopper unit</u>
- <u>Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet finisher fold stopper unit.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC90-01432A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Finisher Sub - Face Down Stopper Unit

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🛠 Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

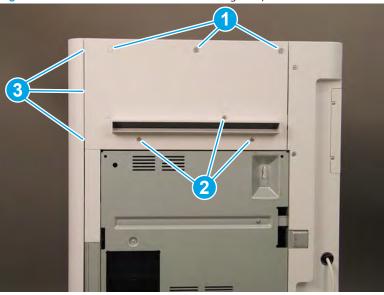
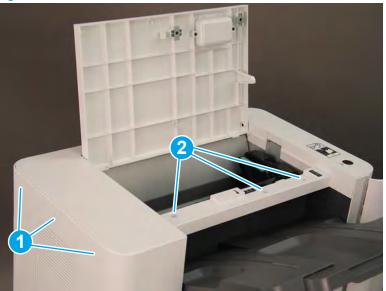


Figure 4-553 Remove six screws and the right top cover

## Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 4-554 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

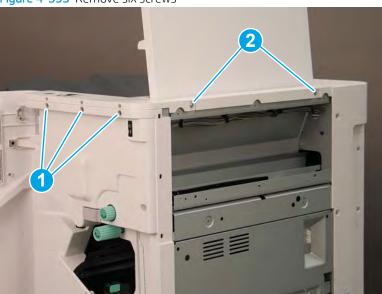


Figure 4-555 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

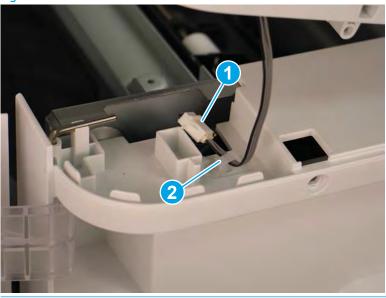


Figure 4-556 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

## Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

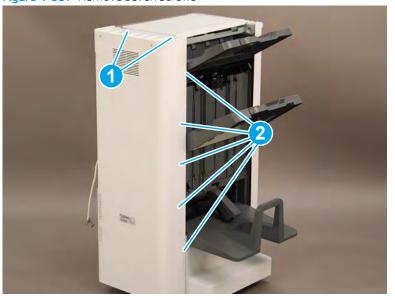


Figure 4-557 Remove seven screws

- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- **NOTE:** Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-558 Remove four screws and the rear cover

## Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

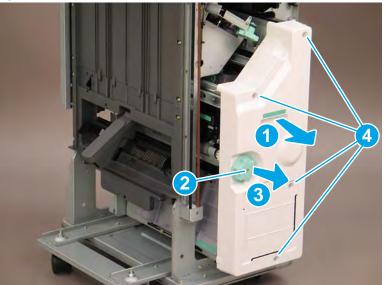


Figure 4-559 Remove five screws and the cover

## Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield

1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

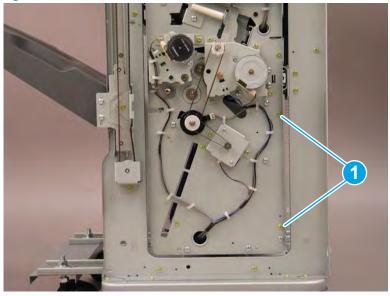
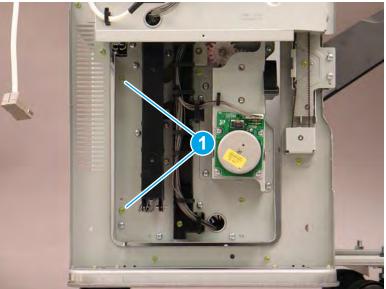


Figure 4-560 Remove two screws

2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet finisher (callout 1).





3. Slide the booklet finisher out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the lower right shield (callout 2) away from the booklet finisher to remove it.

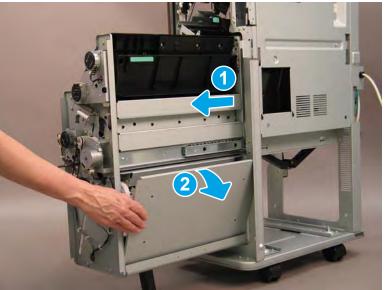


Figure 4-562 Remove the lower right shield

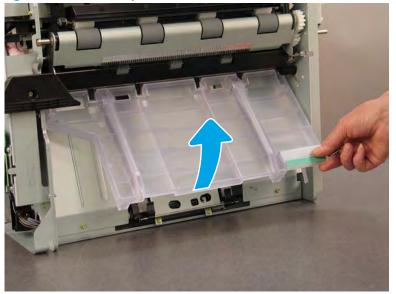
## Step 6: Remove the fold stopper unit

1. On the left side of the booklet finisher, remove two screws through access openings in the jam access cover (callout 1).

Figure 4-563 Remove two screws

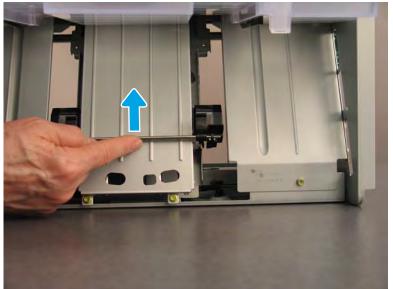
2. Raise the jam access cover.

Figure 4-564 Raise the jam access cover



**3.** Raise the booklet width guide.

Figure 4-565 Raise the booklet width guide



4. On the right side of the booklet finisher, open two retainers (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

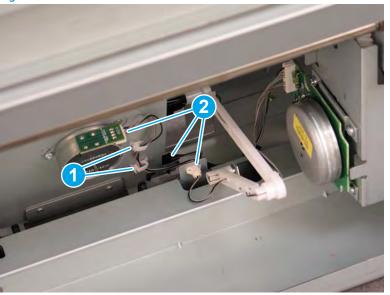
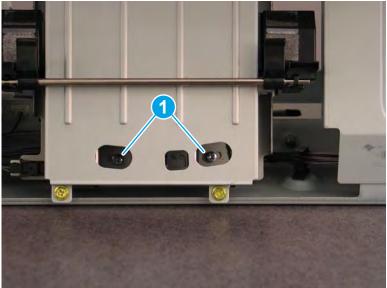


Figure 4–566 Disconnect three connectors

**5.** Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-567 Remove two screws



6. Release the tab (callout 1) on the guide arm, and then slide the guide off of the shaft (callout 2) to remove it.

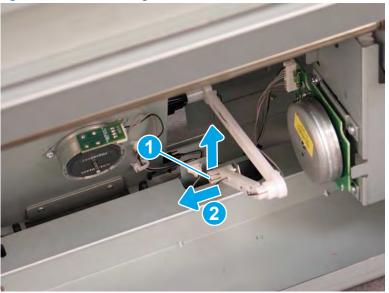


Figure 4-568 Release the guide arm

7. Lower the width guide to the lowest position.

Figure 4-569 Lower the width guide



8. On the right side of the booklet finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-570 Remove one screw

9. Lift the right lower corner (callout 1) to clear the cable guide, and then slide the assembly to the right (callout 2) to remove it.

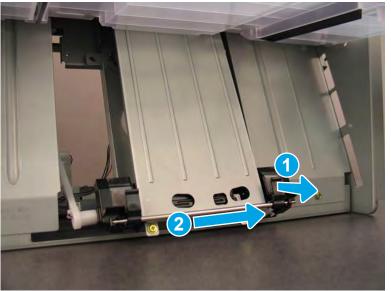


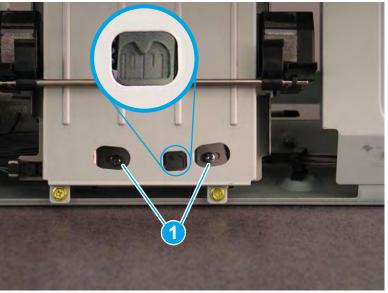
Figure 4-571 Remove the fold stopper unit

- **10.** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.
  - **NOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

#### Special installation instructions: Fold stopper unit

▲ Loosen the two alignment screws (callout 1) and move the fold unit side to side to until the alignment gauge is positioned on the center line. Tighten the screws and run a folded job through the finisher and verify that the fold is correct. If the fold is not correct, loosen the screws, adjust the alignment, and run another fold job. Continue this process until the fold is correct.

Figure 4–572 Adjust the alignment gauge



## Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Kome parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Booklet feed entrance motor (M13)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the booklet feed entrance motor (M13)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet feed entrance motor on the booklet finisher.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC93-01152A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Drive Motor, Step

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

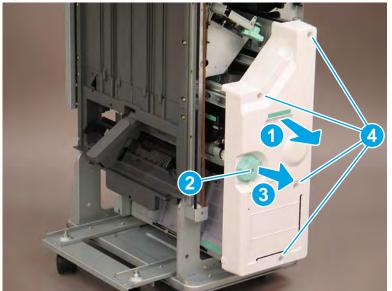
#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

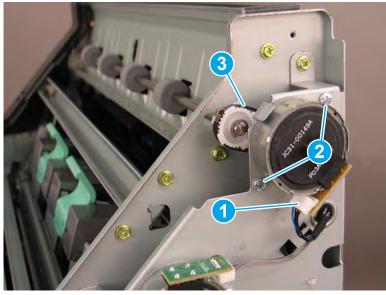
Figure 4-573 Remove five screws and the cover



## Step 2: Remove the booklet feed entrance motor (M13)

- ▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2). Lift the motor away from the booklet finisher and release the belt (callout 3) from the back of the motor.
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-574 Remove the booklet feed entrance motor



## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# TE presser motor (M14)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the TE presser motor (M14)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the TE presser motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC93-01155A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

Drive Motor, Step

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

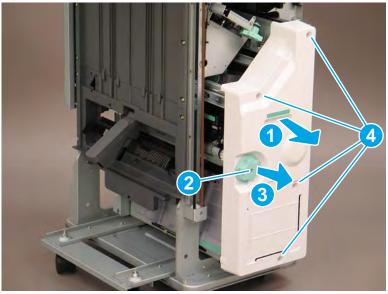
#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.
- 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

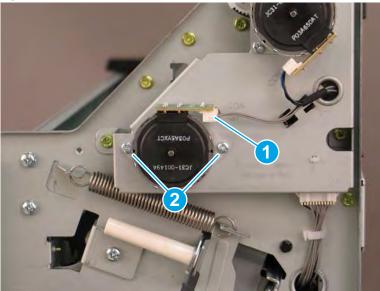
Figure 4–575 Remove five screws and the cover



## Step 2: Remove the TE presser motor (M14)

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the TE presser motor.
- ☆ Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-576 Remove the TE presser motor



## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Stopper moving motor (M16)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the stopper moving motor (M16)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the stopper moving motor on the booklet finisher.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC93-01155A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Drive Motor, Step

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

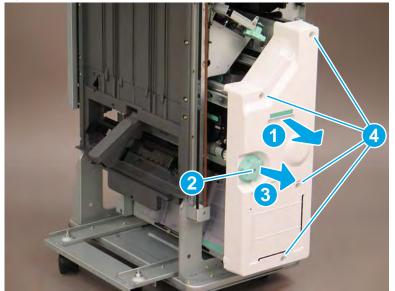
#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-577 Remove five screws and the cover



## Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield

1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

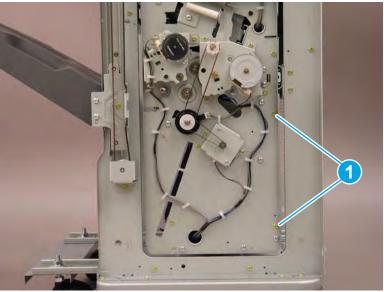


Figure 4-578 Remove two screws

2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

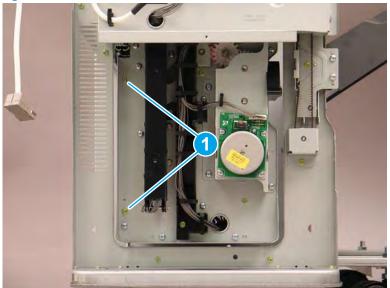


Figure 4-579 Remove two screws

3. Slide the booklet finisher out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the lower right shield (callout 2) away from the booklet finisher to remove it.

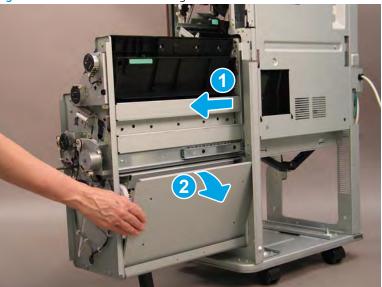
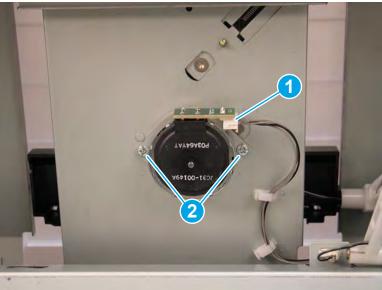


Figure 4-580 Remove the lower right shield

## Step 3: Remove the stopper moving motor (M16)

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the stopper moving motor.
- ☆ Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-581 Remove the stopper moving motor



## Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Separate pawl motor (M17)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the separate pawl motor (M17)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the separate pawl motor on the booklet finisher.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC93-01001A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Drive, motor step

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

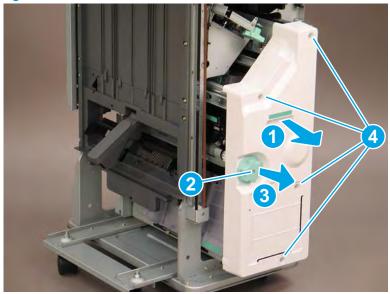
#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.
- 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-582 Remove five screws and the cover



## Step 2: Remove the separate pawl motor (M17)

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the separate pawl motor.
- 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-583 Remove the separate pawl motor

## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Folding roller motor (M18)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Remove the folding roller motor (M18)</u>
- <u>Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the folding roller motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC31-00144A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Folding roller motor

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).
- 🛠 **Reinstallation tip:** The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

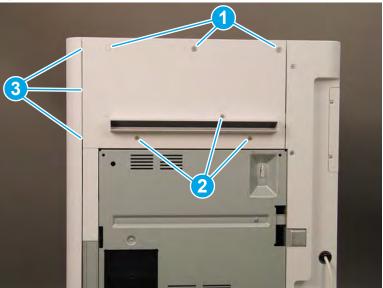
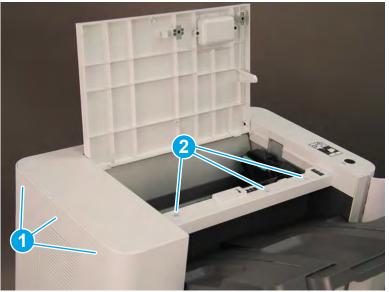


Figure 4–584 Remove six screws and the right top cover

## Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

## Figure 4-585 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

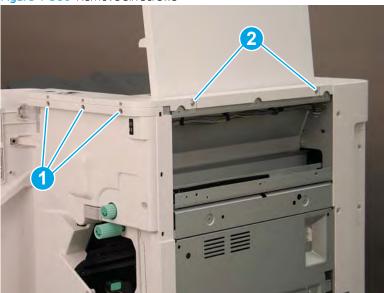


Figure 4-586 Remove six screws

- 3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).
  - Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

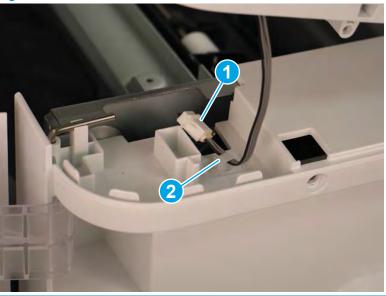


Figure 4-587 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

**Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

## Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

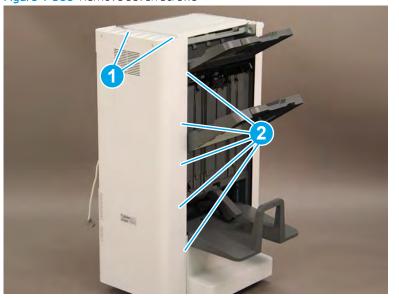
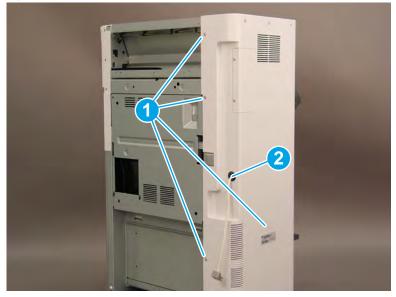


Figure 4-588 Remove seven screws

- 2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.
- NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.
- ☆ **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

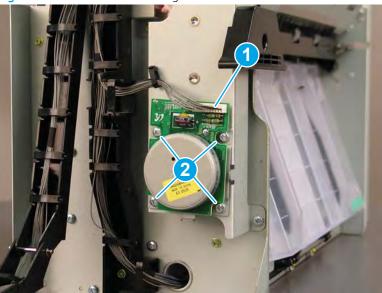
Figure 4-589 Remove four screws and the rear cover



## Step 4: Remove the folding roller motor (M18)

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the folding roller motor.
- ☆ Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-590 Remove the folding roller motor



## Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Blade motor (M19)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the blade motor (M19)</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the blade motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC90-01435A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Finisher sub - bm main blade

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

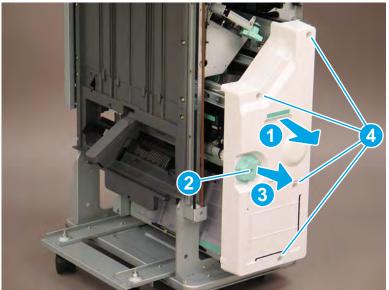
#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.
- 2 **Reinstallation tip:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-591 Remove five screws and the cover



## Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield

1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 4-592 Remove two screws

2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 4-593 Remove two screws

3. Slide the booklet finisher out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the lower right shield (callout 2) away from the booklet finisher to remove it.

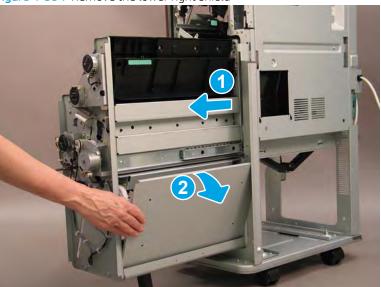
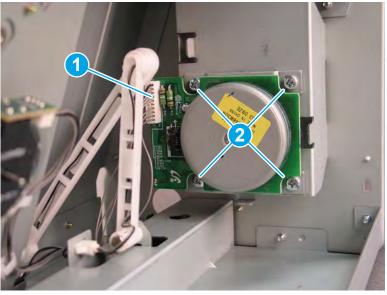


Figure 4-594 Remove the lower right shield

## Step 3: Remove the blade motor (M19)

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the blade motor.
- 🛠 Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-595 Remove the blade motor



## Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

**CAUTION:** Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# C fold motor (M20)

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the C fold motor</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the C fold motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.
- **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

#### JC93-01154A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

Drive Motor, Step

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

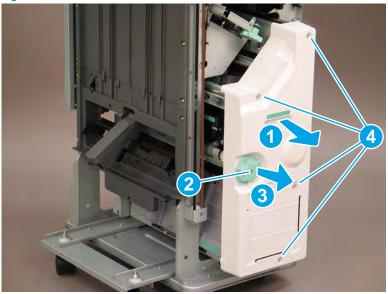
#### Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.
- ☆ Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

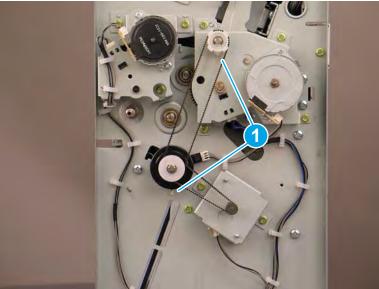
Figure 4–596 Remove five screws and the cover



## Step 2: Remove the C fold motor

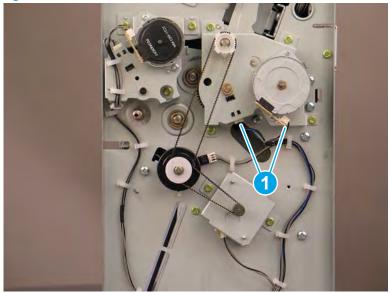
1. Note the position of the alignment arrows on the upper white gear and the lower motor (callout 1). These arrows must be aligned in these positions when the motor is reinstalled.

Figure 4-597 Check arrow alignment



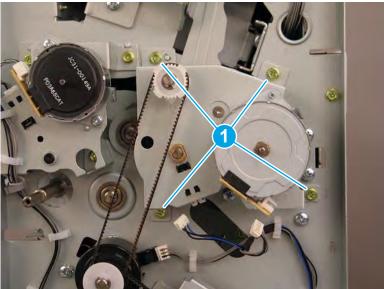
**2.** Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 4-598 Disconnect two connectors



**3.** Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-599 Remove four screws



4. Remove one e-clip (callout 1) on top of the white gear. Remove the white gear (callout 2) and release the belt (callout 3).

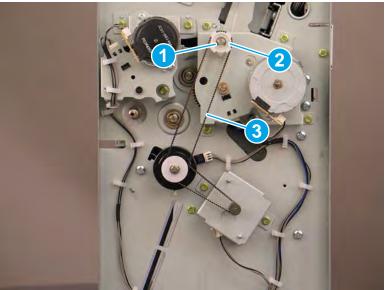
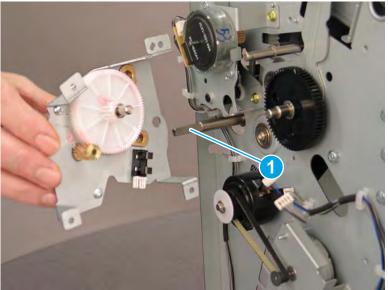


Figure 4-600 Remove one e-clip, gear, and belt

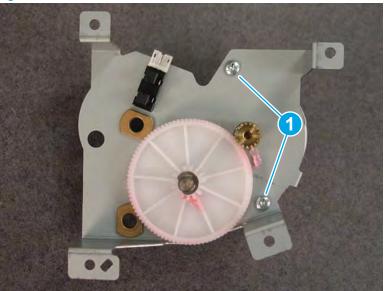
- 5. Remove the bracket and motor from the booklet finisher.
- **CAUTION:** Do not pull on the shaft (callout 1) while removing the bracket and motor. The shaft might become dislodged at the other end. If the shaft becomes dislodged, remove the booklet finisher PCA shield and PCA bracket to reinstall the shaft.

Figure 4-601 Remove the bracket and motor



6. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the C fold motor.

Figure 4-602 Remove two screws



7. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

**WOTE:** Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

#### Special installation instructions: C fold motor

**a.** When installing the motor, install one screw (callout 1) to hold the bracket in place while installing the gear and belt.

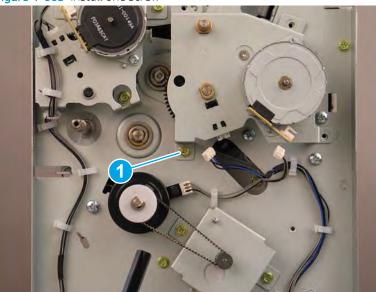
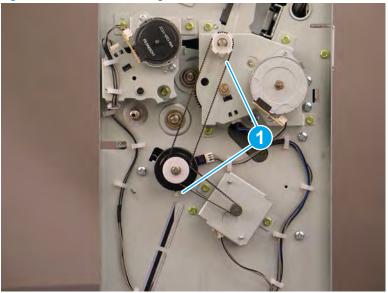


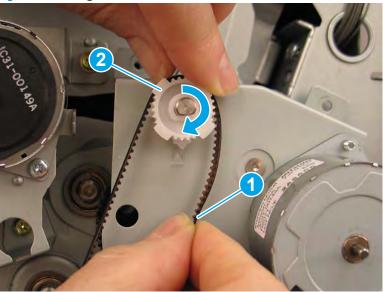
Figure 4-603 Install one screw

**b.** Check the position of the alignment arrows on the upper white gear and the lower motor (callout 1).

Figure 4–604 Check arrow alignment



**c.** If the arrows are not aligned, slightly pull up on the belt to create some slack around the gear (callout 1), and then rotate the gear (callout 2) until the arrows align.



#### Figure 4-605 Align arrows

## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🛕 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Problem solving

# Control panel message document (CPMD)

## Error messages and control panel message troubleshooting overview

#### For additional service and support

HP service personnel, go to one of the following **Web-based Interactive Search Engines** (WISE) sites:

#### AMS

- <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/ams-en</u>
- <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/ams-es</u>
- <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/ams-pt</u>

#### APJ

- <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-en</u>
- <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-ja</u>
- <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-ko</u>
- <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-zh-Hans</u>
- <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/apj-zh-Hant</u>

#### **EMEA**

• <u>https://support.hp.com/wise/home/emea-en</u>

#### Channel partner resources

Channel partners, go to HP Channel Services Network (GCSN) at <u>www.hp.com/partners/csn</u>.

At these locations, find information on the following topics:

- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting

To view a list of control panel message documents per printer in WISE, enter document ID c05048451, to locate CPMD list.

Go to WISE and enter this document ID c05791539 written instructions.

- Refer to "Error code and control panel message troubleshooting overview" on page 888 for more details.
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty and regulatory information

Channel partners, access training materials in the Partner First Learning Center at <u>www.hpi-external.sabacloud.com</u>.

To access HP PartSurfer information from any mobile device, go to <u>http://partsurfermobile.hp.com/</u> or scan the Quick Response (QR) code below.



# Clear paper jams

## Clear paper jams in the Booklet maker

## Clear jams in the top output area

1. Open the top cover.



2. Lift the TF feeder, and then turn the knob while the TF feeder is lifted.



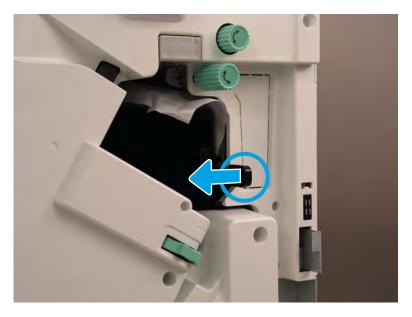
**3.** Remove any jammed paper.

## Clear jams in the booklet maker paper path

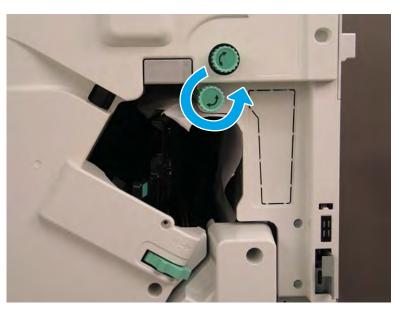
1. Open the booklet maker door.



#### 2. Release the lever.



**3.** Turn the knob.



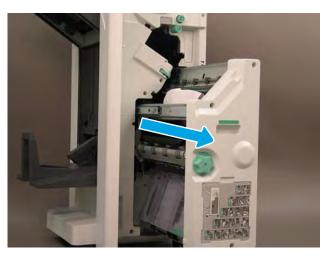
4. Remove the jammed paper.

## Clear jams in the booklet maker booklet output area

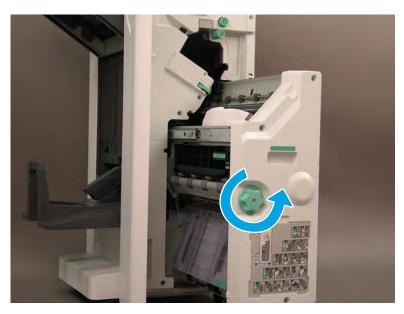
1. Open the booklet maker door.



2. Pull out the booklet maker assembly until it stops.



3. Turn the knob to advance the jammed paper.



4. Remove the jammed paper/booklet from the output area.

## Clear jams in the booklet maker assembly-right-upper area

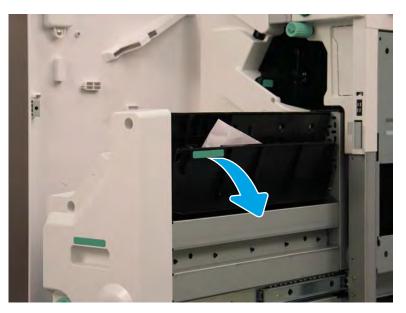
1. Open the booklet maker door.



2. Pull out the booklet maker assembly until it stops.



3. Open the vertical tray by pulling outward on the green tab.



4. Remove the jammed paper.

## Clear jams in the booklet maker assembly left middle area

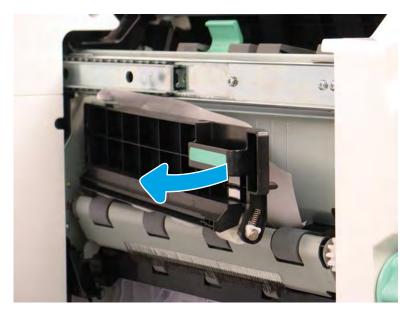
1. Open the booklet maker door.



2. Pull out the booklet maker assembly until it stops.



**3.** Pull the green tab.



4. Remove the jammed paper.

5. Open the clear plastic door at the left bottom.



6. Remove the jammed paper.

## Clear jams in the booklet maker assembly left lower area

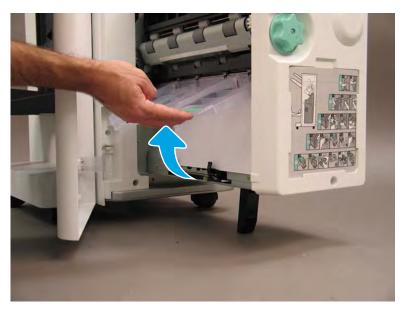
1. Open the booklet maker door.



2. Pull out the booklet maker assembly until it stops.



- **3.** Open the roller door.
- 4. Remove the jammed paper.
- 5. Open the clear plastic door at the left bottom.



6. Remove the jammed paper.

## Clear jams in the Bridge

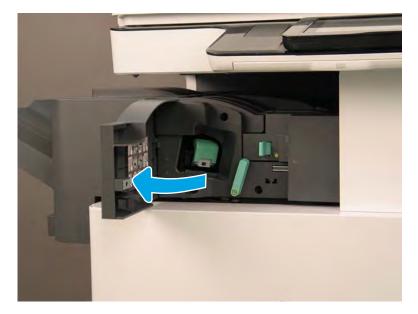
1. Lift the bridge cover and clear any jammed paper inside the bridge.



2. Close the bridge cover.

## Clear jams in the inner finisher (IF)

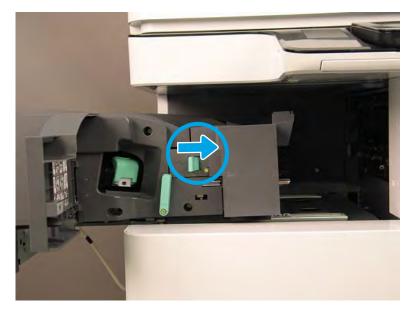
1. Open the staple cartridge access door.



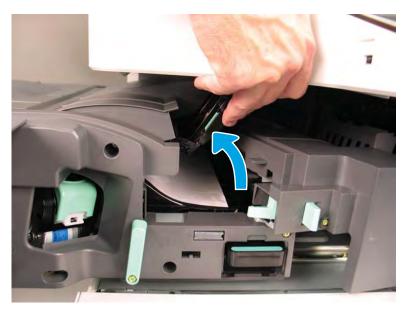
2. Rotate the lever to the left to release the hooks that secure the inner finisher (they hold the IF in place).



- **3.** Slide the inner finisher partially out.
- 4. Release the lever to open the right cover on the inner finisher.



5. Lift the inner finisher jam access cover, and then remove any jammed paper inside the rear of the inner finisher.



- 6. Close the inner finisher jam access cover.
- 7. Close the inner finisher right cover.
- 8. Open the output side jam access cover, and then remove any jammed paper.



- 9. Close the output side jam access cover.
- **10.** Slide the inner finisher in until it clicks into place.
- **11.** Close the staple cartridge access door.

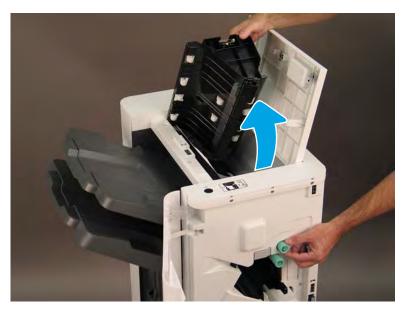
## Clear paper jams in the High-volume finisher

## Clear jams in the High-volume finisher output area

1. Open the top cover.



2. Lift the TF feeder, and then turn the knob while the TF feeder is lifted.

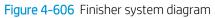


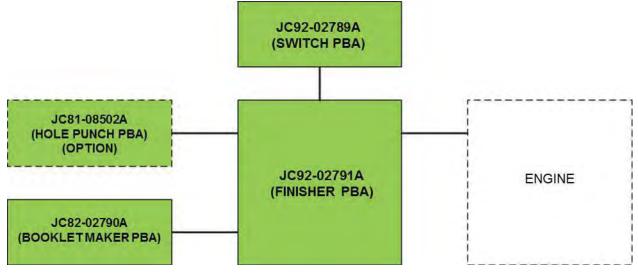
**3.** Remove any jammed paper.

## Finisher system diagram

#### PCA structure diagram

Finisher system consists of the FINISHER PCA, BOOKLET MAKER PCA, SWITCH PCA, and HOLE PUNCH PCA.





#### **PCA function**

#### FINISHER PCA

This PCA controls the finisher modules and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.

#### • SWITCH PCA

This PCA shows the manual stapling condition and accepts the button input for manual staple operation.

#### BOOKLET MAKER PCA

This PCA controls the booklet maker module and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.

#### • HOLE PUNCH PCA

This PCA controls the hole punch module and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.

# 5 Inner finisher

- Product Specification and Description
- <u>Service approach</u>
- Part diagrams, removal and replacment (inner finisher)
- <u>Problem solving</u>
- Block Diagram

## Product Specification and Description

## Specification

ltem	Description
Capacity	550 Sheets (Main 500, Top 50) @ 80gsm
Sensing	Paper Jam/Tray Sensing/Stapler/Cover Open
Media Sizes	• Main: 148 - 320 mm x 140-457.2 mm (58.3-126 inch x 55.1-180 inch)
	• Top: 98 - 297 mm x 140-432 mm (38.6-116.9 inch x 55.1-170.1 inch)
Media types	Plain/Thick/Heavy weight/Thin/Cotton/Colored/Recycled/Bond/Archive/Pre-Punched/Cardstock/Glossy/ Envelope
Media Weight	• Main: 52-256 gsm (13.9-68.3 lb.)
	• Top: 52-325 gsm (13.9-86.7 lb.)
Number of Bin	2 (Main/Top)
Dimension (W X D X H)	458 x 491 x 173 mm (18.0 X 19.3 X 6.8 inch)
Weight	15 kg (33 lb.)
Tray1 Finishing Capacity	50 Sheets @ 80gsm
Tray1 Finishing Mode	Stapling (Left, Right, Center)/Punch (2/3, 2/4, Swedish)
Tray2 Finishing Capacity	500 Sheets @ 80 gsm

Table 5-1	Paper Size Specification
-----------	--------------------------

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
A5	210 x 148	8.3 x 5.8	LEF	0	0	0	Х	F/R <sup>1</sup>	0
Statement	216 x 140	8.5 x 5.5	LEF	0	0	0	Х	F/R <sup>1</sup>	0
Lt	279 x 216	11 x 8.5	LEF	0	0	0	F/R <sup>1</sup>	Х	0
A4	297 x 210	8.3 x 11.7	LEF	0	0	0	F/R <sup>1</sup>	Х	0
B5(JIS)	257 x 182	10.1 x 7.2	LEF	0	0	0	F/R <sup>1</sup>	Х	0
B5(ISO)	250 x 176	9.8 x 6.9	LEF	0	0	0	F/R <sup>1</sup>	Х	0
Executive	267 x 184	10.5 x 7.3	LEF	0	0	0	F/R <sup>1</sup>	Х	0
No 9 Env	98 x 225	3.9 x 8.9	SEF	Х	Х	0	Х	Х	Х
Monarch Env	98.4 x 190.5	3.9 x 7.5	SEF	Х	Х	0	Х	Х	Х
PostCard 4X6	101.6 x 152.4	4.0 × 6.0	SEF	Х	Х	0	Х	Х	Х
A6	105 x 148	4.1 x 5.8	SEF	Х	Х	0	Х	Х	Х

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main	tray	Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
No 10 Env	105 x 241	4.1 x 9.5	SEF	Х	Х	0	Х	Х	Х
DL Env	110 x 220	4.3 x 8.7	SEF	Х	Х	0	Х	Х	Х
C6 Env	114 x 162	4.5 x 6.4	SEF	Х	Х	0	Х	Х	Х
B6	128 x 182	5.0 x 7.2	SEF	Х	Х	0	Х	Х	Х
Statement	140 x 216	5.5 x 8.5	SEF	Х	Х	0	Х	Х	Х
A5	148 x 210	5.8 x 8.3	SEF	0	Х	0	Х	Х	Х
C5 Env	162 x 229	6.4 x 9.0	SEF	Х	Х	0	Х	Х	Х
B5(ISO)	176 x 250	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	0	0	0	Х	F/R <sup>1</sup>	Х
B5(JIS)	182 x 257	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	0	0	0	Х	F/R <sup>1</sup>	Х
Executive	184 x 267	7.3 x 10.5	SEF	0	0	0	Х	F/R <sup>1</sup>	Х
16k	195 x 270	7.7 x 10.6	SEF	0	0	0	Х	F/R <sup>1</sup>	0
A4	210 x 297	8.3 x 11.7	SEF	0	0	0	Х	F/R <sup>1</sup>	0
Legal	216 x 356	8.5 x 14	SEF	0	0	0	Х	F/R <sup>1</sup>	0
Letter	216 x 279	8.5 x 11	SEF	0	0	0	Х	F/R <sup>1</sup>	0
Folio	216 x 330	8.5 x 13	SEF	0	0	0	Х	F/R <sup>1</sup>	0
Oficio	215.9 x 342.9	8.5 x 13.5	SEF	0	0	0	Х	F/R <sup>1</sup>	0
C4	229 x 324	9.1 x 12.8	SEF	Х	Х	0	Х	Х	Х
Tabloid	254 x 374	10 x 14.7	SEF	0	0	0	F/R <sup>1</sup>	Х	0
B4	257 x 364	10 x 14.3	SEF	0	0	0	F/R <sup>1</sup>	Х	0
8K	270 x 390	10.6 x 15.4	SEF	0	0	0	F/R <sup>1</sup>	Х	0
Ledger	279 x 432	11 x 17	SEF	0	0	0	F/R <sup>1</sup>	Х	0
A3	297 x 420	11.7 x 16.5	SEF	0	0	0	F/R <sup>1</sup>	Х	0
Tabloid Extra	304.8 x 457.2	12 x 18	SEF	0	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
SRA3	320 x 450	12.6 x 17.7	SEF	0	0	Х	Х	Х	Х
Custom	W 98-320 ~ L 140-1200	W3.9-12.6 ~	_	W 148-320	Х	W 98-297 - L	Х	Х	Х
	∟ 140-1200	L 5.5-47		- L 140-1200		- L 140-1200			

### Table 5-1 Paper Size Specification (continued)

<sup>1</sup> "F/R" means front side and rear side can be supported.

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Punch				
	mm Inches		Direction	NA 2/3		EU 2	2/4H	Swedish
				2Н	ЗН	2H	4H	4H
A5	210 x 148	8.3 x 5.8	LEF	0	Х	0	Х	0
Statement	216 x 140	8.5 x 5.5	LEF	0	Х	0	Х	0
Lt	279 x 216	11 x 8.5	LEF	0	0	0	0	0
A4	297 x 210	8.3 x 11.7	LEF	0	0	0	0	0
B5 (JIS)	257 x 182	10.1 x 7.2	LEF	0	0	0	Х	0
B5 (ISO)	250 x 176	9.8 x 6.9	LEF	0	0	0	Х	0
Executive	267 x 184	10.5 x 7.3	LEF	0	0	0	0	0
No 9 Env	98 x 225	3.9 x 8.9	SEF	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
Monarch Env	98.4 x 190.5	3.9 x 7.5	SEF	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
PostCard 4X6	101.6 x 152.4	4.0 × 6.0	SEF	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
A6	105 x 148	4.1 x 5.8	SEF	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
No 10 Env	105 x 241	4.1 x 9.5	SEF	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
DL Env	110 x 220	4.3 x 8.7	SEF	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
C6 Env	114 x 162	4.5 x 6.4	SEF	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
B6	128 x 182	5.0 x 7.2	SEF	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
Statement	140 x 216	5.5 x 8.5	SEF	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
A5	148 x 210	5.8 x 8.3	SEF	0	Х	0	Х	0
C5 Env	162 x 229	6.4 × 9.0	SEF	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
B5(ISO)	176 x 250	6.9 × 9.8	SEF	0	Х	0	Х	0
B5(JIS)	182 x 257	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	0	Х	0	Х	0
Executive	184 x 267	7.3 x 10.5	SEF	0	Х	0	Х	0
16k	195 x 270	7.7 x 10.6	SEF	0	Х	0	Х	0
A4	210 x 297	8.3 x 11.7	SEF	0	Х	0	Х	0
Legal	216 x 356	8.5 x 14	SEF	0	Х	0	Х	0
Letter	216 x 279	8.5 x 11	SEF	0	Х	0	Х	0
Folio	216 x 330	8.5 x 13	SEF	0	Х	0	Х	0
Oficio	215.9 x 342.9	8.5 x 13.5	SEF	0	Х	0	Х	0
C4	229 x 324	9.1 x 12.8	SEF	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
Tabloid	254 x 374	10 x 14.7	SEF	0	0	0	Х	0
B4	257 x 364	10 x 14.3	SEF	0	0	0	Х	0

Name	Pape	er size	Orientation	Punch				
	mm	Inches	Direction	NA	2/3	EU 2	2/4H	Swedish
				2H	ЗН	2H	4H	4H
8K	270 x 390	10.6 x 15.4	SEF	0		0	0	0
Ledger	279 x 432	11 x 17	SEF	0	0	0	0	0
A3	297 x 420	11.7 x 16.5	SEF	0	0	0	0	0
Tabloid Extra	304.8 x 457.2	12 x 18	SEF	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
SRA3	320 x 450	12.6 x 17.7	SEF	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
Custom	W 98-320 ~	W3.9-12.6 ~	-	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
	L 140-1200	L 5.5-47						

### Table 5-2 Media performance

Paper Type		Fund	tion	
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	Punch
Plain (71-90 g/m²)	0	0	0	0
Thick (91-105 g/m²)	0	0	0	0
Heavy weight (106-175 g/m²)	0	0	0	0
Extra Heavy weight 1 (176-216 g/m²)	0	0	0	0
Extra Heavy weight 2 (217-256 g/m²)	0	0	0	0
Extra Heavy weight 3 (257-300 g/m²)	Х	0	Х	Х
Extra Heavy weight 4 (301-325 g/m²)	Х	0	Х	Х
Thin (60-70 g/m²)	0	0	0	0
Cotton (75-90 g/m²)	0	0	0	0
Colored (75-90 g/m²)	0	0	0	0
Pre-Printed (75-90 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	0	0	0	0
Recycled (60-90 g/m²)	0	0	0	0
Bond	0	0	0	0
Archive (75-105 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	0	0	0	0
LetterHead	0	0	0	0
Pre-Punched	0	0	0	Х
Thin Cardstock (105-163 g/m²)	0	0	0	0

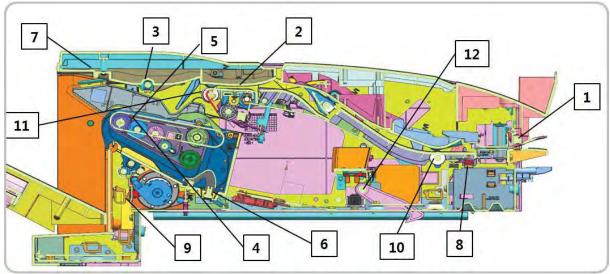
#### Table 5-2 Media performance (continued)

Paper Type		Func	tion	
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	Punch
Thick Cardstock (170-216 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	0	0	0	Х
Heavy Cardstock (217-256 g/m²)	0	0	0	Х
Extra Heavy Cardstock 1(257-300 g/m²)	Х	0	Х	Х
Extra Heavy Cardstock 2(301-325 g/m²)	Х	0	Х	Х
Thin Glossy (106-169 g/m²)	0	0	0	0
Thick Glossy (170-216 g/m²)	0	0	0	Х
Heavy Glossy (217–256 g/m²)	0	Х	Х	Х
Envelope (75-90 g/m²)	Х	0	Х	Х
Thick Envelope (217-256 g/m²)	0	Х	Х	Х
Tab	0	Х	Х	0
Perforated Paper (75-90 g/m²)	Х	0	Х	Х

## Finisher System

## Sectional view

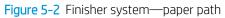
### Figure 5-1 Finisher system—sectional view

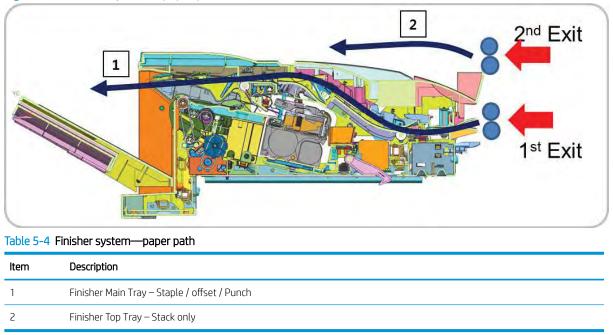


#### Table 5-3 Finisher system—sectional view

ltem	Description	ltem	Description
1	Entrance sensor	7	Jam Door Open Sensor
2	Passthru Sensor	8	Front Door Open Sensor
3	Paddle Home Sensor	9	Stacker Tray Home Sensor
4	Tamper Home_F Sensor	10	Paper Feed roller
5	Tamper Home_R Sensor	11	Paper Exit roller
6	Eject Home Sensor	12	Turning Knob

## Paper path





## Electrical parts layout



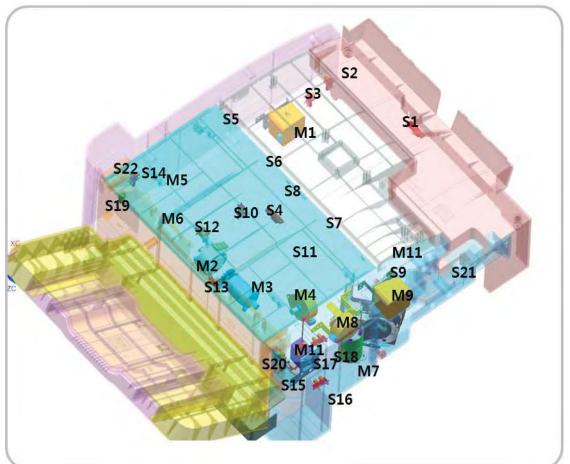


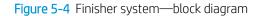
Table 5-5 Finisher system—electrical parts layou	Table 5-5	em—electrical parts lavout
--	-----------	----------------------------

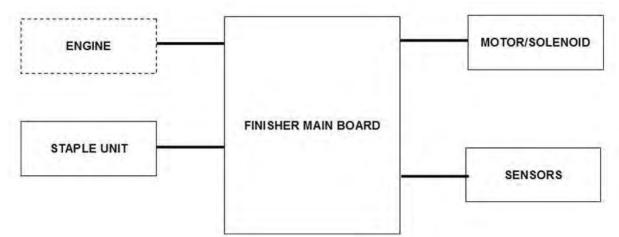
ltem	Description	Function
S1	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001381)	Entrance Sensor
S2	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Shaft Docking Sensor
S3	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Dust Box Sensor
S4	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001381)	Sub Stay Sensor
S5	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Stapler Position Sensor_Rear
S6	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Staple Position Sensor_ Center 1
S7	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Staple Position Sensor_ Center 2
58	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Exit Sensor
S9	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Stapler Position Sensor_Front
S10	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	End Defence Sensor
S11	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Eject Sensor
S12	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Paper Support Sensor

ltem	Description	Function
S13	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Eject 2 Motor Sensor
S14	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Tamper Position Sensor_Rear
S15	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Paper Holder Position Sensor
S16	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Tray Home Position Sensor
S17	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Tamper Position Sensor_Front
S18	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Main Paddle Position Sensor
S19	JC81-07403A	AS- Sensor
S20	JC81-07396A	AS- Sensor
S21	JC39-01610A	Switch Front cover open
522	JC39-02175A	Switch Jam door open
M1	JC31-00169A	Entrance Motor
M2	JC31-00009C	EJECTOR_1_Motor
M3	Mabuchi	EJECTOR_2_Motor
M4	JC31-00149A	Tamper_Motor_Front
M5	JC31-00149A	Tamper_Motor_Rear
M6	JC31-00149A	Paper Support
M7	KIG	Tray Motor
M8	JC31-00149A	Main Paddle Motor
M9	JC31-00169A	Exit Motor
M10	JC31-00149A	Traverse Motor
M11	TDS-10SL	Paper Holder Solenoid

Table 5-5 Finisher system—electrical parts layout (continued)

## **Block Diagram**





## PCA Connection Information

Figure 5-5 Finisher system—PBA connection information

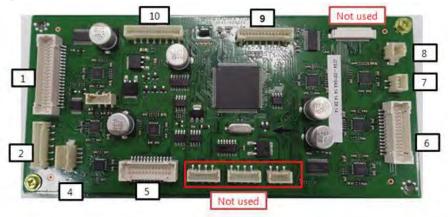


Table 5-6 Finisher system—PBA connection information

No.	Connection
1	CN3 : REAR Joint I/F
2	CN1 : REAR Sensor
3	CN10 : Traverse Mid Sensor
4	CN8 : Debug
5	CN2 : REAR I/F
6	CN7 : FRONT I/F
7	CN6 : Stacker Switch
8	CN9 : Solenoid
9	CN4 : Ejector & Supporter I/F
10	CN5 : Main I/F

## Service approach

CAUTION: When working on the product, do not pick up the unit by the output tray, which will detach under the weight of the product.

## Before performing service

- Remove all paper from the product.
- Turn off the power using the power button.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridges.
- Remove the Tray 2 cassette.

## ESD precautions

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when

removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

## After performing service

- Plug in the power cable.
- Verify the functions of the printer that might have been impacted by service procedures. Make sure the printer is in complete working order.
- Replace any accessories removed for service.

## Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

### Print-quality test

- 1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
- 2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
- 3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
- 4. Print a configuration page.

- 5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
- 6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

## Order parts, accessories, and supplies

## Ordering

Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order genuine HP parts or accessories	www.hp.com/buy/parts
	or
	partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported Web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply Web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

## Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the diagrams in this chapter can be ordered. Refer to the table following the diagram or the parts lists at the end of this chapter to determine if a part is orderable.

## Part diagrams, removal and replacment (inner finisher)

- ESD precautions
- <u>Inner finisher</u>
- Entrance sensor
- <u>Entrance motor</u>
- <u>Exit sensor</u>
- <u>Exit motor</u>
- Front Jogger Motor
- Front Jogger Home Sensor
- Rear Jogger Motor
- <u>Rear Jogger Home Sensor</u>
- <u>Stapler</u>
- <u>Stapler position sensor assembly</u>
- <u>Traverse Motor</u>
- <u>Stacker Motor</u>
- <u>Stacker Encoder Sensor</u>
- <u>Stacker Lower Limit Switch</u>
- <u>Stack Beam Sensor</u>
- <u>Stack Position Sensor</u>
- Paper Holding Lever Solenoid
- Paper Support Motor
- Paper Support Home Sensor
- Ejector Motor assembly
- Main Paddle Motor
- Main Paddle Home Sensor
- <u>Main Paddle</u>
- Ejector assembly
- Punch Dust Full Sensor
- End Fence Home Sensor

## ESD precautions

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when

removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

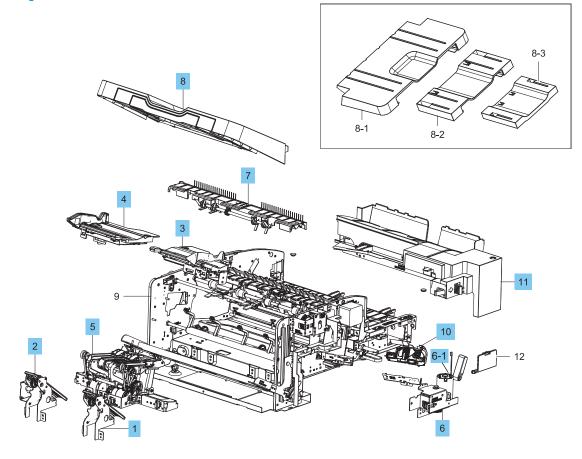
Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

## Inner finisher

- <u>Sub-inner finisher</u>
- <u>Sub 1 Inner finisher</u>
- <u>Sub 7 Inner finisher</u>
- <u>Sub 7 Inner finisher</u>
- <u>Sub 8 Inner finisher</u>

## Sub-inner finisher

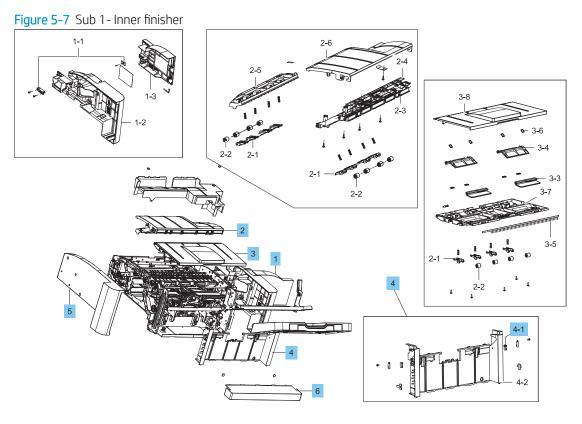
Figure 5-6 Sub-inner finisher



#### Table 5-7 Sub-inner finisher

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
Complete	Inner finnisher whole unit	Y1G00-67901	1
1	Paper support	JC90-01310A	1
2	Paper support, rear	JC90-01311A	1
3	Alignment, front	JC90-01464A	1
4	Alignment, rear	JC90-01465A	1
5	Ejector unit assy	JC90-01332A	1
6	Assy – stacker tray motor	JC90-01334B	1
6-1	Handle - lock release	JC66-04233A	1
7	Lower exit guide	JC90-01336A	1
8	Tray	JC90-01337B	1
10	Staple	Y1G14-67901	1
11	IF punch dummy	JC90-01343A	1
Not shown	Harness, finisher to copier PWR	JC39-02169A	1

## Sub 1 - Inner finisher

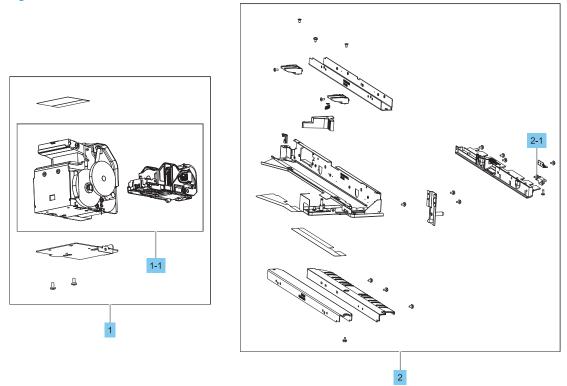


#### Table 5-8 Finisher sub 1

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cover, front	JC90-01321B	1
2	Cover, middle	JC90-01322B	1
3	Cover, compile	JC90-01323B	1
4	Stacker plate	JC90-01324B	1
4-1	IF Photo Interrupter	0603-001309	1
5	IF Cover, rear	JC63-04750B	1
6	IF Cover PCA	JC63-04792B	1
Not shown	Lift motor	JC31-00178B	1

## Sub 7 Inner finisher

Figure 5-8 Sub 7 - Inner finisher

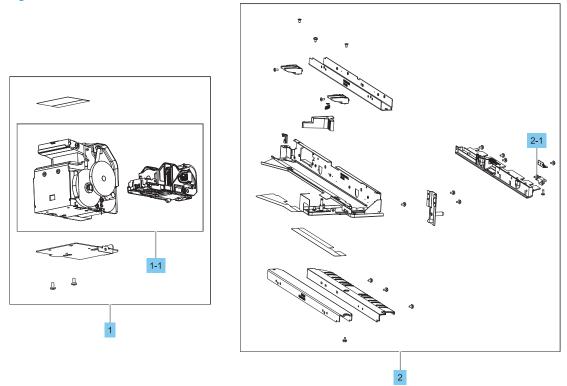


#### Table 5-9 Sub 7 - Inner finisher

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assy - inner finisher stapler	JC90-01342A	1
1-1	Stapler assembly	JC59-00040A	1
2	IF punch dummy	JC90-01343A	1
2-1	Photo-interrupter	0604-001381	1
Not shown	Staple cartridge – Inner finisher, booklet finisher	Y1G14-67901	1

## Sub 7 Inner finisher

Figure 5-9 Sub 7 - Inner finisher

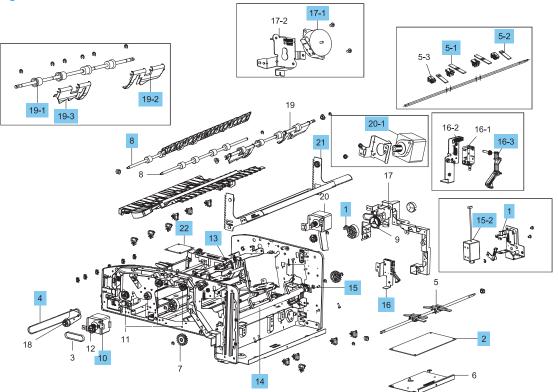


#### Table 5-10 Sub 7 - Inner finisher

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assy - inner finisher stapler	JC90-01342A	1
1-1	Stapler assembly	JC59-00040A	1
2	IF punch dummy	JC90-01343A	1
2-1	Photo-interrupter	0604-001381	1
Not shown	Staple cartridge – Inner finisher, booklet finisher	Y1G14-67901	1

## Sub 8 - Inner finisher

Figure 5-10 Sub 8 - Inner finisher



#### Table 5-11 Finisher sub 8

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Photo-interrupter	0604-001415	2
2	Inner finisher PCA	JC92-02774B	1
4	Timing-belt, gear	6602-003644	1
5-1	Paddle absorber, rubber a	JC63-04957A	2
5-2	Paddle absorber, rubber b	JC63-04958A	2
8	Roller, feed-entrance	JC66-04243A	2
10	Motor, entrance	JC90-01344A	1
13	Actuator, feed sensor	JC66-04199A	1
14	Actuator tray	JC90-01313A	1
15	Sensor, actuator tray	JC90-01314A	1
15-2	Solenoid TDS	JC33-00037A	1
16	Tray lower limit	JC90-01320A	1
16-3	Actuator tray limit	JC66-04200A	1
17-1a	Drive - motor step	JC93-01001A	1
19-1	Roller, feed-exit	JC66-04244A	1
19-2	Compile guide, front	JC61-07449A	1
19-3	Compile guide, rear	JC61-07450A	1
20-1	Motor - exit step	JC31-00169B	1
21	Tray frame	JC90-01319A	1
22	PCA inner finisher rear	JC92-02780A	1
Not shown	Inner Finisher Staple Unit	JC81-07408B	1

## Entrance sensor

- Introduction
- <u>Step 1: Remove the entrance sensor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

#### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Entrance sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### 0604-001381

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Entrance sensor assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the entrance sensor

1. On the right-side of the printer remove three screws, and then remove the cover-rear.

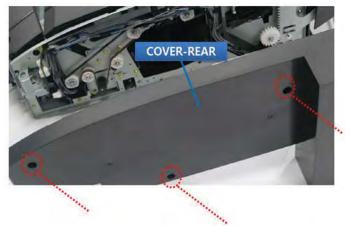
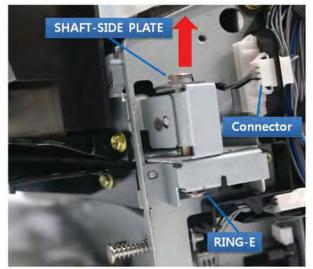


Figure 5-11 Remove the entrance sensor (1 of 7)

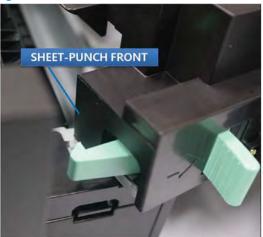
2. On the right, back-side of the printer remove the e-ring, and then remove the shaft-side plate. Unplug the connector.

Figure 5-12 Remove the entrance sensor (2 of 7)



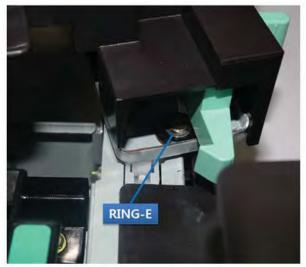
3. On the right, front-side of the printer remove the sheet-punch front.

Figure 5-13 Remove the entrance sensor (3 of 7)



4. Remove the e-ring and washer, and then remove the punch dummy.

Figure 5-14 Remove the entrance sensor (4 of 7)



5. Loosen the adhesive tape around, and then remove, four screws. Remove the handle, and then remove the punch dummy cover.

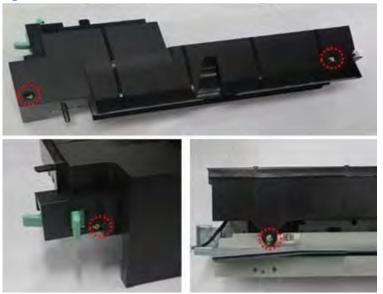
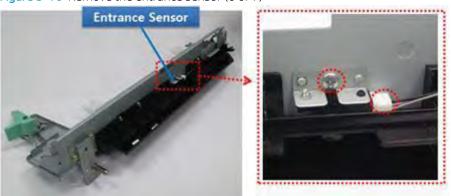


Figure 5-15 Remove the entrance sensor (5 of 7)

6. Remove one screw, unplug the connector, and then remove the sensor bracket.

Figure 5-16 Remove the entrance sensor (6 of 7)



7. Remove one screw, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 5-17 Remove the entrance sensor (7 of 7)



### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Entrance motor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the entrance motor</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Entrance motor assembly.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### JC90-01344A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Entrance motor assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

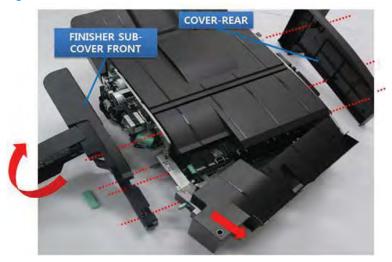
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

#### Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

- 1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.
  - a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.
  - d. Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-18 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.



Figure 5-19 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 5-20 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

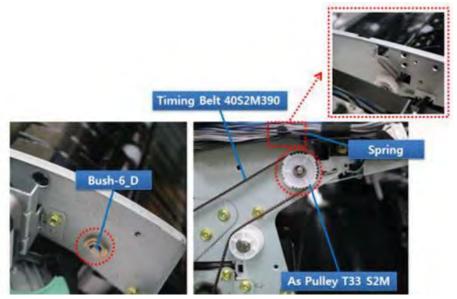
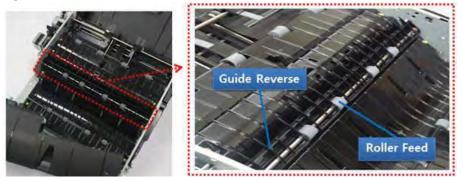


Figure 5-21 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.



### Step 2: Remove the entrance motor

- 1. Disconnect the sensor cable at the rear.
- 2. Remove the cable restraint at the rear.
- 3. Release two tabs that engage with the frame, and then remove the guide middle lower.

 $\triangle$  CAUTION: Do not damage the sensor flag.

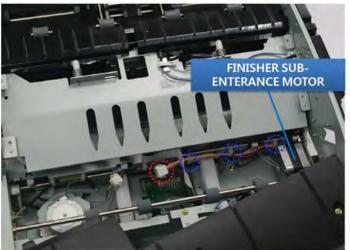
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 5-23 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



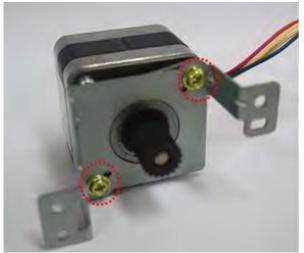
5. Open the clamps, and then unplug the connector.

Figure 5-24 Remove the entrance motor (6 of 7)



6. Remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

Figure 5-25 Remove the entrance motor (7 of 7)



### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Exit sensor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the exit sensor</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Exit sensor assembly.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

### 0604-001381

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

Feed actuator sensor

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

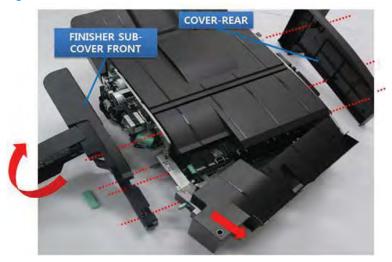
### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

- 1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.
  - a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.
  - d. Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-26 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.



Figure 5-27 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 5-28 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

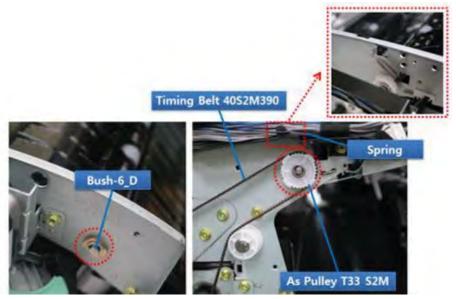
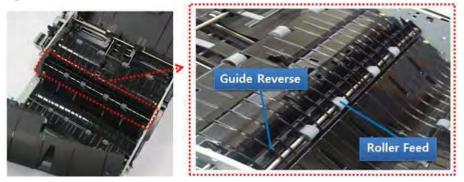


Figure 5-29 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



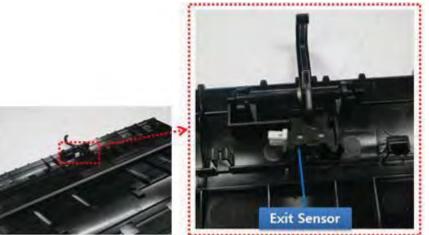
4. Remove six screws.



### Step 2: Remove the exit sensor

Remove the hook, and then remove the exit sensor.

Figure 5-31 Remove the exit sensor



### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Exit motor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the exit motor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Exit motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

### JC31-00169B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Exit motor

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

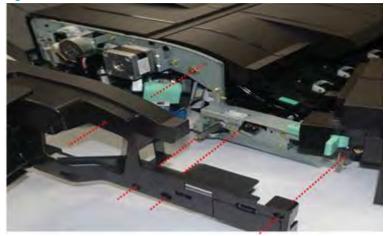
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the exit motor

1. Remove the front cover.

Figure 5-32 Remove the exit motor (1 of 3)



2. Remove two screws, and then unplug the motor connector.

Figure 5-33 Remove the exit motor (2 of 3)



3. Remove the exit motor from the BKT motor feed exit.

Figure 5-34 Remove the exit motor (3 of 3)



### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Front Jogger Motor

- Introduction
- <u>Step 1: Remove the front jogger motor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Front Jogger Motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

### JC90-01464A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Front Jogger Motor assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

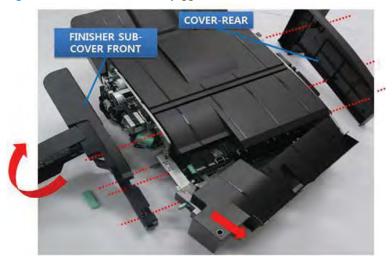
### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the front jogger motor

- 1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.
  - a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.
  - d. Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-35 Remove the front jogger motor (1 of 22)



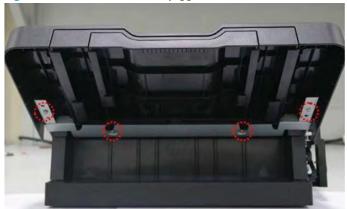
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.



Figure 5-36 Remove the front jogger motor (2 of 22)

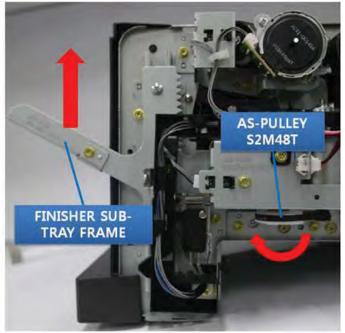
3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 5-37 Remove the front jogger motor (3 of 22)



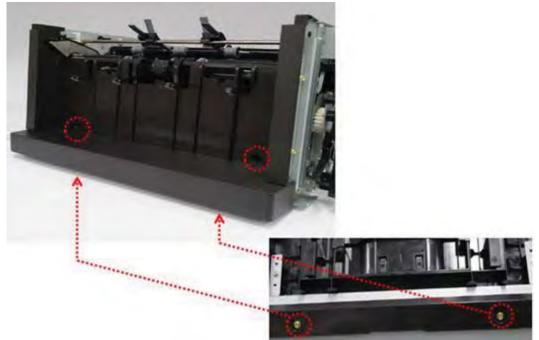
- 4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.
- 2 Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.
- NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 5-38 Remove the front jogger motor (4 of 22)



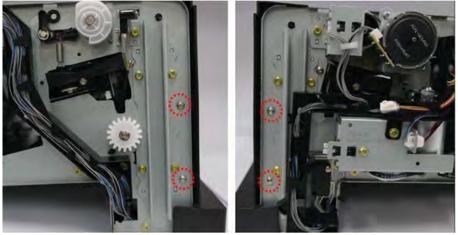
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-39 Remove the front jogger motor (5 of 22)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

Figure 5-40 Remove the front jogger motor (6 of 22)



7. Remove two screws and then remove the lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

TINISHER SUB-STACKER PLATE

Figure 5-41 Remove the front jogger motor (7 of 22)

9. Remove one screw, and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.



Figure 5-42 Remove the front jogger motor (8 of 22)

- **10.** Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.
- **NOTE:** Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

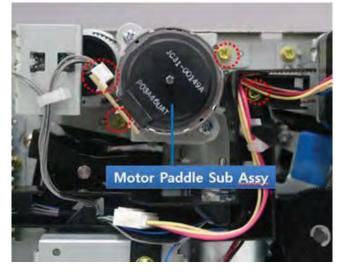


Figure 5-43 Remove the front jogger motor (9 of 22)

- 11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guideharness front.
- **NOTE:** The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

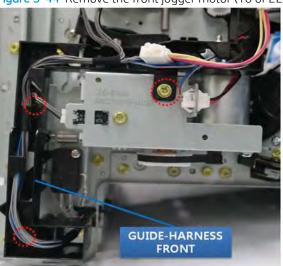


Figure 5-44 Remove the front jogger motor (10 of 22)

12. Remove three screws, unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-motor tray.

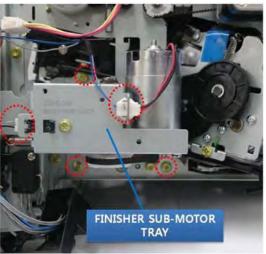


Figure 5-45 Remove the front jogger motor (11 of 22)

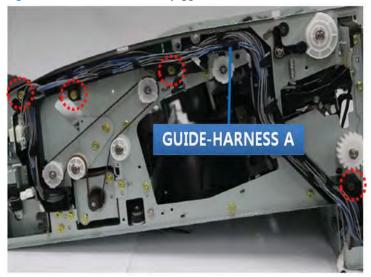
**13.** Open the cover top tray sub assembly, and then remove one screw securing the guide-exit lower.

UIDE-EXIT LOWER

Figure 5-46 Remove the front jogger motor (12 of 22)

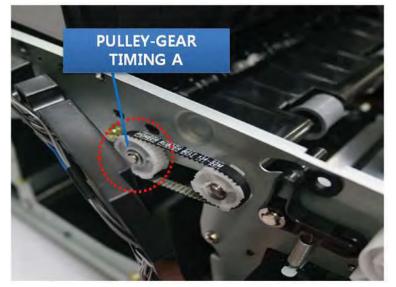
14. Remove four screws securing the guide-harness A.

Figure 5-47 Remove the front jogger motor (13 of 22)



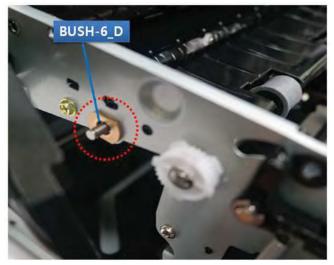
**15.** Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt.

Figure 5-48 Remove the front jogger motor (14 of 22)



**16.** Remove the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 5-49 Remove the front jogger motor (15 of 22)



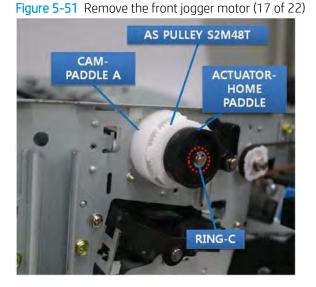
17. Lift up and remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly.





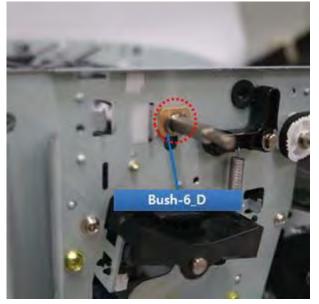
- **18.** Remove the ring-c, actuator-home paddle, AS pulley S2M48T, and cam-paddle A.
  - 🛠 Reinstallation tip: The cam must be installed with the same orientation as the cam on the opposite side.

Reinstallation tip: The actuator home cam paddle is installed hollow side out



**19.** Remove the e-ring and bush-6\_D.

Figure 5-52 Remove the front jogger motor (18 of 22)



- **20.** Remove the main paddle A unit / B unit, and then carefully remove the shaft from its retainer.
- **NOTE:** Note the orientation of paddles and use caution to not break the plastic locator pin on the paddle.

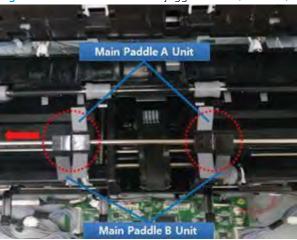
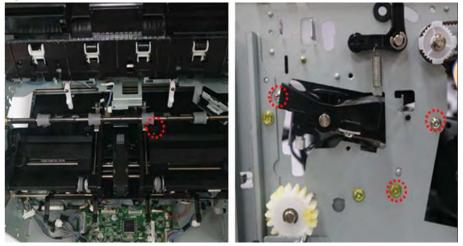


Figure 5-53 Remove the front jogger motor (19 of 22)

**21.** Remove four screws.

Figure 5-54 Remove the front jogger motor (20 of 22)



- **22.** Unplug the connector, and then pull the finisher sub-tamper front up to remove.
  - 校 Reinstallation tip: Position the upper left-corner of the sub tamper, and then carefully rotate it counterclockwise into position.

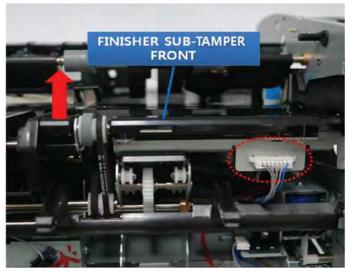


Figure 5-55 Remove the front jogger motor (21 of 22)

23. Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor.

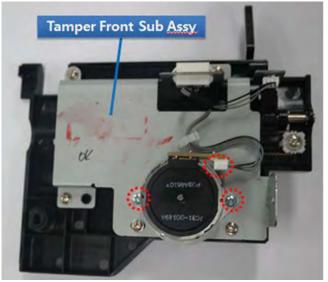


Figure 5-56 Remove the front jogger motor (22 of 22)

# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

### **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Front Jogger Home Sensor

- Introduction
- <u>Step 1: Remove the front jogger home sensor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Front Jogger Home Sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

### 0604-001381

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Front Jogger Home Sensor assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the front jogger home sensor

- 1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.
  - **a.** Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.
  - d. Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-57 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



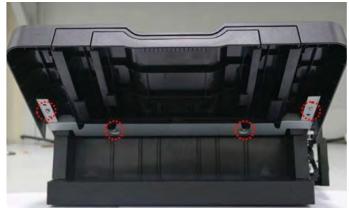
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.



Figure 5-58 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 5-59 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)



- 4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.
  - 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.
  - NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

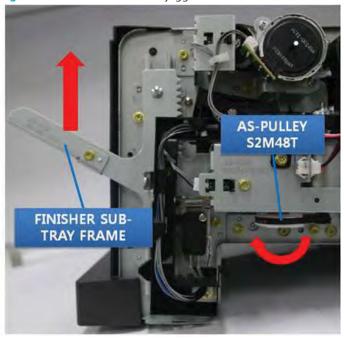
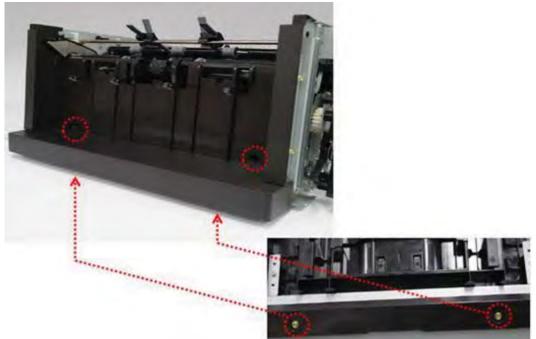


Figure 5-60 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)

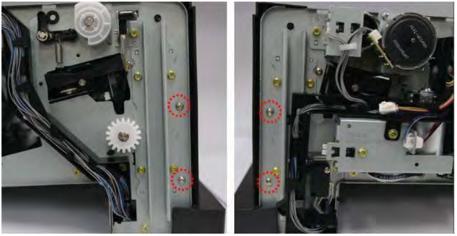
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-61 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

Figure 5-62 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

FINISHER SUB-STACKER PLATE

Figure 5-63 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)

9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.



Figure 5-64 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)

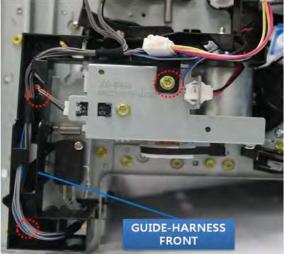
- **10**. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.
- **NOTE:** Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

Notor Paddle Sub Assy

Figure 5-65 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)

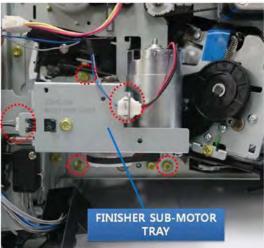
- 11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guideharness front.
  - **WNOTE:** The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 5-66 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)



12. Remove three screws, unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 5-67 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 15)



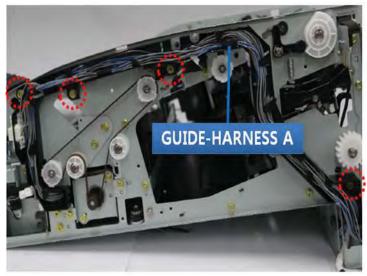
**13.** Open the cover top tray sub assembly, and then remove one screw securing the guide-exit lower.

OUTDE-EXIT LOWER

Figure 5-68 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (1 of 6)

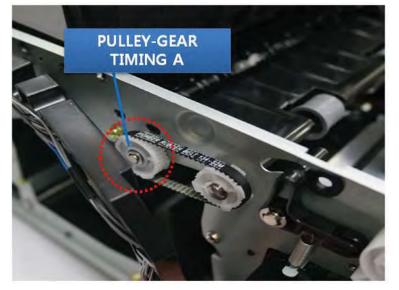
14. Remove four screws securing the guide-harness A.

Figure 5-69 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (2 of 6)



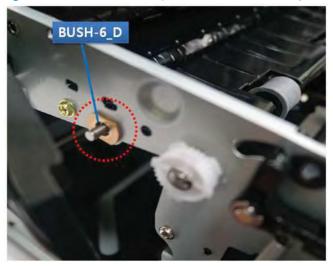
**15.** Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt.

Figure 5-70 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (3 of 6)



**16.** Remove the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 5-71 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (4 of 6)



17. Lift up and remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly.





- **18.** Remove the ring-C, actuator-home paddle, AS pulley S2M48T, and cam-paddle A.
  - Reinstallation tip: The cam must be installed with the same orientation as the cam on the opposite side.
     Reinstallation tip: The actuator home cam paddle is installed hollow side out

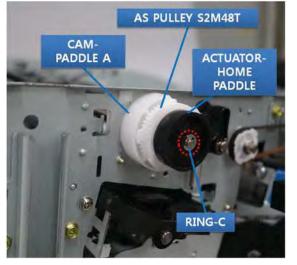
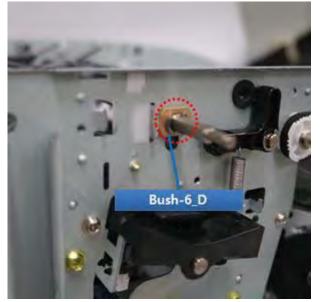


Figure 5-73 Remove the front jogger home sensor (10 of 15)

**19.** Remove the e-ring and bush-6\_D.

Figure 5-74 Remove the front jogger home sensor (11 of 15)



- **20.** Remove the main paddle A unit / B unit, and then carefully remove the shaft from its retainer.
- **NOTE:** Note the orientation of paddles and use caution to not break the plastic locator pin on the paddle.

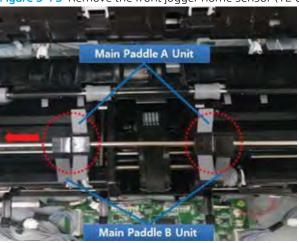
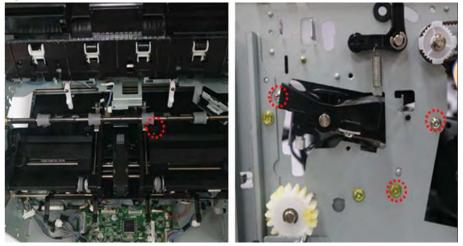


Figure 5-75 Remove the front jogger home sensor (12 of 15)

**21.** Remove four screws.

Figure 5-76 Remove the front jogger home sensor (13 of 15)



**22.** Unplug the connector, and then remove the front jogger home sensor.

Figure 5-77 Remove the front jogger home sensor



**23.** Remove the tamper front sub assembly.

### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Rear Jogger Motor

- Introduction
- <u>Step 1: Remove the rear jogger motor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Rear Jogger Motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

### JC90-01465A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Rear Jogger Motor assembly

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the rear jogger motor

- 1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.
  - **a.** Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.
  - d. Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-78 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



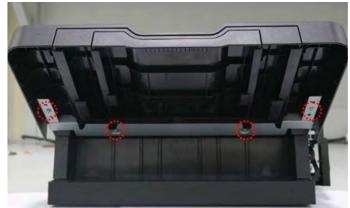
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.



Figure 5-79 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 5-80 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)



- 4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.
  - 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.
  - NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

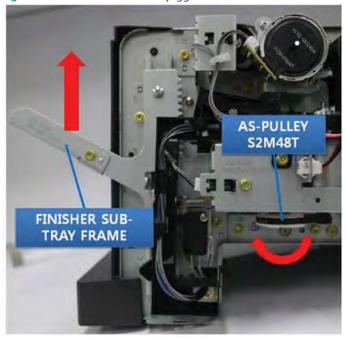
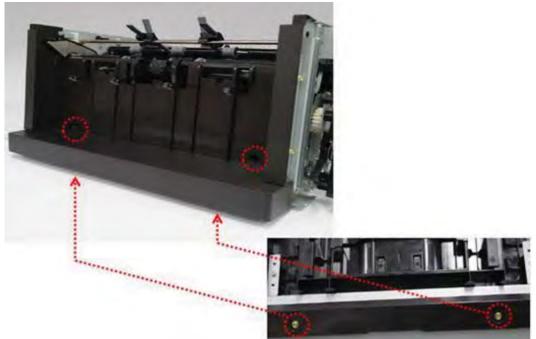


Figure 5-81 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)

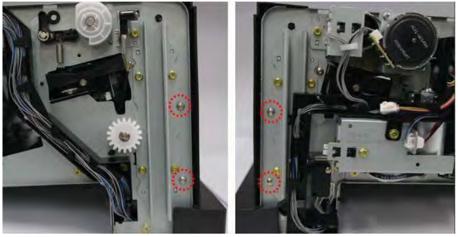
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-82 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

Figure 5-83 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

FINISHER SUB-STACKER PLATE

Figure 5-84 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)

9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.



Figure 5-85 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)

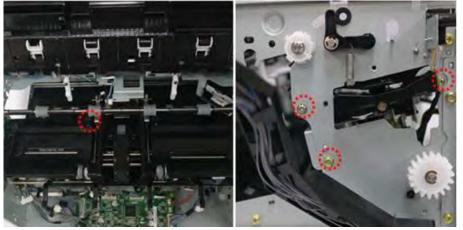
**10.** Remove three screws, unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-motor tray.

FINISHER SUB-MOTOR TRAY

Figure 5-86 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 15)

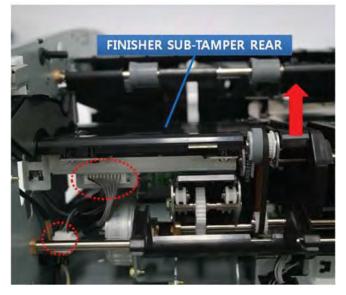
- 11. Remove four screws.
  - **NOTE:** Move cable guide out of position to access the screws.

Figure 5-87 Remove the rear jogger motor (1 of 3)



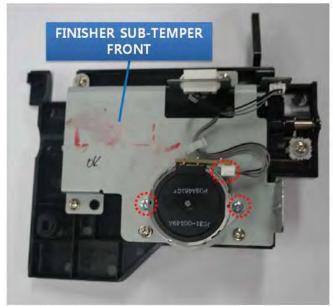
12. Unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-tamper rear.

Figure 5-88 Remove the rear jogger motor (2 of 3)



**13.** Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the rear jogger motor.

Figure 5-89 Remove the rear jogger motor (3 of 3)



- **14.** Remove four screws.
  - NOTE: Move cable guide out of position to access the screws.

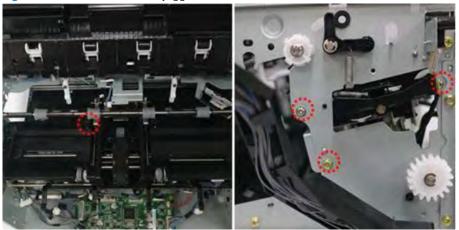


Figure 5-90 Remove the rear jogger motor (1 of 3)

**15.** Unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-tamper rear.

Figure 5-91 Remove the rear jogger motor (2 of 3)



**16.** Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the rear jogger motor.

Figure 5-92 Remove the rear jogger motor (3 of 3)

### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Rear Jogger Home Sensor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the rear jogger home sensor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Rear Jogger Home Sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

### 0604-001381

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Rear Jogger Home Sensor assembly

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

### Post service test

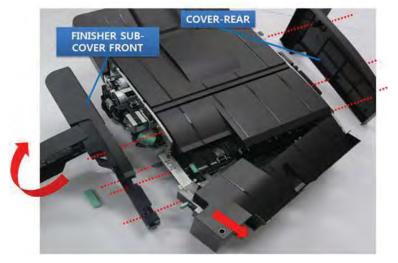
Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the rear jogger home sensor

### Remove the rear jogger home sensor

- 1. Remove the finisher sub-cover front and the cover-rear.
  - a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.
  - d. Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-93 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 11)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

 Image: Constrained state stat

Figure 5-94 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 11)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 5-95 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 11)



- 4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.
  - 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.
  - NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

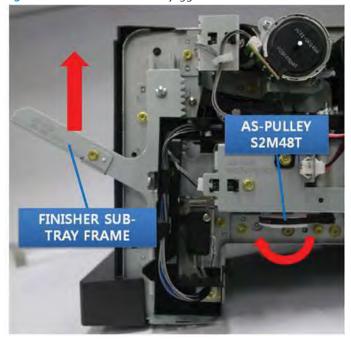
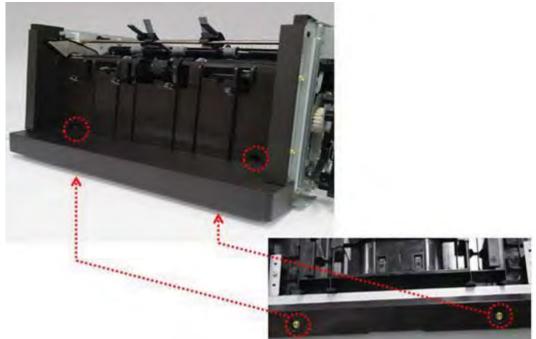


Figure 5-96 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 11)

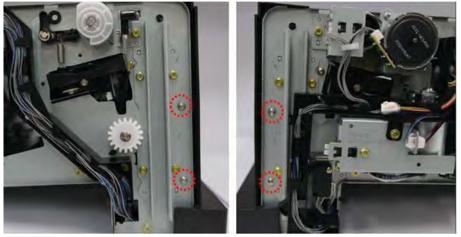
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-97 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 11)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

Figure 5-98 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 11)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

FINISHER SUB-STACKER PLATE

Figure 5-99 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 11)

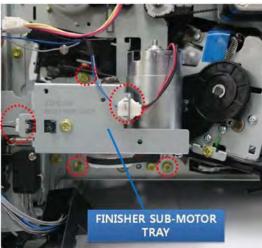
9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.



Figure 5-100 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 11)

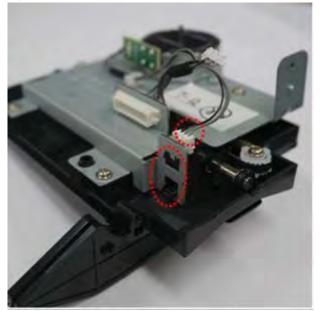
**10.** Remove three screws, unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 5-101 Remove the front jogger home sensor (10 of 11)



**11.** Unplug the connector, and then remove the rear jogger home sensor.

Figure 5-102 Remove the rear jogger home sensor (11 of 11)



## Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

### **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Stapler

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the stapler</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the stapler assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

### JC90-01342A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Stapler assembly

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

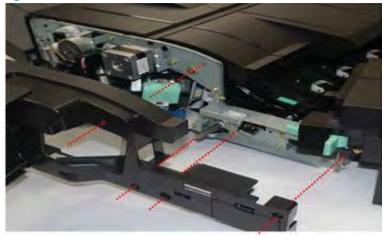
### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the stapler

1. Remove the front cover.

Figure 5-103 Remove the exit motor (1 of 3)



2. Remove two screws, and then unplug the motor connector.

Figure 5-104 Remove the exit motor (2 of 3)



- 3. Remove one screw, unplug two connectors, and then remove the stapler unit.
- NOTE: Ensure the tab on the back of the stapler unit clears the chassis while removing.



- Remove two screws, and then remove the finisher sub-staple. 4.

Figure 5-106 Remove the stapler (2 of 2)

Figure 5-105 Remove the stapler (1 of 2)



## Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

### **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Stapler position sensor assembly

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the staple position sensor assembly</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stapler position sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### 0604-001415

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Stapler position sensor assembly

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

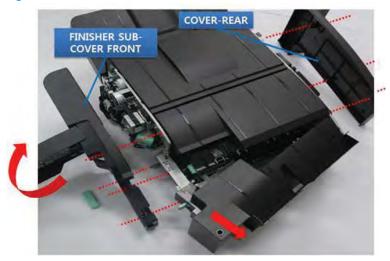
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

- 1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.
  - **a.** Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.
  - d. Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-107 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

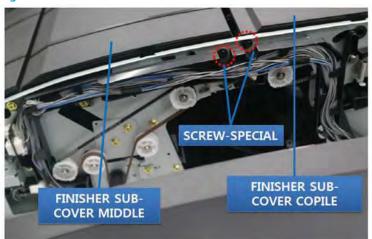


Figure 5-108 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 5-109 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

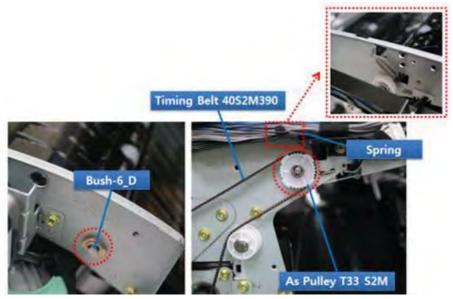
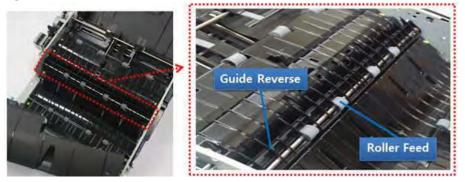


Figure 5-110 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.





Figure 5-111 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)

# Step 2: Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly

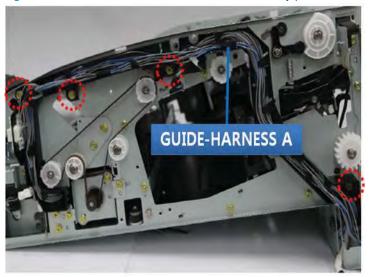
1. Open the cover top tray sub-assembly, and then remove one screw securing the guide-exit lower.

CUIDE-EXIT LOWER

Figure 5-112 Remove the Paddle Shaft sub assembly paddles (1 of 6)

2. Remove four screws securing the guide-harness A.

Figure 5-113 Remove the Paddle Shaft sub assembly paddles (2 of 6)



3. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt.

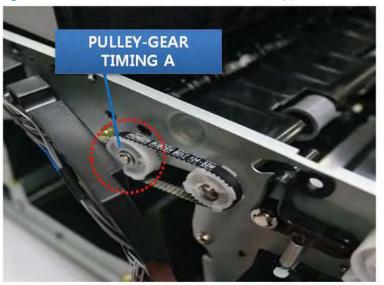
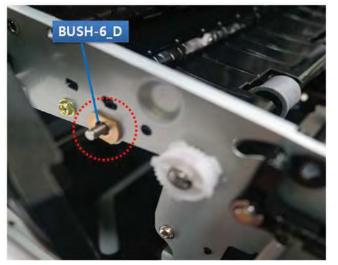


Figure 5-114 Remove the Paddle Shaft sub assembly paddles (3 of 6)

4. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 5-115 Remove the Paddle Shaft sub assembly paddles (4 of 6)



5. Lift up and remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly.

Figure 5-116 Remove the Paddle Shaft sub assembly paddles (5 of 6)



## Step 3: Remove the staple position sensor assembly

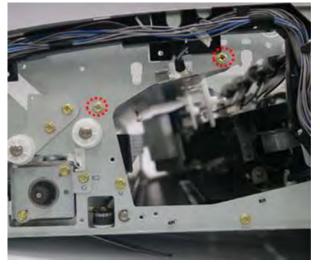
1. Remove two screws from the front of the printer. Remove three screws, and then remove the bracket support.



Figure 5-117 Remove the stapler position sensor (1 of 7)

2. Remove two screws from the rear of the printer.

Figure 5-118 Remove the stapler position sensor (2 of 7)



3. Loosen three cable restraints. Unplug the connector at the sensor, and then remove the finisher sub-stay bracket.

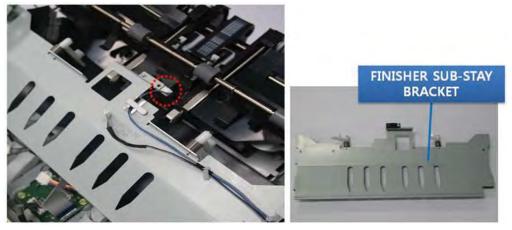


Figure 5-119 Remove the stapler position sensor (3 of 7)

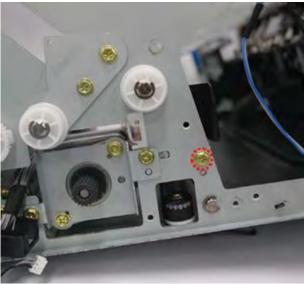
4. Remove one screw from the front of the printer.

Figure 5-120 Remove the stapler position sensor (4 of 7)



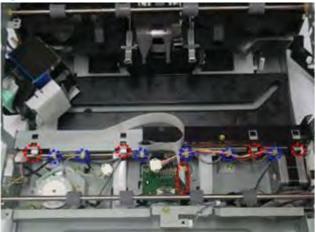
5. Remove one screw from the rear of the printer.

Figure 5-121 Remove the stapler position sensor (5 of 7)



- 6. Unplug four photo-sensor connectors. Open the six cable restraints, and then unplug the FFC cable.
- NOTE: The FFC is glued to the support bracket. However, the sensors can be replaced without removal of the FFC.
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Connect the sensors, lock the cable restraints, and then connect the FCC.





7. Remove the assembly, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 5-123 Remove the stapler position sensor (7 of 7)



## Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

B NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

**A** CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# **Traverse Motor**

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the traverse motor</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Traverse Motor assembly.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

### JC93-00999A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

Traverse Motor assembly

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

- 1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.
  - a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.
  - **d.** Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-124 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.



Figure 5-125 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 5-126 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

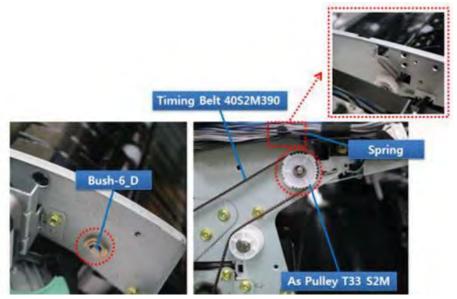
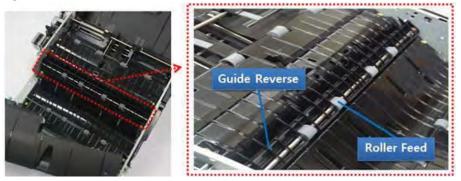


Figure 5-127 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



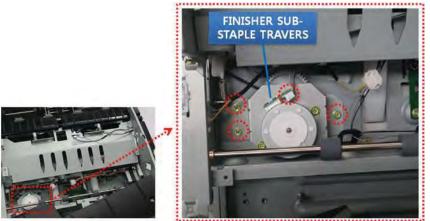
4. Remove six screws.



## Step 2: Remove the traverse motor

1. Remove three screws, unplug the motor connector, and then remove the finisher sub-staple travers.

Figure 5-129 Remove the traverse motor (1 of 2)



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

Figure 5-130 Remove the traverse motor (2 of 2)



- 3. Use the following steps when reinstalling the traverse motor:
  - **a.** Apply tension to the spring by pushing toward the center of the printer, and then tighten the screw. Tightening the screw puts maximum slack in the belt.
  - **b.** Lower the motor while placing the belt on the motor pulley.
  - c. Secure the bracket with three screws.
  - **d.** Release the spring tension screw to allow the spring to apply tension to the belt.
  - e. Tighten the screw.

## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🟡 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# **Stacker Motor**

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the stacker motor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stacker Motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### JC90-01334B

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Stacker Motor

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

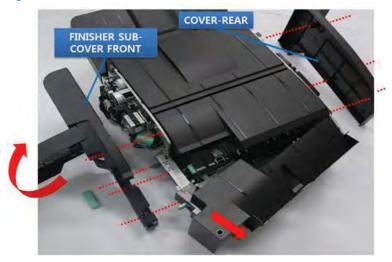
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the stacker motor

- 1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.
  - a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.
  - d. Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-131 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



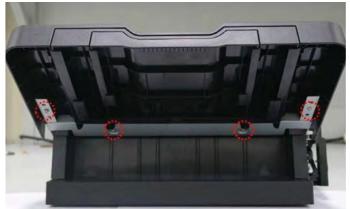
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.



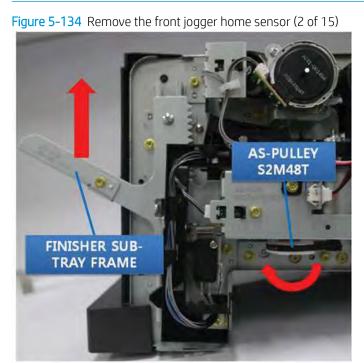
Figure 5-132 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 5-133 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

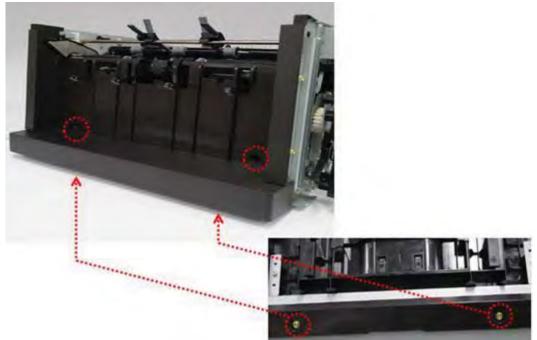


- 4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.
  - 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.
  - NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.



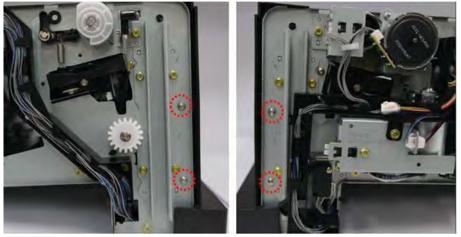
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-135 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

Figure 5-136 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove Lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

FINISHER SUB-STACKER PLATE

Figure 5-137 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)

9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.



Figure 5-138 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)

- **10.** Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.
- **NOTE:** Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

Figure 5-139 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)

Motor Paddle Sub Assy

- 11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guideharness front.
- **NOTE:** The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

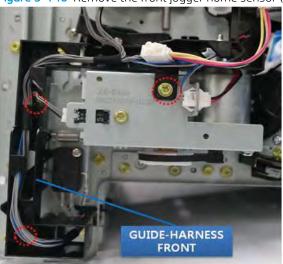


Figure 5-140 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)

12. Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the stacker motor.

FINISHER SUB-MOTOR TRAY

Figure 5-141 Remove the stacker motor

### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Stacker Encoder Sensor

- Introduction
- <u>Step 1: Remove the stacker encoder sensor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stacker Encoder Sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### 0604-001415

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Stacker Encoder Sensor assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

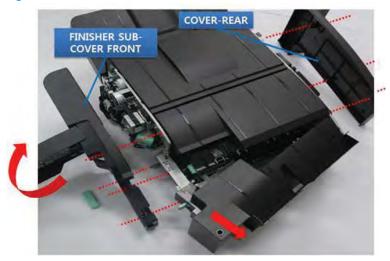
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the stacker encoder sensor

- 1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.
  - **a.** Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.
  - d. Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-142 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

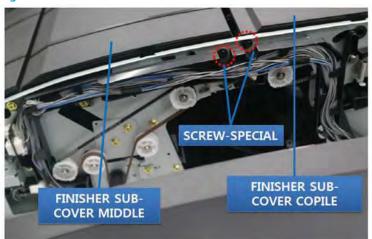
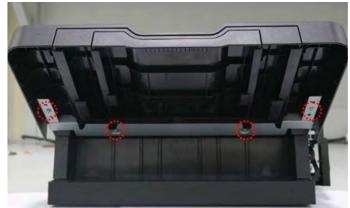


Figure 5-143 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 5-144 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)



- 4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.
  - 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.
- **NOTE:** Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

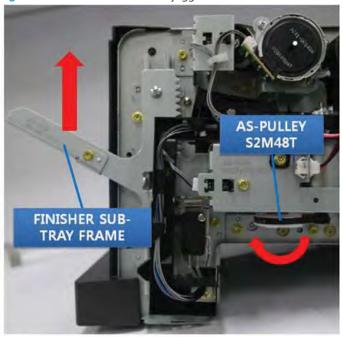
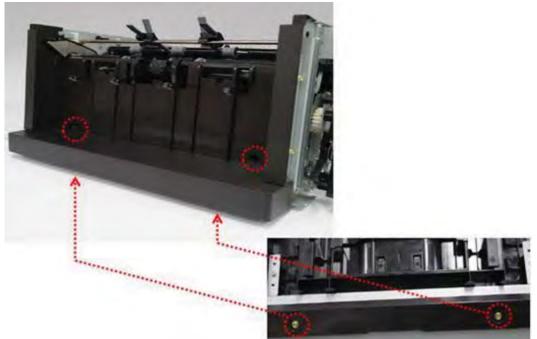


Figure 5-145 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)

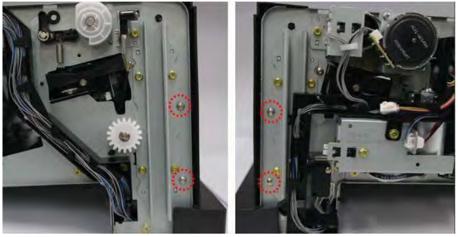
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-146 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

Figure 5-147 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

FINISHER SUB-STACKER PLATE

Figure 5-148 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)

9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.



Figure 5-149 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)

- **10**. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.
- **NOTE:** Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

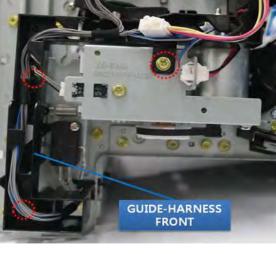
Motor Paddle Sub Assy 

Figure 5-150 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)

- 11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guideharness front.
  - NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

GUIDE-HARNESS FRONT

Figure 5-151 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)



**12.** Remove one screw, remove the shaft, and then remove the sensor.

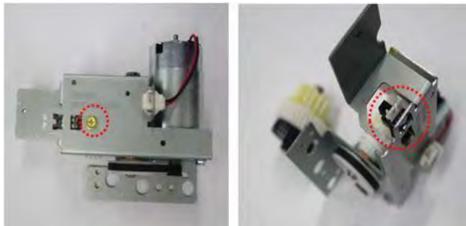


Figure 5-152 Remove the stacker encoder sensor

## Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Stacker Lower Limit Switch

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the stacker lower limit switch</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stacker Lower Limit Switch assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### JC90-01320A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Stacker Lower Limit Switch assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

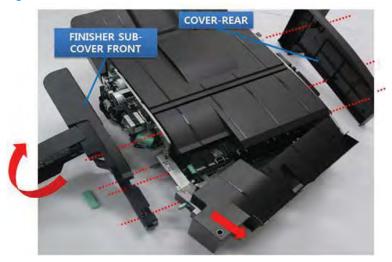
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the stacker lower limit switch

- 1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.
  - a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.
  - d. Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-153 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



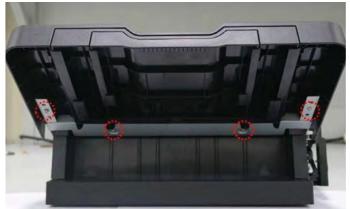
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.



Figure 5-154 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

Remove four screws, and then remove the tray. 3.

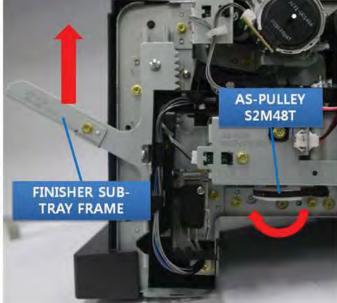
Figure 5-155 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)



- Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley. 4.
  - 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.
  - WOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

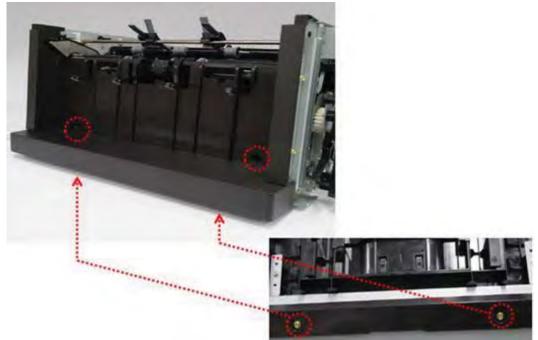


Figure 5-156 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



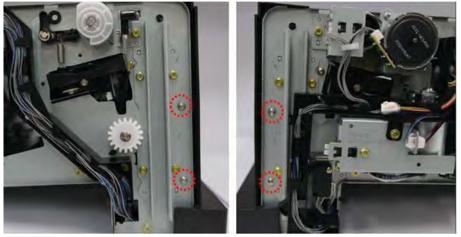
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-157 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

Figure 5-158 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

FINISHER SUB-STACKER PLATE

Figure 5-159 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)

9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.



Figure 5-160 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)

- **10.** Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.
- **NOTE:** Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

Figure 5-161 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)

 Motor Paddle Sub Assy

- 11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guideharness front.
- **NOTE:** The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

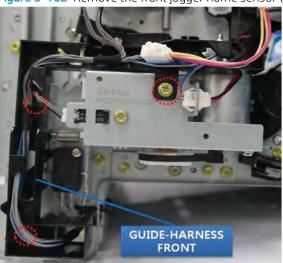


Figure 5-162 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)

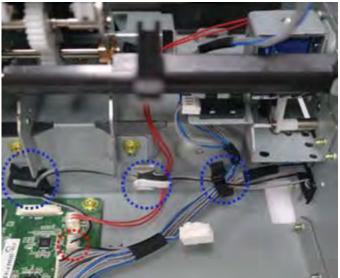
12. Remove one screw.

Figure 5-163 Remove the stacker lower limit switch (1 of 2)



**13.** Open three clamps, unplug the connector, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 5-164 Remove the stacker lower limit switch (2 of 2)



# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🟡 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Stack Beam Sensor

- Introduction
- <u>Step 1: Remove the stack beam sensor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stack Beam Sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### 0603-001309

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Stack Beam Sensor assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the stack beam sensor

- 1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.
  - a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.
  - d. Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-165 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



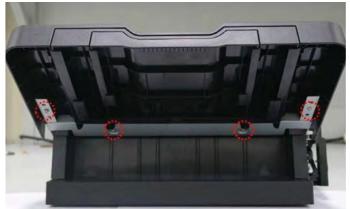
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.



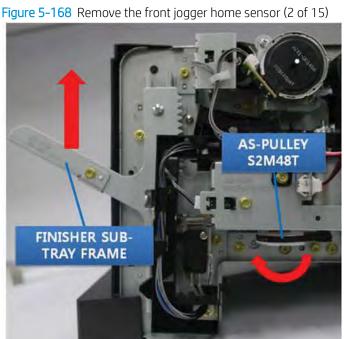
Figure 5-166 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

Remove four screws, and then remove the tray. 3.

Figure 5-167 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

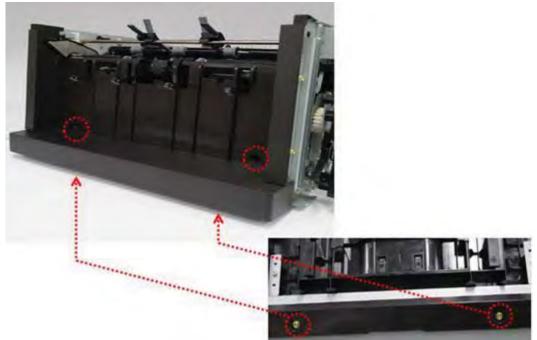


- Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley. 4.
  - 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.
  - WOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.



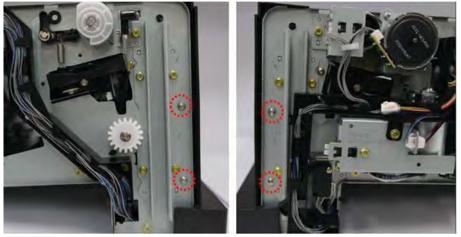
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-169 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

Figure 5-170 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Remove two screws from both sides of the finisher sub-stacker plate. Remove the bracket, and then remove the sensor.



Figure 5-171 Remove the stack beam sensor

### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Stack Position Sensor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stack Position Sensor assembly.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

MARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### 0603-001309

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Stack Position Sensor assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

#### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

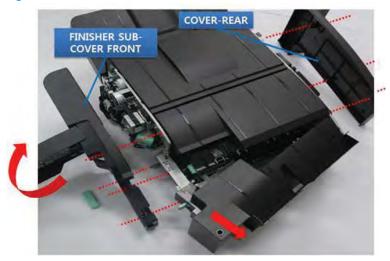
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

## Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

- 1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.
  - a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.
  - d. Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-172 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

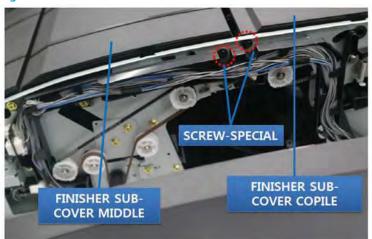


Figure 5-173 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 5-174 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

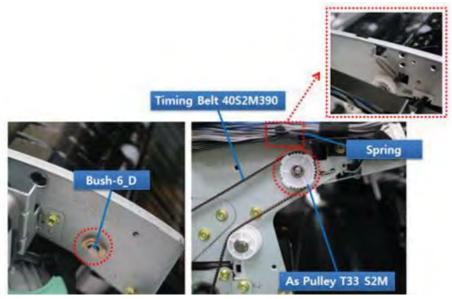
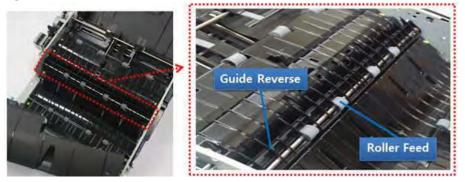


Figure 5-175 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

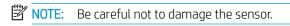




Figure 5-176 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)

# Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.



- 2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.
- **Reinstallation tip:** Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

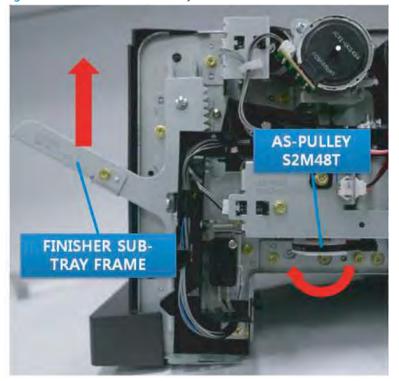
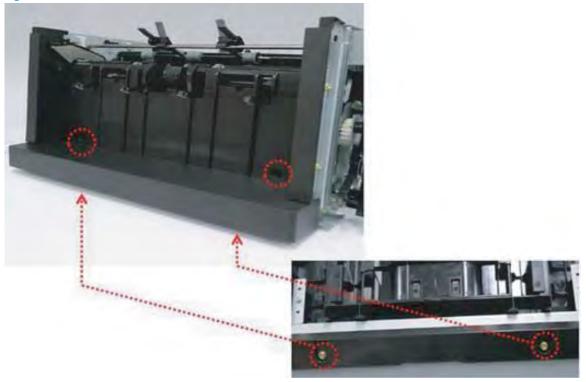


Figure 5-178 Remove the sub-tray

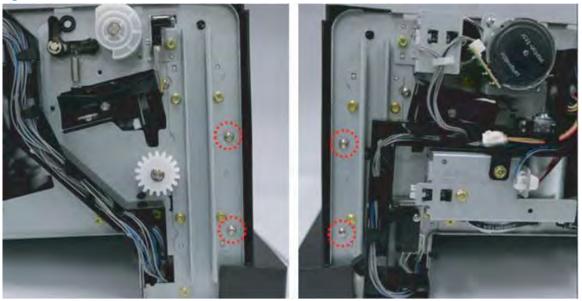
3. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

# Figure 5-179 Remove the PBA



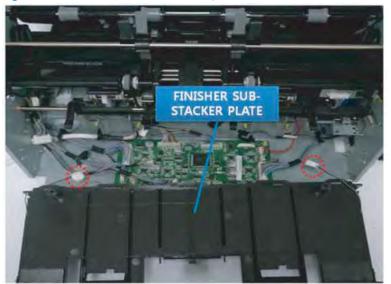
- 4. Remove four screws.
- **NOTE:** Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 5-180 Remove the PBA



5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-181 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.



Figure 5-182 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly

- 7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.
  - **WOTE:** Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

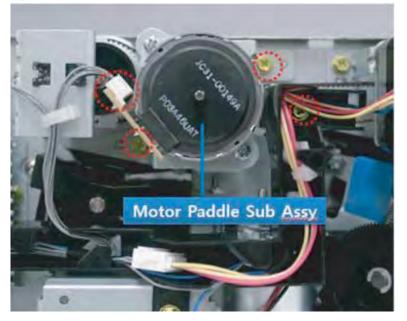


Figure 5-183 Release the motor paddle sub assembly

8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

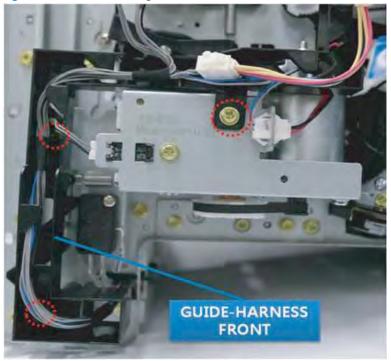
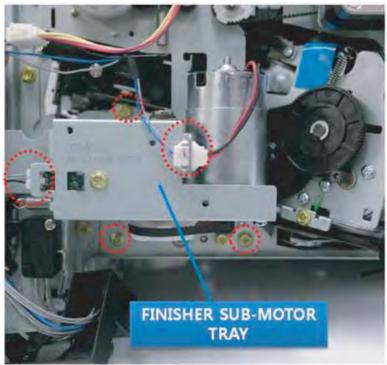


Figure 5-184 Remove the guide harness front

9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 5-185 Release the finisher sub-motor tray



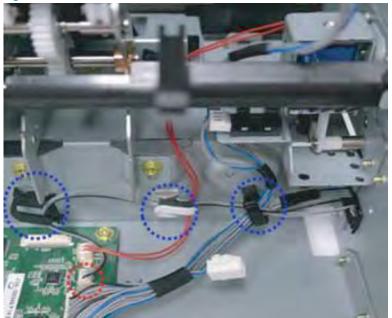
**10.** Remove one screw.

Figure 5-186 Remove one screw



**11.** Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 5-187 Release the sensor



- **12.** Do the following:
  - **a.** Disconnect the sensor.
  - **b.** Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.
  - c. Remove the stack position sensor.

### Figure 5-188 Remove the sensor



## Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🟡 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Paper Holding Lever Solenoid

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the paper holding lever solenoid</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Paper Holding Lever Solenoid assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

### JC33-00037A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Solenoid TDS

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

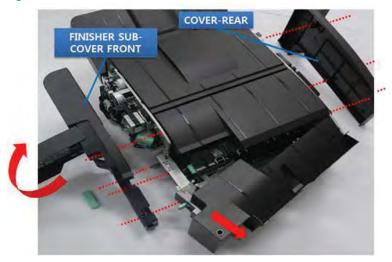
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the paper holding lever solenoid

- 1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.
  - a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.
  - d. Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-189 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



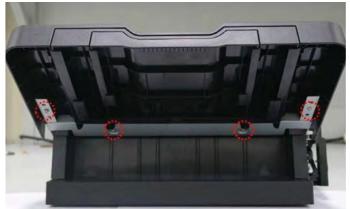
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.



Figure 5-190 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 5-191 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)



- 4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.
  - 🔆 Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.
  - NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

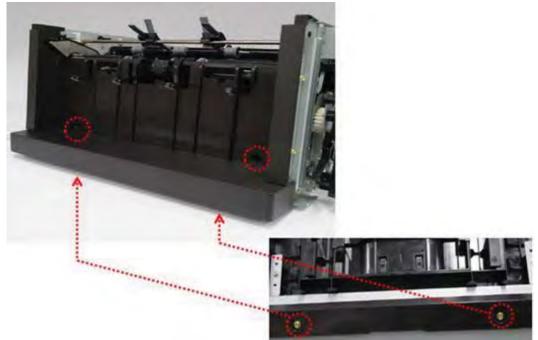


FINISHER SUB-TRAY FRAME

Figure 5-192 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)

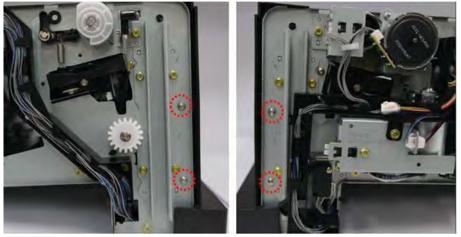
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-193 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

Figure 5-194 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

FINISHER SUB-STACKER PLATE

Figure 5-195 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)

9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.



Figure 5-196 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)

- **10.** Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.
- **NOTE:** Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

Figure 5-197 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)

Motor Paddle Sub Assy

- 11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guideharness front.
- **NOTE:** The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

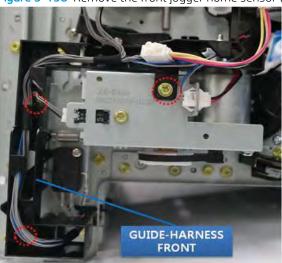


Figure 5-198 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)

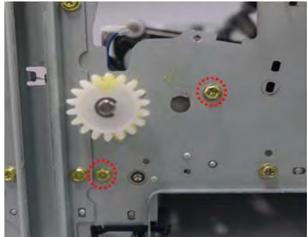
12. Remove one screw, and then remove stack lower limit switch bracket.

Figure 5-199 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4)



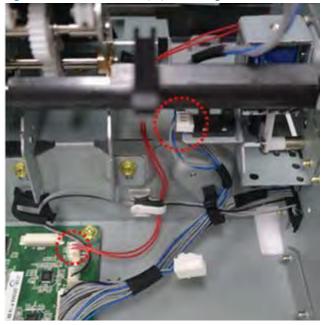
**13.** Remove the second screw.

Figure 5-200 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4)



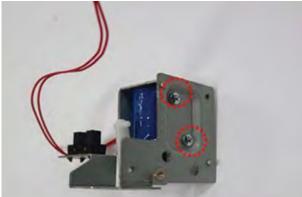
**14.** Disconnect one connector.

Figure 5-201 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4)



**15.** Remove two screws on the solenoid bracket.

Figure 5-202 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4)



- **16.** Disconnect the connector from the main board.
- **17.** Remove the solenoid assembly.

## Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

### **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Paper Support Motor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the paper support motor</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Paper Support Motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

MARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

### JC93-01001A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Paper Support Motor assembly

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.



- Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley. 2.
- 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

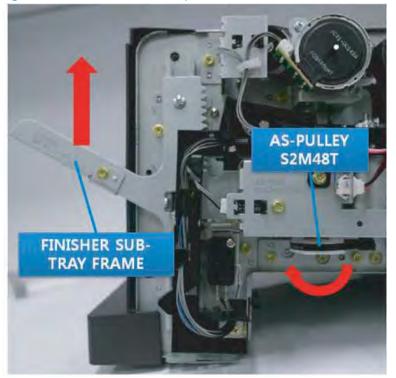
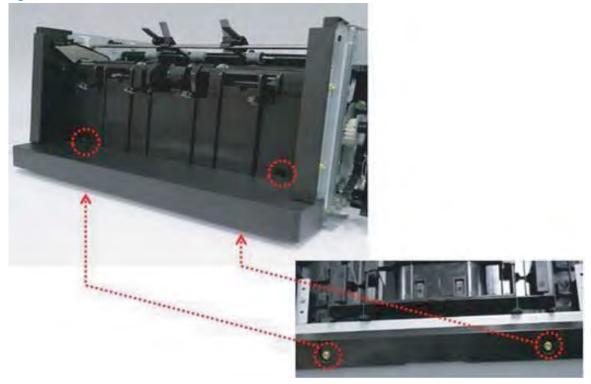


Figure 5-204 Remove the sub-tray

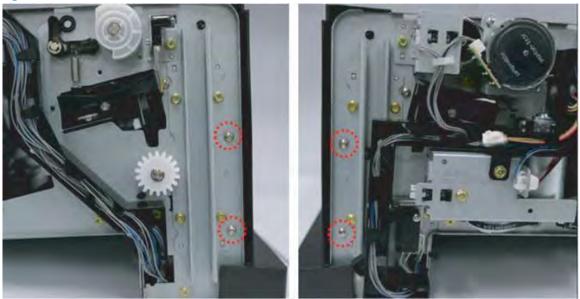
**3.** Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-205 Remove the PBA



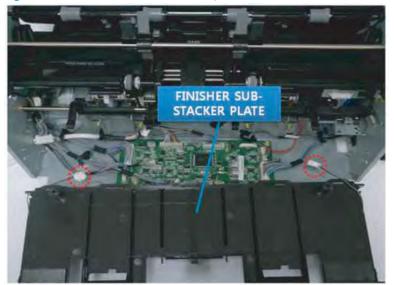
- 4. Remove four screws.
  - **NOTE:** Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 5-206 Remove the PBA



5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-207 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

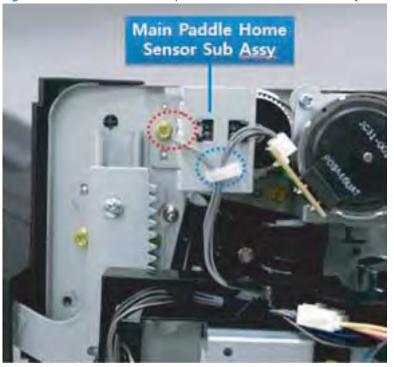


Figure 5-208 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly

- 7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.
  - NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

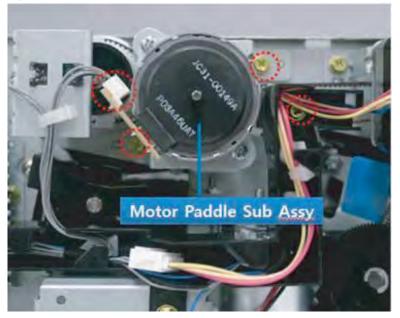


Figure 5-209 Release the motor paddle sub assembly

8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

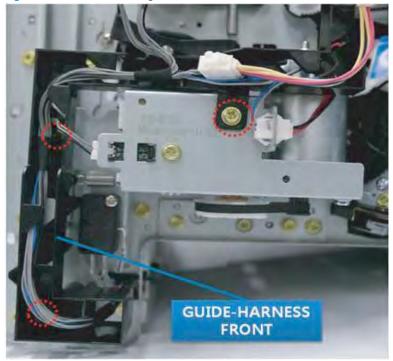
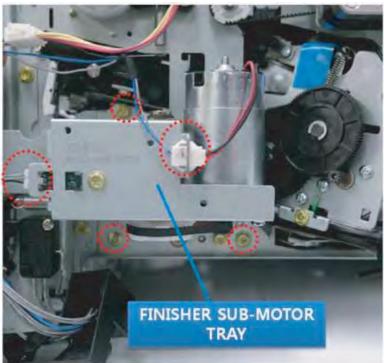


Figure 5-210 Remove the guide harness front

9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 5-211 Release the finisher sub-motor tray



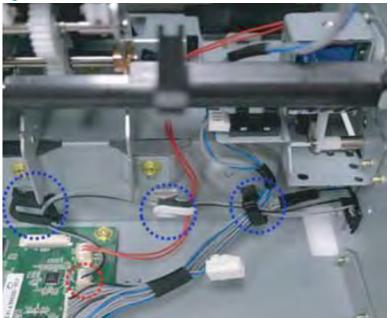
**10.** Remove one screw.

Figure 5-212 Remove one screw



11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 5-213 Release the sensor

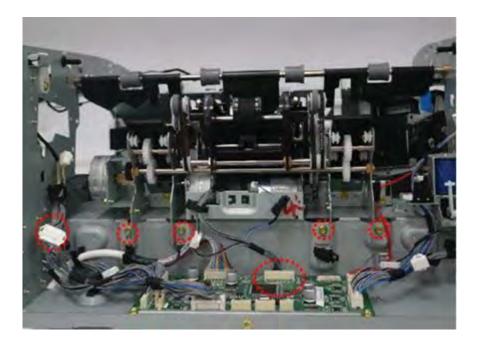


- **12.** Do the following:
  - **a.** Disconnect the sensor.
  - **b.** Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.
  - **c.** Remove the stack position sensor.

Figure 5-214 Remove the sensor



## Step 2: Remove the paper support motor



- 1. Disconnect one connector.
- **2.** Remove four screws.
- 3. Remove the cables from their restraints at the front of the ejector.
- 4. Disconnect the motor and the sensor cable at the rear

5. Remove the cables from the cable restraints at the rear.

**NOTE:** The black paddle is inside the chrome bracket at rear of ejector



6. Remove the ejector.

### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
- **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Paper Support Home Sensor

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the paper support home sensor</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Paper Support Home Sensor assembly.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

### 0604-001415

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Paper support home sensor

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

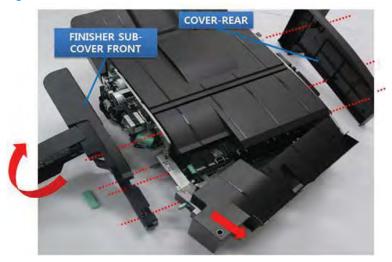
### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

- 1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.
  - a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.
  - **d.** Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-215 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.



Figure 5-216 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 5-217 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

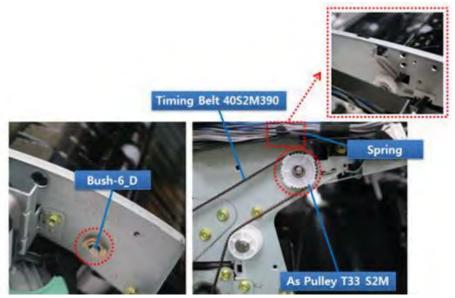
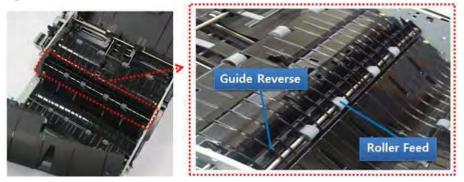


Figure 5-218 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.



### Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.

Figure 5-220 Remove the tray

- 2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.
  - 🔆 **Reinstallation tip:** Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

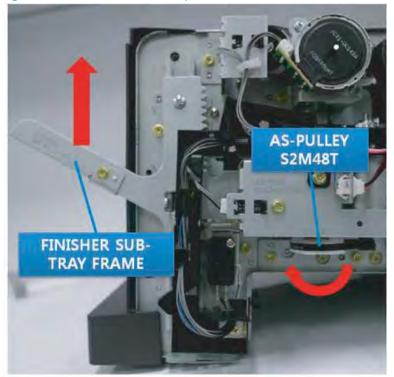
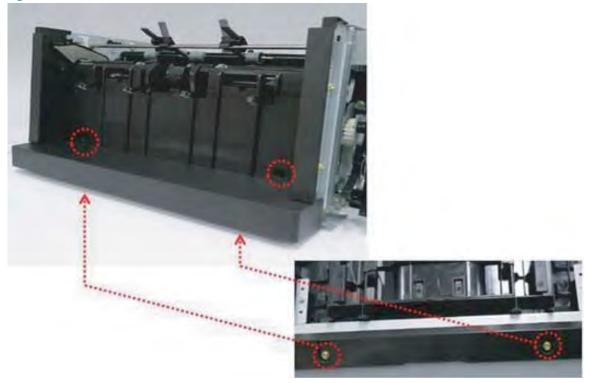


Figure 5-221 Remove the sub-tray

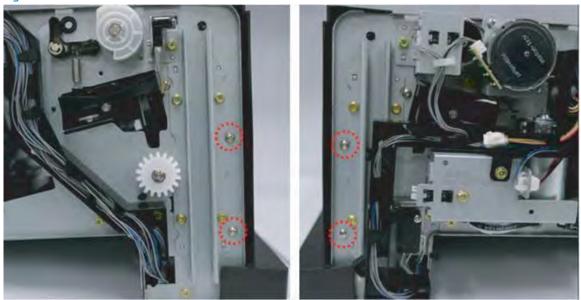
**3.** Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 5-222 Remove the PBA



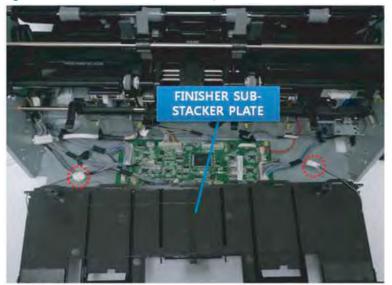
- 4. Remove four screws.
  - **NOTE:** Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 5-223 Remove the PBA



5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-224 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

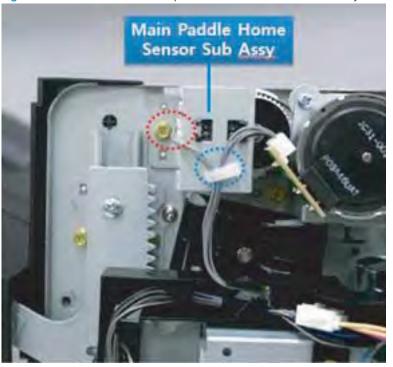


Figure 5-225 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly

- 7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.
  - NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

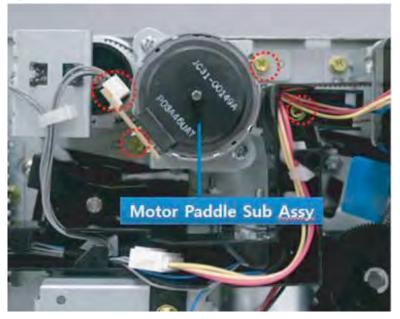


Figure 5-226 Release the motor paddle sub assembly

8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

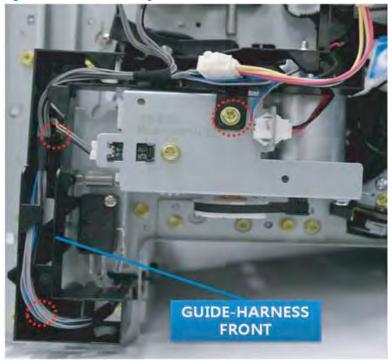
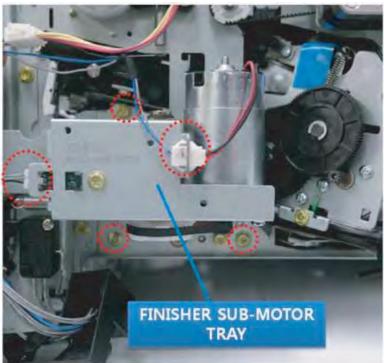


Figure 5-227 Remove the guide harness front

9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 5-228 Release the finisher sub-motor tray



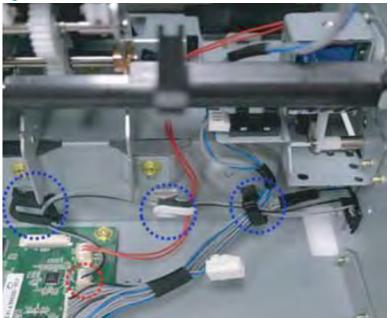
**10.** Remove one screw.

Figure 5-229 Remove one screw



11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 5-230 Release the sensor



- **12.** Do the following:
  - **a.** Disconnect the sensor.
  - **b.** Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.
  - **c.** Remove the stack position sensor.

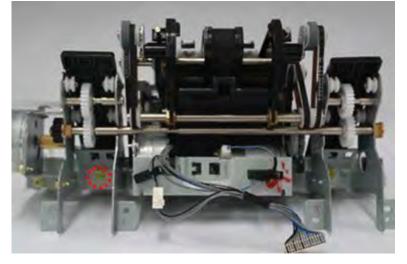
Figure 5-231 Remove the sensor



### Step 3: Remove the paper support home sensor

- 1. Disconnect one connector.
- 2. Remove one screw.

Figure 5-232 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4)



3. Remove the shaft while pulling the bushing in the direction of the arrow.

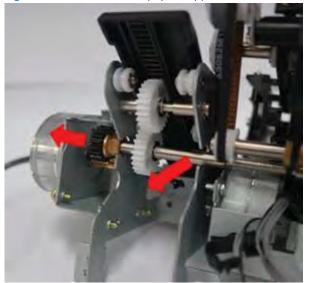
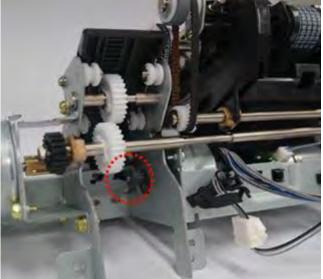


Figure 5-233 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4)

4. Remove the paper support with attention for pinion.

Figure 5-234 Remove the paper support home sensor (3 of 4)



5. Remove the sensor from the paper support.

Figure 5-235 Remove the paper support home sensor (4 of 4)



## Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

### **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## **Ejector Motor assembly**

- Introduction
- <u>Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Ejector Motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

### JC90-01332A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Ejector Motor assembly

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

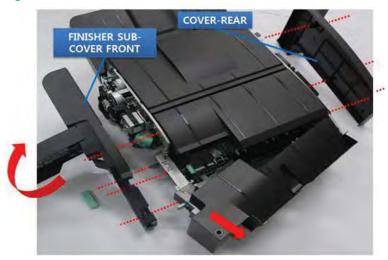
### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

- 1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.
  - **a.** Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.
  - d. Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-236 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.



Figure 5-237 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 5-238 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

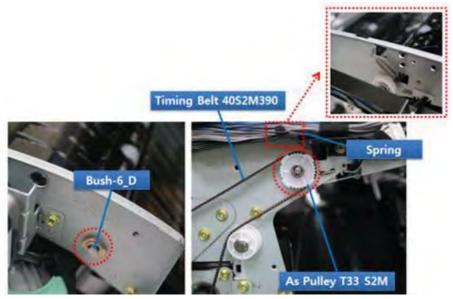
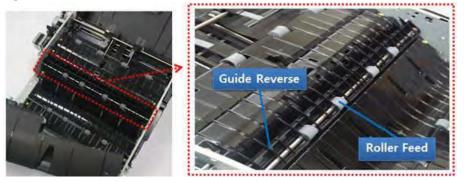


Figure 5-239 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

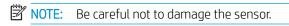




Figure 5-240 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)

# Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.



- 2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.
- **Reinstallation tip:** Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

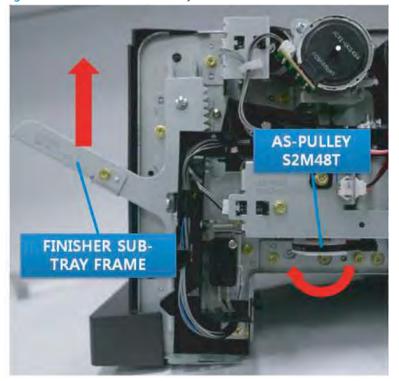
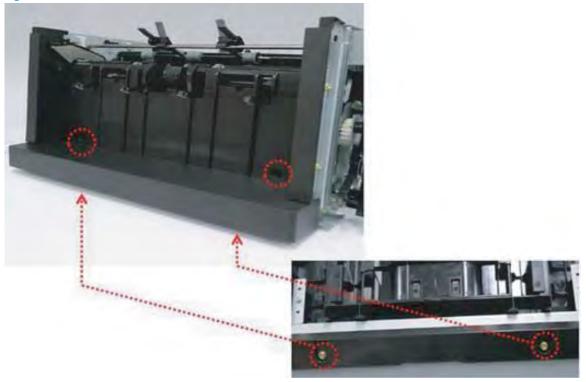


Figure 5-242 Remove the sub-tray

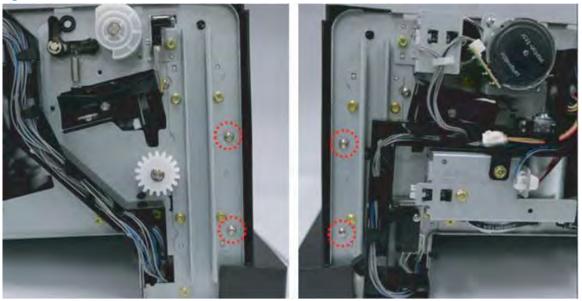
**3.** Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

# Figure 5-243 Remove the PBA



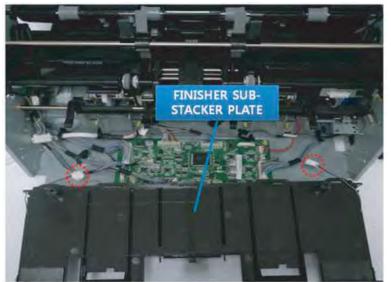
- 4. Remove four screws.
- **NOTE:** Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 5-244 Remove the PBA



5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-245 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.



Figure 5-246 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly

- 7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.
  - **WOTE:** Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

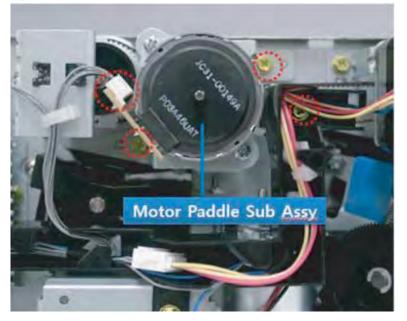


Figure 5-247 Release the motor paddle sub assembly

8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

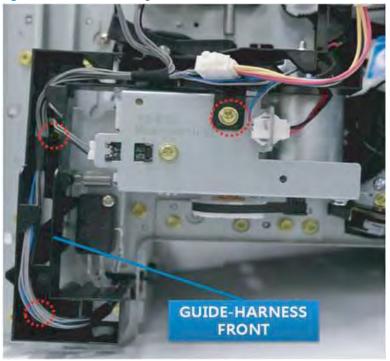
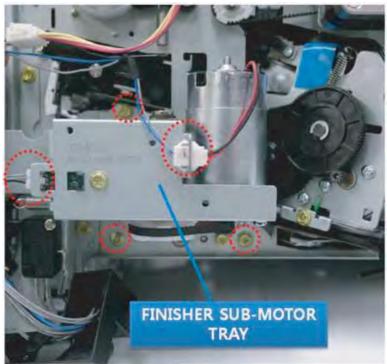


Figure 5-248 Remove the guide harness front

9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 5-249 Release the finisher sub-motor tray



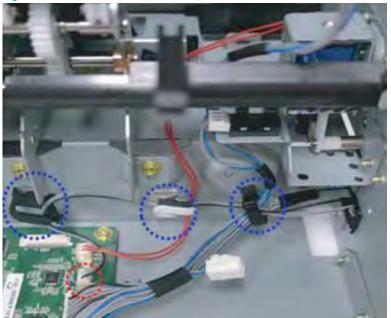
**10.** Remove one screw.

Figure 5-250 Remove one screw



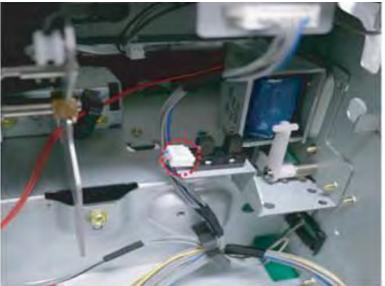
**11.** Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 5-251 Release the sensor



- **12.** Do the following:
  - **a.** Disconnect the sensor.
  - **b.** Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.
  - c. Remove the stack position sensor.

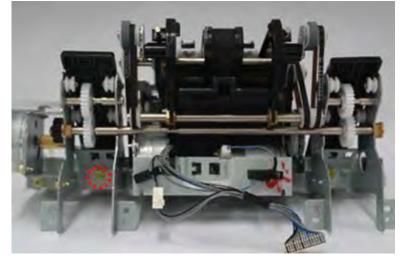
Figure 5-252 Remove the sensor



# Step 3: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly

- 1. Disconnect one connector on the paper support motor.
- 2. Remove one screw on the paper support home sensor.

Figure 5-253 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4)



3. Remove the shaft while pulling the bushing in the direction of the arrow.

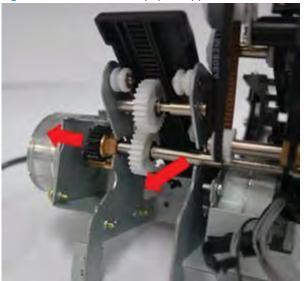
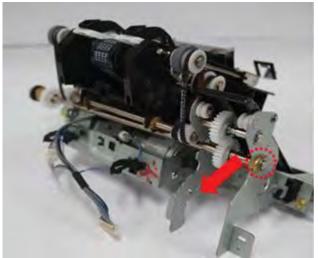


Figure 5-254 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4)

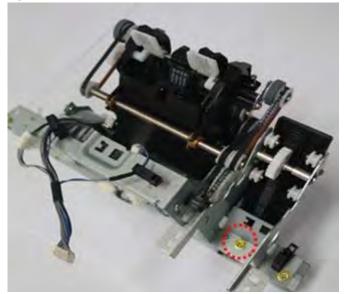
4. Remove the e-clip and the bushing, and then pull and remove the drive shaft.

Figure 5-255 Remove the ejector motor assembly (1 of 6)



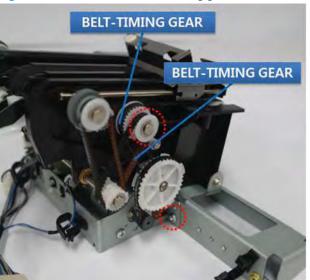
- **Reinstallation tip:** When reassembling the drive shaft, ensure the paper supports are in the full down position (against the stops).
- 5. Remove one screw.

Figure 5-256 Remove the ejector motor assembly (2 of 6)



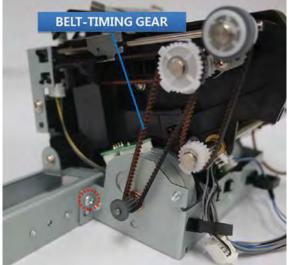
6. Remove the e-ring and washer. Remove two belt-timing gears, and then remove one screw.

Figure 5-257 Remove two belt-timing gears



7. Remove the clip, remove the belt-timing gear, and then remove one screw.





8. Remove the cable from restraint, and then disconnect two motor connectors and the sensor connector. Remove the motor assembly.

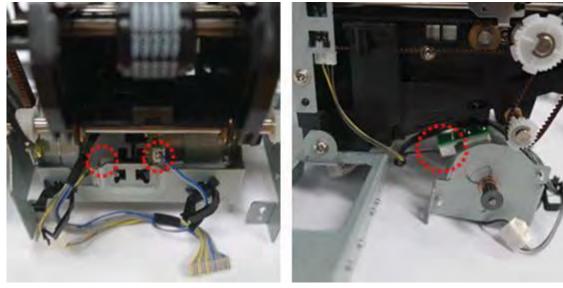


Figure 5-259 Disconnect connectors

Figure 5-260 Remove the motor assembly



# Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- **3**. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Main Paddle Motor

- Introduction
- <u>Step 1: Remove the main paddle motor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Main Paddle Motor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

## JC31-00149A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Main Paddle Motor assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

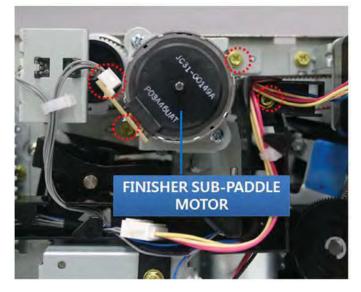
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the main paddle motor

- 1. Remove the front cover.
- 2. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor assembly.

Figure 5-261 Remove the motor assembly



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

Figure 5-262 Remove the main paddle motor



# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

## **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Main Paddle Home Sensor

- Introduction
- <u>Step 1: Remove the main paddle home sensor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Main Paddle Home Sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### 0604-001415

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Main Paddle Home Sensor assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

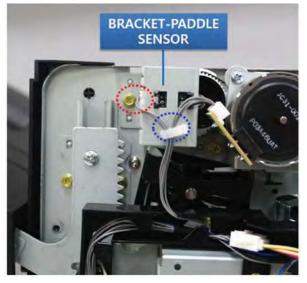
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the main paddle home sensor

- 1. Remove the front cover.
- 2. Remove one screw. Open the clamp, and then remove the bracket-paddle sensor.

Figure 5-263 Remove the bracket-paddle sensor



3. Remove the main paddle home sensor from the bracket.

Figure 5-264 Remove the main paddle home sensor



# Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

▲ CAUTION:

🚵 Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Main Paddle

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the main paddle</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Main Paddle assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

## JC63-04957A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Main paddle A

## JC63-04958A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Main paddle B

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

#### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the main paddle

• Open the cover top tray sub assembly, and then remove the main paddle A unit and main paddle B unit.

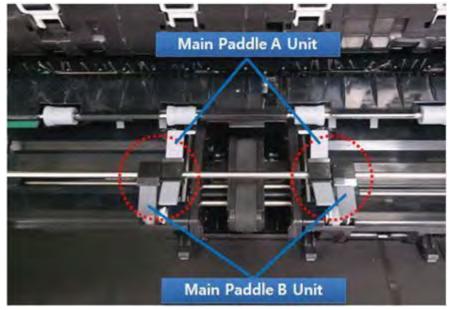


Figure 5-265 Remove the main paddle

## Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

- 1. Dispose of the defective part.
  - **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
- NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Ejector assembly

- <u>Introduction</u>
- <u>Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly</u>
- <u>Step 3: Remove the paper ejector assembly</u>
- <u>Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Ejector assembly.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

### JC90-01332A

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Ejector assembly

## **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## After performing service

## Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.



- 2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.
- **Reinstallation tip:** Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

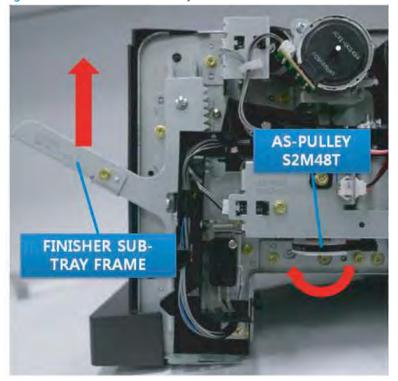
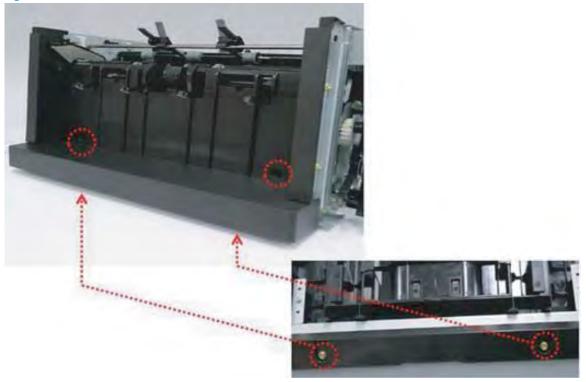


Figure 5-267 Remove the sub-tray

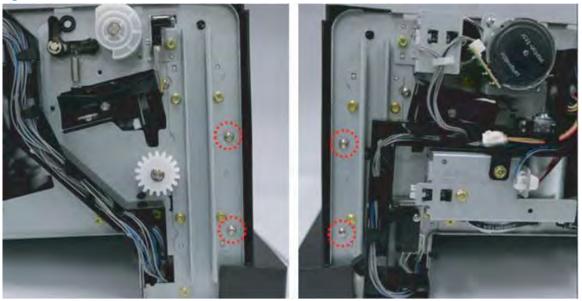
**3.** Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

# Figure 5-268 Remove the PBA



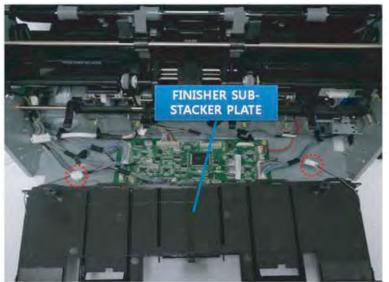
- 4. Remove four screws.
- **NOTE:** Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 5-269 Remove the PBA



5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 5-270 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.



Figure 5-271 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly

- 7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.
  - **WOTE:** Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

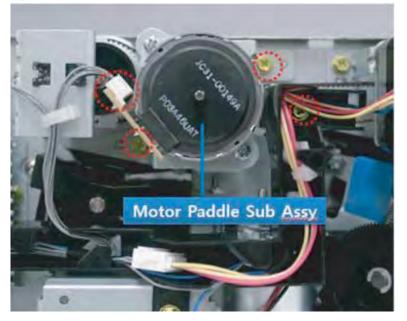


Figure 5-272 Release the motor paddle sub assembly

8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

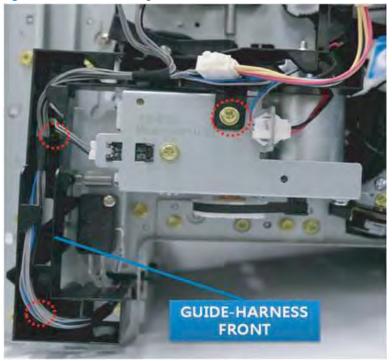
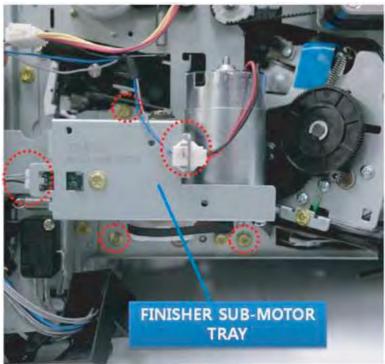


Figure 5-273 Remove the guide harness front

9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 5-274 Release the finisher sub-motor tray



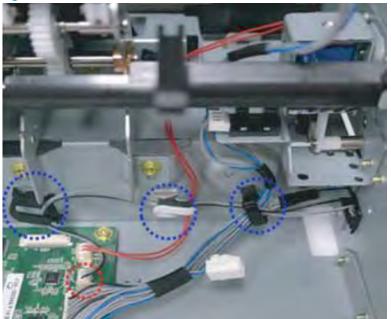
**10.** Remove one screw.

Figure 5-275 Remove one screw



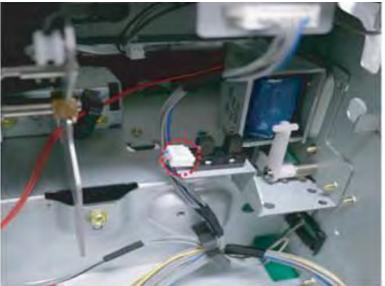
**11.** Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 5-276 Release the sensor



- **12.** Do the following:
  - **a.** Disconnect the sensor.
  - **b.** Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.
  - c. Remove the stack position sensor.

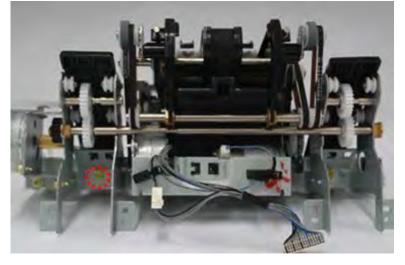
Figure 5-277 Remove the sensor



# Step 2: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly

- 1. Disconnect one connector on the paper support motor.
- 2. Remove one screw on the paper support home sensor.

Figure 5-278 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4)



3. Remove the shaft while pulling the bushing in the direction of the arrow.

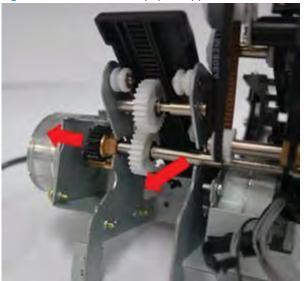
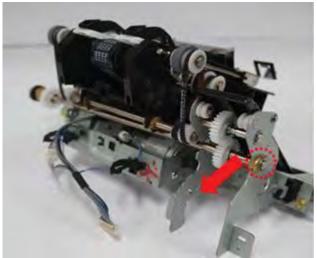


Figure 5-279 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4)

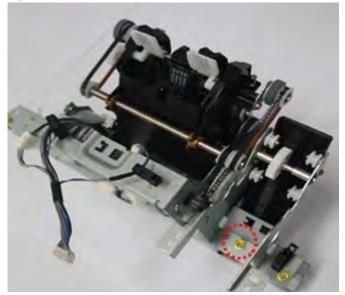
4. Remove the e-clip and the bushing, and then pull and remove the drive shaft.

Figure 5-280 Remove the ejector motor assembly (1 of 6)



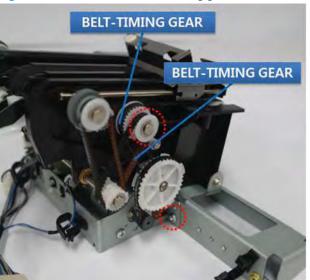
- **Reinstallation tip:** When reassembling the drive shaft, ensure the paper supports are in the full down position (against the stops).
- 5. Remove one screw.

Figure 5-281 Remove the ejector motor assembly (2 of 6)



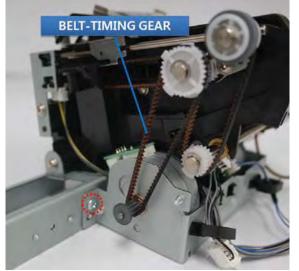
6. Remove the e-ring and washer. Remove two belt-timing gears, and then remove one screw.

Figure 5-282 Remove two belt-timing gears



7. Remove the clip, remove the belt-timing gear, and then remove one screw.

Figure 5-283 Remove the belt-timing gear and one screw



8. Remove the cable from restraint, and then disconnect two motor connectors and the sensor connector. Remove the motor assembly.

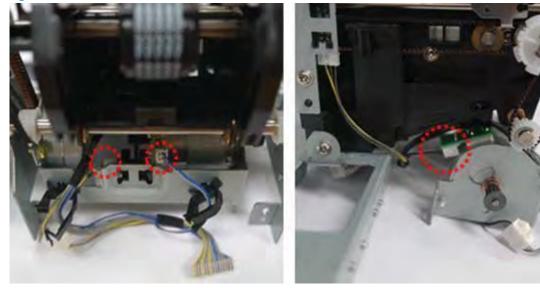


Figure 5-284 Disconnect connectors

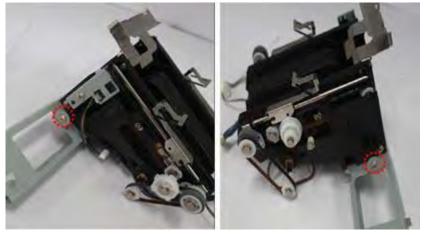
Figure 5-285 Remove the motor assembly



# Step 3: Remove the paper ejector assembly

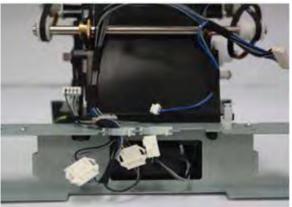
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 5-286 Remove two screws



2. Unplug the harness, and then remove the ejector assembly.

Figure 5-287 Remove the ejector assembly



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

**1.** Dispose of the defective part.

## **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Punch Dust Full Sensor

- Introduction
- <u>Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers</u>
- <u>Step 2: Remove the punch dust full sensor</u>
- <u>Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

# Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Punch Dust Full Sensor assembly.

**IMPORTANT:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

## Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

MARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

## 0604-001381

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• Punch Dust Full Sensor assembly

### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

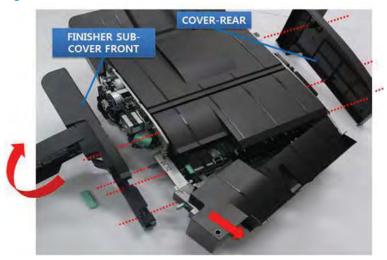
### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

# Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

- 1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.
  - **a.** Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.
  - **b.** Remove the handle.
  - **c.** From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.
  - d. Remove the cover-rear.

Figure 5-288 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.



Figure 5-289 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 5-290 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

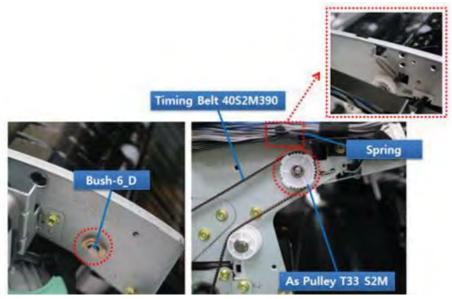
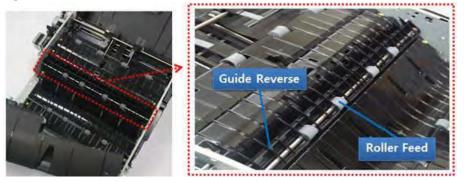


Figure 5-291 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.



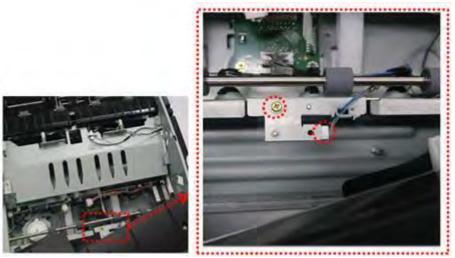


Figure 5-292 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)

### Step 2: Remove the punch dust full sensor

1. Remove one screw, unplug the connector, and then remove the punch dust full sensor sub-assembly.

Figure 5-293 Remove the punch dust full sensor sub-assembly



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the punch dust full sensor.

Figure 5-294 Remove the punch dust full sensor



### Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

### **WOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

### **End Fence Home Sensor**

- Introduction
- <u>Step 1: Remove the end fence home position sensor</u>
- <u>Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly</u>

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the End Fence Home Sensor assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

#### Before performing service

• Disconnect the power cable.

**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

#### 0604-001381

To order the part, go to <u>www.hp.com/buy/parts</u>.

• End Fence Home Sensor assembly

#### **Required tools**

• #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### After performing service

### Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

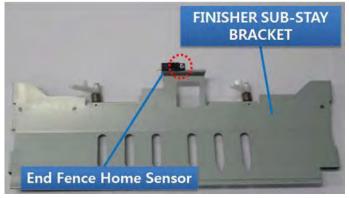
#### Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

### Step 1: Remove the end fence home position sensor

- 1. Follow steps 1-5 in the traverse front home sensor disassembly procedure.
- 2. Remove one screw, and then remove the sensor.

### Figure 5-295 Remove the end fence home sensor



### Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

A CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at

an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

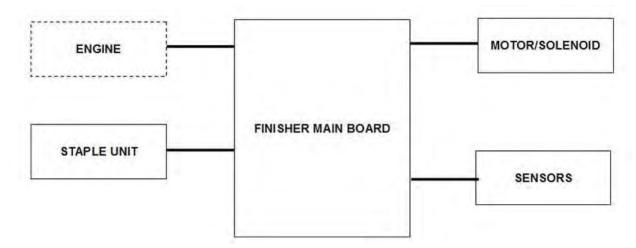
- **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.
- 3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
  - NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

# Problem solving

## Control panel messages document (CPMD)

For CPMD information, go to Error code and control panel message troubleshooting overview on page 668.

# **Block Diagram**



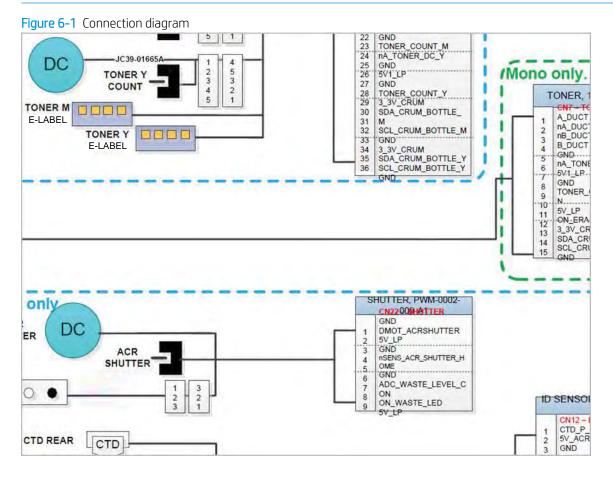
# 6 Diagrams

• <u>Diagrams</u>

## Diagrams

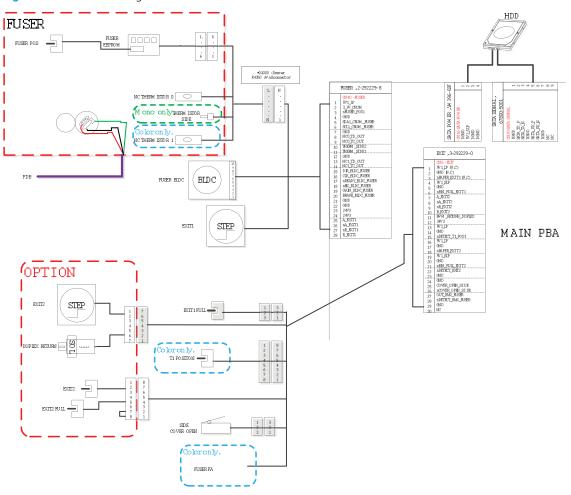
**NOTE:** The connection diagram includes the harness part code as shown below:

- Blue text harness codes are for both color and mono models.
- Green text harness codes are for mono models.
- Red text harness codes are for color models.



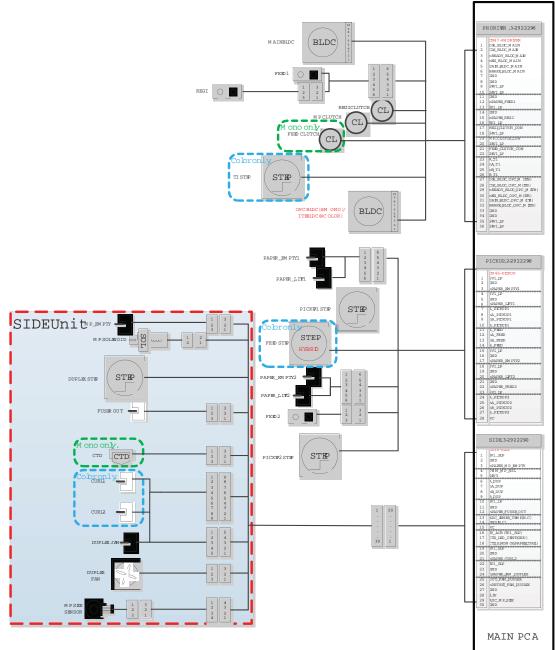
## Diagrams (FUSER EXIT)

Figure 6-2 Fuser exit diagram

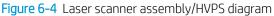


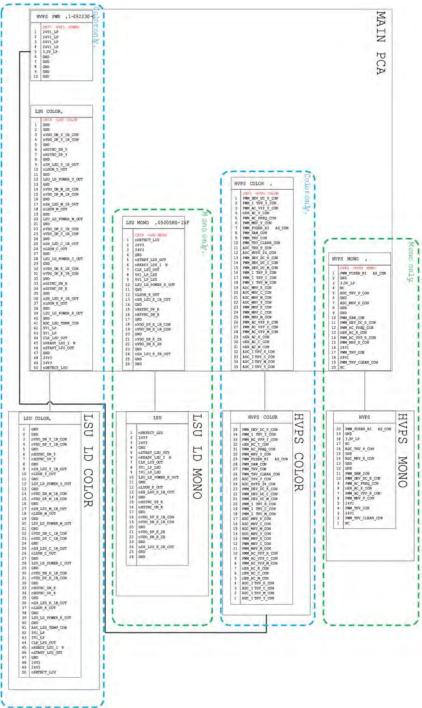
## Diagrams (PICKUP/PH DRIVE/SIDE)

Figure 6-3 Pickup/PH drive/side diagram



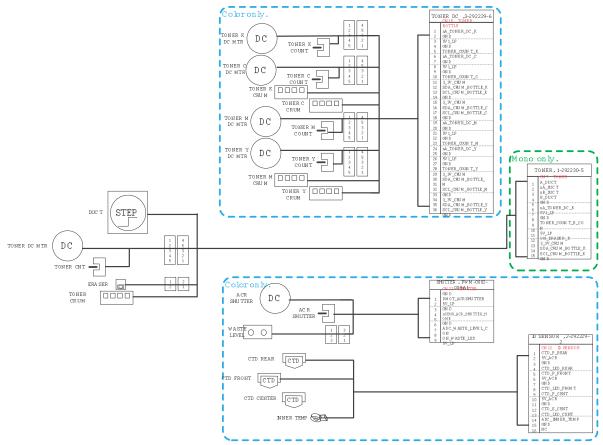
### Diagrams (laser scanner assembly/HVPS)





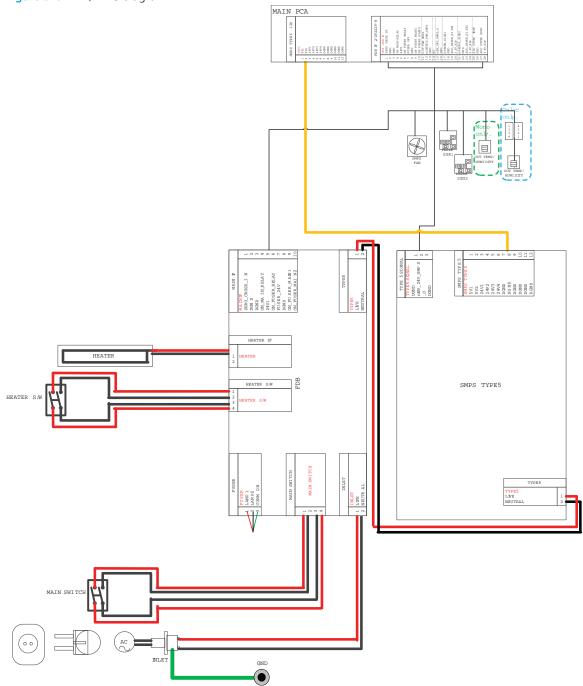
## Diagrams (toner)

Figure 6-5 Toner diagram



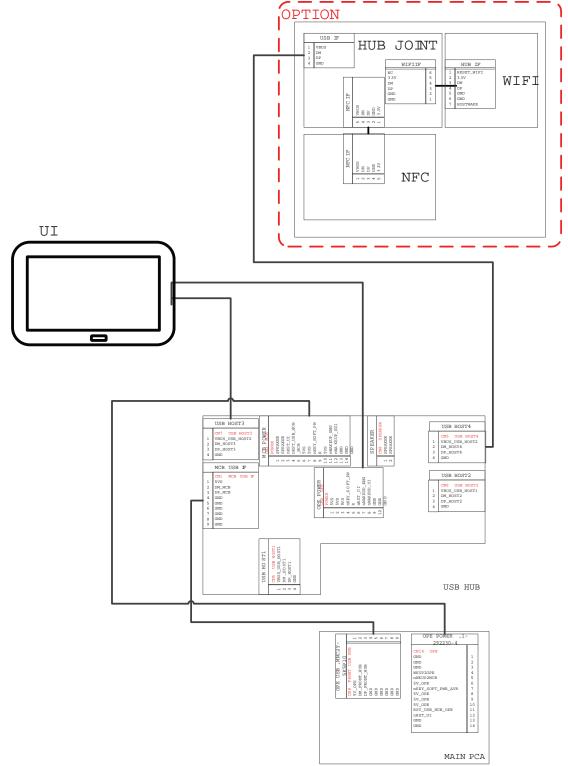
## Diagrams (FDB/LVPS)

### Figure 6-6 FDB/LVPS diagram

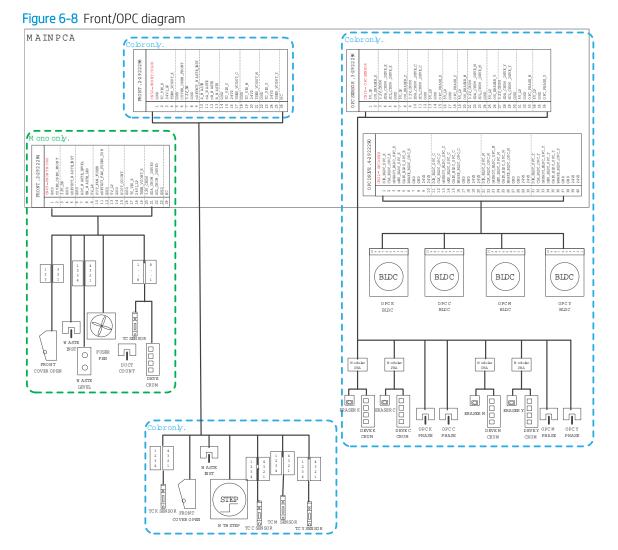


## Diagrams (UI)

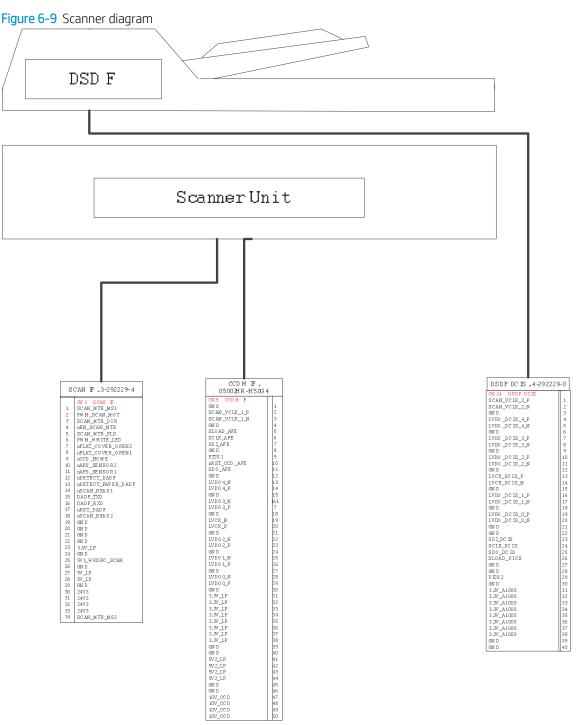
Figure 6-7 UI diagram



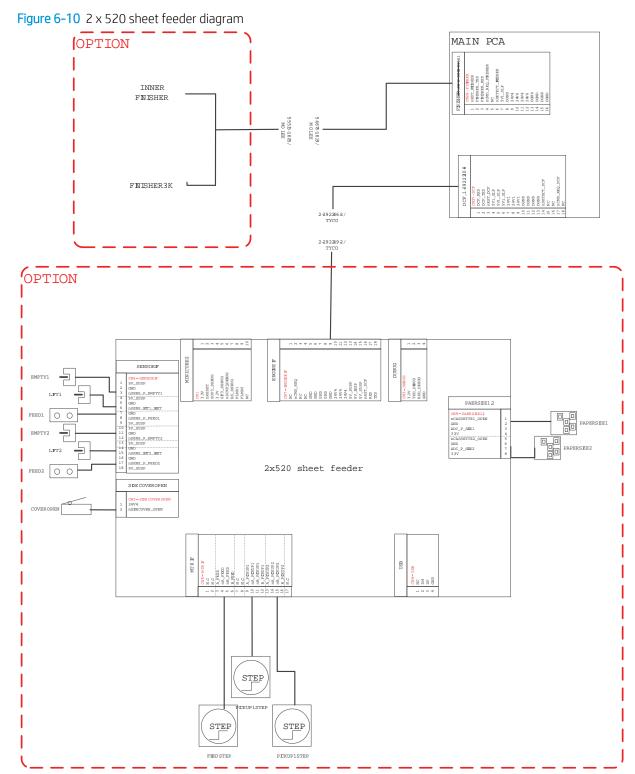
## Diagrams (FRONT/OPC)



### Diagrams (scanner)



## Diagrams (Dual Cassette Feeder)



# A Glossary

• <u>Glossary of terms</u>

# Glossary of terms

The following glossary includes terminology commonly used with printing, as well as terminology used in this service manual.

802.11	802.11 is a set of standards for wireless local area network (WLAN) communication, developed by the IEEE LAN/MAN Standards Committee (IEEE 802).			
802.11b/g/n	802.11b/g/n can share the same hardware and use the 2.4 GHz band. 802.11b supports bandwidth up to 11 Mbps, 802.11n supports bandwidth up to 150 Mbps. 802.11b/g/n devices might occasionally suffer interferences from microwave ovens, cordless telephones, and Bluetooth devices.			
ADF	An Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) is a scanning unit that will automatically feed an original sheet of paper for scanning.			
BOOTP	Bootstrap Protocol. A network protocol used by a network client to obtain its IP address automatically. This is usually done in the bootstrap process of computers or operating systems running on them. The BOOTP servers assigns an IP address from a pool of addresses to each client. BOOTP enables "diskless workstation" computers to obtain an IP address prior to loading any advanced operating system.			
CCD	Charged Coupled Device (CCD) is a hardware which enables the scan job. The CCD locking mechanism is also used to hold the CCD module to prevent any damage when the printer is moved.			
Collation	Collation is a process of printing a multiple-copy job in sets. When collation is selected, the device prints an entire set before printing additional copies.			
Control Panel	The control panel is a flat, typically vertical panel or screen where control or monitoring instruments are displayed. The control panel is found on the front of the printer.			
Coverage	Coverage is the printing term used for a toner usage measurement on printing. For example, 5% coverage means that an A4 sided paper has about 5% image or text on it. If the paper or original has complicated images or a large amount of text, the coverage will be higher and at the same time, a toner usage will be as much as the coverage.			
CRUM	The CRUM is a sub part of the MSOK. fuser,. OPC, imaging drum, and toner cartridge. It stores count information, system, operating system, system parameters, device status, technical information and service information. If a component with a CRUM is replaced the information stored will not be kept.			
Default	The value or setting that is in effect when a printer is unboxed, reset, or initialized.			
DHCP	A Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a client-server networking protocol. A DHCP server provides configuration parameters specific to the DHCP client host requesting, generally, information required by the client host to participate on an IP network. The DHCP also provides a mechanism for allocation of IP addresses to client hosts.			
DIMM	Dual Inline Memory Module (DIMM) is a small circuit board that holds memory. The DIMM stores all data within the machine, such as printing data and received fax data.			
DPI	Dots Per Inch (DPI) is a measurement of resolution that is used for scanning and printing. Generally, higher DPI results in a higher resolution, more visible detail in the image, and a larger file size.			
Duplex	A mechanism that will automatically turn over a sheet of paper so that the printer can print (or scan) on both sides of the paper. A printer equipped with a duplex unit can print on both sides of the paper during one print cycle.			
Duty Cycle	Duty cycle is the page quantity which does not affect printer performance for a month. Generally, the printer has the lifespan limitation such as pages per year. The lifespan means the average capacity of print-outs, usually within the warranty period. For example, if the duty cycle is 48,000 pages per month assuming 20 working days, a printer limits 2,400 pages a day.			
Emulation	Emulation is a technique of one machine obtaining the same results as another. An emulator duplicates the functions of one system with a different system, so that the second system behaves like the first system. Emulation focuses on exact reproduction of external behavior. This is different from simulation, which concerns an abstract model of the system being simulated, often considering its internal state.			

ESD	An electrostatic discharge (ESD) is a sudden flow of electricity between two electrically charged objects caused by contact, an electrical short, or dielectric breakdown. Discharge of built up static electricity.	
Ethernet	Ethernet is a frame-based computer networking technology for local area networks (LANs). It defines wiring and signaling for the physical layer, and frame formats and protocols for the media access control (MAC)/da link layer of the OSI model. Ethernet is mostly standardized as IEEE 802.3. Ethernet has become the most widespread LAN technology in use during the 1990s to present.	
FIH	A Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) is a port that enables HP multifunction printers (MFPs) to use third-party devices to extend the capabilities of the MFP.	
Flow document feeder	A flow document feeder is a scanning unit that will automatically feed and turn over an original sheet of p so that the machine can scan both sides of the paper.	
FTP	A File Transfer Protocol (FTP) is a commonly used protocol for exchanging files over any network that supports the TCP/IP protocol (such as the internet or an intranet).	
Fuser Unit	The fuser unit is part of a laser printer that fuses the toner onto the print media. It consists of a heat roller a a pressure roller. After toner is transferred onto the paper, the fuser unit applies heat and pressure to make sure that the toner stays on the paper permanently, which is why paper is warm when it comes out of a lase printer.	
Gateway	A connection between computer networks, or between a computer network and a telephone line. It is very popular, as it is a computer or a network that allows access to another computer or network.	
Grayscale	Shades of gray that represent light and dark portions of an image when color images are converted to grayscale. Colors are represented by various shades of gray.	
Halftone	An image type that simulates grayscale by varying the number of dots. Highly colored areas consist of a la number of dots, while lighter areas consist of a smaller number of dots.	
HDD	Hard Disk Drive (HDD), commonly referred to as a hard drive or hard disk, is a non-volatile storage device which stores digitally-encoded data on rapidly rotating platters with magnetic surfaces.	
IEEE	The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) is an international non-profit, professional organization for the advancement of technology related to electricity.	
IP address	An Internet Protocol (IP) address is a unique number that a device uses in order to identify and communicate with other devices on a network utilizing the Internet Protocol standard.	
IPM	The Images Per Minute (IPM) is a method of measuring the speed of a printer. An IPM rate indicates the number of single-sided sheets a printer can complete in one minute.	
lbb	The Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) defines a standard protocol for printing and managing print jobs, media size, resolution, etc. IPP can be used locally, or over the internet to reach hundreds of printers. IPP also supports access control, authentication, and encryption, making it a capable and secure printing solution.	
150	The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) is an international standard-setting body composed of representatives from national standards bodies. In produces world-wide industrial and commercial standards.	
JBIG	Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) is an image compression standard with no loss of accuracy or quality. It was designed for compression of binary images, particularly for faxes, but can also be used for ot images.	
JPEG	Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG) is a commonly used standard method of loss compression for photographic images. It is the format used for storing and transmitting photographs on the World Wide Wel	
LDAP	The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a networking protocol for querying and modifying directory services running over TCP/IP.	
LED	A Light-Emitting Diode (LED) is a semiconductor device that indicates the status of a machine.	
LVPS - SMPS	Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS) / Switching Mode Power Supply (SMPS)	

MAC address	Media Access Control (MAC) address is a unique identifier associated with a network adapter. MAC address is a unique 48–bit identifier usually written as 12 hexadecimal characters grouped in pairs (e.g., 00–00–0c-34–11–4e). This address is usually hard-coded into a Network Interface Card (NIC) by the manufacturer, and used as an aid for routers trying to locate machines on a large network.			
MFP	Multi Function Printer (MFP) is an office printer that includes multiple functionality in one physical body, such as a printer, copier, fax, scanner, etc.			
MHV	Miniature High Voltage (MHV) is designed for high voltage applications of BNC connectors (DC voltage between 500 V and 5 kV).			
Modem	A device that modulates a carrier signal to encode digital information, and also demodulates such a carrier signal to decode transmitted information.			
OPC	Organic Photo Conductor (OPC) is a mechanism that makes a virtual image for print using a laser beam emitted from a laser printer. It is usually green or rust colored and has a cylinder shape. An imaging unit containing a drum slowly wears the drum surface during its usage in the printer, and it should be replaced appropriately due to wear from contact with the cartridge development brush, cleaning mechanism, and paper.			
Originals	The first example of something, such as a document, photograph, or text which is copied, reproduced, or translated to produce additional copies. The original itself is not copied or derived from something else.			
PCA	Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA). Once the printed circuit board (PCB) is complete, electronic components must be assembled to form a functional printed circuit assembly or PCA.			
PCL	Printer Command Language (PCL) is a Page Description Language (PDL) developed by HP as a printer protocol. PCL has become an industry standard. Originally developed for early Inkjet printers, PCL has been released in varying levels for thermal, dot matrix printers and laser printers.			
PDF	Portable Document Format (PDF) is a proprietary file format developed by Adobe Systems. A PDF represents two dimension documents in a device independent and resolution independent format.			
PostScript (PS)	PostScript (PS) is a page description language and programming language used primarily in electronic and desktop publishing. PostScript is run in an interpreter to generate an image.			
Printer Driver	A program used to send commands and transfer data from the computer to the printer.			
Print Media	Media like paper, envelopes, labels, and transparencies which can be used in a printer, scanner, fax, or copier.			
РРМ	Pages Per Minute (PPM) is a method of measurement for determining how fast a printer works, meaning the number of pages a printer can produce in one minute.			
Protocol	A convention or standard that controls or enables the connection, communication, and data transfer betwee two computing endpoints.			
Resolution	The sharpness of an image, measured in Dots Per Inch (DPI). The higher the DPI, the greater the resolution.			
SMB	Server Message Block (SMB) is a network protocol mainly applied to share files, printers, serial ports, and miscellaneous communications between nodes on a network. SMB also provides an authenticated Interprocess communication mechanism.			
SMTP	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) is the standard for email transmissions across the internet. SMTP is a relatively simple, text-based protocol, where one or more recipient of a message are specified and the message text is transferred. It is a client server protocol where the client transmits an email message to the server.			
Subnet Mask	The subnet mask is used in conjunction with the network address to determine which part of the address is the network address and which part is the host address.			
TCP/IP	The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and the Internet Protocol (IP) are the set of communications protocols that implement the protocol stack on which the internet and most commercial networks run.			
TIFF	Tagged Image File Format (TIFF) is a variable-resolution bitmapped image format. TIFF describes image data that typically come from scanners. TIFF images use tags, keywords defining the characteristics of the image that is included in the file. This flexible and platform-independent format can be used for pictures that have been made by various image processing applications.			

Toner Cartridge	A bottle or container that holds toner, which is used in a machine like a printer. Toner is a powder used in lase printers and photocopiers. The toner forms the text and images on printed paper. Toner can be fused by a combination of heat/pressure from the fuser, causing it to bind the fibers in the paper.	
TWAIN	An industry standard for scanners and software. By using a TWAIN compliant scanner with TWAIN-compliant software, a scan can be initiated from the program. TWAIN is an image capture API for Microsoft Windows an Apple Macintosh operating systems.	
URL	Uniform Resource Locator (URL) is the global address of documents and resources on the internet. The first part of the address indicates what protocol to use. The second part specifies the IP address or the domain name where the resource is located.	
USB	Universal Serial Bus (USB) is a standard that was developed by the USB Implementers Forum, Inc., to connect computers and peripherals. Unlike the parallel port, USB is designed to concurrently connect a single computer USB port to multiple peripherals.	
Watermark	A watermark is a recognizable image or pattern in paper that appears ligher when viewed by transmitted Watermarks were first introduced in Bologna, Italy in 1282. Watermarks have been used by papermakers identify their product, and also on postage stamps, currency, and other government documents to discou counterfeiting.	
XPS	XML Paper Specification (XPS) is a specification for a Page Description Language (PDL) and a new document format developed by Microsoft. This has benefits for portable document and electronic documents. It is an XML-based specification based on a new print path and vector-based, device-independent document format	

# **B** Revision History

<u>Revision History</u>

# **Revision History**

Revision Number	Revision Date	Revision Notes
		Updated parts numbers throughout document to remove "SAM-" prefix and updated new part numbers as identified.
6.0	July, 2018	Minor content edits (including graphics)
5.0	March, 2018	Upload all graphics to data base
		Part number updates
		Minor changes
4.0	January, 2018	Minor changes to envirnmental specs and engine dimensions
3.0	November, 2017	Updated code data for Diagnostics and Service Functions
		Replaced Product Overview with the UG- style Printer Views and removed the previous "Machine external view" section.
		Updated R&R TOC level to 1.
		Replaced references to SAW with WISE an removed QR codes.
		Replaced Samsung Paper Jam content wit the UG content
		Moved specifications out of the appendix t the Product Specifications chapter
		Added additional specification content to the Product Specifications chapter from th UG
		Removed the lists of tables and figures ar the alphabetical and numerical lists of par
		Placed ESD cautions at the beginning of th R&R sections for the main printer and both finishers.
		Removed the Samsung precaution section
		Updated part numbers, part descriptions, diagrams, and photos
		Linked Removal and Replacement procedures are linked to part number information.

Revision Number	Revision Date	Revision Notes
2.0	July, 2017	Updated TOC to only consist of 3 levels
		Add error code and CPMD overview
		Added "How to search for documentation" section.
		Updated toner average yield data
		Changed all occurrences of #2 Phillips to #2 JIS
1.0	April, 2017	Service manual initial release

# C Certificate of Volatility

# Certificate of Volatility

### **Figure C-1** Certificate of Volatility (E778XXdn/z; 1 of 2)

	Hewl	ett-Packard Ce	ertificate of Volatilit	y
Model:	Part Nu	imber:		Address:
HP Color LaserJet Manag	ed Manag	ed		Hewlett Packard Company
MFP E778XXdn	X3A784	A= E77822dn		11311 Chinden Blvd
	X3A814	= E77825dn		Boise, ID 83714
HP Color LaserJet Manag		= E77830dn	20.00, 12 001 11	
Flow MFP E778XXz		= E77822z		
		A= E77825z		
	X3A834	A= E77830z		
			Memory	
Does the device contain vo		e type, size, function		
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable:	Function: Operation	Steps to clear memory:
Z Bundles DDR3 - DRAM	HP Formatter		system and print/scan buffer	When the printer is powered off the memory is erased.
DDIG - DIAM	3GB- Obsidian			the memory is erased.
	1 GB -Accel			
	brd 4 GB - Main			
	4 GB - Main Formatter			
	- onnation	🗌 Yes 🛛 No		
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc): Size:		User Modifiable: Function:		Steps to clear memory:
	HP Formatter 3GB- Obsidian			
	4 GB - Main			
	Formatter			
<u>dn Bundles</u> DDR3 - DRAM		🗌 Yes 🖾 No		
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable:	Function:	Steps to clear memory:

	Non-Volatile Memory					
Does the device contain non-volatile memory (Memory whose contents are retained when power is removed)?						
			ction, and steps to clear the me			
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable:	Function:	Steps to clear memory:		
IOD EEPROM	32KB	🗌 Yes 🖾 No	Store customer setting data	There are no steps to clear this		
			for backup/restore	data.		
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): HP side: SPI Flash	Size:	User Modifiable:	Function:	Steps to clear memory:		
	4MB	🛛 Yes 🗌 No	Contains the boot code and	There are no steps to clear this		
			factory product configuration	data		
			data required for the device			
			to function. User			
			modifications are limited to			
			downloading digitally signed HP firmware images.			
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable:	Function:	Steps to clear memory:		
Samsung MSOK :	5IZE.	Yes X No	Function.	Steps to clear memory.		
MSOK – TPM	2 KB		RSA Key Pair is stored on	There are none. FW reload will		
MSOK – CRUM	256 Bytes		the TPM, HP-signed	handle any issues.		
MSOK - EEProm	1 KB		Immutable ID Certificate is			
			stored on the CRUM, the			
			new Key pair is saved on the EEProm			
			EEProm			

	Mass Storage				
Does the device contai	n mass sto	orage memory (H	ard Disk Drive, Tape Backup)?	1	
Yes 🗌 No If Yes	s please de	escribe the type,	size, function, and steps to clea	ar the memory below	
Type (HDD, Tape, etc.): HDD	Size: 320GB	User Modifiable:	Function: Stores customer data, OS, applications, digitally signed firmware images, persistent data, and temporary data used for processing and system functions	Steps to clear memory: There are several ways to erase this: 1.Erase and Unlock Encrypted Disk – This changes the encryption keys rendering all data unreadable. 2.Secure Storage Erase – Erases temporary files and job data by overwriting information one or three times.	
				3.Secure Disk Erase – Industry standard ATA Secure Erase. Overwrites all data on the HDD. 4.Secure File Erase – Erases files when jobs finish processing by overwriting them one or three times.	

USB

 Does the item accept USB input and if so, for what purpose (i.e Print Jobs, device firmware updates, scan upload)?

 X Yes
 No If Yes please describe below

 Print jobs, HP digitally signed firmware upgrades, 3rd party application loading. USB ports can be disabled.

 Can any data other than scan upload be sent to the USB device)?

 Xes
 No If Yes please describe below

 Diagnetic partice partice partice below

Diagnostic service logs can be uploaded. Print files can be printed via a USB thumb drive.

RF/RFID		
Does the item use RF or RFID for receive or transmit of any data including remote diagnostics. (e.g. Cellular phone, Bluetooth) ☐ Yes ⊠ No If Yes please describe below		
Purpose:		
Frequency: Bandwidth:		
Modulation: Effective Radiate Power (ERP):		
Specifications:		

Other Transmission Capabilities		
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? X Yes $\Box$ No If Yes please describe below:		
Purpose: WiFi Direct Print		
Frequency: 2.4 GHz, 5GHz Bandwidth: 2401 - 2495 MHz; depending on selected channel in 2.4GHz band. 5180 - 5825 MHz; depending on selected channel in 5GHz band.		
Modulation: Effective Radiate Power (ERP):		
Specifications: 802.11 b/g/n		

Other Transmission Capabilities	
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? 🛛 Yes 🗌 No If Yes please describe below:	
Purpose: Device Beaconing, Secure Print Apps	
Frequency: 2.4 GHz	Bandwidth: 2400-2483.5 MHz; depending on selected
	channel.
Modulation:	Effective Radiate Power (ERP):
Specifications: BTLE4.0 compliant	

Other Capabilities	
Does the device employ any other method of communications such as a Modem to transmit or receive any data	
whatsoever? 🔲 Yes 🖾 No If Yes please describe below:	
Purpose:	
Specifications:	

# Index

### Symbols/Numerics

(GX/z models) document feeder document feeder jam access cover 482 2-x rollers rollers, kit high-capacity input (HCI) 624

### Α

accelerator board 198 after performing services 198 before performing service 198 introduction 198 post service test 198 remove the accelerator board 199 remove the formatter cover 199 required tools 198 unpack the replacement assembly 200 acoustic specifications 15 ACR 306 adjust laser scanner assembly skew 867 after-service checklist 121, 890. 1334 APS sensor 545

### В

backup error 32.WX.YZ error 668 reset error 668 restore error 668 black band 821 black band or dot 824 blade motor (M19) removing and replacing 1295 blank copy 832 blank image 832 blurred image 828

С caster, wheel

removing and replacing 1276 booklet finisher removing and replacing 1241 booklet finisher fold stopper unit removing and replacing 1264 booklet finisher front cover removing and replacing 1239 booklet finisher PCA removing and replacing 1252 booklet tray removing and replacing 980 buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3) removing and replacing 1151 BYOD table card reader 207 NFC kit 207

booklet feed entrance motor (M13)

C fold motor (M20) removing and replacing 1299 Calibrate/Cleaning menu, control panel 775 capture log 815 card reader 206 install 207 caster cover (finisher) removing and replacing 983 high-capacity input tray (HCI) unit 617 caution for moving the scanner 75 cautions iii certificate of volatility 1565 Channel partners support HP Channel Services Network (CSN) 116.1307

checklists after-service 121, 890, 1334 preservice 120, 889, 1334 CIS cleaning 123 maintenance 123 cleaning CIS 123 CTD sensor 129 document feeder white bar (LX/dn models) 123 laser scanner assembly 126 scan glass 125 transfer roller 128 cleaning page 776 clear paper jams 1308 color errors 829 color registration frame main 306 component test special mode test 686 components diagnostic tests 686 scanning system 69 connector error 65.WX.YZ error 669 control panel 242 Backup/Restore menu 775 Calibrate/Cleaning menu 775 Copy menu (MFP only) 752 CPMD 668 Fax menu (fax models only) 766 messages, types of 1307 Print menu 770 Reports menu 709 Scan menu (MFP only) 757 Settings menu 712 Supplies menu 771 Trays menu 772

troubleshooting menu 773 USB Firmware Upgrade menu 778 control panel diagnostic flowcharts 677 control panel menus 709 controller PCA (finisher) removing and replacing 1016 conventions, document iii Copy menu (MFP only), control panel 752 copy specifications 22 CTD sensor cleaning 129 maintenance 129 current settings pages 690

### D

DC controller communication error 55.WX.YZ error 669 DC controller firmware error 70.WX.YZ error 669 debuglog 815 decoding message 668 defeating interlocks 684 determine problem source 673 developer unit 45 remove 219 replace 219 diagnostics component 686 engine 684 LED 682 diagrams 1544 DCF 1553 FDB 1549 finisher system 1321 front/opc 1551 fuser exit 1545 HVPS 1547 information 1543 laser scanner assembly 1547 LVPS 1549 pickup/ph drive/side 1546 scanner 1552 toner 1548 UI 1550

digital sending error (firmware) 44.WX.YZ error 669 dimensions, printer 14 document conventions iii document feeder document feeder input tray (LX/dn models) 413 Document feeder (GX/z models) document feeder contact image sensor (CIS) fan (GX/z models) 519 document feeder front motor 502 document feeder PCA fan (GX/z models) 516 document feeder rear motors (GX/z models) 506 document feeder with ultrasonic sensor PCA (GX/z models) 522 document feeder error 31.WX.YZ error 668 document feeder input tray (GX/z models) document feeder input tray (GX/z models) 469 document feeder pick 489 document feeder pick roller 489 document feeder pick roller (LX/dn models) 441 document feeder problems 843 document feeder reverse roller 454 document feeder reverse roller (GX/z models) 493 document feeder skew 869 document feeder white bar (LX/dn models) cleaning 123 maintenance 123 drain 817 drive motors 60 system 60 drive system 60 feed drive 64 fuser/exit drive 64 main drive unit 61 pickup drive 62 registration tray 1 drive 62 toner collection unit drive 66 toner supply drive 66

drive unit problem 856, 862 drivers, supported 11 drum 224 dual cassete feeder (DCF) motor 566 dual cassete feeder (DCF) PCA 563 dual cassete feeder (DCF) pickup motor 570 dual cassete feeder (DCF) pickup units 577 dual cassete feeder (DCF) rear cover 558 dual cassete feeder (DCF) right door 560 dual cassete feeder (DCF) unit dual cassete feeder (DCF) motor 570 dual cassete feeder (DCF) PCA 563 dual cassette feeder (DCF) unit 106 dual cassete feeder (DCF) motor 566 dual cassete feeder (DCF) pickup units 577 dual cassete feeder (DCF) rear cover 558 dual cassete feeder (DCF) right door 560 dual cassette feeder diagram 1553 dummy feed guide removing and replacing 1034 duplex blur 835 duplex sensor 317 duplexer error 69.WX.YZ error 669

### Е

each unit functions finisher system 885 ejector unit removing and replacing 1064 electrical parts layout finisher system layout 880 electrical specifications 15 electrostatic discharge (ESD) 120, 890, 893, 1334, 1337 Embedded Jetdirect error 80.WX.YZ error 669 empty level sensor 345 engine diagnostics 684 engine diagnostics 796 engine error (LaserJet) 46.WX.YZ error 669 63.WX.YZ error 669 engine error (PageWide) 61.WX.YZ error 669 envelope rotate 816 error fault 668 error messages types of 1307 ESD electrostatic discharge (ESD) 120, 890, 893, 1334, 1337 event log 690 clear using touchscreen control panel 691 event log error (firmware) 42.WX.YZ error 668 exit drive unit 263

### F

fan error 58.WX.YZ error 669 fault count 795 fault log 794 Fax menu (fax models only), control panel 766 FDB diagram 1549 feed drive 64, 267 feed drive unit 267 feed entrance motor (M1) removing and replacing 1139 feed exit motor (M2) removing and replacing 1145 feed roller 339 Trav 1 383 feed sensor feed sensor 2 300 feed sensor 1 295 feeding system 39 main components and functions 37 overview 36 tray 1 feed assembly 41 feeding system information 36 FIH HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution, install 204 finisher sectional view (Booklet finisher 875

finisher system 875 diagrams 1321 each unit functions 885 electrical parts layout 880 finisher sectional view (Booklet finisher) 875 paper path 879 PCA connection information 886 firmware communication error 49.WX.YZ error 669 firmware install error 99.WX.YZ error 669 hard disk error 669 remote firmware upgrade error 669 flow (GX/z bundles) document feeder document feeder contact image sensor (CIS) (GX/z models) 474 flow (z bundles) document feeder document feeder white backing 138 flow ADF whole unit 144 flow ADF skew 869 foggy image 826 folding roller motor (M18) removing and replacing 1289 formatter locating 3 formatter (and cage) 191 formatter lights 682 front cover open switch 228 front cover (finisher) removing and replacing 963 front cover open switch 228 front door (finisher) removing and replacing 951 front lower cover (finisher) removing and replacing 971 front tamper motor (M6) removing and replacing 1159 front tamper unit removing and replacing 1089 front/opc diagram 1551 fuser 163 drive assembly board 179 duct fan 287 out sensor 313 fuser drive assembly board 179

fuser drive unit 263 fuser duct fan 287 fuser error 41.WX.YZ error 668 laser scanner error 668 paper path error 668 fuser error (LaserJet) 50.WX.YZ error 669 fuser exit diagram 1545 fuser problem 842 fuser system problem 857 fuser unit 50, 163 fuser unit temperature control 51 overview 50 fuser unit drive. color models 51 fuser unit temperature control 51 fuser-out sensor 313 fuser/exit drive 64 fuser/exit drive unit 263 fusing problems 833 fusing guality problems 833

### G

General Settings menu, control panel 712 general specifications 15 guide post and guide post plate high-capacity input tray (HCI) unit 619

### Н

Hard Disk Drive 237 hard disk partition error 98.WX.YZ error 669 hard-disk drive (formatter) 201 hardware configuration 91, 104 HVPS PCAd 102 low voltage power supply PCA (Type 4) 100 LVPS PCA (Type 4) 100 main controller (main board) 94 hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning 682 HDD 237 HDD (formatter) 201 high voltage power Ssupply remove 358 replace 358

high-capacity input high-capacity input kit -HP LaserJet E7 tray 2-x roller 624 high-capacity input belt - timing gear removing and replacing 602 high-capacity input caster wheel 617 high-capacity input drive assembly feed removing and replacing 630 high-capacity input drive assembly sub-pullev removing and replacing 645 high-capacity input guide post and quide post plate 619 high-capacity input kit - HP LaserJet E7 tray 2-x rollers 624 high-capacity input main electrical connector 614 high-capacity input motor - feed drive removing and replacing 635 high-capacity input motor - lift drive right and motor - lift drive left 640 remove and replace 640 high-capacity input motor - step drive 643 high-capacity input PCA 611 high-capacity input photo interrupter and sensor bracket 663 high-capacity input right door removing and replacing 595 high-capacity input sub - pickup removing and replacing 585 high-capacity input sub-paper side right 656 high-capacity input tray (HCI) unit high-capacity input caster wheel 617 high-capacity input guide post upper and guide post and plate 619 high-capacity input motor - step drive 643 high-capacity input photo interrupter and sensor bracket 663 high-capacity input sub-paper side right 656

high-capacity input tray main electrical connector 614 high-capacity input tray PCA 611 home button is unresponsive 681 horizontal black band or dot 824 horizontal light band 825 HP Channel Services Network (CSN) Channel partners support 116, 1307 HP Foreign interface harness (FIH), install 204 HP Jetdirect print server liahts 682 HVPS remove 358 replace 358 HVPS board 102 HVPS diagram 1547

image creation 43 developer unit 45 imaging unit 44 intermediate transfer belt (ITB) drive 48 intermediate transfer belt (ITB) unit 47 overview 43 image management 813 image guality flow ADF or ADF skew 869 image guality problems 818 blank copy 832 blurred image 828 drive unit problem 856 duplex blur 835 electrical circuit problem 862 fogav image 826 fuser problem 842 fuser system problem 857 fusing problems 833 horizontal black band or dot 824 horizontal light/dark band or dot 825 image system problem 835 incorrect color registration 829 laser scanner assembly problem 862 light image 827 other errors 835

paper stain 834 scanner and ADF problems 843 skewed image 831 uneven pitch 830 vertical black band 821 vertical white band or light band 822 image system problem 835 imaging drum remove 224 replace 224 imaging unit 44 individual component diagnostics 682 inner finisher block diagram 1542 ejector assembly 1520 ejector motor assembly 1497 end fence home sensor 1539 entrance motor 1352 entrance sensor 1347 exit motor 1363 exit sensor 1358 front jogger home sensor 1379 front jogger motor 1366 main paddle 1518 main paddle home sensor 1515 main paddle motor 1512 paper holding lever solenoid 1466 paper support home sensor 1484 paper support motor 1475 punch dust full sensor 1533 rear jogger home sensor 1400 rear jogger motor 1391 remove and replace 1336 specifications 110 stack beam sensor 1450 stack position sensor 1455 stacker encoder sensor 1435 stacker lower limit switch 1442 stacker motor 1428 stapler 1407 stapler position sensor assembly 1411 traverse motor 1422 input accessory error 67.WX.YZ error 669

input/output error 40.WX.YZ error 668 install HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution 204 interlocks defeating 684 intermediate transfer belt 172 cleaner 169 cleaning 48 information 47 internal diagnostics error 90.WX.YZ error 669 video display error 669 interpret control-panel messages and event log entries 1307, 1541 ITB 47, 172 cleaner 169 information 47 ITB cleaning 48 ITB drive 48 ITB overview 47

### J

iam error (LaserJet) 13.WX.YZ error 668 jam error (PageWide) 13.WX.YZ error 668 jam removal 779 iams locations 779 Jetdirect print server lights 682 jitter image 830 job accounting error (firmware) 48.WX.YZ error 669 job management error (firmware) 669 job pipeline error (firmware) 669 job parser error (firmware) 47.WX.YZ error 669 printer calibration error 669

### K

keyboard 246

### L

laser scanner assembly 54 cleaning 126 laser scanning optical path 55 laser synchronizing detectors 55

maintenance 126 overview 54 skew adjustment 867 laser scanner assembly diagram 1547 laser scanner assembly problem 862 laser scanner error (LaserJet) 51.WX.YZ error 669 52.WX.YZ error 669 laser scanning optical path 55 laser synchronizing detectors 55 LED lamp module 536 LEDs. See lights left cover remove 376 replace 376 light band 822 light image 827 lights formatter 682 troubleshooting with 682 loop sensor 317 low voltage power supply PCA (Type 4) 100 lower shield assembly removing and replacing 987 LVPS board 183 fan 187 LVPS board 183 LVPS diagram 1549 LVPS PCA (Type 4) 100

### Μ

machine cleaning for maintenance (GX/z models) cleaning the flow ADF white bar and CIS (GX/z models) 123 main controller (main board) 94 main drive 257 main drive unit 61, 257 main memory clear 814 main tray moving motor (M11) removing and replacing 1229 maintenance 122 CIS 123 CTD sensor 129 document feeder white bar 123 laser scanner assembly 126

machine cleaning for maintenance 122 scan glass 125 transfer roller 128 maintenance counts fault count 795 part replacement count 795 memory error 82.WX.YZ error 669 EMMC error 669 hard disk error 669 menu map 690 menus, control panel Calibrate/Cleaning 775 Copy (MFP only) 752 Fax (fax models only) 766 General Settings 712 Manage Trays 772 Print 770 Reports 709 Scan (MFP only) 757 Supplies 771 messages types of 1307 motor error (LaserJet) 59.WX.YZ error 669 motors motor - lift drive right and motor lift drive left, high-capacity input 640 motor - step drive (HCI) 643

### Ν

Near Field Communication error 81.WX.YZ error 669 Bluetooth error 669 external I/O card error 669 internal EIO error 669 wireless error 669 NFC kit 206 install 207 no control panel sound 680 notes iii

### 0

operating systems, supported 11 optional accessories 33 ordering 890, 1335 output accessory error 66.WX.YZ error 669 OXPd/Web kit error 45.WX.YZ error 669

### Ρ

page error 21.WX.YZ error 668 paper handling error (LaserJet) 56.WX.YZ error 669 paper handling specifications 26 paper jams locations 779 paper path finisher system 879 paper size sensor 369 paper stain 834 part replacement alert 816 part replacement count 795 parts and accessories 890, 1335 parts and diagrams ADF (GX/z models) 467 ADF (LX/dn models) 405 ADF exterior (LX/dn models) 439 ADF image scanner (LX/dn models) 532 ADF image scanner, lower (LX/dn models) 540 ADF main frame (GX/z models) 500 ADF main frame (LX/dn models) 452 ADF pickup (LX/dn models) 439 ADF upper pickup (GX/z models) 487 ADFstacker (GX/z models) 498 alignment (finisher) 914 BKT main blade (finisher) 918 booklet finisher 1 894 booklet finisher 2 896 booklet finisher 3 898 booklet finisher 4 900 booklet finisher 5 902 booklet finisher 6 904 booklet finisher 7 906 cover 371 cover f bm (finisher) 936 curl pawl (finisher) 908 curl pawl motor (finisher) 908 DCF main 556 DCF main frame pickup 575 DCF main frame pickup 1 573

DCF main frame pickup, upper 581 div cam (finisher) 928 door (finisher) 924 drive buffer (finisher) 916 dual cassette feeder (DCF) 556 entrance quide (finisher) 912, 926 entrance motor (finisher) 914 FD stopper unit (finisher) 918 finisher sub 1 1339 finisher sub 8 1345 finisher sub booklet 938 Flow image scanner 530 fold roller (finisher) 920 front alignment (tamper) (finisher) 930 fuser output drive 322 hb motor (finisher) 928 hb motor, floor standing finisher 910 HCI drive 629 HCI sub - cassette 654 HFC main 584 HFC sub - frame 601 HFC sub - pickup upper/lower 622 high-capacity input (HCI) tray (E725XX and E778XX only) 584 idle fold (finisher) 936 idle fold paddle(finisher) 936 Image scanner, lower 549, 550 inner finisher 1337 IPTU (bridge) 940 jam clear (finisher) 918 low exit, floor standing finisher 910 low paddle (finisher) 914 main assembly 132 main blade (finisher) 920 main drive 320 main engine frame 255 main exit (finisher) 926 main frame 353 main frame pickup 337 main frame pickup, upper 351 main parts 132 mid jam (finisher) 926 paddle motor (finisher) 914, 928 PCA bm (finisher) 936

rear alignment (tamper) (finisher) 932 registration guide (finisher) 924 registration sub frame 326 right door 379 right door feed guide 401 right door output 399 right jam (finisher) 928 SCU motor (finisher) 912 shield (finisher) 934 STK motor (finisher) 912 Sub 7 - Inner finisher 1341, 1343 sub-inner finisher 1337 three fold blade (finisher) 922 three fold exit (finisher) 908 three fold motor (finisher) 908 top cover (finisher) 924 top door (finisher) 924 top frame (finisher) 920 top guide, floor standing finisher 910 top jam (finisher) 916 top lower (finisher) 916 transfer buffer (finisher) 928 Tray 1 registration drive assembly 324 Upper and lower exit 249 parts, diagrams, removal and replacemnt 115 PCA - ADF HIC (GX/z models) 528 PCA connection information finisher system 886 PCA precautions 888 periodic light/dark band or dot 825 photo interrupter (and sensor bracket) high-capacity input tray (HCI) unit 663 pick 339 pick roller 339 document feeder 489 document feeder (LX/dn model) 441 Trav 1 383 pickup drive 62, 291 pickup drive unit 291 pickup unit 345 pickup/ph drive/side diagram 1546 plastic latches information 889 post-service tests 121, 890, 1334

power consumption 15 power subsystem 673 power supply troubleshooting 673 power-on troubleshooting overview 673 pre-boot menu options 692 precations information 888 preservice checklist 120, 889, 1334 print adjustment 808 print bar error (PageWide) 62.WX.YZ error 669 print drivers, supported 11 Print menu, control panel 770 print quality test 121, 890, 1334 print quality information 818 print quality troubleshooting 818 print reports 794 print specifications 17 Print Test Page 724 print test patterns 814 printer memory error 20.WX.YZ error 668 printing process overview 43 problem-solving messages, types of 1307 Process Cleaning Page 776 product number locating 3

### R

real-time clock error 11.WX.YZ error 668 rear cover (finisher) removing and replacing 958 rear tamper motor (M7) removing and replacing 1185 rear tamper unit removing and replacing 1114 rear top cover remove 373 replace 373 registration assembly 332 Registration drive 328 registration drive 328 Registration drive assembly 328 registration drive unit 328

registration tray 1 drive 62 removal and replacement right top cover (finisher) 944 removal and replacement precautions 888 removal order removing order 121 remove HVPS 358 left cover 376 rear top cover 373 remove and replace inner finisher 1336 removing and replacing blade motor (M19) 1295 booklet feed entrance motor (M13) 1276 booklet finisher 1241 booklet finisher fold stopper unit 1264 booklet finisher front cover 1239 booklet finisher PCA 1252 booklet tray 980 buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3) 1151 C fold motor (M20) 1299 caster cover (finisher) 983 controller PCA (finisher) 1016 dummy feed guide 1034 ejector unit 1064 feed entrance motor (M1) 1139 feed exit motor (M2) 1145 folding roller motor (M18) 1289 front cover (finisher) 963 front door (finisher 951 front lowercover (finisher) 971 front tamper motor (M6) 1159 front tamper unit 1089 high-capacity input belt - timing gear 602 high-capacity input drive assembly - feed 630 high-capacity input drive assembly - sub-pulley 645 high-capacity input motor - feed drive 635 high-capacity input right door 595 high-capacity input sub - pickup 585

lower shield assembly 987 main tray moving motor (M11) 1229 rear cover (finisher) 958 rear tamper motor (M7) 1185 rear tamper unit 1114 SCU motor (M10) 1211 separate pawl motor (M17) 1286 stapler unit 1022 stopper moving motor (M16) 1282 TE presser motor (M14) 1279 top cover (finisher) 947 top jam access cover 1040 top lower feed assembly 1051 top output bin 942 upper shield assembly 1000 removing parts checklists 120, 889, 1334 replace HVPS 358 remove 373, 376 Reports menu, control panel 709 reverse roller 339 document feeder 454 Tray 1 383 right door 165 open switch 234 right door open switch 234 right top cover (finisher) removal and replacement 944

### S

scan glass 534 Scan menu (MFP only), control panel 757 scan specifications 19 scanner caution for moving 75 imaging unit 542 PCA - ADF HIC (GX/z models) 528 scan glass 534 scanner diagnostics 802 scanner diagram 1552 scanner error 30.WX.YZ error 668 scanner glass cleaning 125 maintenance 125 scanner imaging unit 542

scanner problems 843 scanner system information 67 scanner system overview 67 scanning system components 69 scanning system components 69 SCU motor (M10) removing and replacing 1211 security error 33.WX.YZ error 668 sensor error 54.WX.YZ error 669 58.WX.YZ error 669 separate pawl motor (M17) removing and replacing 1286 separation roller document separation 493 serial number locating 3 service and support information 874 WISE and CSN 116, 1307 service approach 120, 888, 1334 service functions 814 service mode adjustment 808 capture log 815 debug log 815 drain 817 engine diagnostics 796 envelope rotate 816 fault count 795 fault log 794 how to enter 784 image management 813 information 784 information, general 793 main memory clear 814 menu tree 784 part replacement alert 816 part replacement count 795 print reports 794 print test patterns 814 scanner diagnostics 802 service functions 814 software version 794 supply status 793 TR control mode 815 service parts 25 size sensor 369

skewed image 831 software and solution specifications 34 software version 794 specifications 8 copy specifications 22 electrical and acoustic 15 general specifications 15 optional accessories 33 paper handling specifications 26 print specifications 17 scan specifications 19 service parts 25 software and solution 34 supplies 24 stain on back of paper 834 standard (dn bundles) document feeder document feeder white backing 135 document feeder whole unit 141 standard (LX/dn bundles) document feeder document feeder (ADF) PCA 446 document feeder feed motor 461 standard (LX/dn model) document feeder document feeder main motor 432 standard (LX/dn model) document feeder (ADF) document feeder (ADF) contact image sensor (CIS; LX/dn model) 420 standard (LX/dn models) document feeder (ADF) document feeder (ADF) jam access cover (LX/dn models) 407 stapler unit removing and replacing 1022 static, precautions for 120, 890, 893.1334.1337 status messages, types of 1307 stopper moving motor (M16) removing and replacing 1282 sub-paper side rights high-capacity input tray (HCI) unit 656

supplies 24, 890, 1335 supplies error (Laser Jet) 10.WX.YZ error 668 supplies error (PageWide) 17.WX.YZ error 668 Supplies menu, control panel 771 supply status 793 system error (Laser Jet) 62.WX.YZ error 669 system requirements minimum 12

### Т

TCU drive 66 TE presser motor (M14) removing and replacing 1279 tech mode information 784 tests post-service 121, 890, 1334 print-quality 121, 890, 1334 tips iii toner collection unit drive 270 toner collection unit drive 270 toner diagram 1548 toner supply 273 toner supply drive 66, 273 toner supply drive unit 273 top cover (finisher) removing and replacing 947 top jam access cover removing and replacing 1040 top lower feed assembly removing and replacing 1051 top output bin removing and replacing 942 toraue limiter HCI kit - HP LaserJet E7 tray 2-x roller 624 touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image) 678 touchscreen has an unresponsive zone 679 TR control mode 815 transfer belt 172 cleaner 169 transfer roller 403 cleaning 128 maintenance 128

Tray 1 jams, clearing 779 Tray 1 unit 387 Tray 1 unit and Tray 1 assemblies 387 Tray 2 jams, clearing 780 Tray 3 jams, clearing 780 tray motor error (LaserJet) 60.WX.YZ error 669 tray selection - use requested tray 725 trays jams, clearing 780 Trays menu, control panel 772 troubleshooting checklist 687 control panel checks 677 lights, using 682 power 673 process 673

### U

UI diagram 1550 understand lights on the formatter formatter lights 682 understand the lights on the formatter HP Jetdirect LEDs 683 uneven pitch 830 upper shield assembly removing and replacing 1000 Use Requested Tray 725

### V

vertical black band 821 vertical white band 822

### W

warnings iii Web-based Interactive Search Engine WISE 116, 1307 weight, printer 14 white spot blur 835 WISE Web-based Interactive Search Engine 116, 1307 working table card reader 207 NFC kit 207